



तमसो मा ज्योतिर्गमय

VISVA BHARATI  
LIBRARY  
SANTINIKETAN

428

R 791







# HINTS ON THE STUDY OF ENGLISH

BY  
F. J. ROWE, M.A.  
AND  
W. T. WEBB, M.A.

SOMETIME PROFESSORS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE, PRESIDENCY  
COLLEGE, CALCUTTA AND FELLOWS OF THE UNIVERSITY,  
AUTHORS OF 'AN ELEMENTARY ENGLISH GRAMMAR',  
'AN INTRODUCTORY ENGLISH GRAMMAR', ETC.

*NEW EDITION*  
*REVISED AND ENLARGED*



MACMILLAN AND CO. LIMITED  
BOMBAY CALCUTTA MADRAS LONDON

MACMILLAN AND COMPANY LIMITED

LONDON BOMBAY CALCUTTA MADRAS MELBOURNE

THE MACMILLAN COMPANY OF CANADA LIMITED

TORONTO

ST MARTIN'S PRESS INC

NEW YORK

*This book is copyright in all countries which  
are signatories to the Berne Convention.*

First Published by Macmillan and Co. Ltd., 1897

Reprinted 1899, 1900, 1902, 1903, 1905

New Edition, 1909

Reprinted 1909, 1910, 1911,

1912, 1913 (twice), 1914, 1915, 1916, 1917, 1918

PRINTED FROM PLATES BY V. B. KHALE AT JAI GUJERAT PRINTING PRESS,  
GANDENI, BOMBAY 7 AND PUBLISHED BY J. ALBISTON FOR MACMILLAN AND  
CO. LTD., 276, DR. DADABHAI NAOROJI ROAD, BOMBAY 1.





# CONTENTS

## CHAPTER I.

### THE STRUCTURE, ANALYSIS, AND CONVERSION OF SENTENCES.

	PAGE		PAGE
The Structure of Sentences	1	The Analysis of Sentences	8
The Simple Sentence	5	The Conversion of Sentences	10
The Complex Sentence	5		
The Compound Sentence	5		

## CHAPTER II.

### THE FORMATION AND SIGNIFICANCE OF WORDS.

The Formation of Words	15	The Significance of Words	39
Latin Prefixes	16	Synonyms	39
Greek Prefixes	18	Homonyms	47
Latin and Greek Suffixes	19	Antonyms	48
Teutonic Prefixes	24	Doublets	52
Teutonic Suffixes	25	Confused Words	53
Latin Derivatives	29	Words derived from Proper Names	61
Greek Derivatives	31	Degradation of Words	63
Compound Words	32	Elevation of Words	67
Hybrids	39	Disguised Words	68

## CHAPTER III.

### ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.

Nouns	74	Adjectives	94
Gender	78	Numerals	96
Number	80	Articles	97
Case	87		

ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX—*Continued.*

	PAGE		PAGE
Pronouns - - - -	105	Tense - - - -	130
Personal Pronouns - -	106	Defective and Anomalous	
Reflexive Pronouns - -	107	Verbs - - - -	135
Demonstrative Pronouns -	108	Impersonal Verbs - -	138
Interrogative Pronouns -	109	Adverbs - - - -	138
Relative Pronouns - -	110	Special Adverbial Forms -	140
Conjunctive Pronouns -	114	Prepositions - - - -	143
Indefinite Pronouns - -	114	Prepositional use of Parti-	
Distributive Pronouns -	115	ciples - - - -	144
Verbs - - - -	116	Conjunctions - - - -	145
Uses of Transitive Verbs -	116	Co-ordinative Conjunctions -	146
Uses of Intransitive Verbs -	118	Subordinative Conjunctions	147
Verbs with two Objects -	122	Interjections - - - -	148
Mood - - - -	124		

## CHAPTER IV.

## TENSE-USAGE.

The Sequence of Tenses - -	150	<i>Shall</i> and <i>Will</i> - - - -	157
Reported Speech - - - -	152	<i>Should</i> and <i>Would</i> - - - -	162
Intermediate Forms - - - -	156		

## CHAPTER V.

## PARSING.

Nouns and Pronouns - -	166	The Same Word used in Differ-	
Adjectives - - - -	167	ent Relations - - - -	172
Verbs - - - -	168	Words of Number, Quantity,	
Adverbs - - - -	169	and Amount - - - -	173
Prepositions - - - -	169	The words 'As,' 'That,' 'How,'	
Conjunctions - - - -	169	'Why,' 'So,' 'Such,' 'Else,'	
Parsing Schemo - - - -	170	'Since,' 'Next' - - - -	175
		Examples of Parsing - - - -	177

## CHAPTER VI.

## IDIOM.

Word-collocation - - - -	186	Adjectives used as Nouns - -	195
The Collocation of some Ad-		Elliptical Sentences - - - -	196
jectives - - - -	190		

# CHAPTER VII.

## WORDS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS.

	PAGE		PAGE
Infinitive wrongly introduced	199	Corresponding forms with dif-	
Prepositions confused - -	200	ferent Prepositions - -	203
Prepositions inserted or omit-		The same words with different	
ted - - - - -	201	Prepositions - - -	204
Corresponding words with dif-		List of words with their appro-	
ferent Prepositions - -	203	priate Prepositions - -	206

# CHAPTER VIII.

## PHRASAL USES OF WORDS.

Phrasal uses of Prepositions -	219	The Pronoun <i>It</i> - -	262
Phrasal uses of Verbs - -	250	The Preposition <i>But</i> - -	264
Phrasal uses of Adjectives -	253	The Adjective <i>All</i> - -	265
Phrasal uses of Nouns - -	260		

# CHAPTER IX.

## MINOR AIDS TO COMPOSITION.

✓ The Alphabet - - -	267	Spelling - - -	275
Accent - - -	267	Rules - - -	275
Syllabication - - -	269	Notes - - -	276
Punctuation - - -	269	Pronunciation - - -	281
Capital Letters - - -	273	Answers to Examination Ques-	
Underlining - - -	274	tions - - -	285

# CHAPTER X.

## COMMON ERRORS.

✓ Nouns - - -	288	Prepositions - - -	330
Adjectives - - -	293	Conjunctions - - -	334
Articles - - -	297	Expressions of Time - -	340
Pronouns - - -	299	Order of Words - -	342
✓ Verbs - - -	308	Construction - - -	345
Adverbs - - -	321		



## CONTENTS

### CHAPTER XI.

#### COMPOSITION.

	PAGE		PAGE
Style . . . . .	351	The Rule of Simplicity . . . . .	357
The Rule of Proximity . . . . .	351	The Rule of Coherence . . . . .	361
The Rule of Perspicuity . . . . .	353	The Rule of Unity . . . . .	364
The Rule of Precision . . . . .	355		

### CHAPTER XII.

#### PARAPHRASING.

Figurative Language . . . . .	366	Turning Poetry into Prose . . . . .	371
Poetic Diction . . . . .	367		

### CHAPTER XIII.

#### PRÉCIS-WRITING.

Introduction . . . . .	375	The Précis . . . . .	380
------------------------	-----	----------------------	-----

### CHAPTER XIV.

#### ESSAY-WRITING AND LETTER-WRITING.

Outlines of Essays . . . . .	397	Letter-writing . . . . .	410
The Essay . . . . .	402	Forms of Date and Address . . . . .	416
Descriptive Essay . . . . .	406	Forms of Subscription . . . . .	418
Narrative Essay . . . . .	409	Forms of Direction . . . . .	419
Reflective or Expository Essay . . . . .	412	Sample Letters . . . . .	423

APPENDIX—Test Examination Questions . . . . .	427
---	-----

I. INDEX OF SUBJECTS . . . . .	443
--------------------------------	-----

II. INDEX OF WORDS AND FORMS . . . . .	447
--	-----

## CHAPTER I.

### THE STRUCTURE, ANALYSIS, AND CONVERSION OF SENTENCES.

#### THE STRUCTURE OF SENTENCES.

1. **A Sentence** is a combination of words by which we say something about a person or thing:—

Fire burns. A good boy learns his lessons well.

Hence every sentence must contain two essential parts:—

(1) The word (or words) denoting the person or thing that we say something about, *viz.*, *fire* ; *A good boy*.

(2) The word (or words) denoting what we say about the person or thing, *viz.*, *burns* ; *learns his lessons well*.

*Definition.*—The word (or words) denoting the person or thing that we say something about is called the **Subject** of the sentence.

*Definition.*—The word (or words) denoting what we say about the Subject is called the **Predicate** of the sentence.

2. In order to say something about a person or thing we must use a name for that person or thing, and as all names are nouns (109), we must use a Noun ; so that—

*The Subject of a Sentence is always a Noun, or some word or words equivalent to a Noun.*

3. In order to say anything we must use a word that says or states, and as all words that state are verbs (209), we must use a Verb ; so that—

*The Predicate of a sentence is always a Verb either alone or in combination with other words.*

## HINTS ON THE STUDY OF ENGLISH.

### 4. What we say of a person or thing may be—

- (a) an Assertion: 'The sun shines'; 'How fast he runs!'
- (b) a Question: 'Who goes there?'
- (c) a Command: 'Stand (you) still.'
- (d) a Supposition: 'Were he rich, he would pay.'
- (e) a Wish: 'Long live the king.'

In sentences (a) and (b) the verbs *shines*, *runs* and *goes* are in the Indicative Mood; in (c) the verb *stand* is in the Imperative Mood; in (d) and (e) the verbs *were* and *live* are in the Subjunctive Mood (227, 229). All these verbs show their connexion with the subject of the sentence by agreeing with it in Number and Person: the verb of a Predicate is thus always *limited* to a particular Number and Person, so that it must be a *Finite* (=limited) Verb. The parts of a verb that are not so limited, and are therefore not finite, are the Infinitive mood, the Participles, and the Verbal Noun or Gerund.

### 5. Phrase.—In the sentences—

I saw a man *with a stick*  
I saw a man *carrying a stick*

the words 'with a stick' and 'carrying a stick' contain no Finite Verb, and so do not form a sentence.

*Definition.*—A combination of words, used to represent a part of speech, and not containing a Finite verb, is called a *Phrase*.

### 6. A Phrase may represent—

- (1) A Noun: *What to do* is the difficulty.
- (2) An Adjective: The man *in the moon* is a fable.
- (3) An Adverb: I will come *in a day or two*.
- (4) A Preposition: *According to you* I am wrong.
- (5) A Conjunction: I don't mind going, *so long as you go too*.
- (6) An Interjection: *For shame!*

### 7. Clause.—In the sentence—

I saw a man *who carried a stick*

the words 'who carried a stick' contain a Finite verb, but *form part of* the complete sentence 'I saw a man who carried a stick.'

*Definition.*—A combination of words containing a Finite verb, but forming part of a sentence, is called a *Clause*.

**8. Subject and Object.**—The following sentences show the different kinds of Subjects and Objects [134, (2)]:—

- (1) Noun: *Cats* like milk.
- (2) Pronoun: *We* met *them*.
- (3) Adjective (used as Noun): *The rich* helped *the poor*.

- (4) Participle (used as Noun): *The wounded exceeded the slain.*  
 (5) Infinitive (used as Noun): *To persevere means to succeed.*  
 (6) Verbal Noun: *Working induces sleeping.*  
 (7) Noun phrase: *What to do precedes how to do it.*  
 (8) Noun clause: *That he returned implies that he went.*

**9. Complement.**—In the sentence, 'Birds fly,' the Predicate is the verb *fly*, which makes a complete sense. And in the sentence, 'Ram struck the dog,' the Predicate consists of the verb *struck* and its object *the dog*, which together make a complete sense.

But in the sentence, 'He took the man prisoner,' the Predicate consists not merely of the verb *took* and its object *the man*, but also of the word *prisoner*, which must be added to *fill up* the sense. Such a word is called the *Complement* of the verb, and the verb is called a Verb of Incomplete Predication.

When the verb that requires a complement is intransitive or passive, the complement must relate to the subject, and is called the *Subjective Complement*:—

His arm became *stiff*. He was elected *chairman*.

When the verb that requires a complement is transitive and active, the complement relates to the object, and is called the *Objective Complement*:—

Cold made his arm *stiff*. They elected him *chairman*.

NOTE.—For the comparatively few instances in which *intransitive verbs* have an *objective* complement, see 219.

#### 10. The Complement of the verb may be—

- |                                  |   |
|----------------------------------|---|
| (1) Adjective :                  | { We are <i>ready</i> (Subjective)<br>{ Let me alone (Objective)  |
| (2) Participle :                 | { The noise became <i>alarming</i> (Subj.)<br>{ I struck him <i>dead</i> (Obj.)                           |
| (3) Noun :                       | { Cæsar was made <i>commander</i> (Subj.)<br>{ He called me a <i>traitor</i> (Obj.)                       |
| (4) Possessive :                 | { The book is <i>Ram's</i> , not <i>mine</i> (Subj.)<br>{ He made my cause <i>his own</i> (Obj.)          |
| (5) Infinitive :                 | { The water seems to <i>boil</i> (Subj.)<br>{ I heard him <i>say</i> it (Obj.)                            |
| (6) Adverb :                     | { He returned <i>home</i> (Subj.)<br>{ The coachman drove him <i>home</i> (Obj.)                          |
| (7) Preposition with<br>object : | { The slaves were set <i>at liberty</i> (Subj.)<br>{ The general kept his troops <i>in reserve</i> (Obj.) |
| (8) Noun clause :                | { The report is <i>that he has fled</i> (Subj.)<br>{ We make ourselves <i>what we are</i> (Obj.)          |
| (9) Adverb clause :              | { The pen is <i>where it was</i> (Subj.)<br>{ We found him <i>where we had left him</i> (Obj.)            |

NOTE.—Sometimes the term 'Completion of the Verb' is used to denote the Object or the Complement or both together. But the term is unnecessary.

## HINTS ON THE STUDY OF ENGLISH.

### 11. Adjuncts of Subject and Object.—In the sentence—

Good men do kind actions

the Subject, or Nominative, *men* has the adjective *good* attached to it to add to its meaning; and similarly the Object *actions* has the adjective *kind* attached to it.

*Definition.*—Adjectives, and words, phrases, or clauses equivalent to adjectives, when attached to a Subject or an Object, are called its *Adjuncts*.

### 12. The following sentences show the different kinds of Adjuncts of the Subject:—

- (1) Adjective : *Rainy* weather is expected.
- (2) Noun (used as Adjective) : The *garden* paths are damp.
- (3) Participle : *Flying* clouds are seen.
- (4) Noun in Apposition : Ghose, *the bookseller*, has come.
- (5) Noun in Possessive case : *Horses'* ears are pointed.
- (6) Possessive pronoun : *His* books are here.
- (7) Demonstrative adjective : *Those* pens seem new.
- (8) Interrogative pronoun : *Whose* book is on the floor?
- (9) Preposition with object (used as Adjective) : A walk *in the evening* is pleasant.
- (10) Gerundial Infinitive : A house *to let* stands there.
- (11) Noun clause : The fact *that he came* is clear.
- (12) Adjective clause : Students *who work hard* succeed.

The Object may have the same kind of Adjuncts as the Subject.

### 13. Adjuncts of Verb.—In the sentence—

Tigers roar loudly

the verb *roar* has the adverb *loudly* attached to it to add to its meaning.

*Definition.*—Adverbs, and words, phrases, or clauses equivalent to adverbs, when attached to a Verb, are called its *Adjuncts*.

*NOTE.*—Sometimes the Adjunct belongs to the Complement of the Verb, as : 'He seems to walk lame,' where *lame* is Adjunct to the Complement to *walk*.

### 14. The following sentences show the different kinds of Adjuncts of the Verb:—

- (1) Adverb : *When* did he come?
- (2) Adjective (used as Adverb) : He died *happy*.
- (3) Noun (used as Adverb) : He died *a martyr*.
- (4) Participle (used as Adverb) : He departed *weeping*.
- (5) Preposition with object (used as Adverb) : We arrived *in time*.
- (6) Adverbial Objective : They walk *morning and evening*.
- (7) Absolute phrase : *The general being wounded*, the army was routed.
- (8) Gerundial Infinitive : I have come *to stay*.
- (9) Adverb clause : He went away *when all was over*.

## THE STRUCTURE OF SENTENCES.

**NOTE.**—Sometimes the term *Enlargement* of the Subject or of the Object is used to denote their Adjuncts, and the term *Extension* of the Verb is used to denote its Adjuncts; but, since both these terms mean the same thing, it is better to use the one word *Adjunct*.

### THE SIMPLE SENTENCE.

15. *Definition.*—A sentence containing only one Finite verb is called a **Simple** sentence:—

The man *carrying a stick taught the bear to dance by tapping its hind paws.*

Here, though there are four verbs, there is **only one Finite verb, taught**, and the sentence is therefore Simple.

### THE COMPLEX SENTENCE.

16. In the sentence—

He came when I called

we have two Finite verbs *came* and *called*. The sentence is not, therefore, a Simple sentence. It consists of two clauses, *he came* and *when I called*, of which the former is independent and is called the *Principal* clause, and the latter is dependent and is called a *Subordinate* clause.

*Definition.*—A sentence which, in addition to a Principal clause, contains one or more Subordinate clauses, is called a **Complex** sentence.

**NOTE.**—In such a sentence as ‘The mistake was that they were admitted’ the Subordinate clause ‘that they were admitted’ forms part of the Principal clause, which in this case is the whole sentence.

### THE COMPOUND SENTENCE.

17. If the two independent sentences—

He came. I went.

are joined together by the Co-ordinative Conjunction *and*, we get one sentence—

He came and I went.

and the two original sentences have now become clauses, each forming a part of a complete sentence. Both clauses remain independent, neither being subordinate to the other.

*Definition.*—A sentence composed of two or more independent clauses, joined together by Co-ordinative conjunctions, is called a **Compound** Sentence, and the clauses are called *Co-ordinate* clauses.

**18. Co-ordinate clauses in a Compound sentence may themselves be Complex :—**

I know what you want, and I will get it if I can.

Here the two Co-ordinate clauses contain the Subordinate clauses *what you want* (Noun clause) and *if I can* (Adverb clause).

**19. The different Co-ordinate clauses of a Compound sentence sometimes have parts in common. Such parts are often expressed in only one of the Co-ordinate clauses :—**

They came and (they) saw him (*same Subject*). Ram was in England and his father (was) in India (*same Verb*). Exercise gives health and (exercise gives) strength (*same Subject and Verb*). He was nominated (chairman) and (was) elected chairman (*same Complement and Verb*). John gave his brother (a box of toys), and Charles (gave) his sister a box of toys (*same Object and Verb*).

#### SUBORDINATE CLAUSES.

**20. There are three kinds of Subordinate clauses :—I. The Noun Clause ; II. The Adjective Clause ; III. The Adverb Clause.**

##### I. The Noun Clause.

**21. The Noun Clause is equivalent to a noun, and may therefore be—**

- (1) Subject to a verb : *That he said so* is certain.
- (2) Object to a verb : He asked *if he might go*.
- (3) Object to a preposition : There is no truth in *what he told you*.
- (4) Complement to a verb : The fact is *that I am tired out*.
- (5) In apposition to a noun : The thought *that he would come* cheered us.

NOTE.—Sentence (1) might be expressed ‘It is certain that he said so,’ where *it* is the provisional subject, introducing the real subject ‘that he said so.’ See 491, (α). This *it* may be left out in analysis. Sometimes *that* is omitted :—‘It is certain (that) he said so.’

##### II. The Adjective Clause.

**22. The Adjective Clause is equivalent to an adjective, and always stands as attribute to some noun or pronoun in the sentence :—**

The tale *that he told* is amusing.

This is the place *where the roses grow*.

His manners are not such (manners) *as I admire*.

There are some diseases *for which there is no remedy*.

**23. Observe the difference between the two sentences—**

(a) I gave the book to the boy who (=that) had lost it.

(b) I gave the book to the boy, who (=and he) put it in his pocket.

In (a) 'who had lost it' is a Subordinate Adjective clause, qualifying *boy*, and the sentence is *Complex*; in (b) 'i gave the book to the boy' and 'who put it in his pocket' are Co-ordinate clauses, and the sentence is *Compound* (190).

24. Observe again the difference between the two sentences—

- (a) I know the house where he lives.
- (b) I know where he lives.

In (a) 'where he lives' is an *Adjective* clause, qualifying *house*; in (b) 'where he lives' is a *Noun* clause, object of *know*. See 264.

### III. The Adverb Clause.

25. The Adverb Clause is equivalent to an adverb, and may modify—(1) a verb, (2) an adjective, (3) an adverb, in the sentence:—

- (1) He departed *when you arrived*.
- (2) This is true *unless I am mistaken*.
- (3) He worked *so diligently that he won the prize*.

26. The Adverb clause may express—

- (a) Cause: I like him *because he is kind*.
- (b) Manner: He behaved *as I expected*.
- (c) Effect or purpose: He went there *that he might see you*.
- (d) Condition: *If you did so*, you were wrong.
- (e) Degree: He is richer *than I am*.
- (f) Time: He started *before I did*.
- (g) Place: You must go *where you are sent*.

27. It should be observed that we cannot determine the character of a clause merely by noticing what word introduces it. Thus the word *when* may introduce a Noun clause, an Adjective clause, or an Adverb clause:—

- I know *when he came* (Noun clause, object of verb *know*).
- I know the hour *when he came* (Adject. clause, qualifying noun *hour*).
- I departed *when he came* (Adverb clause, modifying verb *departed*).

28. Observe the difference between the two sentences—

- (a) I admire a king who (=that) treats his subjects kindly.
- (b) I admire this king, who (=since he) treats his subjects so kindly.

In (a) 'who treats his subjects kindly' is an *Adjective* clause, qualifying *king*; in (b) 'who treats his subjects so kindly' is an *Adverb* clause, modifying *admire* (190).



## THE ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

**29. Definition.**—To analyse a sentence is to break it up into the parts of which it is composed, and to show the relation of these parts to one another.

**30. Rules.**—Thus, in analysing a sentence—

(1) Say whether the sentence is Simple, Complex, or Compound.  
 (2) Divide the sentence into two parts under the headings of Subject and Predicate.

(3) Under the heading of Subject set down the Nominative or its equivalent and its Adjunct.

(4) Under the heading of Predicate set down the Verb, its Object (adding whether it is Direct, Indirect, or Retained), and its Complement, together with the Adjuncts of the Verb (or the Complement) and of the Object.

(5) If the sentence is Complex, mark each Subordinate Clause (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), etc., and say what kind of Clause it is and its function; and analyse each Clause separately.

(6) If the sentence is Compound, separate the Co-ordinate Clauses from one another, marking them *A*, *B*, *C*, etc., and analyse each Clause as a separate sentence.

(7) Words that are understood or omitted must be supplied:—

(Rise you) Up, Guards, and (go you) at them!

The book (that) he wanted is here.

Either he (must go) or I must go.

He likes you better than (he likes) me.

Though (he is) poor, he is honest.

Whether (it is) fine or (it is) wet, I will come.

(8) Conjunctions, interjections, and nouns in the vocative case need not be entered in the analysis.

**NOTE.**—In analysing contracted Compound sentences there is occasionally some difficulty in supplying the part omitted. When the Co-ordinative conjunctions joining the clauses are *neither . . . nor*, they must be changed in the analysis to *not . . . not*. Thus the contracted Compound sentence 'This is neither too long nor too short' must be expanded in Analysis into the two sentences 'This is not too long'—'This is not too short,' which must be analysed separately. The sentence 'Whether we go or stay, it is all the same' is equivalent to 'It is all the same, whether we go'—'It is all the same, whether we stay.'

**31. Examples of Analysis of Simple Sentences.**

He must take strong medicine regularly.

The judge ordered the thief to be punished.

# THE ANALYSIS OF SENTENCES.

9

How did he lose the book?

Good children always give their parents little trouble.

Do not be idle all day.

He was granted help in his work.

Why do you make me laugh?

SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.				
NOMINATIVE OR EQUIVALENT.	ADJUNCTS OF NOMINATIVE.	VERB.	OBJECT.	COMPLEMENT OF VERB.	ADJUNCTS OF VERB OR COMPLEMENT.	ADJUNCTS OF OBJECT.
He		must	medicine	take	regularly	strong
judge	The	ordered	thief	to be punished		the
he		did	book	lose	How	the
children	Good	give	(1) trouble (2) parents ( <i>Direct</i> ) ( <i>Indirect</i> )		always	(1) little (2) their
(you)		Do		be idle	(1) not (2) all day	
He		was granted	help ( <i>Retained</i> )			in his work
you		do	me	make laugh	Why	

**32. Examples of Analysis of Complex Sentences.** [See p. 13.]

How it was done was the thing that puzzled all present.

The hope that I shall see my father makes me glad, whatever happens.

Since we are so few, very much depends upon who is chosen as our leader.

The friend I met yesterday has gone home.

**33. Examples of Analysis of mixed Compound and Complex Sentences.** [See p. 14.]

As the day dawned, the Spaniards saw the fatal error which they had committed in leaving this bulwark so feebly defended, and from two villages which stood close to the dike the troops now rushed in considerable force to recover what they had lost.'

The Governor pitied the young man's chagrin, seemed even to approve his enthusiasm, but reminded him that it was the business of an officer to fight, of a general to conquer.

**THE CONVERSION OF SENTENCES.**

**34.** We have seen that the difference between a Simple and a Complex sentence is that the former contains only one Finite verb, while the latter contains a Subordinate clause or clauses with Finite verbs of their own. In order to convert a Simple into a Complex sentence without materially altering the sense, it is necessary to turn some word or phrase in it into a Subordinate clause giving the same meaning as the word or phrase, while, in order to convert a Complex into a Simple sentence, the reverse process is necessary, and Subordinate clauses in the Complex sentence must be turned into words or phrases.

**35.** Many words or phrases can be turned into Subordinate clauses without involving any alteration in other parts of the sentence. Thus most adjectives can be readily replaced by Adjective clauses, without affecting the rest of the sentence. For instance, the Simple sentence, '*Diligent* students win prizes,' is converted at once into a Complex sentence by merely turning the adjective '*diligent*' into the Adjective clause, '*that are diligent*,' and we get the Complex sentence, '*Students that are diligent win prizes.*'

**36.** But in many sentences the substitution of a clause for word or phrase involves the alteration of the principal verb of

the sentence and sometimes necessitates the recasting of the whole sentence. The following sentences are examples of such alterations :—

*Simple* : Never tell an untruth.

*Complex* : Never say what is not true.

*Simple* : He was refused admittance.

*Complex* : He was told that he could not be admitted.

*Simple* : I will prevent his coming here.

*Complex* : I will see that he does not come here.

*Simple* : I took you for an Englishman.

*Complex* : I thought that you were an Englishman.

*Simple* : He seems to have been present.

*Complex* : It seems that he was present.

*Simple* : He soon forgot his loss.

*Complex* : He soon forgot the loss which he had sustained.

*Simple* : Diligence makes a man successful.

*Complex* : If a man is diligent, he will be successful.

*Simple* : It is too hot for us to go out.

*Complex* : It is so hot that we cannot go out.

*Simple* : He was kind enough to comply.

*Complex* : He was so kind that he complied.

*Simple* : Your savings should be in proportion to your earnings.

*Complex* : The more you earn, the more you should save.

37. Several separate Simple sentences may be combined into one Simple sentence without materially altering the sense, by retaining one of the original sentences unaltered and converting the others into words or phrases attached as Adjuncts to some part (Subject, Verb, or Object) of the sentence retained. The sentence retained should be the one which states the most important fact. Thus the separate Simple sentences—

I left the place. I took the boy with me. The reason of my going was the unhealthiness of the neighbourhood. I was glad to go. We left in the afternoon.

may be combined into one Simple sentence, thus :—

The neighbourhood being unhealthy, I gladly left the place in the afternoon, taking the boy with me.

38. Several separate Simple sentences may be combined into one Complex sentence, without materially altering the sense, by retaining one of the original sentences unaltered as a Principal clause and converting the others into Subordinate clauses attached

as Adjuncts to some part of the sentence retained. It is often sufficient if only one or two of the original sentences are turned into Subordinate clauses and the others into words or phrases. Thus the separate Simple sentences—

The Examinations will commence next week. They will be held in the Senate House. That is the most convenient place. They have always been held there. No other building would contain all the candidates. They number several hundreds. Each requires a desk to himself.

may be combined into a single Complex sentence thus:—

The Examinations will commence next week in the Senate House, the most convenient place, where they have always been held, no other building being able to contain all the candidates, who number several hundreds, each requiring a desk to himself.

SENTENCE OR CLAUSE.	KIND OF SENTENCE OR CLAUSE.	SUBJECT.		PREDICATE.				
		NOMINATIVE OR EQUIVALENT	ADJECTS OF NOMINATIVE.	VERB.	OBJECT.	COMPLEMENT OF VERB.	ADJECTS OF VERB OR COMPLEMENT	ADJECTS OF OBJECT.
How it was ... all present	Principal	How it was done (a)		was		the thing that puzzled all present (b)		
(a) How it was done	Noun clause	it		was done			How	
(b) that puzzled all present	Adj. clause to 'thing'.	that		puzzled	all			present
The hope ... happens	Principal	hope	(1) The (2) that I shall see my father (a)	makes	me	glad	whatever happens (b)	
(a) that I shall see my father	Noun clause	I		shall see	father			my
(b) whatever happens	Adverb clause	whatever		happens				
Since we ... leader	Principal	much	very	depends		upon ... leader (b)	since ... few (a)	
(a) Since we are so few	Adverb clause	we		are		so few		
(b) who is chosen ... leader	Noun clause, object to 'upon'.	who		is chosen		as our leader		
The friend ... gone home	Principal	friend	(1) The (2) (that) I met yester- day (a)	has gone		home		
(a) (that) I met yesterday	Adj. clause to 'friend'.	I		met	that		yesterday	

SUBJECT.				PREDICATE.				
SENTENCE OR CLAUSE.	KIND OF SENTENCE OR CLAUSE.	NOMINATIVE OR EQUIVALENT	ADJUNCTS OF NOM.	VERB.	OBJECT.	COMPLEMENT OF VERB.	ADJUNCTS OF VERB OR COMPLEMENT.	ADJUNCTS OF OBJECT.
A. As the day ... defended	Principal, co-ordinate with B	Spaniards	the	saw	error		As the day dawned (a)	(1) the (2) fatal (3) which the (4) had defended (b)
(a) As the day dawned	Adverb clause modifying 'saw'	day	the	dawned				
(b) which they had ... defended	Adj. clause to 'error'	they		had committed	which		in leaving ... defended	
B. and from two villages ... what they had lost	Principal, co-ordinate with A	troops	the	rushed			(1) front two villages dyke (2) how (3) in considerable force (4) to recover what they had lost (b)	
(a) which stood close to the dyke	Adj. clause to 'villages'	which		stood			close to the dyke	
(b) what they had lost	Noun clause, object of 'recover'	they		had lost	what			
A. The Governor pitied ... chagrin	Principal, co-ord. with B and C	Governor	the	pitied	chagrin			the young man's
B. (the Governor) seemed even ... enthusiasm	Principal, co-ord. with A and C	(Governor)	(the)	seemed	enthusiasm		even	his
C. but (the Governor) reminded him that ... conquer	Principal, co-ord. with A and B	(Governor)	(the)	reminded	(1) that it was (a) to conquer (b) Direct (2) him Indirect			
(a) that it was ... fight	Noun clause	to fight		was		the business of an officer		
(b) (that it was) ... conquer	Noun clause	to conquer		(was)		(the business) of a general		

## CHAPTER II.

### THE FORMATION AND SIGNIFICANCE OF WORDS.

#### THE FORMATION OF WORDS.

**39. Two Classes.**—As regards their formation, words are divided into two classes:—

(1) *Simple* (or *Primary*) words, which are words that cannot be reduced to simpler elements:—*boy, good, he, sing, now, in, and.*

(2) *Derivative* (or *Secondary*) words, which are words that can be reduced to simpler elements. They are of three kinds:—

(a) *Primary Derivatives*, formed from simple words by some internal change, as *strive* from *strife*, *raise* from *rise*.

(b) *Secondary Derivatives*, formed by the addition of prefixes and suffixes, as *un-kind*, *kind-ness*, *un-kind-ly*.

(c) *Compounds*, formed by joining two or more words together, as *lamp-oil*, *mid-ship-man*.

**40. Roots and Stems.**—The *Root* is the rudimentary form of a word, and the *Stem* is the changed form assumed by the root when a suffix is added to it. Thus in the word *loved* the root is *lov*, the stem is *love*, and *-d* is the suffix of the past tense.

**41. Prefixes and Suffixes** come from three sources:—

(1) *Latin*, either directly or through the French or some other Romanic language.

(2) *Greek*, either directly or through the French and the Latin.

(3) *Teutonic* or Old English.



## 42. LATIN PREFIXES.

Ab-	} <i>from</i>	ab-use	Equi-	<i>equally</i>	equi-valent
a-		a-vert	Ex-	} <i>out of, out</i>	ex-pel
abs-		abs-tain	ef-		ef-fect
Ad-	} <i>to, at</i>	ad-here	e-		e-normous
ac-		ac-cent	Extra-	<i>beyond</i>	extra-vagant
af-		af-fect	In-	} <i>in, into, on, against</i>	in-vade
ag-		ag-gravate	il-		il-lusion
al-		al-lego	im-		im-merse
am-		am-munition	ir-		ir-ruption
an-		an-nul	en-(F.)		en-title
ap-		ap-pose	em-(F.)		em-brace
ar-		ar-ro-gance	In-	} <i>not</i>	in-decent
as-		as-sent	il-		il-legal
at-		at-tempt	im-		im-mense
a-		a-spect	ir-		ir-rational
Ambi	} <i>around</i>	ambi-dextrous	i-		i-gnomy
amb		amb-ition	Inter-	} <i>between</i>	inter-course
am-		am-putate	intel-		intel-lect
Ante-	} <i>before</i>	ante-date	enter-(F.)		enter-prise
anti-		anti-cipate	Intra-	} <i>within</i>	intra-mural
ant-		ant-ique	Intr-		intr-insic
an-(F.)		an-cestor	Intro-	<i>into</i>	intro-duce
Bene-	<i>well</i>	bene-diction	Juxta-	<i>close by</i>	juxta-position
Bis (F.)	} <i>twice, two</i>	bis-cuit	Male-	} <i>ill</i>	male factor
bi-		bi-ped	mali-		mali-gnant
bin-		bin-ocular	mal-(F.)		mal-content
Circum-	} <i>around</i>	circum-stance	Mis-(F.)	<i>ill</i>	mis-chief
circu-		circu-it	Ne-	} <i>not</i>	ne farious
Con (F.)	} <i>with</i>	con-true	Neg-		neg-lect
col		col-lege	Non-		non-sense
com-		com-pact	Ob-	} <i>in front of, against</i>	ob-verse
cor-		cor-rode	oc-		oc-casion
co		co-heir	of-		of-fend
coun-		coun-cil	op-		op-pose
Contra-	} <i>against</i>	contra-dict	os-		os-tentation
contro-		contro-vert	o-		o-mit
counter-(F.)		counter-poise	Omni-	<i>all</i>	omni-scient
De-	} <i>down</i>	de-throne	Pen-	<i>almost</i>	pen-insula
di-		di-stil	Per-	} <i>through, tho-</i>	per-fect
Demi-	<i>half</i>	demi-god* <sup>1</sup>	pel-		pel-lucid
Dis	} <i>apart, away</i>	dis-cord	par-(F.)		par-don
dif-		dif-fer			
di-		di-voce			
des-(F.)		des-ert			
de-(F.)		de-fy			

<sup>1</sup> Throughout these tables words that are Hybrids (84) have an asterisk (\*) placed after them.

<b>Post-</b>	<i>after</i>	post-script	<b>Sub-</b>		sub-ject
<b>Pre-</b>	<i>before</i>	pre-caution	<b>suc-</b>		suc-ceed
<b>Preter-</b>	<i>past</i>	preter-natural	<b>suf-</b>	} <i>under, up, from under</i>	suf-fer
<b>Pro-</b>	} <i>for, forward</i>	pro-mise	<b>sug-</b>		sug-gest
<b>prod-</b>		prod-igal	<b>sup-</b>		sup-port
<b>por-</b>		por-tent	<b>sur-</b>		sur-reptitious
<b>pol-</b>		pol-lute	<b>sus-</b>		sus-pend
<b>pur-(F.)</b>		pur-pose	<b>su-</b>		su-spect
<b>Quadr-</b>	} <i>fourfold, four</i>	quadru-ped	<b>Subter-</b>	<i>beneath</i>	subter-fuge
<b>quadri-</b>		quadri-lateral	<b>Super-</b>	} <i>over</i>	super-ficial
<b>quadr-</b>		quadr-ennial	<b>sur-(F.)</b>		sur-pass
<b>Re-</b>	} <i>back, again</i>	re-fund	<b>Supra-</b>	<i>above</i>	supra-mun-dane
<b>red-</b>		red-eeem	<b>Trans-</b>	} <i>across</i>	trans-it
<b>Retro-</b>	} <i>back, wards</i>	retro-grade	<b>tran-</b>		tran-scend
<b>rear-(F.)</b>		rear-guard	<b>tra-</b>		tra-verse
<b>Se-</b>	} <i>apart</i>	se-cede	<b>tres-(F.)</b>		tres-pass
<b>sed-</b>		sed-ition	<b>Tri-</b>	} <i>three</i>	tri-angle
<b>Semi-</b>	<i>half</i>	semi-colon	<b>tre-</b>		tre-ble
<b>Sine-</b>	<i>without</i>	sine-cure	<b>Ultra-</b>	<i>beyond</i>	ultra-montane
			<b>Un-</b>	} <i>one</i>	un-animous
			<b>uni-</b>		uni-form
			<b>Vice-</b>	} <i>instead of</i>	vice-roy
			<b>vis-(F.)</b>		vis-count

NOTE 1.—In the above list prefixes marked (F.) come from the Latin through the French: thus **An-**: *anti-cipate* is derived direct from the Latin *anti-cipare*, but *an-cestor* is derived from the Latin through the French *an-cêtre*, thus: *ancêtre*, *ancessor*, *ant'cessor*, L. *antecessor*. **Pur-** (as in *pur-chase*, *pur-loin*, *pur-sue*) represents F. *pour*, formerly *por* by metathesis from L. *pro*. **Rear-** is the O.F. *rière*, Prov. *reire*, L. *retro*. **Sur-** is contracted, through *sup'r*, from L. *super*; and **tres-**, through *tras-*, from L. *trans*.

NOTE 2.—Mainly through this French influence, the Latin prefixes are disguised in the following words:—**Bi-**: *ba-lance*. **Con-**: *co-st*, *cou-ch*, *co-unt* (verb and title), *co-venant*, *co-ver*, *cur-ry* (verb), *cu-stom*. **Dis-**: *de-feat*, *de-luge*, *des-cant*, *des-patch* (also *dis-patch*), *s-pend*. **Enter-**: *entr-ails*. **Ex-**: *a-fraid*, *a-bash*, *a-mend* (but *e-mendation*), *a-ward*, *a-tonish*, *es-cape*, *es-cheat*, *es-say*, *is-sue*, *s-ample*, *s-carce*, *s-corch*, *s-courge*. **Extra-**: *stra-nge*. **In-** (in): *am-bush*, *an-oint*. **In-** (not): *en-emy*. **Non-**: *um-pire* (107, IV.), **Per-**: *par-amount*, *par-don*, *par-son*, *pit-grim*. **Post-**: *pu-ny*. **Pre-**: *pre-ach*, *pro-vost*. **Pro-**: *pr-udent*. **Re-**: *r-ally*, *r-ansom*, *ren-der*. **Se-**: *s-ober*. **Sub-**: *so-journ*, *s-ombre*, *sud-den*. **Super-**: *sop. ano*, *sover-eign* (104). **Trans-**: *tre-ason*. **Ultra-**: *outr-age* (104).

NOTE 3.—**In-** is intensive in *in-cisive*. The prefixes **In-** and **Un-** (52) are often alternative, the **un-** form being usually preferable. Thus we have *in-distinguishable* and *un-distinguishable*, *in-digested* and *un-digested*, *in-disciplined* and *un-disciplined*, *in-discriminating* and *un-discriminating*, *in-advisably* and *un-advisably*. We have the two forms, *in-ept* and *un-apt*, with different meanings. Observe that we say *in-discriminate* (adj.) but *un-discriminating*, *in-complete* but *un-completed*, *un-stable* but *in-stability*.

## 43. GREEK PREFIXES.

<b>A-</b>		a-pathy	<b>Hiero-</b>		hieroglyph
<b>an-</b>	{ without	an-archy	<b>hier-</b>	{ sacred	hier-archy
<b>am-</b>		am-brosial	<b>Holo-</b>	whole	holo-caust
<b>Amphi-</b>	{ on both sides	amphi-bious	<b>Homo-</b>	{ together, similar	homo-logous
<b>Ana-</b>	{ up, again	ana-tomy	<b>hom-</b>		hom-onym
<b>an-</b>		an-curist	<b>Hyper-</b>	{ over, beyond	hyper-bole
<b>Anti-</b>	{ against	anti-dote	<b>Hypo-</b>	{ under	hypo-thesis
<b>ant-</b>		ant-agonist	<b>hyph</b>		hyph-en
<b>Apo-</b>	{ from, away	apo-state	<b>hyp-</b>		hyp-allage
<b>aph-</b>		aph-orism	<b>Mega-</b>	great	mega-phone
<b>Arch-</b>	{ chief	arch-bishop	<b>Meta-</b>	{ after, change	meta-phor
<b>archi-</b>		archi-episcopal	<b>meth-</b>		meth-od
<b>arche-</b>		arche-type	<b>met-</b>		met-onomy
<b>Auto-</b>	{ self	auto-biography	<b>Miso-</b>	{ hate	miso-gynist
<b>auth-</b>		auth-entic	<b>mis-</b>		mis-anthropy
<b>Cata-</b>	{ down	cata-strophe	<b>Mono-</b>	{ alone	mono-tone
<b>cath-</b>		cath-olic	<b>mon-</b>		mon-arch
<b>cat-</b>		cat-egorical	<b>Octo-</b>	{ eight	octo-pod
<b>Deca-</b>	ten	deca-logue	<b>octa-</b>		octa-gon
<b>Di-</b>	double	di-phthong	<b>Ortho-</b>	right	ortho-graphy
<b>Dia-</b>	{ through	dia-meter	<b>Pan-</b>	{ all	pan-oply
<b>di-</b>		di-ocese	<b>panto-</b>		panto-mime
<b>Dys-</b>	ill	dys-entery	<b>Para-</b>	{ beside	para-site
<b>En-</b>	{ in, on	en-ergy	<b>par-</b>		par-ody
<b>em-</b>		em-phasis	<b>Penta-</b>	five	penta meter
<b>el-</b>		el-lipse	<b>Peri-</b>	round	peri-od
<b>Endo-</b>	within	endo-genous	<b>Philo-</b>	{ love	philo-sophy
<b>Epi-</b>	{ upon	epi-taph	<b>phil-</b>		phil-anthropy
<b>eph-</b>		eph-emeral	<b>Poly-</b>	many	poly-glot
<b>ep-</b>		ep-och	<b>Pro-</b>	before	pro-phet
<b>Eu-</b>	well	eu-phony	<b>Pros-</b>	towards	pros-elyte
<b>Ex-</b>	{ out of	ex-odus	<b>Proto-</b>	first	proto-martyr
<b>ec-</b>		ec-stasy	<b>Pseudo-</b>	{ false	pseudo-critic
<b>Exo-</b>	outside	exo-tic	<b>pseud-</b>		pseud-onym
<b>Hemi-</b>	half	hemi-sphere	<b>Syn-</b>	{ with	syn-onym
<b>Hepta-</b>	{ seven	hepta-gon	<b>syl-</b>		syl-lable
<b>hept-</b>		hept-archy	<b>sym-</b>		sym-pathy
<b>Hetero-</b>	different	hetero-doxy	<b>sy-</b>		sy-stem
<b>Hexa-</b>	six	hexa-meter	<b>Tri-</b>	three	tri-pod

## 44. Notes.

**Arch-** is mostly prefixed to words with a bad meaning :—*arch-hypocrit*, *arch-fiend*,\* *arch-traitor*,\* *arch-heretic*. In *arch-angel*, the word is taken directly from the Greek, and hence *arch* is pronounced *ark*. In other word it comes through the Latin.

**Bi-** : *Bi-ennial* properly means 'happening every two years,' 'two-yearly': then it has incorrectly come to mean 'happening twice a year,' 'half-yearly.' Similarly, *bi-weekly*, *bi-monthly*, in the sense of 'happening twice a week,' 'twice a month.'

**De-** has often the sense of 'astray,' as in *de-viate*, *de-lirious*, *de-bauch*. Compare *de-formed* and *un-formed*. *De-* is intensive<sup>1</sup> in *de-fault*.

**Dis-** implies an *emphatic* reversal of the action or state:—*dis-join*, *dis-temper* (a wrong tempering). Hence *dis-proved* is more than *un-proved*, *dis-armed* than *un-armed*.<sup>\*</sup> Compare *dis-belief*<sup>\*</sup> and *un-belief*, *dis-burdened*<sup>\*</sup> and *un-burdened*, *dis-courteous*, and *un-courteous*,<sup>\*</sup> *dis-embodied*<sup>\*</sup> and *un-embodied*, *dis-abled* and *un-able*, *dis-cover* and *un-cover*.<sup>\*</sup> It is intensive in *dis-annul*, *dis-sever*.

**Ex-** is frequently used to express 'out of office':—*ex-king*, *ex-secretary*, *ex-official*.

**In-** (in) and **F. en-** are found in the same words:—*in-quire*, *en-quire*; *in-close*, *en-close* [531, (a)]. *In-* is intensive in *in-ebriate*, *in-durate*, *im-passioned*. *En-*, *em-* often convert an adjective or a noun into a transitive verb:—*en-dear*,<sup>\*</sup> *en-slave*,<sup>\*</sup> *em-bitter*,<sup>\*</sup> *en-thral*.<sup>\*</sup>

**In-** (not) is sometimes found side by side with *un-* (not; 52):—*in-apt*, *un-apt*; <sup>\*</sup> *in-frequent*, *un-frequent*; <sup>\*</sup> *in-extinguishable*, *un-extinguishable*; <sup>\*</sup> *im-measurable*, *un-measurable*.<sup>\*</sup> *In-valuable*, 'that cannot be valued, priceless,' is stronger than *valuable*. We have *un-just*, *un-equal*, *un-grateful*, but *in-justice*, *in-equality*, *in-gratitude*; *un-decided*, but *in-decisive*.

**Non-** is a less forcible negative than *in-* or *un-*. Compare *non-effective* and *in-effective*, *non-professional* and *un-professional*,<sup>\*</sup> *non-Christian* and *un-Christian*.<sup>\*</sup>

**Per-**, like *for-* (52), often passes on from the notion of thoroughness to that of vicious excess, as in—*per-vert*, to turn in a *wrong* direction; *per-jure*, to swear *falsely* (cf. *for-swear*, 52); *per-jury*, the *going away* from one's faith; *per-ish*, to go to the *bad*.

**Sub-** expresses subordination:—*sub-committee*, *sub-editor*, *sub-let*; and diminution:—*sub-acid*, *sub-tropical*.

## LATIN AND GREEK SUFFIXES.<sup>2</sup>

### I. NOUN SUFFIXES.

#### 45. Suffixes denoting Persons.

-ate, -ee, -ey, -y (Latin past part. suffix *atus*, French *-ée*):—*cur-ate*, *leg-ate*, *advoc-ate*; *exam-in-ee*, *nomin-ee*, *pay-ee*, *patent-ee*, *absent-ee*<sup>3</sup>; *attorn-ey*, *deput-y*, *jur-y*.

<sup>1</sup> That is, it adds force or emphasis. Thus *de-merit* (=absence of merit) once meant *great* merit.

<sup>2</sup> These suffixes are classed together, because the few Greek suffixes in use have mostly passed into English through the Latin.

<sup>3</sup> This suffix is very much alive: the *N.E.D.* recognises *biographe*; the *Times* has *escapee* and *ppointee*.

**-ar, -er, -eer, -ier, -or, -ary** (L. *-arius*, F. *-ier, -er*) :—*vic-ar, arch-er, falcon-er, mountain-er, financ-ier, counsell-or, secret-ary*.

NOTE.—The suffix is depreciative in *pamphlet-er, profit-er*.

**-ain, -an, -en, -on** (L. *-anus*, F. *-ain, -en*) :—*chieft-ain* and *capt-ain, vill-ain, pag-an, librari-an, de-an, artis-an, ward-en* (= *guard-ian*), *citiz-en, sext-on* (= *sacrist-an*), *surge-on*.

**-ist, -ast** (Greek *-istes, -astes*) :—*soph-ist, evangel-ist, dent-ist,\* novel-ist,\* flor-ist,\* botan-ist, excursion-ist,\* tobacco-n-ist,<sup>1</sup> ego-t-ist,<sup>1</sup> enthusi-ast, iconocl-ast*.

NOTE.—Party or tribal names are expressed by this suffix :—*Calvin-ist, Jansen-ist, Compt-ist*; also by *-ite, -it*, and *-an, -ian* :—*Jacob-ite, Israel-ite, Jesu-it, Luther-an, Elton-ian*. The suffix is depreciative in *pap-ist, Roman-ist, religion-ist, opportun-ist*.<sup>2</sup>

**-or, -our, -eur, -er** (L. *-orem*, F. *-eur*) :—*doct-or, auth-or, success-or, emper-or, savi-our, amat-eur, interpret-er*.

#### 46. Suffixes forming Abstract Nouns.

**-age** (L. *-aticum*, F. *-age*), denoting—(1) a collection or quantity :—*assembl-age, bagg-age, plum-age, mile-age, foli-age, herb-age*; (2) a condition, place, occupation, or act :—*bond-age,\* person-age, vassal-age, parson-age, hermit-age, cott-age,\* pilot-age,\* till-age,\* outr-age* (98), *carn-age*; (3) cost or price of an action :—*broker-age,\* port-age, cart-age,\* porter-age, wharf-age*; \* (4) the result of an action (added to verbs) :—*break-age,\* leak-age,\* pill-age* \* (pill or peel), *coin-age*.

**-ance, -ence** (L. *-antia, -entia*; F. *-ance, -ence*) :—*abund-ance, allegi-ance, brilli-ance, prevail-ence, prud-ence, excell-ence, innoc-ence, ch-ance* (= *cad-ence*), *obedi-ance* (= *obedi-ence*).

NOTE 1.—Later forms of these suffixes are *-anc-y, -enc-y* :—*brilli-anc-y, prevail-enc-y, innoc-enc-y, host-anc-y, const-anc-y, dec-enc-y*. The form *excell-enc-y* is now used as a title. Note the difference in meaning between *emergence* and *emergency*.

**-ate** (L. *-atus*), denoting office, function :—*consul-ate, piscop-ate, elector-ate*.

**-cy, -sy** (L. *-tia* = *sia*) :—*aristocra-cy, fan-cy* and *phanta-sy, intima-cy, bankrupt-cy, luna-cy*.

**-ion, -on, -om** (L. *-ionem*, F. *-on*) :—*opin-ion, act-ion, tens-ion, lect-ion* and *less-on, expirat-ion* (and *expir-y*), *orat-ion* and *oris-on, rat-ion* and *reas-on, tradit-ion* and *treas-on, redempt-ion* and

<sup>1</sup> The *n* and the *t* are inserted to avoid the hiatus. It is the same with *belli-c-ose* and *with-r-ism*.\* Cf. *hum-b-ile, talk-at-ive,\* starr-at-ion,\* French-i-fy, mob-o-cracy,\* speed-o-meter,\* gas-o-meter*.

<sup>2</sup> Other depreciative suffixes are :—*-eer* (45), *-ism* (46), *-ard* (53), *-ster* (53), *-aster* (53), *-lins* (55), *-ish* (56).

*rans-om, starv(at)-ion* \* (100). It forms also concrete nouns :—*pot-ion* and *pois-on, nat-ion, leg-ion, reg-ion*.

*-ice, -ise, -ess* (L. *-itia, -itium, F. -esse*) :—*avar-ice, serv-ice, coward-ice, exerc-ise, prow-ess, larg-ess*.

*-ism, -asm* (Gk *-ismos, -asmos*), denoting—(1) mode of feeling or belief :—*patriot-ism, fatal-ism,\* social-ism,\* commun-ism,\* de-ism,\* Tory-ism,\* ego(t)-ism* and *ego-ism, enthusi-asm* ; (2) trick or fashion of speech or action :—*provincial-ism,\* vulgar-ism,\* solac-ism, Latin-ism,\* American-ism,\* Scotti(c)-ism, manner-ism,\* soph-ism, witti(c)-ism, sarc-asm, pleon-asm*.

NOTE 2.—*Barbar-ism* belongs to both lists. The suffix is depreciative in *tru-ism*.\*

*-ment* (L. *-mentum*), joined to verbs or verbal stems :—*enchant-ment, punish-ment, bereave-ment,\* atone-ment,\** It forms also concrete nouns :—*gar-ment, frag-ment, orna-ment*.

*-mony* (L. *-monium, -monia*) :—*matri-mony, acri-mony*.

*-tude* (L. *-tudinem*) :—*forti-tude, longi-tude, magni-tude*.

*-ty* (L. *-tatem, F. -té*) :—*cruel-ty, vani-ty, feal-ty* and *fideli-ty, pi-ty* and *pie-ty, proper-ty* and *proprie-ty, frail-ty, admiral-ty, commonal-ty, personal-ty*. It forms also concrete nouns :—*ci-ty, dei-ty, gratui-ty, universi-ty*.

*-ure* (L. *-ura*) :—*cult-ure, cens-ure, stat-ure, verd-ure*. It forms also concrete nouns :—*creat-ure, apert-ure, furnit-ure*,

*-y* (L. *-ia*) :—*miser-y, memor-y, env-y, glutton-y, beggar-y*.\*

#### 47. Suffixes denoting the Place or Instrument of an action.

*-ary, -ery, -ory, -ry* (L. *-aria, -arium, -orium*) :—*dispens-ary, sal-ary, nunn-ery, dormit-ory, refect-ory, access-ory, vest-ry, pant-ry, dower-ry*.

NOTE.—*-ery, -ry* also form abstract nouns :—*slav-ery,\* witch-ery,\* cook-ery,\* housewif-ery,\* herald-ry, chival-ry*. They also denote a collection of :—*machin-ery,\* tenant-ry, peasant-ry, caval-ry, camel-ry*. *Station-ary* (standing still) is an adjective ; *station-ery* (writing materials) is a noun.

<sup>1</sup> *-ter, -tre, -cre* (L. *-trum, -crum*) :—*clois-ter, thea-tre, spec-tre, seep-tre, lu-cre, sepul-chre* (M.E. *sepul-cre*).

#### 48. Suffixes forming Diminutives.

*-cule, -ule, -cle, -cel, -sel, -el, -le, -il, -l* (L. *-culus, -ulus, F. -cle*) :—*animal-cule, glob-ule, parti-cle, pinna-cle, corpus-cle, par-cel, dam-sel, chap-el, lib-el, circ-le* (cf. *circ-ul-ar*), *chronic-le, cast-le, codic-il, ves-l*

**-et, -ot, -i-et** (double suffix) :—*owl-et, rivul-et, frontl-et, bill-et, turr-et, pock-et, lanc-et, trump-et, isl-et, bracer-et, ankl-et, chari-et* (car). *parr-et* (F. *Pierre*, Peter), *ball-et, arm-et, chap-et, ring-et* *stream-et*,\* *ham-et* \* (home), *cut-et*.

#### 49. Other Suffixes.

**-al, -el, -le** (L. *-alis*) :—*can-al* and *chann-el, catt-le* and *chatt-el, fu-el, jew-el, tri-al, propos-al*.

NOTE.—The suffixes in *batt-le, marv-el, rusc-al, entr-ails, nupti-als, spous-als, victu-als*, represent the Latin plural form *-alia*.

**-ade** (L. *-ata*, F. *-ade*) :—*casc-ade, brig-ade, block-ade, barric-ade, char-ade, escap-ade*.

**-el, -le** (L. *-ela*) :—*quarr-el, sequ-el, cand-le*.

**-on** (L. *-onem*) :—*apr-on, bac-on, fel-on, glut-on, simple(t)-on, champi-on, compani-on, scorpi-on, pige-on, trunche-on*.

**-oon, -one, -on** (F. *-on*, It. *-one*), forming augmentatives :—*ball-oon, harp-oon, sal-oon, tromb-one* (trump), *milli-on, medalli-on, flag-on* (flask), *galle-on*.

**-or, -our, -eur** (L. *-orem*, F. *-our, -eur*) :—*err-or, langu-or, liqu-or, hon-our, lab-our, rum-our, grand-eur, douc-eur, liqu-eur*.

**-phil, -phile** (Gk *-philos*, loving) :—*biblio-phil(e), Russo-phil(e)*.

**-ule, -le, -el, -il** (L. *-ulus, -ula, -ulum*, F. *-le*) :—*vestib-ule, ridic-ule, fab-le, stab-le, tab-le, peop-le, artic-le, mirac-le, obstac-le, appar-el, per-il*.

**-y** (L. *-ium*) :—*stud-y, remed-y, augur-y, obsequ-y*. The suffix is L. *-ies* in *progen-y*, and L. *-aeus* in *pygm-y*.

6

#### 50. II. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES.

**-al** (L. *-alis*, 50) :—*leg-al* and *loy-al, reg-al* and *roy-al, gener-al, celesti-al, nation-al, whimsi(e)-al* (whimsy). Nouns :—*anim-al, miner-al, journ-al, capit-al, funer-al, arriv-al, deni-al, propos-al, refus-al, tid-al*.\* *Brid-al* = bride + *ale*, wedding feast.

**-an, -ane, -ain, -en** (L. *-anus*, 45) :—*hum-an* and *hum-ane, mund-ane, cert-ain, me-an* and *mizz-en, Mahomet-an, Elizabeth-an*.

**-ar** (L. *-aris*) :—*famili-ar, regul-ar, singul-ar*.

**-ary, -arius** (L. *-arius*, 45) :—*contr-ary, necess-ary, arbitr-ary, honor-ary, greg-arious, nef-arious*. Nouns :—*secret-ary, dignit-ary, incendi-ary* (and adj.).

**-ant, -ent** (L. *-antem, -entem*) :—*err-ant, petul-ant, obedi-ent, innoc-ent*. Nouns :—*gi-ant, ten-ant, merch-ant, ag-ent, stud-ent, coven-ant, sext-ant*.

-ate (46), -ete, -ite, -ute, -t, -se (L. p.p. endings, -atus, -etus, -itus, -utus, -sus):—*priv-ate*, *temper-ate*, *compl-ete*, *exquis-ite*, *infin-ite*, *min-ute*, *absol-ute*, *abrup-t*, *extinc-t*, *dixer-se*.

-bile, -ble, -i-ble, -a-ble (L. -bilis), joined to verbs and verbal roots—(1) with a passive meaning:—*mo-bile* and *mov-able*, *audi-ble*, *ed-ible* and *eat-able*,\* *solu-ble* and *solv-able*, *accept-able*, *teach-able*,\* *reli-able*, *laugh-able*,\* *fee-ble*; (2) with an active meaning:—*terr-ible*, *agree-able*, *account-able*. Also added to nouns:—*peace-able*, *market-able*, *sale-able*,\* *objection-able*, *comfort-able*.

-esque (L. -iscus, Gk -iskos, It. -esco), 'like to':—*pictur-esque*, *grot-esque*, *statu-esque*.

-ic, -ique (L. -icus, Gk -ikos):—*aquat-ic*, *rust-ic*, *domest-ic*, *publ-ic*, *civ-ic*, *ant-ic* and *ant-ique*, *un-ique*, *Ital-ic*, *Ind-ic*. Nouns:—*amat-ic*, *heret-ic*, *clerk* (=clerk-ic), *log-ic*, *mus-ic*, *phys-ic* and *phys-ique*. Often combined with -al in alternative forms, generally with a difference of meaning:—*polit-ic* and *polit-ic-al*,\* *mag-ic* and *mag-ic-al*,\* *com-ic* and *com-ic-al*,\* *electr-ic* and *electr-ic-al*,\* *trag-ic* and *trag-ic-al*,\* *econom-ic* and *econom-ic-al*.\*

-id (L. -idus), 'having the nature of':—*pall-id*, *rig-id*, *viv-id*.

-ile, -il, -eel, -le, -el (L. -ilis, -elis):—*frag-ile* and *fra-il*; *gent-ile*, *gent-eel*, and *gent-le*; *subt-ile* and *subt-le*; *civ-il*, *ab-le*, *hum(b)-le*, *cru-el*.

-ine, -in (L. -inus):—*div-ine*, *femin-ine*, *fel-ine*, *aquil-ine*, *Alp-ine*, *Lat-in*.

-ive (L. -ivus), 'inclined to, apt for':—*act-ive*, *attent-ive*, *rest-ive*, *plaint-ive*, *conclus-ive*, *nat-ive* and *na-ive*, *talk(at)-ive*.\* Nouns:—*mot-ive*, *prerogat-ive*.

-lent (L. -lentus), 'full of':—*corpu-lent*, *somno-lent*.

-ory (L. -orius):—*amat-ory*, *migrat-ory*, *illus-ory*.

-ose, -ous (L. -osus), 'full of':—*verb-ose*, *belli(c) ose*, *joc-ose*, *grandi-ose*, *glori-ous*, *peril-ous*, *danger-ous*, *murder-ous*, *bounte-ous*.\*

NOTE.—The suffix -ous represents the Latin -us in—*anxi-ous*, *assidu-ous*, *continu-ous*, *ingenu-ous*, *superflu-ous*, *omnivor-ous*, *ardu-ous*, *cgregi-ous*, *veraci-ous*, *feroci-ous*, etc. *Right-eous* is a corruption of O.E. *right-wis* *right-wis*.

### 51. III. VERB SUFFIXES.

-ate, -ite, -t, -se (L. p.p. endings -atus, -itus, -sus):—*vener-ate*, *substanti-ate*, *assassin-ate*,\* *accent(u)-ate*, *isol-ate* and *insul-ate*, *exped-ite*, *construc-t*, *incen-se*.

NOTE.—Many English verbs are formed from Latin infinitives:—*defend* (L. *defend-ere*), *incline* (L. *inclin-are*), *manumit* (L. *manumitt-ere*). Hence double derivatives are often found:—*deduce* and *deduct*, *conduce* and *conduct*, *construe* and *construct*, *revert* and *reverse*, formed from the infinitive and the past participle respectively.



**-esce** (L. *-esco*), frequentative :—*coal-esce*, *efferv-esce*.

**-fy** (L. *-ficare*, F. *-fier*), forming causative verbs :—*edi-fy*, *dev-fy*, *molli-fy*, *forti-fy*, *French(i)-fy*.

**-ise, -ize** (Gk *-izo*, F. *-iser*)—(1) converts an adjective into a transitive verb :—*equal-ise*, \**civil-ise*, \**util-ise*, \**fertil-ise*, \**Christian-ise*; (2) converts a noun into a transitive verb :—*patron-ise*, \**subsid-ise*, \**monopol-ise*, *tantal-ise*; (3) converts a noun into an intransitive verb :—*sermon-ise*, \**sympath-ise*, *philosoph-ise*.

NOTE.—Since (1) the large majority of verbs with this suffix come to us through the French, and (2) a certain class of verbs (as *surprise*, *exercise*, *advertise*) cannot take the *-ize* suffix, it is better for the sake of convenience to adopt the form *-ise*, rather than *-ize*, as their suffix (a usage supported by Skeat, Sayce, and Earle).

**-ish** (F. *-iss*) :—*ban-ish*, *establ-ish*, *flour-ish*, *fin-ish*.

## 52. TEUTONIC PREFIXES.

**A-** (1) stands for *on*, often with the sense of 'in' or 'with' :—*a-sleep*, *a-bed*, *a-foot*, *a-field*, *a-loft*, *a-shore*, *a-breast*, *a-head*, *a-main*, *a-slant*, *a-blaze*, *a-flame*, *a-broach*, *a-gape*, *a-gog* (in eagerness), *a-stir*, *a-drift*, *a-float*, *a-squint*, *a-wry*, *a-skew*, *a-skance* (on the slope), *a-kimbo*, *a-jar*, *a-back*, *a-side*, *a-broad*, *a-sunder*, *a-miss* (in error), *a-loof*, *a-loud*, *a-right*, *a-piece*, *a-live*, *a-like*, *a-way*, *a-board*, *a-bout* (421), *a-bove* (423), *a-cross* (424), *a-gain*, *a-against* (426), *a-mong* (428), *a-mid*, *a-round* (429), *a-thwart*, *a-stray*, *a-stride*.

(2) has the sense of 'from, up, away' :—*a-rise*, *a-rouse*, *a-wake*, *a-go*. Intensive in—*a-bide* (to wait for), *a-maze*, *a-ghast*, *a(f)-fright*, *a(c)-cursed* (106).

(3) stands for *off*, with the sense of 'off, from' :—*a-down* (off the down or hill), *a-kin*. Intensive in—*a-shamed*, *a-wea:y*, *a-thirst*, *a-near*, *a-far*, *a-new*, *a-fresh*.

**Be-** (*by*) (1) is used as a preposition :—*be-fore* (432), *be-hind* (433), *be-low* (434), *be-neath* (435), *be-side* (436), *be-half*, *be-times*, *be-cause*, \**be-tween* (437), *be-yond* (438). Adverbial in—*be-siege*, \**be-set*.

(2) makes intransitive verbs transitive :—*be-speak*, *be-fall*, *be-think*, *be-stride*, *be-labour*, \**be-lie*, *be-moan*.

(3) converts a noun or an adjective into a transitive verb :—*be-friend*, *be-cloud*, *be-dew*, *be-night(ed)*, *be-wilder*, *be-calm*, \**be-numb*, *be-dim*, *be-grime* (to make grim).

(4) strengthens the meaning of transitive verbs :—*be-take*, *be-stow*, *be-dazzle*, *be-daub*, *be-sprinkle*, *be-deck*, *be-reave*, *be-queath*, *be-stir*, *be-have*, *be-hove*, *be-gin*, *be-tide*, *be-seech* (seek).

NOTE.—It has a privative meaning in *be-head* (cf. *de-capitate*).

**For-** (1) intensive :—*for-bear, for-give, for-sake, for-go,*<sup>1</sup> *for-fend,\* for-swear* (cf. *per-jure*), *for-gather,*<sup>1</sup> *fr-el* (*for-eat*), *for-lorn* (utterly lost), *for-spent.*<sup>1</sup> (2) strongly negative :—*for-bid, for-get.*

**Gain-** (*against*) :—*gain-say* (cf. *contra-dict*).

**Mis-**, defect, error :—*mis-lead, mis-give, mis-call, mis-deed, mis-hap, mis-direct,\* mis-conduct,\* mis-trust* (and *dis-trust* \*).<sup>2</sup>

**Over-**, above, too much :—*over-hang, over-hear, over-fed, over-furnished, over-joyed.*

**Un-** (*and-*), 'against, back' :—*un-do, un-wind, un-lock, un-bind, un-bosom, un-earth, un-horse, un-man.* Intensive in *un-loose.*

**Un-** (*un-*), 'not' :—*un-true, un-ready, un-gracious,\* un-feigned,\* un-told,*<sup>3</sup> *un-rest, un-wisdom.* The form without the prefix is obsolete or non-existent in *un-couth, un-gainly, un-ruly.*

**Under-**, beneath, too little :—*under-go, under-fed, under-done.*

**With-**, 'against, back' (cf. 'to fight with') :—*with-stand, with-draw, with-hold.*

## TEUTONIC SUFFIXES.

### I. NOUN SUFFIXES.

#### 53. Suffixes denoting the Agent or the Instrument of an action.

**-ard** (*hard*), intensive, and hence often depreciative :—*drunk-ard, dull-ard, lagg-ard, slugg-ard, nigg-ard, dot-ard, dast-ard* (from *dazed*), *bast-ard, cow-ard, wiz-ard, poni-ard, stand-ard.*

**-er, -ar, -or, -ier, -yer** :—*speak-er, steam-er, shutt-er, biograph-er,\* London-er, begg-ar, li-ar, sail-or,*<sup>4</sup> *glaz-ier, coll-ier* (from *coal*), *court-ier,\* hos-ier, law-yer, saw-yer, upholst-cr-er* (upholder), *fruit-er-er* (fruiter), *poult-er-er* (poulter),<sup>5</sup> *cat-er-er, sorc-er-er* have reduplicated suffixes. *Disclaim-er, remind-er, merg-er, waiv-er* denote the act of disclaiming, etc.

<sup>1</sup> Wrongly spelt *forego, forefend, foregather, forespent*, from confusion with the prefix *fore-*, found in *fore-going, fore-gone*, as in 'a foregone conclusion,' a conclusion that goes or is arrived at before examination of the evidence.

<sup>2</sup> The three *mis-* prefixes must be carefully distinguished :—(1) *mis-* or *mes-*, *Latin minus*, less ; (2) *mis*, Greek *mis-ein*, to hate ; (3) *mis-*, Teutonic *mis-*, amiss.

<sup>3</sup> Passive Participles with prefix *un-* are often ambiguous : thus *un-bound* may mean either 'not bound' (adj., with prefix *un-*), or 'released' (p.p. of *un-bind*, with prefix *and-*) ; *un-said* may mean either 'not said' or 'retracted.' *Un-bending* may mean either 'relaxing' or 'inflexible' ; *un-deceived* may mean either 'freed from deception' or 'not deceived' ; *un-learned* may mean either 'forgotten' (of previous knowledge), or 'not learnt.'

<sup>4</sup> The form *sail-er* is applied to a ship, as 'She is a good sailer.'

<sup>5</sup> Preserved in 'The Poulterers' Company.'

**-el, -le** :—*show-el, runn-el, cripp-le* (from *creep*), *bund-le* (from *bind*), *gird-le, brid-le* (from *braid*), *sti-le, steep-le, sett-le* (from *seat*), *thimb-le* (from *thumb*), *shutt-le* (from *shoot*).

**-ster** :—*spin-ster, huck-ster* (old masc., *hawk-er*), *song-ster, malt-ster, young-ster, team-ster, tap-ster, trick-ster*.

NOTE.—Depreciative in *rhyme-ster* (cf. *rhym-er*), *game-ster, pun-ster*. Compare the Romance suffix *-aster*, as in *poet-aster, critic-aster*.

**stock** (O.E. *stok*, trunk, post) :—*laughing-stock, gazing-stock*.

**-ter, -ther, -der** :—*daugh-ter, fa-ther, mo-ther, fea-ther, wea-ther, spi-der* (spin-der), *ru(d)-der* (from *row*).

**-nd**, old pres. part. ending :—*fie-nd, frie-nd, husba-nd, erra-nd, wi-nd*.

**-monger**, 'dealer,' lit. *mingler* :—*fish-monger, iron-monger, coster-monger, crotch-monger, grievance-monger*.

**-wright**, 'maker, workman' :—*wheel-wright, play-wright*.

#### 54. Suffixes denoting State or Condition.

**-dom** (doom) :—*freedom, wisdom, martyr-dom, king-dom, thral-dom, Christen-dom* \* (Christian-dom), *heathen-dom*.

**-hood, -head** :—*man-hood, neighbour-hood, priest-hood, \* god-head*

**-ing**, forming verbal nouns :—*bless-ing, read-ing*.

**-lock, -ledge** :—*wed-lock, know-ledge*.

**-ness** :—*dark-ness, good-ness, useful-ness, \* wit-ness, nothing-ness*.

**-red** :—*hat-red, kind-red*.

**-ship, -scape** (shape) :—*friend-ship, hard-ship, lord-ship, wor-ship* (worth-ship), *land-scape* (formerly *land-skip*).

**-th, -t** :—*dear-th* (dear), *wid-th* (wide), *heal-th* (hale), *slo-th* (slow), *dea-th* (die), *bir-th* (bear), *ru-th* (rue), *you-th* (young), *drough-t* (dry), *heigh-t* (high) and *high-th, drif-t* (drive), *draugh-t* (drag), *gif-t* (give), *migh-t* (may).

#### 55. Suffixes forming Diminutives.

**-el, -le** :—*satch-el* (sack), *kern-el* (corn), *nav-el* (nave), *padd-le* (102), *thrott-le* (throat), *spark-le, speck-le*.

**-er-el, -r-el** (double suffixes) :—*cock-erel, pick-erel* \* (pike), *mong-ret* \* (ming-le).

**-en** :—*chick-en* (cock), *kitt-en* (cat).

**-kin** :—*lamb-kin, pip-kin* (pipe), *nap-kin*.

**-ing** (double suffix), **-ing** :—*duck-ling*, *dar-ling* (dear), *gos-ling* (goose), *bant-ling* (band), *strip-ling*, *starve-ling*, *fat-ling*, *weak-ling*, *first-ling*, *lord-ling*, *cage-ling*,\* *nurse-ling*, *suckl-ing* (a little sucker), *seed-ling*, *sap-ling*, *star-ling*, *farth-ing* (fourth). Depreciative in *wit-ling*, *hire-ling*, *world-ling*, *ground-ling*, *under-ling*.

**-ock** :—*hill-ock*, *bull-ock*, *hum-ock* (hump).

NOTE.—Softened into *-ie*, *-y* :—*bird-ie*, *lass-ie*, *bab-y*, *dadd-y*.

## 56. II. ADJECTIVE SUFFIXES.

**-ed** (p.p. suffix) :—*ragg-ed*, *wretch-ed*, *feather-ed*, *left-hand-ed*, *seat-ed*, *money-ed*, *beard-ed*, *leisur-ed*, *widow-ed*, *talent-ed*.

NOTE.—Adjectives in *-ed* must not be confused with participles in *-ed*. Thus in 'a *landed* (=possessing land) proprietor,' 'landed' is an adjective; in 'a *landed* (=disembarked) passenger,' *landed* is a participle. Similarly, in 'I am *delighted* (=glad) to see you,' *delighted* is a participial adjective; in 'His ear was *delighted* (=gladdened) with sweet music,' *delighted* is a passive participle. *Forecasted* comes from the mistaken notion that 'to forecast' is derived from the noun 'forecast'; write *forecast*. *Broadcasted* is a similar wrong formation.

**-en, -n**, 'belonging to,' 'made of' :—*heath-en*, *wood-en*, *earth-en*, *silver-n*. Also a participle suffix :—*bound-en*, *molt-en*, *sec-n*.

**-fast**, 'firm' :—*stead-fast*, *shame-fast* (104).

**-ful**, 'full of' :—*hope-ful*, *wil-ful*, *aw-ful*, *frct-ful*, *dire-ful*.

**-ish, -sh**, (1) 'with the quality of' :—*fool-ish*, *wasp-ish*, *swin-ish*, *slav-ish*,\*<sup>1</sup> *peev-ish*, *snapp-ish*, *thiev-ish*. (2) marks nationalities :—*Engl-ish*, *Wel-sh*. (3) 'somewhat' :—*redd-ish*, *sweet-ish*.<sup>2</sup> (4) depreciative :—*book-ish*, *outland-ish*, *mann-ish* (cf. manly), *woman-ish* (cf. womanly), *child-ish*<sup>1</sup> (cf. child-like), *baby-ish*,<sup>1</sup> *monk-ish* (cf. monastic), *Rom-ish*\* (cf. Roman), *up(p)-ish*.

**-less** (loose), 'free from, without' :—*fear-less*, *sense-less*,\* *resist-less*,\* *cease-less*,\* *daunt-less*.\*

**-ly** (*like*) :—*man-ly*, *slattern-ly*, *ghost-ly*; *good-ly*, *sick-ly*, *kind-ly*, *clean-ly*, *weak-ly*.

**-some** (*same*), 'with the quality of' :—*win-some*, *noi-some*\* (annoy-some), *meddle-some*, *tire-some*, *glad-some*, *ful-some*, *whole-some*, *lis-som* (lithe-some), *buxom* (bow-some).

**-ward**, 'inclining to' :—*west-ward*, *home-ward*, *for-ward* (fore), *way-ward* (away), *fro-ward* (from), *awk-ward*.

**-y**, 'with the quality of' :—*greed-y*, *clay(e)-y*, *health-y*, *blood-y*, *mood-y*, *gor-y*, *drear-y*, *sorr-y* (sore), *stick-y*, *sundr-y*, *wear-y*.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 'serv-ile,' 'puer-ile,' 'infant-ile' (50).

- Cf. 'sub-acid' (44).

## 57. III. VERB SUFFIXES.

**-en**, causative, forming transitive verbs:—*length-en*, *fright-en*, *hast-en*, *sweet-en*, *dead-en*, *fatt-en*, *sick-en*, *slack-en*, *embold-en*.\*

**-er**, intensive or frequentative:—*hind-er* (behind), *ling-er* (long), *loit-er* (lout), *patt-er*, *wand-er* (wend), *hank-er* (hang), *blust-er* (blast), *toit-er* (tilt), *mutt-er* (mute), *spatt-er* (spot), *sputt-er* (spit), *stagg-er* (stake), *glimm-er* (gleam), *fritt-er* (fret), *flutt-er* (flit), *welt-er* (walk), *glitt-er* (glint).

**-el, -le, -l**, frequentative or diminutive:—

SIMPLE.	FREQUENTATIVE.	SIMPLE.	FREQUENTATIVE.
Cramp	crump-le	Scrape	scrabb-le
Curl	card-le	Scribe	scribb-le*
Daze	dazz-le	Shove	shuff-le
Drag	dragg-le	Sniff	sniv-el
Draw	draw-l	Start	start-le
Drip	dribb-le	Stride	stradd-le
Fizz	fizz-le	Swathe	swadd-le
Game	gamb-le	Top	topp-le
Jog	jogg-le	Wade	wadd-le
Mist	mizz-le	Wag	wagg-le
Nest	nest-le	Wrest	wrest-le
Nip	nibb-le	Wring	wrang-le
Prate	pratt-le		

NOTE.—The imitative sounds *ba-ba*, *cack*, *gag*, *mum*, *tat*, give us *babb-le*, *cack-le* and *chuck-le*, *gigg-le*, *mumb-le*, *tatt-le* (cf. *tittle tattle*).

## 58. OTHER VERBAL DERIVATIVES.

(a) Verbs are often formed from nouns by a modification of the vowel sound, or of the final consonant, or of both:—

NOUN.	VERB.	NOUN.	VERB.
Bath	bathe	Glass	glaze
Breath	breathe	Grass	graze
Sheath	sheathe	Calf	calve
Teeth	teethe	Half	halve
Cloth	clothe	Shelf	shelve
Thief	thieve	Strife	strive
Wreath	wreathe	Bond	bind
Mouth	mouth	Drop	drip
Price	prize	Hook	hitch
House	house ( <i>houze</i> )	Song	sing
Mouse	mouse ( <i>mouze</i> )	Brood	breed
Grease	grease ( <i>greaze</i> )	(W)hole	heal
Use	use ( <i>uze</i> )		

(b) Transitive or Causative verbs are sometimes formed from other verbs by a modification of the root vowel:—*fell* from *fall*, *set* from *sit*, *raise* from *rise*, *lay* from *lie*, *drench* from *drink*, *quell* from *quail*, *wend* from *wind*.

## 59. LATIN DERIVATIVES.

[The student will know the meaning of most of the English words given in these lists. He should learn to trace the ordinary modern sense of these words back to the meaning of the Latin or the Greek words from which they are derived. It will be a good exercise for him to add to the groups of derivatives given below.]

**Ag-o**, act-um, *set in motion* ;  
ag-ent, amb-ig-uous, act-ive.  
**Am-o**, amat-um, *love* ;  
am-ity, in-im-ical, amat-eur.  
**Annus**, year ;  
annu-al, bi-enn-ial.  
**Aper-io**, apert-um, *open* ;  
aper-ient, Apr-il, apert-ure.  
**Aud-io**, audit-um, *hear* ;  
aud-ience, audit-or, in-aud-ible.

**Cad-o**, cas-um, *fall* ;  
cad-ence, ac-cid-ent oc-cas-ion.  
**Cæd-o**, cæs-um, *cut* ;  
cæs-ura, con-cise, sui-cide.  
**Cand-eo**, *glow or be bright* ;  
cand-le, cand-id, in-cense.  
**Can-o**, cant-um, *sing* ;  
can-orous, chant, re-cant ;  
**Cap-io**, capt-um, *take* ;  
cap-able, capt-ive, ex-cept.  
**Caput**, head ;  
capit-al, capt-ain, corp-oral (noun).  
**Ced-o**, cess-um, *go, yield* ;  
ac-cede, ac-cess, de-cess.  
**Cern-o**, cret-um, *sift, judge* ;  
dis-cern, dis-cern, de-cree.  
**Claud-o**, claus-um, *shut* ;  
ex-clude, clause, clos-ure.  
**Col-o**, cult-um, *tend, till* ;  
col-ony, cult-ivate, cult-ure.  
**Cur-a**, care ;  
ac-cur-ate, cur-ator, se-cure.  
**Curr-o**, curs-um, *run* ;  
curr-ency, curs-ory, suc-cour.

**Dic-o**, dict-um, *say* ;  
dict-ate, dict-ion, inter-dict.  
**Dies**, day ; diurn-us, daily ;  
di-ary, journ-al, ad-journ.  
**D-o**, dat-um, *give* ;  
ad-d, dat-ive, e-dit.  
**Duc-o**, duct-um, *lead* ;  
ad-duce, re-duct-ion, con-duit.

**Em-o**, empt-um, *take, buy* ;  
red-emption, ex-empt, pr-empt.

**Ens**, esse, *being, be* ; est, it is ;  
abs-ent, essent-ial, inter-est.  
**E-o**, it-um, *go* ; iems, *going* ;  
amb-it-ion, amb-ient, per-ish.

**Fac-io**, fact-um, *make, do* ;  
face, bene-fact-or, of-fice.  
**Fer-o**, lat-um, *bear, bring* ;  
con-fer, re-late, super-lat-ive.  
**Fid-es**, trust ;  
in-fid-el, af-fi-ance, de-fy.  
**For**, fat-um, *speak* ;  
ne-far-ious, fat-al, in-fant.  
**Frang-o**, fract-um, *break* ;  
frag-ment, fract-ion, in-fringe.  
**Fund-o**, fus-um, *pour* ;  
re-fund, pro-fus-ion, con-found.

**Gen-us**, race, kind ;  
gen-ial, gen-eration, indi-gen-ous.  
**Grad-us**, gress-us, *step* ;  
grad-ual, pro-gress, de-gree.  
**Grat-us**, pleasing, thankful ;  
grat-itude, grace, a-gree.  
**Grav-is**, heavy ;  
grav-ity, ag-grav-ate, grief.  
**Grex** (= greg-s), *flock* ;  
ag-greg-ate, e-greg-ious.

**Hab-eo**, habit-um, *have* ;  
hab-iliment, habit, ex-hibit.  
**Hosp-es**, gen. hospit-is, *host* ;  
hospit-al, hot-el, ost-ler.

**Jac-eo**, lie ;  
ad-jacent, gist.  
**Jac-io**, jact-um, *throw* ;  
e-jac-ulate, re-ject, ad-ject-ive.  
**Jung-o**, junct-um, *join* ;  
ad-join, junct-ure, joint.

**Leg-o**, legat-um, *depute* ;  
leg-acy, de-legate, al-lege.  
**Leg-o**, lect-um, *gather, read* ;  
leg-end, col-lect, di-lig-ent.  
**Lev-is**, light ;  
lev-ity, al-lev-iate, re-lief.

**Lig-o**, *ligat-um*, *bind* ;  
*lig-ament*, *ob-ligat-ion*, *leag-ue*  
 (alliancee).  
**Loc-us**, *place* ;  
*loc-al*, *loc-ate*, *loco-motive*.  
**Lu-o**, *lut-um*, *wash* ;  
*de-lu-ge*, *pol-lute*, *al-lu-vial*.  
**Man-eo**, *mans-um*, *stay* ;  
*per-man-ent*, *man-s-ion*, *re-m-nant*.  
**Man-us**, *hand* ;  
*manu-facture*, *em-an-cipate*, *main-tain*.  
**Merx** ( = *merca* ), *goods for sale* ;  
*com-merce*, *merch-ant*, *mark-et*.  
**Min-us**, *less* ;  
*min-or*, *min-ute*, *di-min-ish*.  
**Mitt-o**, *miss-um*, *send* ;  
*ad-mit*, *miss-ionary*, *pro-mise*.  
**Mod-us**, *measure* ;  
*mod-ol*, *mod-ify*, *mod-est*.  
**Mov-eo**, *mot-um*, *move* ;  
*re-move*, *com-mot-ion*, *re-mote*.  
**Mun-us**, *gen. muner-is*, *gift* ;  
*com-mune*, *re-muner-ate*, *com-mon*.  
**(G)Nasc-or**, **(g)nat-us**, *to be born* ;  
*nasc-ent*, *nat-ural*, *co-gnate*.  
**Nav-is**, *ship* ;  
*nav-y*, *nav-tical*, *nav-tilus*.  
**Noc-eo**, *hurt* ;  
*in-noc-ent*, *nox-ious*, *nuis-ance*.  
**(G)Nosc-o**, **(g)not-um**, *know*, *mark* ;  
*co-gnose-ence*, *de-note*, *no-ble*.  
**Ol-eo**, *smell* ; **od-or**, *a smell* ;  
*ol-factory*, *red-ol-ent*, *od-our*.  
**Ol-esco**, **olet-um**, **ult-um**, *grow* ;  
*ab-ol-ish*, *obs-olete*, *ad-ult*.  
**Or-ior**, **ort-um**, *arise* ;  
*or-iental*, *ab-ort-ive*, *or-igin*.  
**Os**, *gen. or-is*, *mouth* ;  
*os-culate*, *or-al*, *or-ifice*.  
**Pand-o**, **pass-um**, *spread* ;  
*ex-pand*, *com-pass*, *pace*.  
**Par**, *equal* ;  
*pair*, *peer*, *un-pure*.  
**Par-io**, **part-um**, *bring forth* ;  
*par-ent*, *part-urition*, *vi-per*.  
**Par-o**, **parat-um**, *get ready* ;  
*par-ade*, *ap-putat-us*, *pre-pare*.  
**Par-s**, *gen. part-is*, *part*, *share* ;  
*part-ial*, *parse*, *pro-port-ion*.  
**Pend-o** (-eo), **pens-um**, *weigh*, *hang* ;  
*ex-pend*, *dis-pense* ; *de-pend*, *sus-tenae*

**Pes**, *gen. ped-is*, *foot* ;  
*bi-ped*, *centi-pede*, *ex-ped-ient*.  
**Pet-o**, **petit-um**, *aim at*, *ask for* ;  
*im-pet-uous*, *petit-ion*, *com-pete*.  
**Plic-o**, **plicat-um**, } *fold* ;  
**Plect-o**, **plex-um**, }  
*ap-plic-ant*, *ap-plicat-ion*, *ex-plic-it* ;  
*com-plex*, *sim-ple*, *im-ply*.  
**Pon-o**, **posit-um**, *place* ;  
*op-pon-ent*, *de-posit*, *post*.  
**Pos-sum**, **pot-ens**, *to be able* ;  
*pos-sible*, *pot-ential*.  
**Pret-ium**, *price* ;  
*prec-ious*, *prize* (verb).  
**Prehend-o**, **pre(hens-um)**, *take* ;  
*com-prehend*, *ap-prehens-ive*,  
*prison*, *prize* (noun).  
**Pung-o**, **punct-um**, *prick* ;  
*ex-punge*, *punct-uate*, *point*.  
**Put-o**, **putat-um**, *cut*, *think* ;  
*am-putate* ; *re-pute*, *co-unt*.  
**Quer-o**, **quæsit-um**, *seek* ;  
*query*, *ex-quisite*, *in-quest*.  
**Quatuor**, **quadr-a**, *four*, *square* ;  
*quart*, *quadr-ant*, *s-quadr-on*.  
**Rap-io**, **rapt-um**, *snatch* ;  
*rap-id*, *rapt-ure*, *sur-rept-itious*.  
**Reg-o**, **rect-um**, *rule* ;  
*reg-al*, *cor-rect*, *reig-n*.  
**Rog-o**, **rogat-um**, *ask* ;  
*pro-rog-ue*, *inter-rogate*.  
**Rot-a**, *wheel* ;  
*rot-ate*, *ro-und*, *ro-ll*.  
**Rump-o**, **rupt-um**, *break* ;  
*rupt-ure*, *route*, *roul*, *rote*.  
**Sal-io**, **salt-um**, *leap* ;  
*sal-ient*, *as-sault*, *re-sult*.  
**Scrib-o**, **script-um**, *write* ;  
*de-scribe*, *post-script*, *scrib-ble*.  
**Sec-o**, **sect-um**, *cut* ;  
*seg-ment*, *sect-ion*, *sick-le*.  
**Sed-eo**, **sess-um**, *sit* ;  
*sed-iment*, *sess-ion*, *re-side*.  
**Sent-io**, **sens-um**, *feel* ;  
*con-sent*, *non-sense*, *s(cent)*.  
**Sequ-or**, **secut-um**, *follow* ;  
*con-sequ-ent*, *per-secute*, *sect*.  
**Sign-um**, *sign* ;  
*de-sign*, *sign-ify*, *sign-al*.  
**Solv-o**, **Solut-um**, *loosen* ;  
*ab-solve*, *ab-solute*, *solu-ble*.  
**Spec-io**, **spect-um**, *see* ;  
*spec-ies*, *re-spect*, *sus-pic-ion*.

**Spir-o**, **spirit-um**, *breathe* ;  
 con-*spire*, in-*spirit*, ex-(s)*pire*.  
**Spond-eo**, **spons-um**, *promise* ;  
 re-*spond*, re-*spons*-ible, *spouse*.  
**St-o**, **stat-um**, *stand* ;  
 con-*stant*, *state*, in-*stit*-ute.  
**String-o**, **strict-um**, *bind* ;  
 a-*string*-ent, re-*strict*, *strait*.  
**Stru-o**, **struct-um**, *build* ;  
 in-*stru*-ment, con-*struct*, de-*stroy*.  
**Surg-o**, **surrect-um**, *rise* ;  
 in-*surg*-ent, re-*surrect*-ion, *source*.  
**Tang-o**, **tact-um**, *touch* ;  
 tang-ible, con-*tact*, con-*tag*-ious.  
**Tend-o**, **tens-um**, *stretch* ;  
 at-*tend*, in-*tense*, por-*tent*.  
**Ten-eo**, **tent-um**, *hold* ;  
 ten-ant, re-*tent*-ive, con-*tain*.  
**Ter-o**, **trit-um**, *rub* ;  
 con-*trite*, de-*tri*-ment.  
**Test-or**, **testat-um**, *witness* ;  
 de-*test*, in-*test*-ate, *testa*-ment.

**Torqu-eo**, **tort-um**, *twist* ;  
 dis-*tort*, tort-ure, tor-*ment*.  
**Trah-o**, **tract-um**, *draw* ;  
 con-*tract*, en-*treat*, por-*tray*, *trace*,  
*train*.  
**Val-eo**, *to be well* ;  
 val-id, pre-*vail*, val-ue.  
**Ven-io**, **vent-um**, *come* ;  
 a-*ven*-ue, ad-*vent*, super-*vene*.  
**Vert-o**, **vers-um**, *turn* ;  
 con-*vert*, di-*vers*, di-*vorce*.  
**Via**, *way* ;  
 de-*vi*-ate, pre-*vi*-ous, en-*voy*.  
**Vid-eo**, **vis-um**, *see* ;  
 e-*vid*-ence, vis-ion, en-*vy*. sur-*vey*.  
**Voc-o**, **vocat-um**, *call* ;  
 voc-al, ad-*vocate*, pro-*voke*.  
**Volv-o**, **volut-um**, *roll* ;  
 re-*volve*, re-*volut*-ion, vol-ume.  
**Vov-eo**, **vot-um**, *now* ;  
 a-*vow*, de-*vote*, de-*vout*.

## 60. GREEK DERIVATIVES.

**Anthropo-s**, *man* ;  
 anthro-pology, mis-anthrope.  
**Arch-o**, *to be before* ;  
 mon-arch, arch-aism, arch-ives.  
**Aster**, *star* ;  
 aster-isk, astro-nomy, dis-aster.  
**Ball-o**, *throw* ;  
 sym-bol, pro-blem, para-ble.  
**Bio-s**, *life* ;  
 bio-graphy, amphi-bi-ous.  
**Ceno-s**, *empty* ;  
 ceno-taph.  
**Chron-os**, *time* ;  
 chrono-logy, chron-icle.  
**Cosm-os**, *order, world* ;  
 cosm-etic, cosmo-polite.  
**Crat-os**, *power* ;  
 demo-crat, aristo-crac-y.  
**Cris-is**, *judgment, crit-es, a judge* ;  
 crisis, crit-ic, hypo-crite.  
**Crypt-os**, *concealed* ;  
 crypt, apo-cryph-a.  
**Cycl-os**, *round* ;  
 cycle, en-cyclo-pædia.

**Dem-os**, *people* ;  
 demo-crat, epi-dem-ic.  
**Dox-a** (= dogs-a), *opinion* ;  
 ortho-dox, dog-matic.  
**Dynam-is**, *force* ;  
 dynam-ics, dynas-ty.  
**Erg-on**, *work* ;  
 en-erg-y, lit-urg-y, s-urg-con.  
**Ge**, *the earth* ;  
 ge-ology, ge-ometry, apo-gee.  
**Gon-ia**, *angle* ;  
 dia-gon-al, hexa-gon.  
**Graph-o**, ge-gramm-enos, *write* ;  
 bio-graph-y, epi-gram, gram-mar.  
**Hedr-on**, *seat* ;  
 poly-hedron, cath-(h)edr-al.  
**Hod-os**, *way* ;  
 meth-(h)od, peri-od, epis-ode.<sup>1</sup>  
**Hydor**, *water* ;  
 hydro-statics, hydr-ant.  
**Idio-s**, *peculiar* ;  
 idio-t, idio-m, idio-synecrasy.

<sup>1</sup>This -ode must be distinguished from the -ode of ep-ode below.



**Log-o**, *speaking*, **log-os**, *word* ;  
*dia-lect*, **log-ic**, *ana-log-y*.  
**Lith-os**, *stone* ;  
*litho-graph*, **mono-lith**.  
**Lysis**, *a loosening* ;  
*ana-lysis*, *para-lyse*, *pa-ly*.  
**Mechan-é**, *a contrivance* ;  
*machine*, **mechan-ic**.  
**Metr-on**, *measure* ;  
*metre*, **geo-metr-y**, **baro-meter**.  
**Neo-s**, *new* ;  
*neo-logy*, *neo-phyte*.  
**Nom-os**, *law* ;  
*astro-nom-y*, *eco-nom-y*.  
**Od-é**, *song* ;  
*ep-ode*, **par-od-y**, **pros-od-y**.  
**Oik-os**, *house* ;  
*eco-nomy*, **di-oc-ese**.  
**Onom-a**, *name* ;  
*an-onym-ous*, **syn-onym**.  
**Opsis**, *sight* ;  
*syn-opsis*, **opt-ical**.  
**Pais**, *gen.* **paid-os**, *boy* ;  
*ped-agogue*, **ped-o-baptist**.  
**Path-os**, *suffering* ;  
*sym-path-y*, **path-etic**.  
**Phain-o**, *appear* ;  
*phan-tasy*, **phen-omenon**, **phase**.  
**Phem-i**, *say* ;  
*blas-pheme*, **eu-phem-ism**.  
**Pher-o**, *carry* ;  
*meta-phor*, **phos-phor-us**.  
**Phil-co**, *love* ;  
*phil-anthropy*, **philo-logy**.  
**Phys-is**, *nature* ;  
*phys-ical*, **neo-phyte**.  
**Phon-é**, *sound* ;  
*sym-phon-y*, **phon-etic**.  
**Poi-co**, *make* ;  
*po-et*, *po-sy*, **onomato-pœi-a**.

**Polis**, *city* ;  
*polic-e*, **cosmo-poli-te**.  
**Pous**, *gen.* **pod-os**, *foot* ;  
*anti-pod-es*, **tri-pod**, **poly-pus**.  
**Por-os**, *passage* ;  
*por-ous*, **em-por-ium**.  
**Prot-os**, *first* ;  
*proto-plasm*, **prot-agonist**.  
**Psych-é**, *soul* ;  
*psycho-logy*, **metem-psych-osis**.  
**Rhe-o**, **rheu-somai**, *flow* ;  
*rheu-matics*, **dia-r-rhœa**.  
**Skop-éo**, *watch* ;  
*tele-scope*, **epi-scop-al**, **bi-shop**.  
**Soph-os**, *wise* ;  
*soph-ism*, **philo-soph-er**.  
**Stell-o**, *send* ;  
*apo-stle*, **epi-stle**.  
**Stich-os**, *verse* ;  
*di-stich*, **acro-stic**.  
**Stroph-é**, *a turning* ;  
*apo-strophe*, **cata-strophe**.  
**Techn-é**, *art* ;  
*techn-ical*, **pyro-techn-ics**.  
**Ti-them-i**, **thes-is**, *put, placing* ;  
*them*, **hypo-thesis**.  
**Theo-s**, *god* ;  
*theo-logy*, **the-ist**, **apo-the-osis**.  
**Tom-é**, *a cutting* ;  
*ana-tom-y*, **a-tom**, **tome**.  
**Ton-os**, *a stretching*, *a note* ;  
*ton-ic*, **mono-ton-ous**.  
**Top-os**, *place* ;  
*top-o-graphy*, **top-ic**.  
**Trop-é**, *a turning* ;  
*trop-ic*, **helio-trope**.  
**Typ-os**, *pattern* ;  
*typ-ical*, **stereo-type**.  
**Zoo-n**, *animal* ;  
*zoo-logy*, **zoo-phyte**, **zo-diaa**.

## COMPOUND WORDS.

## 61. Two classes.

**A. Syntactical compounds** ; in which the parts are connected according to some rule of syntax. Thus in the compound *free-man*, the adjective *free* goes with the noun *man* to qualify it ; and in *hair's-breadth*, the possessive case *hair's* regularly precedes the noun *breadth*, which it defines.

**B. Juxtapositional compounds** ; in which the parts are formed into one word by juxtaposition. Thus, in the compound *post-man*, the two nouns *post* and *man* are made into one word by being placed side by side ; and in *hair-breadth*, the two nouns *hair* and *breadth* are placed together, and so form one word without any possessive inflexion to connect them.

#### A. SYNTACTICAL COMPOUNDS.

**62. I. A Verb followed by its Object** :—*tell-tale*, *scare-crow*, *pick-pocket*, *cut-throat*, *ward-robe*, *break-fast*, *break-water*, *dare-devil*, *stop-gap*, *pass-port*, *turn-key*, *spend-thrift*, *make-shift*, *kill-joy*.

NOTE.—The above are all nouns ; but *lack-lustre*, as in ‘a *lack-lustre* eye,’ is an adjective, and so generally are *catch-penny* and *do-little*. Other nouns are *scape-grace*, one who has *escaped* grace, a wild graceless fellow ; *skin-flint*, a man niggardly enough to try to *skin* a *flint-stone* ; *turn-coat*, one who *turns* or changes his *coat*, i.e., who lightly abandons his principles or his party ; *turn-screw* (cf. *screw-driver*, 69). *Vouchsafe*, ‘to *vouch* or *warrant* as *safe*, to *guarantee*, to *grant*,’ is a Verb followed by an Adjective.

**63. II. (a) An Adjective followed by a Noun** which it qualifies :—*black-bird*, *broad-sword*, *broad-side*, *free-thinker*, *free-trade*, *long-run*, *vain-glory*, *short-hand*, *plain-dealing*, *double-dealing*, *dead-letter*, *hoar-frost*, *hard-ware*, *quick-sand*, *lay-man*, *mad-man*, *safe-conduct*, *half-timer* (cf. 77).

NOTE.—The above are nouns ; *common-place* and *every-day* are adjectives. *Live-stock* is short for *alive-stock*, the animals on a farm. *Wild-goose* occurs in the phrase ‘a *wild-goose* chase,’ i.e., a vain pursuit. *Free-hold* (cf. *strong-hold*) is properly *held free* of duty or rent. A *brown-study* is a fit of absent-mindedness. A *deaf-mute* is one who is both *deaf* and *mute* or dumb. To eat *humble-pie* is to submit to humiliation.

(b) A Present Participle followed by a Noun which it qualifies :—*humming-bird*, *flying-fish*, *fighting-man*, *loving-kindness*, *sliding-scale*, *finishing-stroke*, *rising-ground*. These compounds must be carefully distinguished from those in 73.

NOTE.—In some instances the participial ending is omitted for the sake of brevity :—*spring-tide* (for *springing-tide*), *leap-year*, *force-pump* (also *forcing-pump*), *ship-knot*, *screech-owl*, *fly-wheel*, *jog-trot*, *leap-frog*, *draw-bridge*, *catch-word*, *turn-pike*, *turn-stile*, *scatter-brain*.

(c) A Past Participle followed by a Noun which it qualifies. Here, in all instances, the participial ending is omitted :—*drift-wood* (for *drifted-wood*), *lock-jaw*, *char-coal* (charred-coal), *clasp-knife*, *rack-rent*, *mince-meat*, *crack-brain* (adj.), *skim-milk*, *pull-bread*, *tin-tack*.

NOTE.—*Foster-child* (*fostered-child*) is a *child* that is *fostered* or *nursed* by one who is not its parent. *Hang-dog* (*hanged-dog*) is an adjective, as in ‘a *hang-dog* look.’ *Hear-say* (what is *heard said*) is a noun derived from the verb ‘to *hear-say*’ (cf. *make-believe*, verb and noun).

64. III. A Noun in the possessive case followed by another Noun which it defines (the apostrophe of the possessive being sometimes omitted and sometimes retained):—*lands-man*, *herds-man*, *sports-man*, *crafts-man*, *gowns-man*, *guards-man*, *kings-man*, *helms-man*, *oars-man*, *hunts-man*, *states-man*, *brakes-man*, *swords-man*, *clans-man*, *cox-comb* (cock's-comb), *dooms-day*, *fools-cap*, *harts-horn*, *fuller's-earth*, *stone's-throw*, *king's evil*, *heart's-ease*, *hair's-breadth*, *king's-bench*.

NOTE.—A *marks-man* is a man who can hit the mark, a good shot. A *draughts-man* is a man who makes a draught or drawing of places and designs. *Steers-man* is the man of the steer or rudder. A *heads-man* is an executioner. A *death's-head* is a skull. A *fool's-errand* is an errand on which one would send a fool, a foolish errand. A *cat's-paw* is one who is the dupe or tool of another. A '*bird's-eye view*' is a general, expansive view. *Child's-play* is easy work or a trifling matter.

65. IV. An Adverb (or an Adjective used adverbially) followed by a Participle or an Adjective, which it modifies:—*far-seeing*, *far-fetched*, *wide-spread*, *long-suffering*, *ill-looking*, *full-blown*, *base-born*, *in-born*, *thorough-bred*, *strait-laced*,<sup>1</sup> *so-called*, *high-fed*, *all-wise*, *bitter-sweet*, *dead-ripe*, *luke-warm*, *red-hot*, *half-blind*, *fool-hardy* (*foolish-hardy*, rash), *clean-cut*, *new-born*.

66. V. (a) A Verb or a Noun followed by an Adverb which modifies it:—*run-away*, *stow-away*, *cast-away* (cf. out-cast, 75), *gad-about*, *stand-still*, *look-out* (cf. out-look), *go-between*, *break-down*, *break-up*, *breaking-up*, *turn-out* (cf. out-turn), *set-off* (cf. off-set), *lock-up*, *draw-back*, *hold-fast*, *stay-at-home*, *fare-well*, *passer-by*, *hang-on*, *looker-on* (cf. on-looker, 74).

NOTE.—The above are nouns; *tumble-down* (as in 'a *tumble-down* cottage,' and *knock-down* (as in 'a *knock-down* blow') are adjectives. *Keep-sake* means something that is given one to *keep* for the *sake* of the giver. A *stand-by* is a person or thing that *stands by* one; a ready, timely resource.

(b) A Noun followed by an Adjective which qualifies it:—*hand-ful*, *spoon-ful*, *knight-errant*, *court-martial*.

67. VI. A Preposition followed by its Object:—*over-land* (adj. and adv.), *over-board* (adv.), *behind-hand* (adv.), *out-law* (noun), *out-door* (adj.), *out-of-doors* (adv.), *after-noon* (noun), *under-graduate* (noun).

NOTE.—We say 'a walk *up-hill*' (adv.): but 'an *up-hill* (adj. = difficult) task.'

<sup>1</sup>Such compounds must be carefully distinguished from those in 77. Thus in *well-armed*, 'armed' is a p.p.; but in *long-armed*, 'armed' is an adjective. Cf. 56, note.

## B. JUXTAPOSITIONAL COMPOUNDS. I. Nouns.

66. A Noun preceded by another Noun which defines it :—*lamp-oil*, oil for a lamp ; *oil-lamp*, a lamp for oil ; *sun-stroke*, sea-man (cf. *lands-man*, 64), *place-man*, *man-servant*, *crown-prince*, *field-piece*, *pay-master*, *elbow-room*, *horse-power*, *foot-fall*, *mother-wit*, *key-note*, *whole-sale*, *arm-pit*, *bag-pipe*, *guide-post*, *winter-quarters*, *needle-gun*, *skeleton-key*, *hero-worship*, *home-thrust*, *master-piece*, *smart-money*, *safety-valve*, *table-talk*, *land-shark*, *jail-bird*, *steeple-chase*, *touch-stone*, *fire-escape*, *milk-sop*, *moon-shine*, *work-house*.

NOTE.—*Green-house* is a house for greens or plants ; *poor-house* is a house for the poor ; *sick-nurse* is a nurse for the sick. *Name-sake* (cf. *keep-sake*, 86, note) means one whose name has been given him for the sake of another, and then one bearing the same name as another. *Wood-cut* is a cut or engraving on wood. *Pit-fall* is a fall by means of a *pit*, and so a pit dug for animals to fall into. *Wind-fall* is a fall (of fruit from a tree) caused by the wind, and so the fallen fruit itself ; then used of property gained unexpectedly. *God-send* is something sent by God, an unexpected piece of good fortune. In *nosc-gay gay* = toy. *Hunger-strike* should properly be *food-strike*, like *coal-strike*, *cotton-strike*, etc.

69. A Noun followed by another Noun which governs it :—*snake-charmer*, *shoe-maker*, *bread-winner*, *ring-leader*, *house-holder*, *star-gazer*, *rate-payer*, *stock-broker*, *care-taker*, *sooth-sayer*, *time-server*, *way-farer*, *church-goer*, *globe-trotter*, *land-grabber*, *slave-driver*, *grass-hopper*, *body-guard*, *pain-killer*, *screw-driver*, *life-preserver*, *pen-wiper*.

NOTE.—*Shoe-black* is one who blacks or polishes shoes. *Shop-lifter* is one who lifts or steals from a shop (cf. *cattle-lifter*). *Rough-rider* is a rider of rough or untrained horses.

70. A Noun followed by a Verbal Noun which governs it :—*snake-charming*, *sooth-saying*, *star-gazing*, *bull-baiting*, *deer-stalking*, *wool-gathering*.

NOTE.—*Blood-shed* (blood-shedding) and *man-slaughter* come under this head.

71. A Noun followed by a present Participle or by an Adjective which governs it :—*rate-paying*, *time-serving*, *care-charming*, *heart-rending*, *self-sacrificing*, *ear-piercing*, *note-worthy*, *lumb-like*.

72. A Noun preceded by a Pronoun which defines it :—*he-goat*, *she-devil*, *self-will*.

73. A Noun preceded by a Verbal Noun which defines it :—*washing-stand* (a stand for washing), *laughing-stock*, *dressing-case*, *skipping-rope*, *whipping-post*, *spelling-book*, *battering-ram*, *stepping-stone*, *playing-card*, *working-day* (and work-day), *walking-stick*, *drawing-room* (107), *landing-place*, *leading-strings*, *stumbling-block*, *stalking*

*horse, praying-wheel, training-ship.* These compounds must be carefully distinguished from those in 63, (b).

NOTE.—In some instances *-ing* is omitted for the sake of brevity:—*grind-stone* for *grinding-stone*, *tread-mill* for *treading-mill* (a mill worked by the treading of prisoners' feet); *wash-house*, *bake-house*, *store-house*, *blow-pipe*, *hush-money* (money given for the *hushing* up or concealment of anything), *pitch-fork*, *ram-rod*, *spy-glass*, *stand-point* (cf. *starting-point*, *turning-point*, point where a decided change begins), *peep-show*, *row-boat*, *guess work*, *go-cart*.

74. A Noun preceded by an Adverb which modifies it:—*under-wood*, *under-lip*, *under-tone*, *after-piece*, *after-thought*, *counter-charm*, *fore-finger*, *fore-sight*, *in-sight*, *over-load*, *by-path*, *by-stander*, *on-looker* [cf. *looker-on*, 66, (a)], *out-patient*, *down-full*.

75. A Verb (with the force of a noun) preceded by an Adverb which modifies it:—*out-put*, *out-let*, *out-fit*, *out-cry*, *out-cast*, *out-lay*, *out-turn* [cf. *turn-out*, 66, (a)], *out-look* (cf. *look-out*), *off-set* (cf. *set-off*), *up-start*. *Well-being* and *short-coming* are similar compounds.

## II. Adjectives.

76. An Adjective (or a Participle) preceded by a Noun. In these the first part is adverbial to the second, and may represent—

(1) Cause, agency:—*thunder-struck*, struck by thunder; *sea-sick*, sick because of the sea's motion; *home-sick*, sick through thoughts of home; *wind-bound*, *purse-proud*, *moth-eaten*, *frost-bitten*, *woe-begone*, *priest-ridden*, *hen-perked* (with verb *hen perk*), *land-locked*, *weather-beaten*.

(2) Measure:—*knee-deep*, as deep as to reach the knee; *ankle-deep*, *world-wide*, *year-old*, *breast-high*, *mother-naked*.

(3) Manner:—*blood-red*, red like blood; *pitch-dark*, *clay-cold*, *stone-blind*, *sky-blue*, *milk-white*, *nut-brown*, *sea-green*, *jet-black*, *dog-weary*.

(4) Locality or point of Reference:—*heart-sick*, sick at heart; *top-heavy*, *tongue-tied*, *crest-fallen*, *tad-bare*, *foot-sore*, *head-strong*, *weather-wise*, *fire-proof*, *water-tight*, *sea-worthy*, *time-honoured*, *home-keeping*, *blood-thirsty*, *colour-blind*, *post-free*, *work-shy*.

77. A Noun preceded by an Adjective or by a Noun used adjectivally:—*bare-foot*, *blind-fold*, *two-fold*, *two-penny*, *two-horse*.<sup>1</sup> In modern English these compounds usually take the ending *-ed*:—*bare-footed*, *narrow-minded*, *public-spirited*, *hook-nosed*, *eagle-eyed*,

<sup>1</sup> These earlier compounds are, in their formation, syntactical; they are placed here on account of their parallelism with the later and more numerous compounds of a like nature.

*beetle-browed*, *hump-backed* (with noun *hump-back*), *cross-grained*, *one-sided*, *wy-mantled*. These compounds must be carefully distinguished from those in 65.

NOTE.—We say *four-footed* when speaking of animals; but ‘a *four-foot rule*,’ ‘a *three-foot stool*.’ *Long-lived* is formed from *long* and *life*, and not from the verb *live*, just as *ill-wired* is formed from *ill* and *wife* (cf. *live-long* for *life-long*, *live-ly* for *life ly*). *Bare-faced* (shameless), *double-faced* (deceitful), *stiff-necked* (obstinate), *close-fisted* (miserly), *foul-mouthed* (addicted to bad language) are almost always used figuratively; similarly *light-fingered* often means ‘thievish.’ *Cold-blooded* has two meanings, as in ‘a cold-blooded animal’ and ‘a cold-blooded murder.’ *Knock-kneed* is for *knocking-kneed*, having knees that knock together. *New-fangled* is a corruption of *new-fangle*, fond of what is new. A *half-blood* is a *half-blooded* person, one of mixed race. *Havr-brained* is a misspelling for *hare-brained*.

### III. Verbs.

78. A Verb preceded by an Adverb:—*cross-question* (or *cross-examine*), to *question* a person *across* or on all sides of a subject; *over-come*, *over-hear*, *fore-tell*, *fore-warn*, *back-slide*, *under-go*, *under-write*, *in-fold*, *in-trench*, *out-vote*, *out-bid*, *half-drown*.

79. A Verb preceded by an Adjective, which points to the result of the verbal action:—*white-wash*, to *wash* so as to make *white*; *rough-hew*, to *hew* (wood) so that it remains *rough*; *clear-starch*, *ful-jil*, *safe-guard*, *rough-shoe*.

80. A Verb preceded by a Noun: *back-bite*, *brow-beat*, *hood-wink*, *way-lay*, *slave-drive*, *star-gaze*.

NOTE.—*Back-bite* is to *bite* a person at the *back*, i.e., to speak evil of him in his absence; *brow-beat* is to *beat* a person with one’s *brow*, i.e., to frown him down; *hood-wink* is to make a person *wink* or close his eyes by covering him with a *hood*, hence, to deceive him; *way-lay* is to *lie* in the *way* for, to lie in ambush for.

81. **Phrase Compounds** are phrases the words of which are connected by hyphens:—*so-and-so* (noun), *good-for-nothing* (adj.), *well-to-do* (adj.), *forget-me-not* (noun), *would-be* (adj.), *penny-a-liner* (noun). Most of these are made up of a Noun followed by a Preposition with its Noun, which together describe the first noun:—*man-of-war*, *coat-of-arms*, *jack-o’-lantern*, *cat-o’-nine-tails*, *will-o’-the-wisp*, *light-o’-love*, *ticket-of-leave*, *mother-of-pearl*, *note-of-hand*, *bill-of-exchange*, *line-of-battle* (adj.), *letter-of-marque*, *maid-of-all-work*, *Jack-of-all-trades*, *out-of-the-way* (adj.); *son-in-law*, *commander-in-chief*, *physician-in-ordinary*, *four-in-hand*, *baby-in-arms*, *love-in-idleness*; *man-at-arms*, *barrister-at-law*, *peace-at-any-price* (adj.).

NOTE.—‘A *bread-and-butter* miss’ is a young and inexperienced girl; ‘a *cat-and-dog* life’ is a life full of quarrels; ‘a *cock-and-bull* story’ is a fictitious story; ‘a *good-all-round* man’ is a man who is clever at everything; ‘a *ne’er-do-well*’ is a worthless person.

**82. Form of Compounds.**—Compound words, as regards their form, may be divided into three classes:—

(1) Compounds in which the component parts are connected by a hyphen:—*bull-dog*, *heart-broken*.

NOTE.—In some compounds the parts are so loosely connected that they are often written separately without a hyphen between them, as *mother tongue*, *cannon ball*, *steam mill*, *bringing up*, *well known*. In many instances, however, a difference of meaning is caused by the insertion or the omission of the hyphen. Thus a *long boat* is a boat that is long, a *long boat* is a special kind of boat; *red tape* means tape that is red; *red-tape* means official pedantry; a *man of war* is a soldier, a *man-of-war* is a line-of-battle ship. Similarly, a *red-coat* is a soldier; a *blue-jacket* is a sailor on a man-of-war; a *grey-beard* is an old man; a *blue-stockings* is a learned woman; a *slow coach* is a slow person; a *bald-head* is a bald-headed person; a *short-horn* is a short-horned ox.

(2) Compounds in which the parts have become so closely connected by usage that they dispense with the hyphen:—*vineyard*, *passport*, *butterfly*, *sunstroke*, *midnight*.

(3) Compounds in which the parts have become so closely connected that not only do they dispense with the hyphen, but a modification of one or both of the parts takes place:—*primrose* (prime rose), *pastime* (pass time), *bulrush* (bull rush), *holiday* (holy day), *handful* (hand full), *awful* (awe full), *purblind* (pure blind), *partake* (part take), *handsel* (hand sale).

**83. Use of the Hyphen.**—(1) A compound made up of an adverb attached to a participle requires a hyphen only when the adverb is used attributively<sup>1</sup> as .

A good road gives easy going		His ankle was badly sprained.
This is an easy-going car.	:	He has a badly-sprained ankle.

But compounds like *well-spoken*, *single-minded*, *left-handed*, *cold-blooded*, *scatter-brained*, must be hyphenated because *spoken*, *minded*, *hearted*, *blooded*, *brained* cannot in this use stand by themselves; we cannot say 'A spoken man.'

(2) In Verbs compounded with prefixes the hyphen is sometimes retained (as in the Nouns *to-day*, *mid-day*) in order to help the pronunciation:—(1) *react*, *reappear*, *reinvest*, *reinstate*, *reinvigorate*, *reiterate*, *reunion*; but *re-echo*, *re-open*, *re-enact*, *re-enforce* (but *reinforce*), *re-enter*, etc. (2) *coalesce*, *coerce*, *coeval*, *coincide*; but *co-heir*, *co-ally*, *co-ordinate*, *co-partner*, *co-operate*. (3) *preoccupy*, *preordain*; but *pre-eminent*, *pre-existent*, *pre-emption*; also *trans-ship*.

NOTE.—Observe the difference in meaning between *recollect* (remember) and *re-collect* (collect again); *recreation* (amusement) and *re-creation* (new creation); *recover* and *re-cover*; *recount* and *re-count*; *reform* and *re-form*.

<sup>1</sup> This rule is of general application.—'Common sense alone is needed for a common-sense view of things'; 'The advocacy of Free Trade implies a Free-Trade policy.'

## HYBRIDS.

**84. A Hybrid is a Secondary Derivative or a Compound word whose parts are derived from different languages. Thus :—**

(a) in the derivatives—

<i>re-mind</i>	the stem is	English,	the prefix is	Latin.
<i>un-seal</i> ,	„	Latin,	„	English.
<i>bond-age</i>	„	English,	the suffix is	Latin.
<i>false-hood</i>	„	Latin,	„	English.

(b) in the compounds—

<i>hand-kerchief</i> ,	the first part is	English,	the second part is	Latin.
<i>heir-loom</i> ,	„	„	„	„
<i>ic-tele</i> ,	„	„	„	„
<i>statue-man</i> ,	„	„	„	„
		Latin,		English.

NOTE.—The hybrids given above, and many others, are unobjectionable ; they are only technical hybrids. But such hybrids as *cable-gram* (Eng. + Gk), *flot-ation* (Eng. + Lat.), *speed-o-meter* (Eng. + Gk), *tele-vision* (Gk + Lat.), *electro-cut* (Gk + Lat.) are badly put together and are false or abnormal hybrids.

## THE SIGNIFICANCE OF WORDS.

## SYNONYMS.

**85. Synonyms are words of the same grammatical class that have a similar, but not an identical, meaning.**

Thus the group, *pride*, *vanity*, *conceit*, *arrogance*, *assurance*, *presumption*, *haughtiness*, *insolence*, are synonyms. They contain one general notion, but differ in the way in which they express it. This may be shown by the following sentences illustrating each :—

(a) He took a *pride* in his high birth and family connexions.

(b) He suspected that they were ridiculing him, and his *vanity* was wounded.

(c) He is very ignorant, but full of *conceit*, thinking that he knows a great deal.

(d) He treated the woman with great *arrogance*, asking her how such a poor creature as she was, dared contradict a man of wealth and position like himself.

(e) How can you have the *assurance*, after insulting me, to ask a favour at my hands ?

(f) I had the *presumption* to dedicate to you a very unfinished work.

(g) He entered pompously, strutting and staring round upon those present with the utmost *haughtiness*.



(11) On my complaining to the man that he had beaten my dog without the slightest provocation, he replied, with great *insolence*, that he only wished it had been the cur's master instead.

From the above sentences we see that the *proud* man rates high what he really possesses; the *vain* man is eager for the applause of others often on account of qualities he does not possess; the *conceited* man has an overweening opinion of his own abilities; the *arrogant* man has a supreme contempt for all who differ from him in any way; the man of *assurance* boldly puts forward his claim to what he has no right to expect; the *presuming* man will venture on doing things that others would shrink from doing; the *haughty* man betrays in his manners and deportment the pride that he feels; while the *insolent* man displays it by inflicting insult upon other people.

A group of synonyms may often be illustrated by single phrases as *harmless*, *innocuous*, *innocent* :—

(a) a *harmless* lunatic.

(b) an *innocuous* drug.

(c) an *innocent* victim.

**86. Sketches of Synonyms.**—The difference of meaning in some of the more common synonyms is briefly sketched below. The student should illustrate these by forming sentences on the plan given above, or by bringing them into short pieces of written composition.

1. **Notorious, famous, illustrious, notable, renowned, noted.**—*Notorious* is always used in a bad sense; *noted* in either a good or a bad sense; the rest in a good sense. A man is *famous* or *renowned* for his achievements; *illustrious* from his high rank; *notable* for some special act; *notorious* for his crimes; and *noted* for his peculiarities.

2. **Observe, remark, notice.**—To *observe* is a general or continuous act, to *remark* is a special or single act. We *observe* a person's demeanour; we *remark* its peculiarities. To *notice* is to observe in a cursory way.

3. **Enormous, vast, huge, big, immense.**—*Enormous* means out of rule, and so is used of size or extent that is awkward or unpleasant; *vast* (from the same root as 'waste') refers to space; *huge* and *big* to bulk, *huge* being the stronger word; *immense* is that which cannot be measured.

4. **Import, sense, meaning.**—*Import* is the actual signification of words as they stand in a sentence. *Sense* is the possible signification that they might bear. *Meaning* is the signification intended

by the writer. Hence, an author may declare his *meaning* to be so and so ; his words may bear that *sense* ; but such may not be their obvious *import*.

5. **Amusement, diversion, recreation.**—*Amusement* is that which occupies the vacant mind ; *diversion* is that which turns the thoughts *aside* into a new direction ; *recreation* is that which refreshes the mind after work. Thus, football supplies the players with *recreation* ; the spectators with *amusement* in watching the game, and with *diversion* in seeing the ludicrous falls of some of the players.

6. **Timid, timorous, cowardly, dastardly.**—*Timid* applies to a person's state of mind or to his disposition ; *timorous* only to his disposition ; *cowardly* and *dastardly* are used alike of character or conduct, *dastardly* implying also meanness. A *timid* man may, on certain occasions, be brave ; a *cowardly* man never.

7. **General, universal.**—*General* means 'relating to a genus or whole class,' and is opposed to *special*, 'relating to a species.' A man wins *general* approbation when the community as a whole approves of his conduct, any particular individuals that may disapprove of it being left out of consideration. So that *general* may be said to include the greater part or number of anything ; while *universal* includes every particular part. Pope is *generally*, Homer is *universally*, admired.

8. **Lie, falsehood, untruth, deception, fiction.**—These words are arranged in order according to the diminishing amount of censure they imply. *Lie* is an intentional violation of truth, and is a more offensive word than *falsehood*, which again may be softened down into *untruth* ; a *deception* is often accidental, while a *fiction* is merely something invented or imagined.

9. **Discover, invent.**—We *discover* something that existed before, but was unknown ; we *invent* new combinations. Columbus *discovered* America ; Jansen *invented* the telescope.

10. **Dismay, daunt, appal.**—*Dismay* denotes a state of gloomy apprehension. A man is *daunted* by a sudden obstacle, he is *appalled* by what raises a sense of overwhelming terror.

11. **Glad, delighted, g——, merry.**—*Delighted* expresses a stronger sense of pleasure than *glad* ; while *gratified* implies that we owe our gladness to another ; we show by our actions or bearing when we are *merry*.

12. **Give, confer, grant.**—*Give* is the general term; *confer* implies superior authority in the giver; we *grant* an answer to a petition.

13. **Habit, custom.**—*Habit* is the internal principle that prompts us to external action or *custom*. A *habit* of devotion leads to the *custom* of praying. But we say, 'He had a *habit* of doing so,' not *custom*; 'There was a *custom* among the Jews,' not *habit*.

14. **Transient, transitory, fleeting.**—*Transient* is short, even at the best; *transitory* is having the nature of *transient*; *fleeting* is actually passing away: as, 'To consider the *fleeting* hours of this *transitory* life made but a *transient* impression on his stubborn soul.'

15. **Liberty, freedom.**—*Liberty* implies previous constraint; *freedom*, absence of constraint at the present moment. A slave is set at *liberty*; his master has always possessed *freedom*.

16. **Liberal, generous, charitable.**—*Liberal* implies an absence of servile niggardliness, *generous*, nobleness of feeling, placing others before oneself; *charitable* points to the spirit of love or kindness in which an action is done.

17. **Sensuous, sensual, sensitive, sensible, sentient, sentimental.**—*Sensuous*, addressing the senses, is often used as a less objectionable form of *sensual*, which generally means voluptuous, lewd; *sensitive* is quick to take impressions; *sensible* is capable of taking them; *sentient* is having the faculty of feeling; *sentimental* is having an excess of feeling.

18. **Grave, sober, serious, solemn.**—*Grave*, because of weighty or important considerations; opposed to levity: *sober*, because of the absence of what exhilarates; opposed to lightness; *serious*, because of reflection; opposed to sportiveness; *solemn*, because of something peculiar and rare, often with the idea of religious awe, as 'a *solemn* promise,' 'a *solemn* silence'; opposed to gaiety.

19. **Sympathy, compassion, pity, fellow-feeling.**—*Sympathy* is generally felt for our equals when in distress; *compassion* for our inferiors, with an effort to relieve them; *pity* does not imply any sense of connexion with the object pitied; we *pity* a condemned criminal; *fellow-feeling* implies this sense of connexion, and may refer to joyful as well as to sad circumstances.

20. **Leave, quit, forsake, desert, relinquish, renounce, abandon.**—To *leave* is the general term; we *leave* persons or things with the

intention of returning ; we *quit* or *abandon* things, and *forsake* or *desert* persons,—where to we return no more to *forsake* and to *desert* generally imply fault in the person who does so ; to *relinquish* implies regret ; to *renounce* is to leave in a formal or public manner ; to *abandon* is to leave hopelessly and entirely.

21. **Trifling, trivial.**—A *trifling* matter is one merely of small importance ; a *trivial* matter is a small matter made too much of. *Trivial* implies contempt ; *trifling* does not.

22. **Idle, lazy, negligent, indolent.**—*Idle* is opposed to busy ; *lazy*, to alert ; *negligent*, to diligent ; *indolent*, to active. An *idle* man dislikes doing work ; a *lazy* man dislikes taking trouble ; a *negligent* man dislikes taking care ; and an *indolent* man dislikes being roused or disquieted.

23. **Temporal, temporary.**—*Temporal* means relating to time, as opposed to eternity ; *temporary* means lasting only for a time. The affairs of this world are *temporal* ; our pleasure in looking at an eclipse of the moon is *temporary*.

24. **Silly, foolish, stupid, simple.**—*Silly* often denotes deficiency of intellect ; *foolish*, an abuse of intellect. *Foolish* implies blame ; *silly*, contempt ; *stupid* expresses a cloudy perception of everything ; *simple* implies a want of that quick-sightedness which comes from experience of the ways of the world or from natural shrewdness.

25. **Continuous, continual, perpetual, eternal.**—A *continuous* action is one that is uninterrupted as long as it lasts ; *continual* is that which is constantly renewed and recurring, though interrupted. A storm of rain is *continuous* ; a succession of showers is *continual*. *Perpetual* is that which is both continuous and lasting ; as ‘perpetual motion’ ; *eternal* is lasting through all the past as well as the future.

26. **Religious, pious, godly, devout, righteous.**—*Religious*, means scrupulous in one’s conduct towards God ; *pious* implies a reverence for what is good and a desire to do good ; *godly* means endeavouring to be like God ; *devout*, devoted to the worship and service of God ; while *righteous* means upright and honest in one’s dealings.

27. **Strict, severe.**—*Strict* is used of one who likes to keep close to rules and regulations ; *severe*, of one who keeps so close to them as to punish the slightest infringement.

28. **Permit, allow, suffer.**—To *permit* is to give a decided acquiescence ; to *allow* is to abstain from refusal ; to *suffer* is not to oppose a thing, though our feelings are against it. A school-master may *suffer* a fault to pass unnoticed ; may *allow* his scholars occasionally to talk in the class-room ; and *permit* their going out of the room.

29. **Command, injunction, order.**—*Command* is the loftier term, as in ‘ By command of the Queen ’ ; an *injunction* comes from some superior authority, often as to general conduct ; an *order* from some arranging or directing authority, as to particular acts. A servant receives *orders* to do something for his master, but *injunctions* to be careful and painstaking.

30. **Delightful, delicious.**—*Delightful* is applied both to the pleasures of the mind and to those of the senses, except taste ; *delicious* only to those of the senses. An excursion is *delightful*, a fruit is *delicious*.

31. **Character, reputation.**—*Character* is the sum of a man’s qualities which *mark* him as good or bad ; *reputation* is what people *think* of those qualities, as far as they know them. A dishonest man has a bad *character* ; but if he manages to conceal his dishonesty, he may have a good *reputation*.

32. **Part, portion.**—*Part* is the general term ; a *portion* is a part set aside for a special purpose. A friend may go *part* of the way home with you ; a daughter receives a marriage *portion*.

33. **Sociable, social.**—*Sociable* means fitted for society ; *social*, related to society : a *sociable* man ; *social* science.

34. **Efficacious, efficient, effective, effectual.**—These all mean ‘ producing the desired result,’ but differ slightly in their use. A patient, having received an *efficacious* remedy, which is found to be very *effective* in its working, from an *efficient* physician, is *effectually* cured.

35. **Confess, admit.**—*Confess* is a stronger expression than *admit*. We *confess* that we are wrong ; we *admit* that we are mistaken.

36. **Stop, stay.**—To *stop* is to arrest motion ; to *stay* is to remain when motion is arrested. A man may *stop* in the street to greet a friend ; he may go and *stay* at his friend’s house.

37. **Crime, vice, sin.**—*Crime* is a violation of the law of a country ; *vice* is a violation of a moral law ; *sin* is a violation of a religious

**law.** Smuggling is a *crime*: idleness is a *vice*; unbelief is a *sin*.

**38. Passive, impassive, patient.**—*Passive* means doing nothing, because one has a capacity for endurance; *impassive* means doing nothing, because one's feelings are blunted. *Patient* refers to the mental condition. A man is *patient*, when he submits to a wrong without anger or repining; *passive*, when he submits to a wrong without resisting; *impassive*, when he submits to a wrong because he does not feel it.

**39. Simulate, dissimulate.**—To *simulate* is to pretend to be what you are not; to *dissimulate* (or *dissemble*) is to hide what you really are. A thief dressed up as a policeman practises *simulation*; a detective in plain clothes practises *dissimulation*.

**40. Visitor, visitant.**—*Visitor* is the common term; but we should speak of an angel as a celestial *visitant*, not *visitor*.

**87. Groups of Synonyms** without meanings attached are given below. It will be a useful exercise for the student to distinguish their meanings and illustrate them in short pieces of written composition.

1. Power, strength, force, authority.
2. Anger, vexation, annoyance, wrath, resentment.
3. Wisdom, learning, acquaintance, knowledge.
4. Unnatural, non-natural, preternatural, supernatural.
5. Jocose, funny, ludicrous, ridiculous, absurd.
6. Build, erect, construct.
7. Bravery, courage, gallantry, fortitude.
8. Deference, respect, reverence, veneration.
9. Frank, candid, ingenuous.
10. Timidity, shyness, bashfulness, diffidence.
11. Variance, variety, variation.
12. Useful, advantageous, expedient.
13. Hasty, premature, precipitate.
14. Pain, grief, sorrow, agony, anguish.
15. Authentic, genuine.
16. Comprehend, understand, apprehend.
17. Gentle, tender, kind, mild.
18. See, look, behold, discern, perceive.
19. Return, restore, surrender.
20. Dangerous, perilous, hazardous.
21. Compulsion, restraint, constraint.
22. Figure, emblem, symbol, type.
23. Occurrence, event, circumstance.
24. Superfluous, needless, unnecessary.
25. Obvious, clear, evident.
26. Tell, say, relate, recount, describe.

27. Customary, fashionable, conventional.
28. Accomplish, effect, execute, achieve.
29. Adversity, calamity, misery, tribulation.
30. Imagination, fancy.
31. Teach, instruct, inform, educate.
32. Civil, courteous, affable, polite.
33. Linger, loiter, stay.
34. Implacable, unrelenting, inexorable.
35. Secret, hidden, covert, tacit.
36. Sly, cunning, crafty, deceitful.
37. Avacious, miserly, stingy, penurious.
38. Pardon, forgive, excuse.
39. Faith, belief, credulity.
40. Privacy, retirement, solitude, loneliness, desolation.
41. Envy, jealousy.
42. Autocrat, despot, tyrant, monarch.
43. Wit, humour.
44. Error, mistake, blunder.
45. Dexterity, address, skill, cleverness.
46. Bias, prepossession, prejudice.
47. Aversion, antipathy, dislike, hatred, repugnance.
48. Enemy, antagonist, adversary, opponent.
49. Reproof, reprimand, censure, remonstrance, reproach.
50. Distinguish, discriminate.
51. Person, individual, creature, being.
52. Savage, barbarian.
53. Size, bulk, volume.
54. Couple, pair.
55. Remember, recollect.
56. Truism, platitude, commonplace.
57. Truth, veracity.
58. Revenge, vengeance.
59. Lawless, unlawful, illegal.
60. Contrary, opposite, reverse.
61. Vulgarism, vulgarity.
62. Communism, community.
63. Opportunity, occasion, juncture.
64. Ostensibly, apparently.
65. Residue, remainder, remnant.
66. Disposal, disposition.
67. Degeneration, degeneracy.
68. Respite, reprieve.
69. Competitor, rival.
70. Include, comprise.
71. Procedure, proceeding.
72. Reticence, reserve.
73. Sanatory, sanitary, sanative, salutary, salubrious.
74. Impracticable, impossible.
75. Inevitable, unavoidable.
76. Respect, esteem.
77. Vacant, empty, void.
78. Slander, calumny, detraction, defamation.
79. Confuse, confound, derange.
80. Increase, enlarge, augment.

81. Prompt, incite, instigate, provoke.
82. Regret, lament, deplore.
83. Scarce, rare.
84. Despise, contemn, scorn, disdain.
85. Rise, ascend, mount, soar.
86. Recover, regain, retrieve.
87. Guard, keep, preserve.
88. Frailty, foible, failing.
89. Severe, harsh, rigorous, stern, austere, strict.
90. Brief, concise, terse, pithy.
91. Contemplation, meditation.
92. Modest, diffident, bashful, shy, demure, reserved.
93. Mad, insane, imbecile.
94. Rude, impertinent, insolent, impudent.
95. Force, compel, coerce, oblige, constrain.
96. Separate, part, divide.
97. Abbreviate, abridge.
98. Hereafter, henceforth.
99. Conscious, aware.
100. Perpendicular, vertical.

## HOMONYMS.

88. Homonyms are words, in the same language, which, though distinct in origin and meaning, have the same form and sound. Thus *date*, a point of time, is derived from the Latin *datum*, given; whereas *date*, the fruit, comes from the Greek *daktulos*, a finger. Similarly, there are three *barks*, all of different meaning and derivation: thus, *bark*, a ship, is from Low Latin *barca*, a sort of ship; the *bark* of a tree is from the Swedish *bark*, rind; and to *bark*, of a dog, is from the Old English *beorcan*, a variant of *brecan*, to break. This sameness of form in words is caused by the gradual dropping away of letters and endings by which they were once distinguished from one another.

The principal words of this kind are:—

air	cape	ear	halt	lock
arch	case	earnest	hamper	low
arm	cleave	elder	hawk	mail
ball	cock	fair	hind	march
base	corn	fawn	hold	mass
bat	corporal	fell	host	match
bay	count	fit	jar	meal
bear	cow	foil	lap	mean
blow	cricket	gore	lay	meet
bound	cuff	grate	league	mint
bowl	defile	grave	leave	mole
broil	desert	graze	lie	mood
brook	die	gum	light	moor
burden	dock	gust	lime	mould
calf	down	hail	list	net



own	pound	refrain	seal	tap
page	prune	rent	shed	tart
pale	pulse	rest	shoal	temple
pawn	quarry	rifle	soil	till
peer	quiere	ring	sole	toil
pile	quiver	rock	sound	tow
pine	race	roe	spell	vase
pitch	rail	row	spit	vice
plot	rally	rush	stern	wax
poke	rank	sash	story	well
poise	rear	scale	swallow	yard

**89. Apparent Homonyms.**—There are not a few words of the same form and pronunciation, which look like Homonyms, but which may be traced back to the same root. Thus *score*, to mark, and *score*, the number twenty, both come from the Old English *scor*, a notch, a common method of reckoning ; and *suit*, an action at law, and *suit*, a set, as in ‘ a suit of clothes,’ can both be traced to the French *suivre* (p.p. *suit*) to follow, in the two senses of to pursue and to form a series.

The principal words of this kind are :—

angle	deal	lac	pen	stem
band	defer	lean	pet	taper
bank	fast	like	poach	top
beam	fine	limp	port	trace
bit	fleet	long	porter	tract
brief	gull	mall	prank	trick
capital	hack	muscle	prune	vault
club	hide	palm	pupil	ware
court	kind	peck	share	wise

### ANTONYMS.

**90.** The opposite to synonyms are *antonyms*, which are words of the same class that are antithetical to each other in meaning. Thus *life* is the antonym of *death*, *good* of *bad* or *evil*, *rise* of *fall*. Mere negations, like *truth*, *untruth* ; *noisy*, *noiseless* ; *sense*, *non-sense* ; *ordinary*, *extraordinary*, may be left out of consideration. It should be noticed that some words, used in different senses, have more than one antonym. as *right*, *wrong* ; *right*, *left*. In the same way the antonym of *rich*, when applied to fare or diet, is not *poor* but *plain* ; of *wild*, applied to a flower, is *garden* ; of *fair*, applied to hair or complexion, is *dark*. The opposite of a *bright* light is not a *dark* but a *dim* light ; of a *sharp* attack of fever is a *mild* attack ; *strong* tobacco is opposed not to *weak* but to *mild* tobacco, and *raw* to *trained* or *disciplined* troops. Antonyms, like synonyms

afford scope for useful exercises. The following are examples of words of this kind.

Nouns.

Joy	sorrow	Hope	despair
Friend	{ enemy foe	Flattery	detractio <sup>n</sup>
Sea }		Orthodoxy	heterodoxy
Water }	land	Truth	{ falsehood error
Night	day	Memory	oblivion <sup>n</sup>
Love	hate	Propulsion	regression
Youth	age	Melody	discord
Whole	part	Country	town
Front }		Safety	danger
Van }	rear	Roar	whisper
Head	{ tail foot	Belief	doubt
Top	bottom	Recovery	relapse
Happiness	misery	Law	equity
Use	abuse	Weal	woe
Work	rest	Pros	cons
Haste	leisure	Time	eternity
Affluence	penury	Length	breadth
Doctor	patient	Simplicity	duplicity
Poetry	prose	Glory	shame
Freedom }		Bravery	cowardice
Liberty }	slavery	Pride	humility
Virtue	vice	Marriage	celibacy
Hero	villain	Plaintiff	defendant
Ruler	subject	Clergy	laity
Master	servant	Poison	antidote
Mistress	maid	Aristocracy	democracy
Storm	calm	Debit	credit
War	peace	Debtor	creditor
Attack	defence	Volunteer	conscript
Success	failure	Question	answer
Gain	loss	Heaven	{ hell earth
Victory	defeat	Word	deed
Prosperity	adversity	Egoism	altruism
Obverse	reverse	Omission	commission
Ebb	flow	Body	soul
Motion	rest	Light	{ shade darkness
Pleasure	pain	Saint	sinner
Presence	absence	Original	{ copy duplicate
Elevation	depression	Theory	practice
Knowledge	ignorance	Synthesis	analysis
Use	abuse	Nominalism	realism
Reward	punishment	Type	antitype
Spendthrift	miser	In posse	in esse
Ancestor	descendant	Zenith	nadir
Rejoicing	lamentation		
Imagination	reality		

## ADJECTIVES.

White	black	Ill	well
Hot	cold	Sick	
Warm	cool	Difficult	easy
Rich	poor	Fast	loose
Har.	{ soft	Tight	
	{ easy	Fast	
Broad		Quick	slow
Wide	narrow	Strict	lenient
Heavy	light	Severe	mild
Strong	weak	Cheap	dear
Thick	thin	Absolute (mon-	limited (mon-
True	false	archy)	archy)
Beautiful	ugly	Nomad	
Long		Migratory	sedentary
Tall	short	Exotic	indigenous
Full	empty	Salient	re-entrant
Fair	foul	Hot-headed	cool-headed
Wise	foolish	Warm-hearted	cold-hearted
First	last	Immanent	transcendent
Clever	stupid	Centrifugal	centripetal
Far	{ near	Deep	shallow
	{ wide	Round	{ flat
This	that		{ square
Young		Native	foreign
New	old	Transparent	opaque
Dark	light	Public	private
Straight	crooked	Explicit	implicit
Sharp	blunt	General	{ particular
Rough	smooth		{ special
Sweet	{ bitter	Affirmative	
	{ sour	Positive	negative
Solid	{ liquid	Clothed	naked
	{ hollow	Cooked	raw
Old	even	Vertical	horizontal
Clean	dirty	Concise	diffuse
Loud	{ soft	Industrious	idle
	{ low	Objective	subjective
Great	small	Sensitive	callous
Big	little	Sprightly	dull
High	low	Ancient	modern
Many	few	Polite	rude
Early		Aristocratic	plebeian
Soon	late	Innocent	guilty
Wild	tame	Sacred	profane
Common	rare	Religious	secular
Wet	{ dry	Male	female
	{ fine	Home	foreign
Fat	{ thin	Single	double
	{ lean	Sublime	ridiculous
More	less	Natural	artificial
Dense	rare	Convex	concave

# ANTONYMS.

51

<b>Abstract</b>	<b>concrete</b>	<b>Mad</b>	<b>sane</b>
<b>Literal</b>	<b>figurative</b>	<b>Masculine</b>	<b>feminine</b>
<b>Esoteric</b>	<b>exoteric</b>	<b>Nice</b>	<b>nasty</b>
<b>Loquacious</b>	<b>taciturn</b>	<b>Moral</b>	<b>physical</b>
<b>Important</b>	<b>trivial</b>	<b>Temporal</b>	<b>spiritual</b>
<b>Active</b>	<b>passive</b>	<b>Carnal</b>	
<b>Cheerful</b>	<b>gloomy</b>	<b>Ideal</b>	<b>actual</b>
<b>Ornamental</b>	<b>useful</b>	<b>Ostensible</b>	<b>real</b>
<b>Rash</b>	<b>cautious</b>	<b>Nominal</b>	<b>actual</b>
<b>Genuine</b>	<b>spurious</b>		<b>normal</b>
<b>Vigorous</b>	<b>feeble</b>	<b>Relative</b>	<b>absolute</b>
<b>Bound</b>	<b>free</b>	<b>Singular</b>	<b>plural</b>
<b>Sober</b>	<b>drunk</b>	<b>Voluntary</b>	<b>compulsory</b>

## VERBS.

<b>Go</b>	<b>come</b>	<b>Resist</b>	<b>submit</b>
<b>Walk</b>	<b>run</b>	<b>Permit</b>	<b>prohibit</b>
<b>Agree</b>	<b>differ</b>	<b>Allow</b>	<b>forbid</b>
<b>Affirm</b>	<b>deny</b>	<b>Give</b>	<b>receive</b>
<b>Precede</b>	<b>succeed</b>		<b>take</b>
<b>Create</b>	<b>destroy</b>	<b>Buy</b>	<b>sell</b>
<b>Advance</b>	<b>retreat</b>	<b>Admit</b>	<b>repudiate</b>
<b>Attract</b>	<b>repel</b>	<b>Hit</b>	<b>miss</b>
<b>Insert</b>	<b>extract</b>	<b>Hide</b>	<b>seek</b>
<b>Remember</b>	<b>forget</b>	<b>Open</b>	<b>shut</b>
<b>Alleviate</b>	<b>aggravate</b>		<b>close</b>
<b>Offer</b>	<b>refuse</b>	<b>Teach</b>	<b>learn</b>
<b>Lend</b>	<b>borrow</b>	<b>Wake</b>	<b>sleep</b>
<b>Let</b>	<b>hire</b>	<b>Lose</b>	<b>find</b>
<b>Laugh</b>	<b>cry</b>	<b>Sink</b>	<b>swim</b>
	<b>weep</b>	<b>Sleep</b>	<b>wake</b>
<b>Smile</b>	<b>sigh</b>	<b>Do</b>	<b>suffer</b>
<b>Accuse</b>	<b>defend</b>	<b>Begin</b>	<b>end</b>
<b>Acquit</b>	<b>condemn</b>	<b>Arrive</b>	<b>depart</b>
<b>Discharge</b>	<b>convict</b>	<b>Record</b>	<b>obliterate</b>
<b>Gather</b>	<b>scatter</b>	<b>Hurt</b>	<b>heal</b>
<b>Accept</b>	<b>reject</b>	<b>Rise</b>	<b>fall</b>
<b>Lead</b>	<b>follow</b>		<b>set</b>
<b>Help</b>	<b>hinder</b>		

## ADVERBS AND PREPOSITIONS.

<b>Here</b>	<b>there</b>	<b>Often</b>	<b>seldom</b>
<b>Now</b>	<b>then</b>	<b>At home</b>	<b>abroad</b>
<b>To</b>	<b>fro</b>	<b>Yes</b>	<b>no</b>
<b>Off</b>	<b>on</b>	<b>Yea</b>	<b>nay</b>
<b>In</b>	<b>out</b>	<b>Above</b>	<b>below</b>
<b>Up</b>	<b>down</b>		<b>beneath</b>
<b>For</b>	<b>against</b>		

## DOUBLETS.

91. **Doublets** are words which, though differing in form and meaning, have the same derivation. Thus *custom* and *costume* are both derived from the Latin *consuetudinem*, custom; *beaker* and *pucher* can both be traced back to the Greek *bikos*, an earthen wine-vessel; and *tulip* (French *tulipan*) and *turban* (French *tolo-pau*) both come from the same Turkish word *tulbend* or *dulbend*, a turban, which the flower was supposed to resemble.

The difference in form frequently arises from the fact that a word of Latin or Greek origin comes to us first through one of the Romance languages, especially the French, and then is introduced afresh direct from the Latin or the Greek. Thus the verb *abridge* comes from the Old French *abridgier*, which is derived from the Latin *abbreviare*, to shorten; while its doublet, *abbreviate* comes direct from the Latin word.

In some instances contraction or corruption has given rise to the two forms. Thus *valet* is only a shortened form of *varlet*; and *ant* is a contracted form of *emmet*, the Old English *amette*, which was successively shortened into *amette*, *amet*, *amt*, *ant*. *Hatchment* is a corruption of *atchment*, short for *atchievement*, the old form of *achievement*; and *diamond* is a corruption of *adamant*.

Doublets sometimes differ but slightly in form and meaning, as *amend* and *emend*; *amend* (with noun *amendment*) is the general term, as in 'to *amend* one's life.' *emend* (with noun *emendation*) is the particular term, as in 'to *emend* an author's text.' *Depositary* is the person with whom you deposit a thing, *depository* is the place where you deposit it. *Essay* is the general term, *assay* is generally used of the testing of metals. *Endue* is merely an older spelling of *endow*. Similarly we have to *squall* and to *squeal*, to *thrash* and to *thresh*, *gentle* and *genteel*, *complacent* (gratified) and *complaisant* (civil). Sometimes the difference is merely one of grammatical class: thus *envel'ope*, *practise*, *prophesy*, *coquet* are verbs; *en'velope*, *practice*, *prophecy*, *coquette* are nouns. *Stayed* is the participial, *staid* is the adjectival form. *Accessory* is generally used as a noun, *accessary* as an adjective.

The principal words of this kind are:

Aggrieve, aggravate	Calumny, challenge	Chaise, chair
Aptitude, attitude	Cancer, canker	Channel, canal, kennel
Arc, arch	Card, chart	Chant, cant
Attack, attach	Castigate, chastise	Chariot, cart
Beak, peak	Catch, chase	Chieftain, captain
Bench, bank	Cattle, chattle, capital	Chord, cord
Benediction, benison	Cavalry, chivalry	Cipher, zero
Cadence, chance	Cave, cage	Collect, cull
Caitiff, captive	Cell, hail	Comprehend, comprise

Compute, count	Inch, ounce	Ransom, redemption
Conception, conceit	Isolate, insulate	Regal, royal
Confuse, confound	Jealous, zealous	Regulate, rule
Courtesy, curtesy	Listen, lurk	Renew, renovate
Coy, quiet	Locust, lobster	Respect, respite
Crook, cross	Loyal, legal	Rover, robber
Dell, dale	Malediction, malison	Saliva, slime
Descry, describe	Manœuvre, manure	Scandal, slander
Desire, desiderate	Metal, mettle	Scatter, shatter
Dish, disc, desk, dais	Mobile, movable	Scratch, grate
Due, debit	Moment, movement	Screech, shriek
Employ, implicate	Monster, muster	Secure, sure
Envious, invidious	Musket, mosquito	Senior, sir
Enwrap, envelop	Naive, native	Servant, sergeant,
Evil, ill	Naked, nude	serjeant
Extraneous, strange	Obedience, obeisance	Skiff, ship
Fact, feat	Pair, peer, par	Skirmish, scrimmage
Faculty, facility	Parson, person	Sop, soup
Fashion, faction	Pauper, poor	Stint, stunt
Fidelity, fealty	Penance, penitence	Suppliant, suppliant
Fife, pipe	Persecute, pursue	Tamper, temper
Finite, fine	Piety, pity	Task, tax
Flower, flour	Plan, plain, plane	Taunt, tempt
Font, fount	Poignant, pungent	Tight, taut
Fragile, frail	Poison, potion	Tone, tune
Granary, garner	Porch, portico	Tradition, treason
Guarantee, warranty	Praise, price	Treachery, trickery
Guard, ward	Predicate, preach	Vast, waste
Guest, host	Probe, prove	Verb, word
Guile, wile	Provide, purvey	Vocal, vowel
Hale, whole	Provident, prudent	Vote, vow
Hospital, hostel, hotel	Purpose, propose	Wain, wagon

### CONFUSED WORDS.

92. The young writer is apt, through either carelessness or ignorance, to confuse words that are similar in form or in sound but different in meaning. Thus *statue*, a sculptured figure, is confused with *statute*, a law, and both with *stature*, height. *Reverend*, venerable, is used where *reverent*, devout, is intended. *Respectable*, deserving respect or consideration, *respectful*, showing respect, and *respected*, receiving respect, are often confused together. We find *ascendancy*, control, sway, taking the place of *ascendant* in the phrase 'in the ascendant,' dominant, supreme. *Secretion*, the physical process, should be kept distinct from *secreting*, concealment. To *signal out* is not an uncommon blunder for to *single out*. 'There were no walls daubed with *intemperate* (untempered) mortar,' remarks a well-known writer. 'These buildings were under *instruction* at the time,' said a guide, meaning of course *construction*. Even common words like *lose* and *loose*, *accept* and

*except*, with *right*, *rile*, *write*, and *wright*, are sometimes confounded with each other. *There*, again, is confused with *their*, and *gamble*, to play for money, with *gambol*, to frisk. The student should construct sentences containing the words, so as to illustrate their difference in meaning.

93.—**Two Classes.**—These words may be divided roughly <sup>1</sup> into two classes :—

I. Words that are philologically connected with each other, the difference between them being often one of termination or of prefix.

II. Words that have no such connexion, but have the same or almost the same sound. These are termed *homophones*.

#### 94. CLASS I.

Abstract, <i>to deduct</i>	Attenuate, <i>to make thin</i>
Extract, <i>to take out</i>	Extenuate, <i>lessen by excuse</i>
Acceptance, <i>consent to receive</i>	Audible, <i>able to be heard</i>
Acceptation, <i>recognised meaning</i>	Auditory, <i>pertaining to the sense of hearing</i>
Adapt, <i>to fit</i>	Avert, <i>to ward off</i>
Adopt, <i>to take, choose</i>	Invert, <i>to turn upside down</i>
Adherence, <i>attachment</i>	Barbarism, <i>uncivilised condition</i>
Adhesion, <i>concurrence</i>	Barbarity, <i>cruelty</i>
Adverse, <i>hostile</i>	Beneficial, <i>advantageous</i>
Averse, <i>disinclined</i>	Beneficent, <i>doing good</i>
Affect, <i>to act upon, pretend</i>	Benevolent, <i>desirous of doing good</i>
Effect, <i>to accomplish</i>	Capture, <i>seize</i>
Affection, <i>feeling, love</i>	Captivate, <i>fascinate</i>
Affectation, <i>pretence</i>	Ceremonious, <i>punctilious</i>
Allusion, <i>reference</i>	Ceremonial, <i>formal</i>
Illusion, <i>deception</i>	Collision, <i>conflict</i>
Alternate, <i>one and another by turns</i>	Collusion, <i>concerted fraud</i>
Alternative, <i>one or another</i>	Comity, <i>courtesy</i>
Apathy, <i>want of feeling</i>	Committee, <i>body of persons</i>
Antipathy, <i>dislike</i>	Comfit, <i>sweetmeat</i>
Apposite, <i>suitable</i>	Comfort, <i>consolation</i>
Opposite, <i>contrary</i>	Complication, <i>a tangle</i>
Appreciable, <i>that can be estimated</i>	Complicity, <i>partnership in crime</i>
Appreciative, <i>estimating justly</i>	Compliment, <i>expression of regard</i>
Ascetic, <i>austere</i>	Complement, <i>full amount</i>
Aesthetic, <i>artistic</i>	Comprehensive, <i>including much</i>
Aspirant, <i>one who aspires</i>	Comprehensible, <i>able to be understood</i>
Aspirate, <i>sound of 'h'</i>	

<sup>1</sup> A few exceptions are included, for convenience in both the tables below.

Connaent, <i>trusting, sure</i>	Distinct, <i>separate</i>
Confidential, <i>trusted, secret</i>	Distinctive, <i>characteristic</i>
Considerable, <i>large</i>	Duplication, <i>doubling</i>
Considerate, <i>thoughtful for others</i>	Duplicity, <i>deceitfulness</i>
Constant, <i>unchanging</i>	Elicit, <i>to draw out</i>
Consistent, <i>firm in one's principles</i>	Eliminate, <i>to remove</i>
Cônstrue, <i>to translate</i>	Elicit, <i>to draw out</i>
Construct, <i>to frame, build</i>	Illicit, <i>unlawful</i>
Contemptible, <i>despicable</i>	Elusive, <i>shunning notice</i>
Contemptuous, <i>scornful</i>	Illusive, <i>deceptive</i>
Contiguous, <i>adjoining</i>	Delusive, <i>unreal</i>
Contagious, <i>infectious</i>	Emigrate, <i>to leave one's own country and settle in another</i>
Continual, <i>frequent</i>	Immigrate, <i>to come as settler into a foreign country</i>
Continuous, <i>uninterrupted</i>	Eminent, <i>illustrious</i>
Corporal, <i>bodily</i>	Imminent, <i>threatening</i>
Corporeal, <i>material</i>	Equity, <i>fairness</i>
Credible, <i>believable</i>	Equitation, <i>horsemanship</i>
Creditable, <i>honourable</i>	Equivalent, <i>equal in value</i>
Deceitful, <i>deceiving</i>	Equivocal, <i>ambiguous</i>
Deception, <i>apt to deceive</i>	Eruption, <i>a bursting out</i>
Declension, <i>falling away, and Gram.</i>	Irruption, <i>a bursting in upon</i>
Declination, <i>downward bend, and Astron.</i>	Estimate, <i>calculation</i>
Decry, <i>to disparage</i>	Estimation, <i>opinion</i>
Descry, <i>to catch sight of</i>	Euphemism, <i>a mild in place of a harsh expression</i>
Deduct, <i>to subtract</i>	Euphuism, <i>an affected style of writing</i>
Deduce, <i>to infer</i>	Evasiveness, <i>quality of evading</i>
Deliverance, <i>rescue</i>	Evasion, <i>act of evading</i>
Delivery, <i>handing over</i>	Exceptional, <i>unusual</i>
Dependence, <i>reliance</i>	Exceptionable, <i>objectionable</i>
Dependency, <i>a colony</i>	Exhausting, <i>tiring</i>
Deprecate, <i>to plead against</i>	Exhaustive, <i>comprehensive</i>
Depreciate, <i>to undervalue</i>	Expanse, <i>extent</i>
Destiny, <i>fate</i>	Expansion, <i>extension</i>
Destination, <i>goal</i>	Exotic, <i>foreign</i>
Discomfort, <i>to make uneasy</i>	Exoteric, <i>intelligible, popular</i>
Discomfit, <i>to defeat</i>	Expediency, <i>advantage</i>
Disparity, <i>inequality</i>	Expedition, <i>speed</i>
Disparagement, <i>discrediting</i>	Exposition, <i>explanation</i>
Disposal, <i>assignment</i>	Exposure, <i>display</i>
Disposition, <i>arrangement</i>	Extract, <i>to draw forth</i>
	Extricate, <i>to release</i>



Factionous, *turbulent*  
 Factitious, *artificial*  
 Fictitious, *imaginary*

Faculty, *power*  
 Facility, *ease*

Fatalism, *predetermination of events*  
 Fatality, *calamity*

Flagrant, *notorious*  
 Fragrant, *sweet-smelling*

Fluent, *ready of speech*  
 Fluid, *liquid*

Funeral, *sepulchral*  
 Funereal, *gloomy*

Goal, *end*  
 Gaol, *jail*

Honourable, *worthy of honour*  
 Honorary, *conferring honour*

Human, *mortal*  
 Humane, *benevolent*

Illumined, *brightened*  
 Illuminated, *lighted up, decorated*

Imaginary, *fanciful*  
 Imaginative, *full of imagination*

Immanent, *indwelling*  
 Imminent, *impending*  
 Eminent, *distinguished*

Immerse, *dip*  
 Amorce, *fine*

Immovable, *motionless, unyielding*  
 Irremovable, *not subject to dismissal*

Impassable, *impenetrable*  
 Impassible, *incapable of feeling*  
 Impassive, *deficient in feeling*

Imperious, *haughty*  
 Imperial, *relating to empire*

Imposture, *deceitful conduct*  
 Imposition, *deceitful act*

Industrious, *diligent*  
 Industrial, *relating to industry*

Informer, *accuser*  
 Informant, *reporter*

Ingenious, *skilful*  
 Ingenuous, *candid*

Intense, *violent*  
 Intensive, *strenuous, emphatic*

Irreparable, *that cannot be rectified*  
 Irreplaceable, *that cannot be replaced*

Irreverent, *disrespectful*  
 Irrelevant, *not to the point*

Judicial, *legal*  
 Judicious, *discreet*

Junction, *joint, meeting-place*  
 Juncture, *state of affairs, crisis*

Laudable, *praiseworthy*  
 Laudatory, *complimentary*

Legislation, *law-making*  
 Legislature, *legislative body*

Luxurious, *given to luxury*  
 Luxuriant, *rich in growth*

Masterful, *imperious*  
 Masterly, *skilful*

Mendacity, *falsehood*  
 Mendicity, *begging*

Metaphorical, *figurative*  
 Metaphysical, *abstract*

Momentary, *lasting a moment*  
 Momentous, *important*

Momentarily, *for a moment*  
 Momently, *every moment*

Necessaries, *needful things*  
 Necessities, *needs*

Observance, *performance*  
 Observation, *perception*

Odious, *hateful*  
 Odorous, *fragrant*

Official, *pertaining to an office*  
 Officious, *meddling*

Ordinance, *a rule*  
 Ordnance, *cannon*

Oscillation, *swinging*  
 Osculation, *kissing*

Parasite, *a hanger-on : a plant or animal living on another*

Satellite, *a follower : a planet revolving round another*

Persecute, *harass*  
 Prosecute, *pursue, indict*  
 Personality, *personal character*  
 Personalty, *personal estate*  
 Personate, *to assume the character of*  
 Personify, *to embody, to symbolise*  
 Perspective, *in drawing*  
 Prospective, *applying to the future*  
 Perspicuous, *clear*  
 Perspicacious, *discerning*  
 Pertinent, *apposite*  
 Pertinacious, *obstinate*  
 Physic, *medicine*  
 Physique, *bodily constitution*  
 Polite, *courteous*  
 Political, *pertaining to the State*  
 Popular, *liked by the people*  
 Populous, *thickly inhabited*  
 Position, *situation*  
 Posture, *attitude*  
 Potent, *powerful*  
 Potential, *possible*  
 Practical, *useful*<sup>1</sup>  
 Practicable, *feasible*<sup>2</sup>  
 Precipitous, *steep*  
 Precipitate, *headlong, hasty*  
 Predication, *assertion*  
 Predicament, *trying situation*  
 Predication, *assertion*  
 Prediction, *prophecy*  
 Prescribe, *to direct*  
 Proscribe, *to denounce, banish*  
 Presentment, *representation*  
 Presentiment, *foreboding*  
 Pretence, *claim, pretext*  
 Pretension, *assertion of claim*  
 Primitive, *early, ancient*  
 Primary, *first, original*  
 Principal, *chief*  
 Principle, *primary truth*

Product, *thing produced, as corn*  
 Production, *thing produced, as a poem*  
 Prolific, *productive*  
 Profligate, *dissolute*  
 Propose, *to propound*  
 Purpose, *to intend*  
 Provoke, *rouse, irritate*  
 Invoke, *call on, appeal to*  
 Prudent, *discreet*  
 Prudential, *marked by prudence*  
 Pyrotechnic, *pertaining to fireworks*  
 Polytechnic, *dealing with various arts*  
 Racy, *stimulating*  
 Racial, *of a race or stock*<sup>2</sup>  
 Reciprocate, *to interchange, requite*  
 Appreciate, *to esteem highly*  
 Repair, *mending*  
 Reparation, *making repairs*  
 Requisite, *thing required*  
 Requisition, *act of requiring*  
 Resource, *means of supply*  
 Recourse, *resorting to a source of help*  
 Resort, *source of help*  
 Reverse, *contrary, disaster*  
 Reversal, *transposition*  
 Reversion, *return*  
 Reverend, *deserving reverence*  
 Reverent, *feeling reverence*  
 Reverential, *showing reverence*  
 Sanguine, *hopeful*  
 Sanguinary, *bloody*  
 Satire, *ridicule*  
 Satyr, *woodland deity, with a beast's ears and tail*  
 Sequel, *result*  
 Sequence, *series*  
 Servitude, *slavery*  
 Servility, *slavishness*

<sup>1</sup> Observe that the negatives are *unpractical*, but *impracticable*.

<sup>2</sup> A false hybrid (84); it is better to use *race* as an adjective.

*Sinecure, office without duties*  
*Cynosure, centre of attraction*  
*Singled, chosen out*  
*Signalled, announced by signal*  
*Skilful, clever*  
*Skilled, trained, expert*  
*Solicitation, importunity*  
*Solicitude, anxiety*  
*Spiritual, of soul*  
*Spirituuous, of liquor*  
*Stationary, not moving*  
*Stationery, writing materials*  
*Stimulus, exciting mental action*  
*Stimulant, exciting bodily action*  
*Suit, an action at law, a set*<sup>1</sup>  
*Suite, a retinue, a series*<sup>1</sup>  
*Suspense, uncertainty*  
*Suspension, hanging up*  
*Tactful, adroit*  
*Tactical, relating to tactics*  
*Tattoo, to mark the skin*  
*Taboo, to prohibit*  
*Transcendant, superlative*  
*Transcendental, unknowable*

*Transcribe, copy out*  
*Translate, turn into another language*  
*Transit, passage, conveyance*  
*Transition, change*  
*Triumphal, used in or celebrating a triumph*  
*Triumphant, victorious*  
*Transitory, fleeting*  
*Transitional, liable to change*  
*Treachery, perfidy*  
*Treason, disloyalty*  
*Typographical, printing*  
*Topographical, locally descriptive*  
*Venal, mercenary*  
*Venial, excusable*  
*Veracity, truthfulness*  
*Voracity, greediness*  
*Verbal, relating to words*  
*Verbose, wordy, prolix*  
*Vicious, evil*  
*Viscous, sticky*  
*Violence, outrage*  
*Violation, infringement*  
*Wreck, to ruin*  
*Wreak, to give play to (vengeance, etc.)*

## 95. CLASS II.

*Aisle, of a church*  
*Isle, island*  
*Altar, for sacrifice*  
*Alter, to change*  
*Areas, regions*  
*Arrears, debts*  
*Ascent, going up*  
*Assent, agreement*  
*Aught, anything*  
*Ought, the verb*  
*Beach, shore*  
*Beech, tree*  
*Beer, the drink*  
*Bier, for a corpse*

*Berry, fruit*  
*Bury, to inter*  
*Birth, being born*  
*Berth, bed on a ship*  
*Blue, the colour*  
*Blew, did blow*  
*Breach, gap*  
*Breech, hinder part*  
*Break, fracture*  
*Brake, check*  
*Bridal, nuptial*  
*Bridle, of a horse*  
*Brooch, ornament*  
*Broach, to pierce*

<sup>1</sup> As a *suit* of clothes or cards; a *suite* of rooms or furniture.

**Calendar, almanac**  
**Calender, roller-machine**

**Cannon, great gun**  
**Canon, rule**

**Canvas, coarse cloth**  
**Canvass, solicit votes**

**Cast, throw**  
**Caste, breed**

**Ceiling, of a room**  
**Sealing, with wax**

**Champagne, wine**  
**Champaign, open countr**

**Clamant, noisy**  
**Claimant, one who claim**

**Cord, string**  
**Chord, in music**

**Council, assembly**  
**Counsel, advice**

**Cruise, voyage**  
**Cruse, bottle**

**Cue, in acting, billiards**  
**Queue, line of persons**

**Currant, small grape**  
**Current, circulating, stream**

**Decease, death**  
**Disease, malady**

**Desert, to abandon**  
**Dessert, fruit**

**Dissent, to disagree**  
**Descent, going down**  
**Decent, seemly**

**Dual, double**  
**Duel, a single combat**

**Dyeing, colouring**  
**Dying, expiring**

**Faun, satyr**  
**Fawn, deer, to crine**

**Faint, languid, dim**  
**Feint, pretence**

**Flour, meal**  
**Flower, blossom**

**Forth, out**  
**Fourth, from four**

**Gage, pledge**  
**Gauge, measure**

**Glacier, mass of ice**  
**Glazier, window-mender**

**Grizzly, grey**  
**Grisly, frightful**

**Hoard, to store up**  
**Horde, tribe**

**Hole, pit**  
**Whole, entire**

**Hoop, band**  
**Whoop, the sound**

**Jam, fruit conserve**  
**Jamb, side-post of door**

**Key, for a lock**  
**Quay, of a harbour**

**Lath, strip of wood**  
**Lathe, machine**

**Lightning, flash**  
**Lightening, emitting lightning**

**Magnet, loadstone**  
**Magnate, great man**

**Mantle, cloak**  
**Mantel, of fireplace**

**Meddle, to interfere**  
**Medal, coin**

**Metal, as iron**  
**Mettle, courage**

**Meter, measure**  
**Metre, in verse**

**Mussel, shell-fish**  
**Muscle, part of body**

**Nought, cipher**  
**Naught, nothing**

**Oar, for rowing**  
**Ore, crude metal**  
**O'er, over**

**Oral, spoken**  
**Aural, auricular**

Pallet, *a bed*  
 Palette, *of a painter*  
 Palate, *of the mouth*

Passed, *gone*  
 Past, *not present*

Pedal, *worked by foot*  
 Fiddle, *to trifle*

Peace, *rest*  
 Piece, *part*

Peer, *nobleman*  
 Pier, *jetty*

Plain, *clear, etc.*  
 Plane, *a tree, etc.*

Plum, *a fruit*  
 Plumb, *to fathom*

Pray, *to entreat*  
 Prey, *plunder*

President, *one who presides*  
 Precedent, *example*

Rapt, *enraptured*  
 Wrapt, *enfolded*

Reck, *to care*  
 Wreck, *to scatter*

Ring, *to sound*  
 Wring, *to twist*

Scurfy, *having scurf*  
 Scurvy, *contemptible*

Sight, *seeing*  
 Site, *situation*

Skull, *of the head*  
 Scull, *oar*

Släver, *slave-trader*  
 Släver, *spittle, flattery*

Slight, *trivial*  
 Sleight, *trick*

Sort, *kind*  
 Sought, *sought for*

Stake, *of wood*  
 Steak, *of beef*

Stayed, *remained*  
 Staid, *dignified*

Story, *tale*  
 Storey, *of a house*

Straight, *direct*  
 Strait, *narrow*

Studded, *thickly set*  
 Studied, *investigated*

Sty, *pigsty*  
 Styce, *in the eye*

Style, *manner of writing*  
 Stile, *set of steps*

Surplus, *excess*  
 Surplice, *a garment*

Taught, *instructed*  
 Taut, *tight*

Tear, *from the eyes*  
 Tier, *a row*

Teem, *to abound*  
 Team, *of oxen*

Tenor, *purport, etc.*  
 Tenure, *holding (of land, etc.)*

Trend, *to incline*  
 Trench, *to encroach*

Vain, *fruitless*  
 Vane, *weathercock*  
 Vein, *blood-vessel*

Vale, *valley*  
 Veil, *for the face*

Wain, *waggon*  
 Wane, *to decline*

Wait, *to stay*  
 Weight, *heaviness*

Waste, *to squander*  
 Waist, *the middle*

Wave, *brandish*  
 Waive, *relinquish*

Weather, *state of the air*  
 Whether, *if*  
 Wether, *sheep*

Week, *seven days*  
 Weak, *feeble*

Were, verb  
Where, adverb

Wet, moist  
Whet, to sharpen

Wit, intelligence  
Whit, particle

Won, did win  
One, the number

Yew, a tree  
Ewe, female sheep

Yoke, of oxen  
Yolk, of an egg

### WORDS DERIVED FROM PROPER NAMES.

96. The derivation of words from Proper Names forms an interesting subject of investigation. Thus *joyial* literally means 'relating to Jove or Jupiter,' and then 'being under the influence of the planet Jupiter,' which, in astrology, was regarded as the source of joy and happiness. *Boycott*, again, signifying the systematic refusal, on the part of a community, of social or commercial relations with one of its members, in order to coerce or intimidate him, is derived from Captain Boycott, an Irish landlord, who was so treated in 1880.

(a) One class of these words points to the place where the thing was first made or whence it was derived : as *arras* (Arras, town in Artois), *bantam* (Bantam, in Java), *bayonet* (Bayonne, in France), *bungalow* (Bengal), *burgundy* (wine of Burgundy), *calico* (Calicut, on the Malabar coast), *cambric* (corruption of Cambray), *canary* (Canary Islands), *cannibal* (caribal, a Carib), *champagne* (wine of Champagne, in France), *cherry* (cherise = Cerasus), *china* (China), *copper* (Lat. Cyprium, Cyprian metal), *currant* (Corauntz, Corinth), *damask* (Ital. Damasco, of Damascus), *damson* (M.E. damascene, of Damascus), *galloway* (horse from Galloway), *indigo* (Gk *indikon*, Indian), *jersey* (Channel island), *lawn* (linen of Laon), *magnet* (stone of Magnesia), *nankeen* (Nanking, in China), *parchment* (Lat. pergamena, paper of Pergamum), *peach* (Lat. persicum, Persian apple), *pheasant* (Phasian bird), *port* (shortened from Oporto), *sardonyx* (Sardian onyx), *sedan-chair* (Sedan, in France), *sherry* (sherris, from Xeres, in Spain), *spaniel* (Span. español, Spanish), *turkey* (Turkey), *worsted* (Worsted, in Norfolk).

(a) Another class points to the name of their inventor : as *bloomer* (costume invented by Mrs. Bloomer), *bowie-knife* (Colonel Bowie, 1836), *brougham* (the first Lord Brougham), *chubb-lock*, *davenport*, *doily* (Doyley, first maker), *hansom* ('Hansom's patent safety cab'), *mackintosh* (material patented by C. Mackintosh), *mauser* (rifle by Mauser), *negus* (Col. Negus, 1732), *maxim* (gun by Hiram Maxim), *pinchbeck* (C. Pinchbeck, watchmaker, 1732), *sandwich* (Earl of Sandwich, d. 1792), *shrapnel* (General Shrapnel, 1842).

## HINTS ON THE STUDY OF ENGLISH.

### 97. 'Examples.

WORD	DERIVATION
<b>Antimacassar</b>	<i>Macassar</i> , an island in the Celebes, producing the hair oil. earlier <i>ragusy</i> , vessel of Ragusa (confused with the Argo).
<b>Argosy</b>	name of Greek god, who bore the universe on his shoulders.
<b>Atlas</b>	<i>Bethlem</i> = Bethlehem, name of a hospital used as a lunatic
<b>Bedlam</b>	asylum.
<b>Billingsgate</b>	the scolding of fish-women in <i>Billingsgate</i> market.
<b>Blarney</b>	name of an Irish castle with stone giving a cajoling tongue to whoever kisses it.
<b>Bowdlerise</b>	Thos. <i>Bowdler</i> , who published an expurgated Shakspeare in 1818.
<b>Bohemian</b>	Fr. <i>bohémien</i> , gipsy, of Bohemia.
<b>Braggadocio</b>	name of a boastful character in the 'Faery Queen.'
<b>Bunkum</b>	<i>Buncombe</i> , town in N. Carolina, whose member spoke needlessly in Congress to please his constituents.
<b>Burke</b>	<i>Burke</i> , executed in 1829 for smothering people, to fill the bodies for dissection.
<b>Camellia</b>	the Jesuit botanist, <i>Kamel</i> , seventeenth century.
<b>Cannibal</b>	Span. <i>Canibales</i> , from <i>Carib</i> .
<b>Canter</b>	see 107, III.
<b>Chauvinism</b>	<i>Chauvin</i> , Napoleonic veteran in Cogniard's 'Cocarde Tricolore,' 1831.
<b>Dahlia</b>	<i>Dahl</i> , a Swedish botanist, who introduced it from Mexico.
<b>Derrick</b>	name of a hangman, about 1600.
<b>Doll</b>	<i>Dolly</i> , short for Dorothy.
<b>Dunce</b>	a <i>Duns</i> man, disciple of Duns Scotus, schoolman, d. 1308.
<b>Epicure</b>	<i>Epicurus</i> , the philosopher, who taught that pleasure was the chief good.
<b>Frank</b>	old Fr. <i>franc</i> , free, the Franks only having full freedom.
<b>Galvanism</b>	discovered by <i>Galvani</i> in 1792.
<b>Gamboge</b>	gum resin from <i>Cambodian</i> tree.
<b>Gargantuan</b>	<i>Gargantua</i> , giant in Rabelais.
<b>Gasconade</b>	<i>Gascon</i> , native of Gascony, braggart.
<b>Gothic</b>	barbarous, suited to the <i>Goths</i> .
<b>Greengage</b>	Sir W. <i>Gage</i> , the grower, 1725.
<b>Guillotine</b>	Dr. <i>Guillotin</i> , the inventor, 1789.
<b>Guinea</b>	coined for trade with <i>Guinea</i> coast, 1663.
<b>Guy</b>	effigy of <i>Guy</i> Fawkes.
<b>Gypsy</b>	<i>Egyptian</i> , the race being supposed to come from <i>Egypt</i> .
<b>Hector</b>	<i>Hector</i> , Trojan hero in the 'Iliad.'
<b>Herculean</b>	<i>Hercules</i> , the Greek Samson.
<b>Hermetic</b>	<i>Hermes</i> Trismegistus, god of alchemy.
<b>Hobby</b>	Old Fr. <i>hobin</i> , <i>hobi</i> , a nag.
<b>Jeremiad</b>	<i>Jeremiah</i> , author of 'Lamentations.'
<b>Laconic</b>	<i>Laconian</i> or Spartan : famous for brevity.
<b>Lazaretto</b>	lazar-house, from <i>Lazarus</i> , the beggar of <i>Luke</i> , xvi. 20
<b>Lynch</b>	Charles <i>Lynch</i> , magistrate in Virginia, 1780.
<b>Macadamise</b>	road-making as advocated by J. L. <i>McAdam</i> , 1836.
<b>Maffick</b>	<i>Mafeking</i> , whose relief in the Boer War was riotously celebrated in London.
<b>Magenta</b>	dye discovered soon after the battle of <i>Magenta</i> , 1859.
<b>Magic</b>	<i>Magus</i> , ancient Persian priest.

WORD	DERIVATION
Malapropism	Mrs. <i>Malaprop</i> , a character in Sheridan's 'Rivals,' who blunders in the use of words.
Martinet	<i>Martinet</i> , a French drill-master under Louis XIV.
Maudlin	<i>Madelaine</i> = Magdalen, tearful penitent.
Mausoleum	<i>Mausolus</i> 's splendid tomb, erected by his queen Artemisia.
Meander	<i>Mæander</i> , name of a winding river in Phrygia.
Mesmerism	<i>Mesmer</i> , a German physician, originator of animal magnetism.
Myrmidon	Gk <i>Murmidones</i> , Thessalian followers of Achilles.
Namby-pamby	formed from name of <i>Ambrose</i> Philips, writer of birthday odes to children of quality, d. 1749.
Nicotine	<i>Nicot</i> , who introduced tobacco into France.
Palladium	image of <i>Pallas</i> , on which safety of Troy depended.
Pander	<i>Pandare</i> , character in Chaucer's 'Troilus and Criseyde.'
Panic	Gk god <i>Pan</i> , reputed cause of panics.
Pasquinade	<i>Pasquino</i> , statue at Rome on which lampoons were posted.
Phaeton	Gk <i>Phaethon</i> , driver of the sun-god's chariot.
Philippic	oration(s) of Demosthenes against <i>Philip</i> of Macedon.
Quixotic	Don <i>Quixote</i> , Cervantes's eccentric hero.
Rodomontade	<i>Rodomonte</i> , boastful character in 'Orlando Furioso.'
Sardonic	A <i>Sardinian</i> plant, causing convulsive laughter to the eater.
Saturnine	under the influence of the gloomy planet <i>Saturn</i> (cf. 'Jovial,' 96).
Silhouette	name of a parsimonious French minister of finance.
Simony	<i>Simon</i> Magus; see <i>Acts</i> , viii. 18.
Slave	low Lat. <i>sclavus</i> , a Slavonian captive.
Stentorian	<i>Stentor</i> , loud-voiced herald in the Trojan war.
Sybarite	<i>Sybaris</i> , Italian town noted for its luxury.
Tantalise	<i>Tantalus</i> , who stood up to his chin in perpetually receding water, unable to quench his thirst.
Tarantula	It. <i>tarantola</i> , spider of <i>Tarentum</i> in S. Italy.
Tawdry	<i>St. Audry's</i> (Ethelrida) fair, held in the Isle of Ely.
Thrasonical	<i>Thraso</i> , a bragging soldier in Terence's 'Eumachus.'
Utopian	Sir T. More's <i>Utopia</i> (nowhere), an imaginary island.
Vandalism	the <i>Vandals</i> , a Germanic race that ravaged Gaul, Spain, and Italy.
Volcano	Latin god, <i>Vulcan</i> .
Volt	<i>Volta</i> , Italian physicist, discoverer of Voltaism, d. 1827.

### DEGRADATION OF WORDS.

98. There is a class of words, used at first with a good or a neutral meaning, which have since gradually deteriorated, until they have at length acquired a bad meaning, or at least have lost the dignified position which they once held. This has often arisen from the lowering in worth of the person or the thing whereto the word was originally applied; or from the general experience that failure and misfortune are more common than success and prosperity. Sometimes inferior persons or things have taken to themselves superior designations to hide their deficiencies, and so have



dragged the words down to their own level ; while, occasionally, the confusion of one word with another (cf. *bondage*, 101) has caused the degradation in meaning of one of them.

99. *Examples*.—Thus, *cunning* and *crafty* meant, at first, ‘knowing’ and ‘skilful’ ; it was soon found, however, that men often used their knowledge and skill to deceive their fellows, and thus the words themselves were brought into bad odour, and came to mean ‘wily’ and ‘deceitful.’ The same thing happened to *artful* and *artifice*, which now generally imply a dishonest skill. The word *tinsel* (French *étincelle*, a spark) once signified anything that sparkled or glistened ; but, owing to men’s experience in the vanity of outward show, it has gained its present meaning of fair to the eye but really worthless. So the word *villain* meant originally a labourer on the farm or *villa* ; then, a serf ; and lastly a man with the attributes of a serf, a scoundrel. *Boor* (Dutch *boer*, a peasant), *churl*, *knave*, *menial*, *varlet* (for *vassalet*, dim. of *vassal*), *caitiff* (the same word as *captive*) have acquired bad or inferior meanings in the same way. *Fellow*, originally meaning ‘partner,’ is now often used contemptuously for ‘person.’<sup>1</sup> The word *slave* meant, in Slavonic, ‘glorious’ ; but large numbers of the Slavonians or Slaves were, in early times captured and held in bondage by the Germans, and hence the word itself became degraded. Similarly, the Old English *sælig*, ‘blessed,’ from being applied to half-witted persons appears in later English as *silly*, ‘foolish.’ *Simple* (Latin *simplex*, one-fold), meaning originally ‘plain, artless,’ has also gained the sense of ‘foolish’ by a similar process. *Indifferent* properly means neither good nor bad ; when used by itself it is now applied to what is rather bad than good.

100. *Literary Degradation (and Elevation) of Words*.—Besides the *moral*, we have also the *literary* degradation (and elevation) of words. Thus *blubbered*, *jolly*, *naughty*, *fussy*, *squeak*, *smug*, *cocksure*, *bone* (to steal), *crack* (excellent), *gills* (mouth), *treat* (entertainment) were once dignified words, conveying no slang or ludicrous notion. The word *tasty* is now out of favour. With the decline of chivalry, its terms lost their lofty meaning ; and words like *redoubtable*, *dub*, *doughty* are now used only in humorous satire. The trivial use of words like *awful* (an *awful* nuisance, thanks *awfully*) or *horrid* (a *horrid* cough) has the unfortunate effect of impairing their expressiveness as literary words. The significance of Scott’s ‘Within that awful volume lies,’ etc., or of

<sup>1</sup> But by no means universally : thus, we say ‘My dear fellow,’ and English school-boys speak of themselves as ‘Our fellows.’

Milton's 'Moloch, horrid King,' or of Keats's 'His heart beat awfully against his side,' is tainted by the cant use of the words. So with *blooming* : we hardly dare write, with Cowper, of 'blooming wonders.' The same thing, is happening with *priceless*, *ghastly*, and *weird* ; they are harped upon till they become ridiculous.<sup>1</sup>

On the other hand, *clever*, *shabby*, *coar*, and *fun* in Johnson's time were regarded as low words.<sup>2</sup> *Snub* was once merely a provincial word. *Hoax*, *mob*, and *sham* were slang terms. *Selfish* and *talented* were once barbarisms. *Kidnap* is compounded of the slang words *kid*, a child, and *nab*, to steal. The hybrid *starvation*, when it was first introduced in A.D. 1775, was looked upon as a cant or ludicrous term. *Bumptious*, *bluff*, *fad*, and to be *handicapped* in the sense of to be at a disadvantage, are creeping into literature.

101. Table of Degraded Words.—The following table comprises the principal words of this class :—

WORD	EARLIER USE	DEGRADED USE
<i>Adventurer</i>	an enterprising person	a gambler, fortune-seeker
<i>Affront</i>	confront	insult
<i>Animosity</i>	courage	hatred
<i>Antic</i>	antique, old	odd, ridiculous
<i>Apprehensive</i>	quick to understand	fearful
<i>Artificial</i>	artistic	not genuine
<i>Artisan</i>	an artist	a mechanic
<i>Aspersions</i>	a sprinkling	a calumny
<i>Audacious</i>	confident	presumptuous
<i>Base</i>	humble	wicked
<i>Boisterous</i>	strong	turbulent
<i>Bondage</i> <sup>3</sup>	an inferior land tenure	servitude
<i>Broil</i>	a battle	a noisy quarrel
<i>Cabal</i>	secret committee of the State Council	clique, faction
<i>Carp</i>	to talk	to find fault
<i>Casuistry</i>	philosophy of right and wrong	sophistry
<i>Catastrophe</i>	a conclusion	a disastrous conclusion
<i>Censure</i>	to judge	to blame
<i>Cheat</i>	to escheat, confiscate	to defraud
<i>Civil</i>	civic, refined	polite
<i>Clumsy</i>	numb	awkward

<sup>1</sup> This extravagance of diction, leading to decay of force and meaning, is seen in the expressions 'infinitely obliged,' 'tremendously or frightfully sorry,' 'a phenomenal (for extraordinary) success,' 'an epoch-making occurrence,' 'terrifically difficult,' 'I have received innumerable (for numerous) letters on the subject,' 'absolutely perfect,' 'he is monumentally droll.' *Stupendous*, *unprecedented*, *incalculable*, *inexhaustible* are often similarly misused. Cf. 852.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Miss Edgeworth's *Belinda*, Chap. IV. : 'And this too I suppose she calls a frolic, or, in her own vulgar language, "fun."'

<sup>3</sup> In *bondage*, *bond* is the Old English *bonda*, a householder (seen in 'hus-band'), and is quite distinct from *bond*, that which binds.

WORD	EARLIER USE	DEGRADED USE
<i>Coalition</i>	alliance	conspiracy
<i>Conceit</i>	a notion	an extravagant notion
<i>Counterfeit</i>	a copy, imitation	a spurious imitation
<i>Decent</i>	comely	tolerable
<i>Demagogue</i>	a popular leader	a base popular leader
<i>Demean oneself</i>	behave	debase oneself
<i>Demure</i>	modest	affectedly modest
<i>Dissolute</i>	weak	licentious
<i>Dole</i>	a portion	a scanty portion, alms
<i>Doom</i>	judgment	condemnation
<i>Egregious</i>	distinguished	notorious, preposterous
<i>Emissary</i>	agent	secret, wily agent
<i>Enormity</i>	excessiveness	an excessive crime
<i>Equivocate</i>	to speak ambiguously	to speak deceitfully
<i>Extravagant</i>	wandering	wasteful, exorbitant
<i>Facile</i>	easy	too easy
<i>Faction</i>	a party	a cabal
<i>Fain</i>	inclined	compelled by need
<i>Fieud</i>	enemy	devil
<i>Forge</i>	to fabricate	to counterfeit
<i>Fulsome</i>	surfeiting	disgusting
<i>Garble</i>	to sift	to tamper with
<i>Gossip</i> (104)	a sponsor in Baptism	a chatterbox
<i>Gross</i>	large	coarse
<i>Grotesque</i>	pantomimic	ludicrous
<i>Heathen</i>	a heath-dweller	a pagan <sup>1</sup>
<i>Homely</i>	familiar	plain, rude
<i>Hussy</i>	a housewife	a jade
<i>Idiot</i>	an uneducated person	a crazy person
<i>Imbecile</i>	feeble-bodied	feeble-minded
<i>Imp</i>	a scion, offspring	a little devil
<i>Impertinent</i>	not pertinent	impudent
<i>Imputation</i>	a charge	a reproachful charge
<i>Indolence</i>	insensibility	idleness
<i>Insolent</i>	unusual	contemptuous
<i>Jovial</i> (96)	propitious	merry
<i>Legend</i>	a chronicle	a fabulous story
<i>Leud</i>	unlearned	licentious
<i>Libel</i>	a writing	a defamatory writing
<i>Libertine</i>	a freethinker	a rake
<i>Maudlin</i> (97)	penitential	sickly-sentimental
<i>Mean</i>	common	base
<i>Meddling</i>	taking part	meddlesome
<i>Minion</i>	a darling	an unworthy favourite
<i>Miscreant</i>	an unbeliever	a villain
<i>Obsequious</i>	obedient	servile
<i>Officious</i>	kind, servicable	meddlesome
<i>Outlandish</i>	foreign	barbarous
<i>Peculiar</i>	particular	eccentric
<i>Podant</i>	a schoolmaster	one vain of his learning
<i>Peevish</i>	childish	fretful
<i>Pert</i>	smart	saucy

<sup>1</sup> *Pagan* is itself from *L. paganus*, a villager.

WORD	EARLIER USE	DEGRADED USE
<i>Pitiful</i>	pitiable	contemptible
<i>Pittance</i>	a monk's portion	a scanty portion
<i>Plausible</i>	praiseworthy	seemingly praiseworthy
<i>L'ompous</i>	magnificent	ostentatious
<i>Prejudice</i>	judging beforehand	unfavourable judging
<i>Presently</i>	without delay	with a short delay
<i>Pretence</i>	a purpose, pretext	a false pretext
<i>Provoke</i>	rouse	irritate
<i>Quaint</i>	neat	odd
<i>Quarrel</i>	a complaint	a dispute
<i>Rascal</i>	a common fellow	a wicked fellow
<i>Resentment</i>	feeling	angry feeling
<i>Retaliation</i>	requital	revenge
<i>Retribution</i>	requital	punishment
<i>Rogue</i>	a wandering beggar	a scamp
<i>Sad</i>	serious	sorrowful
<i>Sanctimonious</i>	devout	hypocritical
<i>Sensual</i>	sensuous	voluptuous
<i>Sententious</i>	pithy	grandiloquent
<i>Sentimental</i>	emotional	foolishly emotional
<i>Servility</i>	slavery	slavishness
<i>Smug</i>	spruce	self-satisfied
<i>Specious</i>	fair-looking	superficially fair-looking
<i>Subservience</i>	submission	base submission
<i>Surly</i>	imperious	churlish
<i>Tawdry</i> (97)	showy	vulgarily showy
<i>Tempt</i>	to test	to entice
<i>Traduce</i>	to convict	to defame
<i>Trivial</i>	common	trifling
<i>Tyrant</i>	absolute ruler	oppressive ruler
<i>Uncouth</i>	unknown, strange	awkward
<i>Usury</i>	interest	exorbitant interest
<i>Vile</i>	cheap	worthless
<i>Vilify</i>	to hold cheap	to abuse
<i>Voluble</i>	fluent	loquacious
<i>Vulgar</i>	common	low
<i>Wench</i>	a girl	a servant girl
<i>Wiseacre</i>	a wise person	a simpleton <sup>1</sup>
<i>Wit</i>	wisdom	humour
<i>Wizard</i>	a sage	a sorcerer

## ELEVATION OF WORDS.

102. Words that have improved in their meaning are few in comparison with words that have deteriorated. *Fond* in Shakspeare's time meant 'foolish'; it then came to mean 'foolishly affectionate' or 'over-sanguine,' a meaning which it still retains: but it now usually means 'very affectionate.'<sup>2</sup> Similarly, *to dote* originally meant to be foolish<sup>3</sup>; now, in 'to dote upon a thing,'

<sup>1</sup> *Sapient* has gained the same ironical meaning.

<sup>2</sup> Cf. the verb *fondle*, to caress.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. *dotage*, *dotard*.

it means to show excessive liking for it. *Nice* (Latin *nescium*, ignorant), down to about A.D. 1580, also meant 'foolish'; then it gained the sense of 'fastidious'; and lastly that of 'delicious' or 'pleasing' (852). *Imaginative*, in Chaucer's time, meant 'suspicious.' Bacon uses *busy* in the sense of 'restless,' a meaning still retained in '*busy-body*.' *Hazard* and *jeopardy* (Old French *jeu parti*, a divided game, in which the chances are even) were originally mere gaming terms. Bards and minstrels were classed with vagabonds. We find *shrewd* in Chaucer with the sense of wicked<sup>1</sup>; it now means sharp, clever. Words like *generous*, *gentle*, *ingenuous* (all from root *gan*, to beget), originally implied only noble birth, but now they imply noble character. *Soldier*, literally 'one who receives *soulde* or pay' (Low Latin *solidus*, a piece of money), has gained a higher meaning than that of a mere mercenary. Party-names often belong to this class; thus *Whig* and *Tory* were once terms of contempt; and *Radical* has almost lost its reproachful application. The term *Christian* was once a mere nickname, as were also *Quaker*, *Methodist*, and *Tetotaler*.

103. Table of Elevated Words.—The following table comprises the principal words of this class:—

WORD	EARLIER USE	ELEVATED USE
<i>Admire</i> <sup>2</sup>	to wonder at	to regard with approval
<i>Annoy</i>	to injure	to vex
<i>Arch</i>	cowardly, knavish	waggish
<i>Brave</i>	fine	courageous
<i>Companion</i>	fellow, rogue	comrade
<i>Considerate</i>	thoughtful	kind
<i>Coy</i>	disdainful	bashful
<i>Dandle</i>	to cajole	to toss in the arms
<i>Delicate</i>	voluptuous	tender, refined
<i>Diffidence</i>	distrust, suspicion	self-distrust, modesty
<i>Emulation</i>	envy	competition
<i>Feminine</i>	effeminate	womanly
<i>Glorious</i>	boastful	famous
<i>High-minded</i>	proud	magnanimous
<i>Knight</i>	a youth, servant	a title of honour
<i>Lay</i>	plebeian	secular
<i>Liberal</i>	lavish	generous
<i>Looter</i>	to prowl, be a tramp	to linger
<i>Luxury</i>	sensuality, lust	pleasurable indulgence
<i>Marshal</i>	a groom	a title of honour
<i>Mechanic</i>	a drudge, a low fellow	a workman
<i>Miser</i>	a sufferer	a niggard
<i>Mountaineer</i>	a freebooter	a mountain-dweller
<i>Palliate</i>	to cloak (a fault)	to extenuate (a fault)

<sup>1</sup> The word still retains this meaning in 'to do one a *shrewd* turn' (392). *Shrew*, the noun, once meant a knave, male or female; it now means a scolding woman.

<sup>2</sup> The older meaning is retained in 'a note of *admiration*' (1).

WORD	EARLIER USE	ELEVATED USE
<i>Penury</i>	penuriousness	poverty
<i>Politician</i> <sup>1</sup>	a trickster	a statesman
<i>Prestige</i>	imposture	credit, renown
<i>Promote</i>	to inform against	to further
<i>Purchase</i>	to seize	to buy
<i>Religious</i>	monastic	pious
<i>Secure</i>	free from anxiety, easy	safe
<i>Sturdy</i>	reckless	resolute
<i>Unhappy</i>	wicked	miserable
<i>Versatile</i>	fickle	many-sided
<i>Worship</i> <sup>2</sup>	to honour	to adore
<i>Wretched</i> <sup>3</sup>	wicked	miserable

## DISGUISED WORDS.

104. Disguised words are words whose origin and derivation have become obscured by reason of some irregularity or other peculiarity in the form in which they have reached us through successive generations of speakers. The following are examples of this disguise :—

WORD	UNDISGUISED FORM	EXPLANATION
Admiral	<i>amiral</i>	<i>Amir-al-bahr</i> , Ameer of the sea
Alligator	<i>alagarto</i>	Sp. <i>el-lagarto</i> , the lizard (L. <i>lacerta</i> )
Ambergrease <sup>4</sup>	amberggris	<i>gris</i> amber, grey amber
Argosy <sup>5</sup>	Ragusa	vessel of Ragusa
Buttledoor	Sp. <i>batador</i>	a (washing) beetle or beater
Beaver (of helmet)	bever	F. <i>bavière</i> , a bib
Bedridden	bed-rider	M.E. <i>bedridden</i> , O.E. <i>bedrida</i>
Bedlam	Bethlehem	name of a hospital for lunatics
Blunderbuss	thunder-box	Du. <i>donderbus</i>
Bridegroom	bride-gome	O.E. <i>bryd-guma</i> , bride-man
Burden (refrain)	F. <i>bourdon</i>	a humming, a drone-bass
Caterpillar	O.F. <i>catte-pelaure</i>	<i>cat</i> that rolls itself up like a <i>pill</i>
Causeway	causey	F. <i>chaussée</i> ; Low L. <i>calceata</i> (via), a path <i>shod</i> with stone
Charles's wain	O.E. <i>carles wæn</i>	the churl's (= peasant's) wagon
Coverlet <sup>6</sup>	coverlit	F. <i>couvre-lit</i> , bed-cover
Crayfish, crawfish	M.E. <i>crevis</i>	F. <i>écrevisse</i> ; G. <i>krebs</i> , a crab
Cutlass	cutlas	F. <i>couteclas</i> , a short sword
Cutlet	F. <i>cotelette</i>	a little rib
Dirge	<i>dirige</i>	first word of L. hymn, <i>Dirige nos</i> , direct us <sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> This word, in the United States, seems to be reverting to its earlier use.

<sup>2</sup> *Worship*, *worshipful*, applied to mayors, etc., still mean 'honour,' 'honourable.'

<sup>3</sup> A *wretch* may still mean a 'villain.' Similarly *unhappy*, as well as *wretched*, is still used vocatively in a reproachful sense.

<sup>4</sup> Verdigrease (= *vert-de-gris*) is similarly corrupted.

<sup>5</sup> Confused with the classic ship *Argo*.

<sup>6</sup> Other words of similar derivation are—*adieu*, *affidavit*, *alarm* (all'arme), *alert*, *alphabet*, *ave*, *debenture* (dehentur), *gloria*, *magnificat*, *mass* (missa), *miserere*, *paternoster*, *plaudite* (plaudite), *proviso*, *query* (quære), *recipe*, *rendezvous*, *requiem*, *subpana*, *Te Drum. veto*, *wassail* (was hæle = be hale).

WORD	UNDISGUISED FORM	EXPLANATION
Dropsy	O.E. <i>ȝdropsie</i>	Late Gk <i>hydropisis</i> (from <i>hydor</i> , water)
Foreign	M.E. <i>foreine</i>	Low L. <i>foraneus</i> (L. <i>foras</i> , out of doors)
Forbear	fore-be-er	one who is before, ancestor
Frontispiece	frontispice	Low L. <i>fronti-spicius</i> , lit. front view (confused with <i>piece</i> )
Ghost	M.E. <i>gost</i>	O.E. <i>gast</i> , a spirit
Gooseberry	grose-berry	O.F. <i>groselle</i> , a gooseberry
Gossip	M.E. <i>god-sib</i>	<i>related in God</i> , sponsor; an idle talker
Greyhound	Ice. <i>grey-hundr</i>	dog-hound
Gridiron	M.F. <i>gredire, gredil</i>	a griddle
Handcuffs	M.E. <i>hand-cops</i>	a hand-fetter
Harrier	harier	a hare-hound
Height	highth	M.E. <i>highte</i>
Humble-bee	hummel-bee	humming bee
Hurricane	Span. <i>huracan</i>	a Caribbean word
Ice-ice	O.E. <i>isgicel</i>	<i>is</i> , ice, and <i>gicel</i> , bit of ice
Jolly-boat	Dan. <i>jolle</i> , boat	a yawl, skiff
Liquorice	licorice	Gk <i>glycy-rrhiza</i> , sweet-root
Loadstar	lodestar	<i>way-star</i> , guiding-star
Neighbour	nigh-boor	near-husbandman, near-dweller
Nostril	nose-thrill	nose-hole
Orchard	wort-yard	herb-garden
Outrage	O.F. <i>oultr-age</i>	excess (L. <i>ultra</i> , beyond)
Penthouse	M.E. <i>pentice</i>	for <i>apentice</i> (L. <i>appendicium</i> , an appendage)
Pickaxe	M.E. <i>pikois</i>	O.F. <i>picois</i> , a pick
Primrose	M.E. <i>primerole</i>	L. <i>primula</i> , <i>primula</i> , the first or early flower
Reindeer, raindeer	Ice. <i>rhcin</i> , deer	Lapp. <i>reins</i> , pasturage
Salt-cellar	salt-seller	<i>seller</i> — F. <i>salière</i> , a salt-box
Sand-blind	sam-blind	semi-blind
Shamefaced	shamefast	<i>shame</i> and <i>fast</i> , as in <i>sted-fast</i>
Sheet-anchor	shoot-anchor	an anchor to be <i>shot</i> out or lowered in case of danger
Sovereign	sovrain	Low L. <i>superanum</i> , chief
Stepchild	O.E. <i>stéop-cild</i>	orphaned child
Stirrup	sty-rope	climbing-rope
Threshold	M.E. <i>thresh-wold</i>	<i>thrashed-wood</i> , wood beaten or trodden
Touchwood	M.E. <i>tache</i> , wood	Low G. <i>tukke</i> , a twig (= stick-wood)
Touchy	tetchy	full of <i>tetches</i> or freaks
Uproar	uprore	Du. <i>oproer</i> , a stirring-up, tumult
Upshot	upshut	<i>shutting-up</i> , conclusion
Upside-down	up-so-down	up as it were down
Wall-eyed	Ice. <i>vagl-eygr</i>	<i>beam-eyed</i> , with diseased eyes
Weather-beaten	weather-bitten	Swed. <i>väder-biten</i>
Wormwood	O.E. <i>wer-mód</i>	<i>ware-mood</i> , mind-preserver
Yellow-hammer	yellow-ammer	'yellow' and O.E. <i>amore</i> , chirpet

This obscurity or disguise has arisen from various causes, the principal of which are the four following :—

105. I. Ignorant or popular corruptions, resulting from false notions about the derivation of the words or from a desire to make them *look* English. People transformed a word that they could not understand (often, for instance, a word of foreign origin) into something that, to them, gave some sort of sense or that at any rate had a more familiar sound.

. Thus the garden vegetable *asparagus*, a word of Greek origin, was turned in vulgar speech into *sparrow-grass*; the French expression *quelque chose* (something), meaning a trifle, a small delicacy, was anglicised into *kickshaws* and regarded as a plural form. Similarly *battlement* has, in its derivation, nothing to do with *battle*, but is a corruption of the old French word *bastiment*, a fortification, from the old French *bastir*, to build. The verb *embattle*, to furnish with battlements, is a similar malformation. Obsolete words or parts of words were specially liable to this corruption: thus *fairy* has no connexion with *fair*, but should be spelt *faery*, from Middle English *faerie*, enchantment<sup>1</sup>; and to *blindfold* is a corruption of an older form *blindfelden*, to strike blind. In this latter instance we see that the corruption has caused a change in the meaning as well as in the form of the word; the same thing has happened with *parboil*, which properly means to boil *thoroughly* (Latin *perbullire*), but now means to boil *in part*, from a notion that the word is made up of *part* and *boil*.

106. II. False Analogy, or the confusion of one word with another. Thus an *l* has been inserted in *could* (M.E. *coude*) to make it like *should* and *would*, in which the *l* is part of the root. An *s* has been inserted in *island* (M.E. *iland*) to make it like *isle* (L. *insula*): and *rhyme* (M.E. *rime*) is so spelt from confusion with *rhythm* (Greek *rhythmos*). *Colleague* ought to be written *colleque* (L. *collega*, one sent on a mission with another), but is spelt as if it meant 'one *leagued* with another.' *Afford*, *affright*, *accursed* are so spelt from a supposed analogy with words that begin with *aff*-, *acc*- in Latin; they should properly be spelt *aford*, *afright*, *acursed*. This confusion often gives rise to homonyms (88): thus, *feud* (M.E. *fede*), hatred, came to be so spelt through its being confused with *feud* (Low L. *feudum*), a fief, from which comes the adjective *feudal*.

107. III. Contraction, or curtailment, arising from laziness or rapidity of pronunciation. Thus *barn* is a contracted form of O.E. *ber-ern*, barley-house; *daisy* is M.E. *dayesye*, day's eye; and

<sup>1</sup> Hence *fairy* is properly an abstract noun, the concrete noun being *fae*, an elf. Compare the use of *paynim* (=paganism) for *pagan*.



*proxy* is merely a vulgar contraction of *procuracy*. Similarly *palsy* is a shortened form of M.E. *palesy* (F. *paralyse*, Gk *paralysis*). *Alms* has been reduced from six syllables to one, thus *alms* = M.E., *almés* = O.E., *almessé* = Gk *eleemosyné*. *Mole* (the animal) is merely a curtailed form of the older *mold-warp*, mould-thrower; just as *canter* is an abbreviation of *Canterbury* gallop, the easy pace at which pilgrims rode to Canterbury. Similarly *mob* is short for L. *mobile vulgus*, the fickle multitude; *fuc-simile* for L. *factum simile*, a thing made in imitation of another. *Wig* is a curtailed form of *periwig*, itself a disguised word<sup>1</sup>; as *van* is of *curavan*, *cub* of *cabriolet*, *bus* of *omnibus*, *cycle* and *bike* of *bicycle*, *quod* of *quadrangle*, *brig* of *brigantine*, *cent* of *centum*, *cinema* of *cinematograph*, *coster* of *costermonger*, *cox* of *coxswain*, *photo* of *photograph*, *spats* of *sputterdashes*, *pram* of *perambulator*, *curio* of *curiosity*, *super* of *supernumerary*, *hack* of *hackney*, *chap* of *chapman*, *plot* of *complot*, *fence* of *defence*, *story* of *history*, *sport* of *disport*, *spend* of *dispend*, *stress* of *distress*, *fray* of *affray*, *down* of *afdown*, *spite* of *despite*, *peal* of *appeal*, *drawing-room* of *with drawing-room*.

108. IV. The addition or the removal of a letter at the beginning or the end of words. Thus the letter *h* has dropt off before *able*, which should be written *hable* (L. *habilis*, fit); *arbour* is probably a corruption of *harbour* (M.E. *herberwe*, shelter, lodging); *it*, *ostler* (cf. *host*, *hostel*), *ortolan*, the bird haunting gardens (L. *hortus*), should be *hit*, *hostler*, *hortolan*. An *h* has been wrongly prefixed to *h-atchment* (91), to *h-azard* (Sp. *azar*, a die), which has also *d* appended, to *h-ermit* (= *eremite*), and to *h-ostage* (L. *obsidem*).

The letter *d* has been appended, for the sake of emphasis, to *hol-d* (of a ship), which should be *hole* (Du. *hol*), *boun-d* (ready to go), *gizzar-d*, *vizar-d*, *hin-d* (peasant; M.E. *hine*, a servant), *len-d*, *moul-d* (pattern), *ribban-d*,<sup>2</sup> *soun-d*, *stran-d* (of a rope), *expoun-d*, *compoun-d*. On the other hand, *button-hole* should be *button-hold*.

The letter *t* has been appended, for the same reason, to *ancien-t*, *behes-t*, *braygar-t*, *cormoran-t*, *earnes-t* (a pledge), *hoist* (for *hoise*<sup>3</sup>), *pagean-t*, *parchmen-t*, *pcasan-t*, *pheasan-t*, *rumpar-t*, *tyran-t*. The *t* has dropt off from *scrip*, which should be *script* (L. *scriptum*, a writing).

*Sham*, *squire*, for *shame*, *esquire*, have lost an *e*; *paddle* for *spaddle* (little spade), has lost an *s*; and *chime* should be *chimb*.

There is a curious group of words whose disguise has been

<sup>1</sup> *Periwig* *perwigge* = *perwicke* = *peruke*.

<sup>2</sup> Or, through confusion with *band*. *Ribbon* does not take the *d*.

<sup>3</sup> Cf. 'They *housed* up the mainsail.'—*Bible*.

caused by the coalescing of the article with its substantive in popular pronunciation; and then when the two were written down and had to be separated, by the separation being made at the wrong place. Thus *adder* is O.E. *nædre*, and ought to be spelt *nadder*; but 'a nadder' being pronounced 'anadder,' the *n* came to be regarded as belonging to the article, and the words were written down as 'an adder.' The same thing happened with *apron* (O.F. *naperon*, a napkin), with *auger* (M.E. *navegor*, nave-piercer), with *orange* (Persian *naranj*), with *ouch* (M.E. *nouche*), and with *umpire* (M.E. *nompere* = non-peer, odd man).

Conversely, the *n* of the article has adhered to the substantive in *newt* (M.E. *eute*), in *nickname* (O.E. *eke-name*, an additional name), in *nugget* (= *niggot* = *niugot* = *ingot*). Similarly *nonce*, in 'for the nonce' (O.E. for *then ones*), is the same word as *once*, and the phrase means 'for the occasion': as we still say 'for this *once*.' So too *tother* or *the tother* was originally *thet other*, and *atomy* in the sense of 'skeleton' is due to the mistaken division of *anatomy* into *an atoma*.

## CHAPTER III.

### ACCIDENCE AND SYNTAX.

#### NOUNS.

**109. Definition.**—A **Noun** (Latin *nomen*, name) is a word used as the name of something: as, 'The man beat the dog.' There are five kinds of nouns:—

**110. (1) Class Nouns;** *i.e.* nouns that express a class of individual objects, as distinguished from another class of objects, as *ship*. *Ship* is an *Individual Class Noun*.

**111. (2) Collective Nouns;** *i.e.* nouns that express a number of objects of the same class collected together, as *fleet*. Thus *fleet* denotes a collection of ships, and *fleets* denotes several collections of ships. *Fleet* is a *Collective Class Noun*. Others are—the *Government*, the *Court*, the *nobility*, the *gentry*, the *peasantry*, the *navy*, the *shipping*, the *public*, the *clergy*, the *laity*, an *audience*, an *Association*, a *Company*, a *Board*.

A collective noun in the singular number takes a plural verb when the writer has in view the units that make up the whole; it takes a singular verb when the writer has in view the collection as a whole:—

The *army* was ordered to advance to the attack.

When day broke, the *enemy* were seen fleeing in all directions.

The *meeting* is unanimous on this question.

The lowing *herd* wind slowly o'er the lea.—Gray.

A large *number* of crows were hopping about.

Many collective nouns have no plural: *cattle*, *people* (persons), *clergy*, *laity*, *infantry*, *cavalry*, *poultry*, *gentry*, *peasantry*, *nobility*, *offspring*, *issue* (progeny), *young*, *prey*, *vermin*. We say *logic*, *arithmetic*, *music*, *magic*, *physic* (medicine); but *mathematics*, *mechanics*, *optics*, *physics* (the science), *gymnastics*, *phonetics*,

*politics, hysterics, etc.*; the former being derived from a Greek singular adjective used as a noun, the latter from a Greek plural adjective used as a noun.

112. (3) **Material Nouns** : *i.e.* nouns that express an indefinite mass of matter, as *glass, stone, rice*. When a material noun is used to express a definite object, it is no longer a material noun, but a class noun. Accordingly it may then take the article and the plural number <sup>1</sup> :—

Give me *a glass* (= a receptacle made of glass) of water.

Do not throw *stones* (= pieces of stone).

There are many *rices* (= kinds of rice) in India. This is *a good rice*.

Hence, as with *glass* and *stone* above, many material nouns acquire a new meaning when used as class nouns :—

**MATERIAL NOUNS.**

Land, *earth*  
Sand, *particles of stone*  
Marble, *a kind of stone*

Water, *the liquid*  
Salt, *the seasoning substance*  
Iron, *the metal*

Wood, *timber*  
Copper, *the metal*

Bronze, *the metal*

Lead, *the metal*

**CLASS NOUNS.**

a land (or lands), *a country*  
sands, *sea-beach*  
a marble (or marbles), *a sculpture, the game.*

waters, *springs*  
salts, *smelling salts, etc.*  
an iron (or irons), *a fire-iron, a smoothing-iron, fetters*

a wood (or woods), *a forest*  
a copper (or coppers), *for boiling, pence*

a bronze (or bronzes), *a work of art in bronze*

leads, *sheets of lead on a roof*

113. The nouns in (1), (2), and (3) are *Common Nouns, i.e.* names that are common to or shared by an indefinite number of objects or the parts of an indefinite mass of matter. They are thus distinguished from—

114. (4) **Proper Nouns, i.e.** names that are confined to separate persons or things, or groups of persons or things, as *Homer, Boston, Gladstone, The United States*. The word 'proper' here means 'own' : hence a *proper* name is a person's or a thing's own name. Proper names, when they are applied to more than one person or thing, can take the article and the plural number. 'There are two *Bostons*, *a Boston* in England and *a Boston* in America'; 'Some critics maintain that there are several *Homers*.'

<sup>1</sup> The plural of material nouns is sometimes found in poetry :—'Where are the last year's *snows*?'—*Ballad*. Material nouns like *dirt, refuse, rubbish, trash, cash* have no plural form.

When a proper noun is used in a descriptive sense, to denote an object or objects of a similar character to itself, it is no longer a proper noun but a common noun :—

He is the *Homer* (= the great poet) of his age.

That wrestler seems to be a *Hercules* (= a very strong man).

There are few *Gladstones* (= men like Gladstone) now-a-days.

*Lions* is the *Manchester* (= chief manufacturing town) of France.

NOTE.—Similarly, a *Turner* is often used for 'a picture painted by Turner'; a *Guido* for 'a picture painted by Guido,' and so on.

115. The nouns in (1), (2), (3), and (4) are *Concrete Nouns*, i.e. nouns that express substances. They are thus distinguished from—

116. (5) *Abstract Nouns*, i.e. nouns that express general terms, whether attributes and phenomena, as *goodness*, *speech*.

An abstract noun may express—

(a) a quality : *honesty*, *convenience*.

(b) a state : *death*, *sleep*.

(c) a feeling or an action : *pleasure*, *walking*.

(d) a process of thought : *logic*, *astronomy*.

Abstract nouns cannot take the articles or the plural number ; we cannot say 'a goodness,' 'strengths.' When abstract nouns are found with the articles or in the plural, they signify not the abstract or general notion, but concrete or particular instances of the notion (166) :—

This is a *carelessness* that I should not have expected (= a *piece of carelessness*).

What a *pity* (= what a *pitiful circumstance*) !

We ought to speak the *truth* (= the *thing that is true*).

This book is full of *impertinences* (= instances of *impertinence*).

NOTE.—Abstract nouns are sometimes used to express a general concrete object, as the *nobility* for the whole body of persons of noble birth, the *community* for the whole body of people, the *youth* for the whole class of young people, the *priesthood* for priests generally. We may even use the abstract term to express the individual concrete object, as a *celebrity* for a celebrated person, a *curiosity* for a curious object, a *youth* for a young man, a *personage* for a person, an *audience* for auditors, a *royalty* for a person of royal birth, a *witness* for one who witnesses, a *character* for a person possessing character, a *vision* for a thing seen, a *conquest* for a thing conquered, a *study* for a room to study in, a *painting* for a picture, a *variety* for a sub-species ; cf. 'To return to one's first love' (= one's first loved object) ; 'A statue as large as life' (= as large as the living object which it represents) ; 'I have a *mind* (or a great *mind*) to accept his offer.'

117. **Formation of Abstract Nouns.**—Abstract nouns are formed—(1) from Adjectives, (2) from Concrete Nouns, (3) from Verbs.

# NOUNS.

46

## (1) from Adjectives.

ADJ.	ABSTRACT NOUN	ADJ.	ABSTRACT NOUN
Long	length	False	{ falseness falsity falsehood
Strong	strength	Worth	worship
Broad	breadth	Hard	hardship
Wide	width	Sole	solitude
High	{ height highth	Proud	pride
Young	youth	Hot	heat
True	truth	Social	socialism
Hale	health	Merry	merriment
Slow	sloth	Just	justice
Dry	drought	Prudent	prudence
Wise	wisdom	Decent	decency
Free	freedom	Vacant	vacancy
Grand	grandeur	Prevalent	{ prevalence prevalency
Short	shortness	Brilliant	{ brilliance brilliancy
Dark	darkness	Brave	bravery
Good	goodness	Timid	timidity
Cold	coldness	Vain	vanity
Bitter	bitterness	Cruel	cruelty
Holy	holiness	Frail	frailty
Feeble	feebleness	Honest	honesty
Humble	{ humbleness humility	Barbarous	{ barbarity barbarism barbarousness
Worthy	worthiness		
Poor	{ poorness poverty		

## (2) from Concrete Nouns.

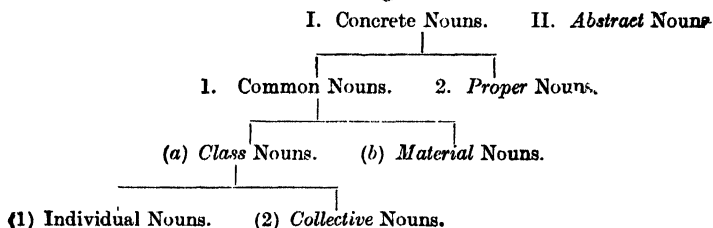
CONCRETE NOUN	ABSTRACT NOUN	CONCRETE NOUN	ABSTRACT NOUN
Man	manhood	Witch	witchery
Woman	womanhood	Slave	slavery
Boy	boyhood	Poet	poetry
Child	childhood	Glutton	gluttony
Mother	motherhood	Beggar	beggary
Father	fatherhood	Rogue	roguey
Priest	priesthood	Friend	friendship
Hero	heroism	King	kingship
Patriot	patriotism	Seaman	seamanship
Agent	agency	Owner	ownership
Infant	infancy	Author	authorship
Regent	regency	Rascal	rascality
Captain	captaincy	Coward	cowardice
Pirate	piracy	Thief	theft
Bankrupt	bankruptcy	Pilgrim	pilgrimage

## (3) from Verbs.

VERB	ABSTRACT NOUN	VERB	ABSTRACT NOUN
Abound	abundance	Act	action
Obey	obedience	Protect	protection
Excel	excellence	Redeem	redemption

VERB	ABSTRACT NOUN	VERB	ABSTRACT NOUN
Expel	expulsion	Convert	conversion
Extinguish	extinction	Repeat	repetition
Flatter	flattery	Reduce	reduction
Move	{ motion	Separate	separation
	{ movement	Perplex	perplexity
Punish	punishment	Mimic	mimicry
Judge	judgment	Exceed	excess
Conceal	concealment	Neglect	negligence
Serve	service	Reside	residence
Advise	advice	Extend	extension
Defend	defence	Magnify	magnificence
Pursue	pursuit	Remove	removal
Perceive	perception	Believe	belief
Please	pleasure	Relieve	relief
Seize	seizure	Deceive	{ deceit
Depart	departure		{ deception
Learn	learning	Perceive	perception
Laugh	laughter	Solve	solution
Know	knowledge	Recognise	recognition
Hate	hatred	Oppose	opposition
See	sight	Compare	comparison
Think	thought	Proceed	{ procedure
Die	death		{ process
Bear	birth	Err	error
Live	life	Thrive	thrift
Choose	choice	Assemble	assemblage
Marry	marriage		

118. Thus we have the following Table of Nouns :—



### GENDER.

119. In Nature, things are divided into three classes, according as they are things of the male sex (*king, bull*), things of the female sex (*queen, cow*), and things of neither sex (*stone, house*).

In Grammar, these three classes are called *genders*, and are named **Masculine Gender**, **Feminine Gender**, and **Neuter** (Latin *neuter*, neither of two) Gender.

120. **Common Gender.**—Some names of animals and persons do not indicate their sex :—*sheep, pig, swine, hog, bird, fowl, hound*.

*foal, deer, bear, mouse, hedgehog, jackdaw, swan, hawk, dove, etc. ; parent, child, spouse, cousin, servant, dancer, friend, sovereign, etc.* Such nouns are said to be of *Common Gender*. Some masculine nouns (*horse, dog*), and some feminine nouns (*duck, goose, bee*) are often so used.

NOTE.—Some feminine nouns have no corresponding masculine :—*amazon, blonde, brunette, coquette, dowager, flirt, jilt, minx, prude, shrew, siren, termagant, virago, ewe-lamb, jenny-wren*. *Lover*, in the sense of wooer, is now only masculine, except in the plural, when it may include both sexes, as 'in 'a pair of *lovers*.'

121. *Gender of Inanimate Objects*.—Things without life are often, especially in poetry, personified, and so have sex attributed to them :—

The *day* in *his* hotness,

The *night* in *her* silence.—*M. Arnold*.

(1) *Masculines* are—the Sun, Summer, Autumn, Winter, Time, Death, the Grave, Thunder ; rivers, winds, mountains, the ocean ; violent passions (Love, Fear, Anger, Despair, etc.) ; violent actions (Murder, War, etc.).

(2) *Feminines* are—the Moon, Spring, the Earth, the Soul, the Church, a ship,<sup>1</sup> a balloon, a cannon<sup>1</sup> ; countries,<sup>2</sup> cities ; the Arts and Sciences, Nature, Liberty, Victory, Religion, Fame, Fortune, etc. ; the gentler feelings (Charity, Hope, Mercy, Pity, Peace, etc.).

122. *Modes of denoting Gender*.—Gender is denoted in three ways :—

(1) Different words are used :—

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Bachelor	{ spinster maid	Horse	mare
Boar	sow	Monk, friar	nun
Buck	doe, fallow deer	Nephew	niece
Bullock, steer	heifer	Ram, wether	ewe
Colt	filly	Sir, sire	madam
Drake	duck	Sire	dam <sup>3</sup>
Drone	bee	Sloven	slut
Earl	countess	Stag	hind, red deer
Gander	goose	Uncle	aunt
Hart	roe	Wizard	witch

(2) A difference of termination is used .—

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Abbot	abbess (=abbotess)	Bridegroom	bride
Actor	actress	Duke	duchess
Author	authoress	Emperor	empress
Beau	belle	Fox	vixen <sup>4</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the expressions 'a sister ship,' 'a sister gun.'

<sup>2</sup> Note that we say 'father-land,' but 'mother-country' and 'mother-tongue.'

<sup>3</sup> *Sire*—*dam* are used of animals only.

<sup>4</sup> O.E. *fixen*, now used in the sense of a spiteful woman. Sportsmen use—*masc. dog-fox*, *fem. bitch-fox*.



MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Giant	giantess	Poet	poetess
God	goddess	Priest	priestess
Governor	governess <sup>1</sup>	Prince	princess
Heir	heiress	Prior	prioress
Hero	heroine	Prophet	prophetess
Host	hostess	Shepherd	shepherdess
Hunter	huntress	Seamster (rare)	seamstress
Lad	lass (= laddess)	Songster	songstress
Lion	lioness	Sultan	sultana
Marquis	marchioness	Testator	testatrix
Master (Mr.)	Mistress (Mrs.)	Tiger	tigress
Mayor	mayoress	Tsar	tsaritsa
Murderer	murderess	Votary	votaress
Negro	negress	Warder	wardress
Patron	patroness	Widower	widow, relict

(3) Masculine or feminine nouns or pronouns are prefixed or affixed to nouns of common gender :—

MASC.	FEM.	MASC.	FEM.
Beggar-man	beggar-woman	Jack-ass	{ jenny-ass, she-ass.
Boar-pig	sow-pig	Man-child	woman-child
Buck-rabbit	doe-rabbit	Man-servant	{ woman- maid- } servant
Bull-calf	cow-calf	Pea-cock	pea-hen
Cock-sparrow	hen-sparrow	Servant-man	servant-maid
He-devil	she-devil	Washer-man	washer-woman
He-goat	she-goat		
Billy-goat	nanny-goat		

NOTE.—Similarly we have *lady doctor*, *boy messenger*.

## NUMBER.

**123. Definition.**—Number denotes quantity. The Singular Number indicates that we are speaking of *one* thing; the Plural Number indicates that we are speaking of *more than one* thing.

**124. Modes of forming the Plural.**—The Plural is formed in four ways :—

(1) The syllable *-es*, shortened to *-s* whenever pronunciation allows, is added to the singular :—*box, boxes*; *dress, dresses*; *horse, horses*; *book, books*; *lady, ladies*; *valley, valleys*; *soliloquy, soliloquies*; *alkali, alkalis*.<sup>2</sup>

(2) The syllable *-en* is added to the singular :—*ox, oxen*; *cow,<sup>3</sup> kine*; *brother, brethren<sup>3</sup>*; *child, children*.<sup>3</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Governor* means a ruler in general; cf. 'Victoria, . . . our Queen and Governor' (*Prayer-book*); *governess* means an *instructress*.

<sup>2</sup> But *rabbi, rabbis*.

<sup>3</sup> These are double plurals, formed by adding *-en* to the old plural forms *ky, childre, brethren*. The plural *childer* is still found provincially.

(3) The vowel sound is changed:—*foot, feet*; *tooth, teeth*; *mouse, mice*<sup>1</sup>; *louse, lice*<sup>1</sup>; *goose, geese*<sup>1</sup>; *man, men*.

(4) The singular is left unchanged:—*deer, sheep, swine, grouse, salmon, cod, trout, hose, heathen*.

NOTE.—Proper Nouns follow rule (1) above:—‘the *Coxes*,’ ‘the *Dutts*,’ ‘the *Joneses*,’ ‘the eight *Henries*,’ ‘the two *Sicilies*.’ But less known Proper Nouns ending in *y* simply add *s*:—‘the *Gadshys*.’ Compare ‘We sailed on the *Jameses* (objective plural), and ‘We called at the *Jameses*’ (possessive plural).’

125. Plural of Nouns in ‘-o.’—(1) Earlier-introduced and more common nouns ending in -o form the plural by adding *es*:—*banjoes, bilboes* (fettters), *buffaloes, calicoes* (and *calicos*), *cargoes, dingoes, dominoes, echoes, embargoes, flamangoes, heroes, innuendoes, magnificoes, manifestoes, mosquitoes* (and *mosquitos*), *mottoes, mulattoes* (and *mulattos*), *negroes, noes, potatoes, tomatoes, tornadres, volcanoes*.

(2) Later-introduced and rarer words ending in -o add -s:—*albinos, archipelagos, armadillos, bravos, cantos, casinos, centos, commandos, dittos, duodecimos, embryos, fiascos, generalissimos, ghettos, grottos, guanos, halos, innamoratos, infernos, juntos, lassos* (and *lassoes*), *magnificos, manifestos, mangos* (and *mangoes*), *medicos, mementos, octavos, porticos* (and *porticoes*), *pianos, provisoes* (and *provisoes*), *quartos, rondos, salvos, solos, sopranos, stilettos, tiros, vetos, violoncellos, viragos, virtuosos* (and *virtuosi*), *zeros*.

(3) Nouns ending in -eo, -io, -yo and -oo add -s:—*cameos; bagnios, folios, intaglios, nuncios, oratorios, portfolios, punctilios, seraglios, studios, trios; embryos; baboos, bamboos, cuckoos, Hindoos*.

(4) Curtailed words in -o add -s:—*curios, dynamos, magnetos, photos, pros* (professionals), *rhinos, stylos*.

(5) Proper names in -o add -s:—*Antonios, Gallios, Lorenzos, Lotharios, Neros, Romeos*.

126. Plural of Nouns in ‘t.’—(1) Teutonic nouns ending in -f, *fe* form the plural by changing *f* to *v* except when *f*, *r*, or *oo* precede the final *f*:—*calf, calves*; *elf, elves*; *half, halves*; *knife, knives*; *leaf, leaves*; *life, lives*; *loaf, loaves*; *scarf, scarves* (and *scarfs*); *self, selves*; *sheaf, sheaves*; *shelf, shelves*; *thief, thieves*; *turf, turves* (and *turfs*); *wife, wives*, *wolf, wolves*. But—*cliff, cliffs*; *dwarf, dwarfs*; *roof, roofs*; *wharf, wharfs* (and *wharves*).

<sup>1</sup> For the sake of euphony, these are not used in the possessive case: we do not say ‘*micc’s* legs,’ but ‘the legs of *mice*.’

Exceptions are—*fife, fifes*; *hoof, hoofs* (and *hooves*); *strife, strifes*; *reef, reefs*.

(2) Romanic nouns retain the *f* unchanged:—*brief, briefs*; *chief, chiefs*; *grief, griefs*; *proof, proofs*.

**127. Foreign Plurals.**—Foreign nouns that have not become naturalised retain the plural form of the language from which they are taken:—

## (1) Latin.

Formula	formulae, formulas	Rostrum	rostra, rostrums
Lacuna	lacunae, lacunas	Ultimatum	{ ultimata, ultimatums
Larva	larvae	Effluvium	effluvia
Nebula	nebulae	Epithalamium	epithalamia
Alumnus	alumni	Erratum	errata
Apparatus	{ apparatus apparatuses	Medium	media, mediums <sup>1</sup>
Cactus	cacti, cactuses	Petroleum	petroleums
Focus	foci, focuses	Premium	premiums
Fungus	fungi, funguses	Memorandum	memoranda
Magus	magi	Momentum	momenta
Narcissus	narcissi, narcissuses	Ovum	ova
Tumulus	tumuli	Serum	sera
Hiatus	hiatuses	Spectrum	spectra, spectrums
Virus	viruses	Stratum	strata
Bacillus	bacilli, bacilluses	Symposium	symposia
Opus	opera	Genus	genera, genuses
Corpus	corpora	Appendix	{ appendices, appendixes
Lapsus	lapsus	Index	indices, indexes
Polypus	polypi	Proboscis	{ proboscides, proboscises
Radius	radii	Radix	radices
Terminus	termini, terminuses	Vortex	vortices, vortexes
Animalculum	animalcula	Series	series
Dictum	dicta	Species	species
Corrigendum	corrigenda	Superficies	superficies
Curriculum	curricula		
Desideratum	desiderata		

## (2) Greek.

Anacoluthon	{ anacolutha, anacoluthons	Lyceum	lyceums
Automaton	{ automata, automatons	Analysis	analyses
Criterion	criteria, criterions	Axis	axes
Phenomenon	{ phenomena, phenomenous	Basis	bases
Elysium	elysiums	Crisis	crises
Forum	forums	Ellipsis	ellipses
Harmonium	harmoniums	Hypothesis	hypotheses
		Metamorphosis	metamorphoses
		Oasis	oases
		Parenthesis	parentheses

<sup>1</sup> This form only is used in Spiritualism.

<b>Thesis</b>	theses	<b>Chimaeras</b>	chimaeras
<b>Hippopotamus</b>	{hippopotami, hippopotamuses	<b>Cyclops</b>	cyclopes, cyclopees
<b>Octopus</b>	octopuses	<b>Caryatid</b>	caryatides, caryatid
<b>Polypus</b>	polypi, polypuses	<b>Dryad</b>	dryades, dryads
<b>Stigma</b>	stigmata, stigmas <sup>1</sup>	<b>Phalanx</b>	phalanges, phalanxes

## (3) French.

<b>Beau</b>	beaux, beaux	<b>Portmanteau</b>	{portmanteaux, portmanteaus.
<b>Bureau</b>	bureaux, bureaux	<b>Corps</b>	corps
<b>Adieu</b>	adieux, adieux	<b>Madame (E. madam)</b>	mesdames
<b>Château</b>	châteaux, châteaux	<b>Monsieur (E. Mr., sir)</b>	messieurs
<b>Plateau</b>	plateaux, plateaus		

## (4) Italian.

<b>Bandit</b>	banditti, banditi	<b>Virtuoso</b>	virtuosi, virtuosos
<b>Dilettante</b>	dilettanti		

## (5) Hebrew.

<b>Cherub</b>	cherubim, cherubs	<b>Seraph</b>	seraphim, seraphs
---------------	-------------------	---------------	-------------------

But, as may be seen above, the tendency of language is to reject these foreign plurals as the foreign words become naturalised. Thus we write *crocuses*, *censuses*, *prospectuses*, *similes*, *stamens*,<sup>2</sup> *triumvirs*, *emporiums*, *aquariums*, *ultimatums*, *interregnums*, *millenniums*, *dogmas*, *miasmas*, *encomiums*, rather than Latin *croci*, *census*, *prospectus*, *similia*, *stamina*, *triumviri*, *emporiorum*, *aquaria*, *ultima*, *interregna*, *millenia*, and Greek *dogmata*, *miasmata*, *encomia*.

NOTE 1.—The plural of the Greek noun *rhinoceros* is not *rhinoceri*, but *rhinocerotés*; it is better to write *rhinoceroses*. *Aborigines*, *annals*, *antipodes*, *faeces*, *literati*, *minutiæ*, *prolegomena*, *addenda*, *agenda*, *arcana*, *data* are used only in the plural.

NOTE 2.—*Quota*, *ignoramus*, *nostrum*, *pendulum*, *quantum*, *quorum*, *factotum*, *targum*, *propaganda*, *vellum*, *paternoster* are in a different category and can take only the -s plural.

128. **True Plurals.**—*Amends*, *auspices*, *bellows*, *chaps* (the jaws), *billiards*, *clothes*,<sup>3</sup> *draughts* (the game), *dumps*, *entrails*,<sup>4</sup> *environs*, *gallows*, *innings*, *mathematics*, etc. (550, note), *means*, *measles*, *mews* (stables), *mumps*, *news*, *nuptials*,<sup>4</sup> *oats*, *obsequies*, *odds*, *premises* (buildings, etc.), *proceeds*, *remains*, *scissors*, *shambles*, *shears*, *chickenpox*, *smallpox*,<sup>5</sup> *spectacles* (eye-glasses), *thanks*, *thews*, *tidings*, *trousers*, *victuals*,<sup>4</sup> *wages*<sup>4</sup> are true plurals, but have now

<sup>1</sup> *Stigmata* in technical senses; *stigmas* in a figurative sense.

<sup>2</sup> The plur. *stamina* means 'vigour.'

<sup>3</sup> Originally the plural of *cloth*, which now has a regular plural, *cloths*.

<sup>4</sup> See 49, note. The sing. *trouser*, *victual*, and *wage* are occasionally used.

<sup>5</sup> The -pox of *chickenpox* and *smallpox* stands for *pocks*; cf. 'pock-mark.'

no singular form in use. Of these, *news*, *innings*, *means*, *gallows*, *chickenpox*, *smallpox*, *mumps*, *mathematics*,<sup>1</sup> *physics*,<sup>1</sup> *etc.*, are now treated as singulars :—

*All news runs apace.*

*This is a means to an end.*

*Small-pox is contagious.*

*One innings only was played.*

*A gallows was built.*

*Mathematics is taught in this school.*

NOTE.—The plural *friends*, from its frequent use in such sentences as ‘We are *friends*,’ has come to be used in relation to a singular subject, so that we can say ‘I am *friends* with him,’ where *friends* = on friendly terms. So the colloquial ‘He was too *many* for me’ means ‘He gained the advantage over me.’

**129. Apparent Plurals.**—*Alms*, *riches*, *eaves*, *kickshaws* are true singulars, but are now used as plurals: ‘*Riches are* transitory.’ *Summons* is a true singular, and makes the plural *summonses*. Both *folk* and *folks* occur as the plural of *folk*. *Corps* is singular, with plural *corps*, pronounced *korz*. *Laches* (O.Fr. *lachesse*) is also singular. *Pease*, mistaken for a plural, gave rise to the singular *pea*.

**130. The Plurals of other Parts of Speech** used as nouns generally follow the ordinary rules: ‘*ayes* and *noes*,’ ‘*pros* and *cons*,’ ‘*ifs* and *buts*.’ But such plurals do not alter the spelling of the original word: ‘there are too many *apparently*s and *perhapses* and *probablys* in his speech.’ Letters of the alphabet generally form their plural by -s: *s*’s, *p*’s, *etc.*: we also find *esses*, *zeds* for the plural of *s* and *z*.

NOTE 1.—Plural of Abbreviations.—Single letters are doubled :—*pp.* for ‘pages,’ *ll.* for ‘lines,’ *MSS.* for ‘Manuscripts.’ Curt forms take *s* :—*caps* for ‘chapters,’ *secs* for ‘sections,’ *Co.s* for ‘companies.’ So *M.D.s* for ‘Doctors of Medicine.’ *Rev.s* and *Hon.s* are inadmissible forms.

NOTE 2.—When the abbreviation contains the last letter of the full word it needs no full stop :—*Capt.* for *Captain*, but *Mr* (not *Mr.*) for *Mister*; unless the abbreviations have become words, as with *gram*, *zoo*, *etc.*

**131. Plural with Numerals.**—In nouns expressing a quantity or a number the sign of the plural is often dispensed with, especially when they are preceded by a numeral :—‘five *pound*,’ ‘two *dozen*,’ ‘a fleet of ten *sail*,’ ‘two *brace* of birds,’ ‘four *pair* of shoes,’ ‘forty *head* of cattle,’ ‘five *yoke* of oxen,’ ‘thirty *fathom* deep,’ ‘an engine of fifty *horse* power,’ ‘I weigh nine *stone*,’ ‘four *core* years,’ ‘thirty *cannon*,’ ‘1,000 *stand* of arms.’

NOTE.—Compare ‘a *twelve-month*,’ ‘a *fortnight*,’ ‘a *five mile* walk,’ ‘a *three-foot* rule,’ ‘an *eight-day* clock,’ ‘a *six-penny* book,’ ‘a *three-year* old’ (of an animal), ‘a *three-man* beetle’ (Shaks.).

<sup>1</sup> Used as plurals when they denote qualities or actions :—‘This boy’s *mathematics are* excellent;’ ‘*Applied physics lead* the way here.’

**132. Plural of Compounds.**—The plural of compound nouns depends upon the nature of the compound, and the relation of its two parts to each other.

(1) In compounds made up of a noun preceded by an adjective (or a noun with adjectival force), or followed by an adjectival phrase or an adverb, the noun takes the plural inflexion :—

SING.	PLUR.
lieutenant-governor	lieutenant-governors
maid-servant	maid-servants
slave-driver	slave-drivers
son-in-law	sons-in-law
commander-in-chief	commanders-in-chief
passer-by	passers-by

So also in *master bakers*, *brother squires* (but *the brothers Smith* or *the Smith brothers*), *the three doctor Faustuses*, *the Miss Browns*, *the Mr. Smiths* (also the more formal *the Misses Brown*, *the Messrs. Smith*). But *handfuls*, *basketfuls*, etc.

(2) In compounds made up of a noun followed by an adjective, the two parts have come to cohere so closely that the plural inflexion is now added at the end :—

knight-errant	knight-errants <sup>1</sup>
poet-laureate	poet-laureates <sup>1</sup>
surgeon-major	surgeon-majors
major-general	major-generals
governor-general	governor-generals
price-current	price-currents
sign-manual	sign-manuals

(3) In compounds of which the first part is a verb, the plural inflexion is naturally placed at the end :—

run-away	run-aways
spend-thrift	spend-thrifts
forget-me-not	forget-me-nots

(4) In the rare compounds consisting of two titles of equal application, both parts take the plural inflexion :—

knight-templar	knights-templars
lord-lieutenant	lords-lieutenants
lord-justice	lords-justices
lord-commissioner	lords-commissioners.

So also in *men-servants*, *women-servants*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *Knights-errant*, *poets-laureate* are also found.

<sup>2</sup> Also *man-servants*, *woman-servants*.

## 133. Plural and Singular Meanings.

(1) Some nouns have *two forms* of the plural with separate meanings :—

SING.	PLUR.
Beef	{ <i>beefs (kinds of beef)</i> { <i>beeves (oxen)</i>
Brother	{ <i>brothers (by blood)</i> { <i>brethren (of a community)</i>
Cloth	{ <i>cloths (kinds of cloth)</i> { <i>clothes (garments)</i>
Die	{ <i>dies (stamps for coining)</i> { <i>dice (for gaming)</i>
Fish	{ <i>fish (collective)</i> { <i>fishes (regarded separately)</i>
Genius	{ <i>geniuses (men of talents)</i> { <i>genii (spirits)</i>
Index	{ <i>indexes (to a book)</i> { <i>indices (signs in algebra)</i>
Pea	{ <i>peas (the seed)</i> { <i>pease (the species)</i>
Penny	{ <i>pennies (separate coins)</i> { <i>pence (a collective sum)</i> <sup>1</sup>
Shot	{ <i>shot (balls)</i> { <i>shots (discharges)</i>
Staff	{ <i>staves (walking sticks, and in music)</i> { <i>staffs (in a military sense)</i>

(2) Some nouns have *two meanings* in the singular, and *one* in the plural :—

SING.	PLUR.
Abuse, (1) <i>wrong use</i> (2) <i>reproach</i>	abuses, <i>wrong uses</i>
Foot, (1) <i>part of body</i> (2) <i>infantry</i>	feet, <i>parts of body</i>
Force, (1) <i>strength</i> (2) <i>troop</i>	forces, <i>troops</i>
Gain, (1) <i>acquisition</i> (2) <i>profit</i>	gains, <i>profit</i>
Horse, (1) <i>the animal</i> (2) <i>cavalry</i>	horses, <i>the animals</i>
Issue, (1) <i>result</i> (2) <i>offspring</i>	issues, <i>results</i>
Light, (1) <i>of a lamp</i> (2) <i>a lamp</i>	lights, <i>lamps</i>
People, (1) <i>nation</i> (2) <i>persons</i>	peoples, <i>nations</i>
Powder, (1) <i>a dose</i> (2) <i>for guns</i>	powders, <i>doses</i>
Practice, (1) <i>a habit</i> (2) <i>exercise of a profession</i>	practices, <i>habits</i>

NOTE.—The nouns *compass* and *content* have *two meanings* in the singular, and a *third* in the plural :—*compass*, (1) *circuit*, (2) *mariner's compass*; *compasses*, (3) *instrument for measuring*; *content*, (1) *capacity*, (2) *contentment*; *contents*, (3) *things contained*.

<sup>1</sup> Thus we can say 'a sixpence.'

(3) Some nouns have *two* meanings in the plural, and *one* in the singular :—

SING.	PLUR.
Appointment, <i>situation</i>	appointments, (1) <i>situations</i> (2) <i>equipments</i>
Circumstance, <i>fact</i>	circumstances, (1) <i>facts</i> (2) <i>condition</i>
Colour, <i>hue</i>	colours, (1) <i>hues</i> (2) <i>a flag</i>
Custom, <i>habit</i>	customs, (1) <i>habits</i> (2) <i>revenue duties</i>
Effect, <i>result</i>	effects, (1) <i>results</i> (2) <i>property</i>
Element, <i>simple substance</i>	elements, (1) <i>simple substances</i> (2) <i>rudiments</i>
Manner, <i>method</i>	manners, (1) <i>methods</i> (2) <i>behaviour</i>
Moral, <i>a moral lesson</i>	morals, (1) <i>moral lessons</i> (2) <i>conduct</i>
Number, <i>quantity</i>	numbers, (1) <i>quantities</i> (2) <i>verses</i>
Pain, <i>suffering</i>	pains, (1) <i>sufferings</i> (2) <i>exertion</i>
Part, <i>division</i>	parts, (1) <i>divisions</i> (2) <i>abilities</i>
Premise, <i>proposition</i>	premises, (1) <i>propositions</i> (2) <i>buildings</i>
Provision, <i>condition</i>	provisions, (1) <i>conditions</i> (2) <i>food</i>
Quarter, <i>fourth part</i>	quarters, (1) <i>fourth parts</i> (2) <i>lodgings</i>
Spectacle, <i>sight</i>	spectacles, (1) <i>sights</i> (2) <i>eye-glasses</i>

NOTE.—*Letter* has *two* meanings in the singular, and *three* in the plural: singular, (1) of *alphabet*, (2) *epistle*; plural, (1) of *alphabet*, (2) *epistles*, (3) *literature*. *Ground* means in the singular, (1) *earth*, (2) *reason*; in the plural, (1) *garden*, (2) *reasons*, (3) *drugs*. Cf. the singular and plural of *stock*, *respect*, *draught*, *list*, *shroud*.

(4) Some nouns have acquired a *different* meaning in the plural :—

SING.	PLUR.
Advice, <i>counsel</i>	advices, <i>information</i>
Air, <i>atmosphere</i>	airs, <i>affectation</i>
Domino, <i>a cloak used as a disguise</i>	dominoes, <i>the game</i>
Good, <i>benefit</i>	goods, <i>property</i>
Minute, <i>of time</i>	minutes, <i>of a meeting</i>
Physic, <i>medicine</i>	physics, <i>natural science</i>
Quarter, <i>locality</i>	quarters, <i>lodgings</i>
Return, <i>coming back</i>	returns, <i>statistics</i>
Vapour, <i>steam</i>	vapours, <i>ill-humour</i>
Vesper, <i>evening</i>	vespers, <i>evening service</i>

NOTE.—*Hangings* means things hung, curtains; *leavings*, things left; *belongings*, things that belong; so with *sweepings*, *takings* (money taken), *savings*, *winnings*, *earnings*, *surroundings*. The singulars have different meanings, as in 'He deserves *hanging*.'

### CASE.

15. *Definition*.—Case indicates the relation in which a noun (or a pronoun) stands to some other word in a sentence. Thus—

(1) The Nominative Case is the case of the *subject* of a verb: as, 'They *boy* runs.'

(2) The Objective (or Accusative) Case is the case of the *object* of a verb or a preposition: as, 'He struck the *boy*.' 'The dog was struck by the *boy*.'



(3) The Possessive (or Genitive) Case indicates that something belongs to the person or thing named by the noun: as, 'The *boy's* book.' The Possessive may be used in a *subjective* or in an *objective* sense: thus 'God's love' may mean love felt by God (the *subject* of it), or the love felt for God (the *object* of it).

(4) The Dative Case is the case of the *indirect object* of a verb: as, 'I gave *him* the prize,' 'Give it *him*.' See 222 and Notes.

(5) The Vocative Case (or Nominative of Address) indicates that the person named is addressed: as, '*Boy!* Where is your book?'

### THE NOMINATIVE CASE.

135. The Nominative Case<sup>1</sup> or Subject is placed, as a rule, before the verb. But it comes or may come after the verb (or, where an auxiliary verb is used, after the auxiliary)—

(1) In interrogations:—

How many books *have you*? What *do you* say?

(2) Sometimes in exclamations:—

What a son *has he* lost! How great *is thy* goodness!—*Bible*.

NOTE.—But ordinarily an exclamation is distinguished from an interrogation by its keeping the normal order, and we say—'How *he ran!*' but 'How *did he* run?'—'What success *he had!*' but 'What success *had he?*'

(3) With the imperative mood:—

*Go ye* and tell that fox.—*Bible*. *Do you* stand here.

NOTE.—In modern English the subject is generally omitted with the imperative mood.

(4) With the subjunctive mood used to express a *wish* or a *purpose*:—

Long live the king! *May I* be there to see! *Suffice it* to say.

(5) In conditional clauses without *if*, *whether*, or *though*:—

*Were I* (=if I were) a rich man, I would help you.

*Be it* (=whether it be) cheap or dear, I will take it.

He will not succeed, *try he* (=though he try) never so hard.

(6) When a word or a phrase is transferred to the beginning of the sentence (*a*) for the sake of emphasis, or (*b*) in order to keep relative clauses next their antecedents [847, (3)], or appositional phrases next their subject [847, (5)]:—

(*a*) Great *was the* uproar. Gone *are my* hopes. Up *flew the* signal.

Such *was his* diligence, that he passed the examination.

Strayed last night from the Hill Farm, a colt, etc. (*Public Notice*).

(*b*) In the centre rode Duke William, who bore a mace of iron, and who, etc.

And now began in wind and rain the great battle, upon which so much depended, and which, etc.

---

<sup>1</sup> For the uses of the Nominative Case see 334.

When the verb is in the present or the past imperfect momentary tenses, the auxiliary form of the verb is often preferred :—

Thus *do men* heap up riches (*for* thus men heap up riches).

So furiously *does the wind* blow that the sail is splitting (*for* the wind blows so furiously that etc.).

Never *did Englishmen* show greater courage (*for* Englishmen never showed etc.).

Not only *did it* rain but it hailed also (*for* it not only rained but etc.).

(7) Often after *so*, *as*, *the more*, etc., and *than*, in the second clause of a sentence, and always after *nor* :—

As you behave to me, so *shall I* behave to you.

Since you are satisfied, so *am I* (satisfied).

The officers shouted, as *did the men* (shout).

The more I saw of him, the less *was I* pleased with him.

The more I listened, the more *did I* laugh.<sup>1</sup>

She has no deeper feelings than *has a* hothouse rose.

He was not present, nor *was I* (present).

(8) In poetry (see 865) :—

*Reel'd soul and sense, reel'd brain and eye.*—Scott.

(9) In introducing speech reported directly :—

"What is it" ? *enquired the widow*. "I'll astonish you," *said Tom*.

NOTE.—*Quoth* (=says, said) is *always* followed by its subject :—"Quoth the raven, 'Nevermore.'"

136. Two Nominatives.—(1) Two or more Singular nouns or pronouns joined by *and* require a Plural verb :—

The boy and the girl *are* (=they are) gone.

You and I *are* (=we are) old friends.

But the verb is Singular when the two nouns :—

(a) refer to the same person or thing :—

The Magistrate and Collector *is* in Court.

(b) denote a single whole or notion :—

The horse and cart *is* at the door.

Johnson's "Lives" *is* a famous book.

Six autograph letters of Browning bound in vellum *was* the chief feature of the Exhibition.

Twenty pounds *is* too much for a bicycle.

My hope and confidence *is* that you will succeed.

When and where he was born *is* not known.

(c) are qualified by *each* or *every* :—

Every leaf and every flower *declares* the glory of the Creator.

(2) Two Singular nouns joined by *or* or *nor*, when they are strongly alternative [292, (1)], require a Singular verb :—

Neither his father nor his mother *is* alive.

---

<sup>1</sup> But 'The more I listened, the more I laughed' is also correct.

When one of the nouns is plural, it is placed next the verb, and the verb is plural :—

Neither John nor his brothers *have come*.

(3) Two Singular nouns joined by *and not* (cf. 781) require a Singular verb :—

My poverty and not my will *consents*.—*Shakspeare*.

(4) When two or more Subjects of different Persons are joined by *or* or *nor*, the verb agrees with the Subject nearest to it :—

Either Ram or I *am* wrong.

Neither Ram nor you *have* gone.

It is better, however, to repeat the verb :—

Either Ram *is* wrong or I *am*.

Neither *has* Ram gone nor *have* you.

**137. The Nominative Case Absolute.**—A Noun and a Participle in agreement with it may form together an adverbial phrase grammatically *independent* of the rest of the sentence : as ‘*The Gauls having departed*, the citizens returned to Rome.’ Such a phrase is called an *absolute* phrase because it stands alone, and the noun is said to be in the Nominative Case Absolute :—

I shall not lag behind nor err (=miss)

The way, *thou leading*.—*Milton*.

I lay

In silence musing by my comrade’s side.

*He also* (being) *silent*.—*Wordsworth*.

*The river* (having been) *crossed*, the army resumed its march.

**NOTE.**—Sometimes a noun with a gerundial infinitive forms an Absolute phrase : ‘The business was turned into a Company, *the owners to receive* (=the owners receiving) half the shares [232, (4)].’ But the absolute construction should be sparingly used in ordinary prose.

#### THE OBJECTIVE (OR ACCUSATIVE) CASE.

**138.** For the uses of the Objective Case, see 335, 336. For the *Objective Complement*, see 9 ; for the *Cognate Object*, 220 ; for the *Retained Object*, 223.

**139. The Adverbial Objective.**—A noun in the Objective Case is used adverbially to denote—

(a) Extent and Direction in Space :—

He lives a long *way* from Calcutta. Go the nearest *way*.

They met half *way*. What *distance* can you throw ?

My house is a mile from the town. He ran a *mile*.

When attacked, he stood his *ground*. I will not retreat an *inch*.

The army was three *marches* in the rear of the enemy.

I turned and saw her distant a few *steps*.—*Wordsworth*.

## (b) Duration of Time and Point of Time :—

He stayed there ten *years*. This happens *night* after *night*.

We waited an *hour*. Come the *day* after to-morrow.

He arrived last *night*. He goes to Simla every *summer*.

I met him a *month* ago. I shall meet him a *month* hence.

I have been here a *week* (duration of time) *to-day* (point of time).

Stay a *while*. Wait a *little* [363 (d)]. He is at work all *day* long.

I bathe all the *year* round. I have told you *times* without number.

NOTE.—‘I shall expect you *to-day week*’ = ‘I shall expect you at the interval of a week from the point of time *to-day*,’ and *week* (=in a week) is adjectival to *day*, which is an adverbial objective.

## (c) Cost or Value :—

This book cost five *rupees*. Rice is four *annas* a pound.

It is not worth *while* (=the time spent) arguing about it.

He was worthy a better *fate*. He is worth you and me put together.

## (d) Amount or Degree :—

I do not care a *straw*—a *fig*—a *pin*—a *bit*—for him.

He was fined ten *rupees*. This is *something* like that.

The patient is a *trifle* better to-day.

It is five *degrees* hotter than it was yesterday.

This sum is ten *times* harder than that one.

The wall is four *feet* high. Beauty is only *skin* deep.

He is a *year* older than I am.

He is every *inch* (of him) a soldier. He weighs ten *stone*.

He advanced with an army ten thousand (*men*) strong.

Gladstone stands *head* and *shoulders* above his contemporaries.

NOTE.—Compare ‘this is a *pound* too light’ with ‘this is too light *by a pound* [439, (4)].’

## (e) Manner or Attendant Circumstance :—

The man was bound *hand* and *foot*. They were sitting *side* by *side*.

Let us walk *arm* in *arm*. I met him *face* to *face*.

He approached me *sword* in *hand*. *Penny* wise and *pound* foolish.

We must ride *post-haste*. The boat turned *bottom* upwards.

The king banished Wolsey the *court*.

NOTE.—Expressions like *sword in hand* are by some regarded as instances of the case absolute with the participle omitted : thus *sword in hand* = *sword being in hand*. But in Old English, *face to face* was of *face to face* : see 439, (4), note.

## THE POSSESSIVE (OR GENITIVE) CASE.

140. The Possessive Ending.—In Old English the possessive ending was *-es*, now *-s* (the apostrophe before the *s* denoting that the vowel of the suffix has been dropped), as ‘the *boy's* book.’<sup>1</sup> The possessive plural is formed by adding the apostrophe only, as ‘the *boys'* books’; except when the plural noun does not end in *s*, as ‘the *men's* books.’

<sup>1</sup> Note that the article belongs to the possessive [unless it is adjectival, as in ‘the *mother's* (=motherly) nature of Althæa’] : ‘the *boy's* book’ = a (or the) *book of the boy*.

If the possessive is antecedent to a relative sentence, the form in *of* is now always employed, in order to bring the antecedent and the relative close together, and so prevent ambiguity. Thus we do not say, 'the *man's* hat that was drowned'; but, 'the hat *of the man* that was drowned.'

141. Omission of '-s.'—In Singular nouns the *s* of the possessive ending is omitted, in prose—(a) when the last syllable begins and ends with *s*: '*Moses' law*'; (b) before the word *sake* in '*for conscience' sake*,' '*for goodness' sake*,' etc. (but '*for truth's sake*'): in poetry frequently :—

Hard *unkindness' altered* eye.—*Gray*.

The innocent blood

Shed for her fair *face' sake*.<sup>1</sup>—*Swinburne*.

As thick as *Ajax' seven-fold* shield.—*Butler*.

Worth a *Jewess' eye*.—*Shakspeare*.

But ordinarily *s* should be retained :—'*His Holiness's* toe,' '*Pepys's* Diary,' '*Davis's* Strait,' '*Letts's* Calendars,' '*Epps's* cocoa,' '*Fortunatus's* cap,' '*Columbus's* discovery,' '*Euripides's* dramas,' '*Chambers's* Journal,' '*St. James's* Square,' '*for James's* sake.'

142. Possessive of Proper Nouns in -s.—The following table is added to explain a subject which is often confused :—

SING.	PLUR.
Nom. James	Nom. Jameses
Poss. James's	Poss. Jameses'

143. Possessive of Compounds.—In compounds, or when a noun is followed by a descriptive phrase, or in complex names, the *'s* is affixed to the last word : as, '*the heir-at-law's* will,' '*the Queen of England's* reign,' '*Smith the baker's* son,' '*Messrs. Thacker, Spink and Co.'s* shop,' '*Julias Caesar's* death,' '*Ram Gopal Singh's* book.' We also say '*some one else's* book.' For the sake of brevity, the same rule is followed even when one thing is possessed by several persons, if they are closely connected by *and* : as, '*John, William, and Mary's* uncle'; but we write '*the pope's* and *the king's* pleasure,' because the two pleasures are distinct.

144. The Possessive inflexion is limited chiefly to persons and animals. We say '*the king's* crown,' '*the lion's* mane'; but not '*the tree's* top,' '*the sofa's* cushion,' '*the verandah's* punkah.'<sup>2</sup> We may, however, use the first noun adjectively and say '*the tree top*,' '*the sofa cushion*,' '*the verandah punkah* [554].' So

<sup>1</sup> Milton has '*for intermission sake*,' without the apostrophe, and similarly we sometimes find '*for conscience sake*.'

<sup>2</sup> Poetry has more licence :—'*in danger's* hour' (*Doyle*), for '*in the hour of danger*'; '*on a lofty vase's* side' (*Gray*), for '*on the side of a lofty vase*.'

with 'the United States ambassador,' 'the *Times* (not *Times*)' correspondent,' 'the *Roberts* fund,' 'the *Achilles* heel,' 'Guy *Fawkes* day,' 'the *two o'clock* train.'

145. The inflexion is used, however, in—

(1) Nouns denoting (a) personified or (b) quasi-personified things :—

- |                                 |                              |
|---------------------------------|------------------------------|
| (a) <i>Fortune's</i> smile.     | <i>Heaven's</i> decree.      |
| <i>Nature's</i> works.          | <i>Poverty's</i> tears.      |
| <i>Freedom's</i> martyrs.       | <i>India's</i> sons.         |
| (b) The <i>mountain's</i> brow. | The <i>law's</i> delays.     |
| The <i>sun's</i> rays.          | The <i>court's</i> decision. |
| The <i>ocean's</i> roar.        | The <i>country's</i> good.   |
| The <i>earth's</i> orbit.       | At <i>duty's</i> call.       |
| The <i>moon's</i> phases.       | At <i>death's</i> door.      |
| The <i>soul's</i> welfare.      |                              |

(2) Nouns denoting (a) time, (b) space, (c) weight :—

- |                                   |                                     |
|-----------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| (a) A <i>minute's</i> interval.   | A few <i>hours'</i> intercourse.    |
| A <i>day's</i> leave.             | The <i>Thirty Years'</i> War.       |
| A <i>night's</i> rest.            | The <i>Three Days'</i> Revolution;  |
| A <i>month's</i> holiday.         | A <i>nine days'</i> wonder.         |
| A <i>week's</i> visit.            | <i>Three days'</i> grace.           |
| In a <i>year's</i> time.          | A bill at six <i>months'</i> sight. |
| A <i>quarter's</i> rent.          | At ten <i>years'</i> purchase.      |
| (b) A <i>hand's</i> breadth.      | A <i>boat's</i> length.             |
| A <i>hair's</i> breadth.          | A <i>stone's</i> throw.             |
| (c) Twenty <i>pounds'</i> weight. | A ship of 500 <i>tons'</i> burden.  |

(3) A few common phrases, for the sake of brevity :—

- |  |                                      |
|--|--------------------------------------|
| He is at his <i>wit's</i> end.           | In my <i>mind's</i> eye.             |
| He came to his <i>journey's</i> end.     | A <i>ship's</i> company.             |
| A <i>rope's</i> end.                     | A <i>ship's</i> mast.                |
| <i>Land's</i> end.                       | A <i>boat's</i> crew.                |
| He has it at his <i>fingers'</i> ends.   | For <i>pity's</i> sake.              |
| He did it to his <i>heart's</i> content. | For <i>mercy's</i> sake.             |
| I kept him at <i>arm's</i> length.       | For <i>goodness'</i> sake.           |
| The <i>water's</i> edge.                 | I gave him his <i>money's</i> worth. |
| A <i>pin's</i> head.                     |                                      |

NOTE.—We say an *anna's* worth, a *rupee's* worth, a *farthing's* worth, a *shilling's* worth, a *crown's* worth, a *pound's* worth; but a *pice* worth, a *penny* worth.

146. 'This book of mine,' etc.—We can say 'my good book' but not 'my *this* book'; similarly we can say 'a good book,' but not 'a *Ram's* book.' Hence, as a way out of the difficulty, instead of 'my *this* book'<sup>1</sup> we say 'this book of mine,' and instead of 'a *Ram's* book' we say 'a book of *Ram's*'<sup>2</sup>; so that *of mine* is simply equivalent to *my*, and *of Ram's* to *Ram's*. Hence 'this father of mine' does not and cannot mean 'this father of my fathers,' but

<sup>1</sup> But 'this *my* son,' 'which *my* covenant,' occur in the Bible.

<sup>2</sup> 'This book of *me*' and 'a book of *Ram*' were avoided as awkward and often ambiguous expressions.

is merely a substitute for the impossible collocations 'my this father' or 'this my father.'<sup>1</sup>

NOTE.—We can say '*my other book*' (also *my many, my few*), but not '*my another book*'; say '*another book of mine*.' *Many another* (and *many such*) is correct. We find both *another such* and *such another*; *who both* and *both of whom*. Observe that '*a portrait of the queen*' means *a representation of the queen*; '*a portrait of the queen's*' means *a portrait belonging to the queen*. Similarly, '*this news of Ram*' means *this news about Ram*; but '*this news of Ram's*' means *this news that Ram brings*.

### ADJECTIVES.

147. *Definition*.—An **Adjective** (Latin *adjectivus*, what is added) is a word used to qualify a Noun or a Pronoun. It can be used (1) *attributively*, as '*a tall man*'; or (2) *predicatively*, as '*the man is tall*.'

148. **Adverb of same form as Adjective**.—There are many common phrases in which the Adverb has the same form as the corresponding Adjective: as, to work *hard* (not *hardly*), to hold *tight*, to stick *fast*, to drink *deep*, to walk *straight*, to stop *short*, to speak *loud*, to talk *low*, to talk *big*, to play *fair*, to bid (= promise) *fair*, to play *high*, to aim *high*, prices run *high*, it makes the blood run *cold*, if I remember *right*, to approach *near*, to sell (or buy) *cheap* or *dear*, to see *double*, to serve one *right*, to cost one *dear*, to look one *straight* (or *full*) in the face; *pretty* good, *dark* red, *right* reverend, *wide* open, *wide* awake, *far* and *wide*, *sound* asleep, *fast* asleep, *clean* gone, *stark* naked (or mad), *sure* enough, *passing* strange, *full*<sup>2</sup> oft (cf. 738).

NOTE.—*Doubtless* is always an adverb, though *doubtlessly* also occurs.

149. **Comparison of Adjectives**.—There are three Degrees of Comparison: the Positive *high*; the Comparative, *high-er*; the Superlative, *high-est*. When an Adjective has more than two syllables, the comparison is usually expressed by *more* and *most*, as *eloquent*, *more eloquent*, *most eloquent*.

NOTE.—Some adjectives cannot, in the nature of things, be compared:—*one, two, first, second, single, double, all, several*, etc.; *round, square, weekly, monthly, French, German, solar, lunar, longish, reddish, eternal, perfect, unique, extreme, ideal, chief, full*, etc.<sup>3</sup> *Northern*, etc., make the superlative *northermost*, etc.

### 150. Irregular Comparisons.

(1) **Far, farther, farthest**.—*Farther* and *farthest* are for *far-er* and *far-est*, the *th* have crept in from false analogy with *further, furthest*: see *fore* below. *Farther* means 'more distant'; *further, additional*, as '*a further instance*.'

<sup>1</sup> See footnote 1, p. 93.

<sup>2</sup> *Full* here means *very*, as in '*full many*,' '*full well*.'

<sup>3</sup> It follows that these adjectives do not usually admit of modification: we cannot say '*somewhat square*,' '*pretty uniform*,' '*very unique*.'

(2) **Good, better, best.**—This is also the comparison of *well*.

(3) **Bad, worse, worst.**—*Worse* is short for *wors-er*; *worst* is a contraction of *wors-est*. This is also the comparison of *ill*.

(4) **Much, more, most.**—*More* and *most* are also the comparative and superlative of *many*. *Much* denotes quantity, *many* denotes number.

(5) **Near, nearer, nearest and next.**—*Near* was originally the comparative of *nigh*, making the superlative *nighest*, contracted into *next*. *Near* afterwards came to be used as a positive, from which the new comparative and superlative *nearer*, *nearest* were formed. *Nearest* denotes distance: 'My house is the *nearest* to us'; *next* denotes position: 'My house is *next* to yours.'

(6) **Old, {older, oldest}, {elder, eldest}.**—*Elder* and *eldest* are now used to denote the precedence that accompanies greater age: as 'the *eldest* son,' 'my *elder* brother.' *Elder* and *eldest* are applied to persons only, *older* and *oldest* to both things and persons: 'My *eldest* daughter'; 'I have an *older* son'; 'This is the *oldest* house in the town.'

(7) **Little, less and lesser, least.**—*Less* and *least* are used both as adjectives and adverbs. *Lesser* is a double comparative, and is now used only as an adjective: 'This is the *lesser* evil of the two.'

(8) **Late, {later, latest}, {latter, last}.**—*Last* is a contraction of *latest*. *Late* is an adverb in 'to arrive *late*,' i.e. at a late hour; *lately* means 'recently.' *Late*, as an adjective, has two meanings:—(1) *behindhand*: 'he was *late* for dinner'; (2) *just past*; *just deceased*: 'during the *late* summer,' 'my *late* wife.' *Last* has three meanings:—(1) *endmost*: 'he is *last* in his class'; (2) *ultimate*: 'he came *last* year'; (3) *utmost*: 'this is of the *last* importance.'

*Later* and *latest* refer to *time*: 'this is a *later* edition,' 'the *latest* discovery in science.'

*Latter* and *last* refer to *order*: 'the *latter* alternative,' 'the *last* of the Romans.'

(9) **Fore, {former, first, foremost}, {further, furthest, furthestmost}.**

*First* (a contraction of *fore-st*) is of general application; *foremost* means 'most conspicuous.' Adam was the *first* man; Napoleon was the *foremost* man of his time.



(10) **Hind**, hinder, hindmost and hindermost.

(11) **In** (adv.), inner, inmost and innermost.

(12) **Out** (adv.), { outer, outmost and outermost.  
utter, utmost and uttermost.

*Outer* means 'outside': as, 'an *outer* garment'; *utter* means 'extreme, complete' (in a bad sense): as, 'an *utter* failure.'

(13) **Up** (adv.), upper, upmost and uppermost.

(14) **(Be)neath** (adv.), nether, nethermost.

**151. Latin Comparatives.**—A few adjectives, originally Latin comparatives, have the Latin comparative suffix *-ior*:—*interior*, *exterior*, *superior*, *inferior*, *anterior*, *posterior*, *prior*, *ulterior*, *senior*, *junior*, *major*, *minor*. These are followed by *to* (as 'he is *superior to me*'), except *interior*, *ulterior*, *major*, *minor*, which have lost their comparative force and are used as Positive adjectives: as, 'A matter of *minor* (secondary) importance.' A few comparatives of English origin also cannot be followed by *than* (nor by *to*):—*former*, *latter*, *elder*, *hinder*, *upper*, *nether*, *inner*, *outer*, *utter*.

### NUMERALS.

**152. Cardinal Numerals** are those which show *how many* objects are specified: '*two* bats,' '*three* balls.'

The Cardinal Numerals from *one* to *ninety-nine* are adjectives, but they are occasionally used as nouns: *by ones*, *by twos*; *on all fours* (= on hands and feet); *at sixes and sevens* (= in confusion). *One* is sometimes used for *the same*:—

That's all *one* to me = that is quite *the same* to me.

The Cardinal Adverbs are—*once*, *twice*, *thrice* or *three times*, *four times*, etc.

**153. Ordinal Numerals** show *in what order* things are arranged, as 'the *first* prize,' 'the *third* day.'

The Ordinal Adverbs are—*first* (not *firstly*<sup>1</sup>), *secondly*, etc.

NOTE.—Ordinal numerals should precede cardinal:—'The *first three* names on the list,' not 'the *three first*.'

**154. Multiplicatives** show how often a thing is repeated, and are expressed by the suffixes—

(a) *-fold*: '*two-fold*, *three-fold*, etc.

(b) *-ple* or *-ble*: *sin-ple*, *sim-ple*, *dou-ble*, *tre-ble* (or *tri-ple*), *quadru-ple*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> See 739.

155. **Distributives** (how many at a time) are expressed by employing—

(a) The preposition *by*: *by ones, by twos*, etc.; *one by one, two by two*, etc. Cf. *step by step, little by little* [439, (4), note].

(b) *And*: in the single instance *two and two*. Cf. *hot and hot* (= successively hot), *watch and watch* (= in alternate watches).

### ARTICLES.

156. The Articles are not a separate part of speech: they are Demonstrative Adjectives.

The *Definite Article*, *the*, is a weakened form of *that*, and is called Definite because its function is to *define* or particularise. The *Indefinite Article*, *an, a*, is a weakened form of *one*, and is called Indefinite because its function is *not to define* but to generalise.

Thus in the sentence '*the man that I saw yesterday*,' *the man* refers to a particular man; in '*a man that I saw yesterday*,' *a man* refers to any one among a number of men.

NOTE.—The form *an* is used before a vowel or a silent *h*: *an apple, an hour*. *An* becomes *a* before a consonant, an aspirated *h*, or a syllable with the sound of *yu*: *a man, a horse, a usage, a eulogy* (but *an uncle*). But *an* is generally used before an aspirated *h* when the accent is not on the first syllable: *an historical event, an hotel*.

### USES OF THE DEFINITE ARTICLE.

157. (1) **Defining 'the.'**—*The* is prefixed to a noun when the noun is separately defined by a qualifying word or expression, either expressed or understood. Thus '*the red ball*' implies that there is only one ball that is red; '*a red ball*' implies that there are several red balls, one of which is mentioned: and, therefore, in this latter instance, the noun *ball* is not separately defined by the qualifying word *red*. So with—

*The Great Fire. The book that I gave you. The way to be happy. He had the effrontery to deny it. I wonder you have the patience to listen to him. The bells of London. The clock on the stairs. I saw a man there, and I went up to the man (that I saw). Where is the cobra?—I have killed the creature (that you mention).*

Hence, *the* must be used with Superlatives and words used in a Superlative sense, since the very notion of the Superlative is that of separately defining or singling out an object:—

*The longest day in the year.  
The head boy in the class is Ram.  
The chief magistrate of Calcutta.<sup>1</sup>*

<sup>1</sup> The Superlative is sometimes employed predicatively without any article:—  
'She is *fairest* of the fair'; 'This plan is *best* of all'; 'I am *head* boy in the class.'

Hence also, *the* must be employed when one of two known alternatives is singled out :—

He gained *the* advantage (the two alternatives being success and failure).  
Choose *the* narrow way, not *the* broad way.

‘He gained *an* advantage’ would imply that the alternative of failure was not contemplated, but merely the different kinds of success that might be attained, and ‘*an* advantage’ means ‘*some* advantage.’ So—

This is *the* *finer* horse of the two.

‘This is *a* *finer* horse than that’ is right, because the question is not now between two known objects; there may be several horses finer than the one referred to. So we say ‘*a* *similar* thing,’ because there may be several; but ‘*the* *same* thing,’ because there is only one.

Hence, further, *the* is used when special emphasis is intended :—

He is *the* poet of his age (= the greatest poet).

This is *the* way, walk ye in it (= the only right way).—*Bible*.

Exact to *the* letter (= each separate letter).

Portrayed to *the* life (= the original living person).

Cheered to *the* echo (as contrasted with the original sound).

You are *the* man to do it (= the proper man).

This is just *the* thing (= the right thing).

**158. (2) Familiar ‘the.’**—*The* is prefixed to a noun when the notion conveyed by the noun is so familiar or unique that no descriptive word or expression is needed :—

Come into *the* garden (= the garden that belongs to our house).

Shut *the* door (= the door of the room where we are).

He was brought before *the* magistrate (= the magistrate who, as every one knows, tries such cases).

He came to *the* rescue (= the rescue required in the case).

To give *the* alarm. To sound *the* retreat. He got *the* start.

I passed beside the reverend walls

In which of old I wore *the* gown (= the usual college gown).—*Tennyson*.

To go to *the* play (or theatre). Cultivators of *the* soil.

Hence *the* is used with nouns that represent well-known single objects or single wholes :—

*The* sun, *the* moon, *the* world, *the* universe, *the* earth, *the* ocean, *the* sky, *the* heavens, *the* sea, *the* equator, *the* times (but *Heaven*, *Hell*, *Purgatory*, *Paradise*, as names of places, without any article); *the* Bible, *the* Gospel, *the* Scripture: *the* Queen, *the* Pope; *the* Douglas, *the* Bruce; *the* north, *the* south, *the* east, *the* west; *the* Army, *the* Navy, *the* Bar, *the* nobility, *the* gentry, *the* public, etc.

Similarly *the* is used in such phrases as—

Quite *the* contrary (of what has been said). Nothing of *the* kind (that you mention). To beg *the* question (under debate). Foreign to *the* subject (that is being considered). To see *the* light (of day, *i.e.* to be published). To sell by *the* pound (the well-known weight).

159. (3) '**The**' for Possessive Pronoun.—Since the possessive pronoun is a defining word, *the* often takes its place, when it is clear, from the context, to whom the thing mentioned belongs:—

I struck him on *the* head. Certain death stared him in *the* face. He was out to *the* heart. To take the bull by *the* horns. To take time by *the* forelock.

They shoot out *the* lip, they shake *the* head.—*Bible*.

Oh 'tis hard to give *the* (=one's) hand

Where *the* (=one's) heart can never be.—*Song*.

NOTE.—But we say—'He took it into *his* (not *the*) head'; 'He wrung *his* hands, gnashed *his* teeth, tore *his* hair'; 'She cried *her* eyes out'; 'He let it slip through *his* fingers'; 'He is on *his* last legs.'

160. (4) Generalising '**the**' with Adjectives.—*The* is prefixed—

(a) To an adjective with a plural notion, to indicate a class of persons. Thus, *the rich* = all those who are rich, *rich men* generally. We can say—

*The rich* are not always happy,

or

*Rich men* are not always happy,

but we can never combine both forms and say—

*The rich men* are not always happy.

(b) To an adjective with a singular notion to express the corresponding abstract idea. Thus *the true* = all that which is true = *truth*:—

All the motions of Goldsmith's nature moved in the direction of *the true*, *the natural*, *the sweet*, *the gentle*.—*De Quincey*.

*The future* (=futura) is unknown to us.

He would oft leave *the right* to pursue *the expedient*.—*Goldsmith*.

161. (5) Generalising '**the**' with Nouns.—*The* is similarly prefixed to a singular noun—

(a) To indicate a specimen as representative of a class: *as*, *the eagle*, to represent the whole species of eagles, *the wise man*, *the hero*, *the brute*, to represent wise men, heroes, and brutes generally:—

*The eagle* is the king of birds.

*The wise man* knows when to be silent.

Discern how *the hero* differs from *the brute*.—*Addison*.

(b) To express the cognate abstract notion: as, *the patriot* for 'patriotism,' *the beast* for 'man's animal nature,' *the ape* for 'sensuality,' *the tiger* for 'cruelty,' *the father* for 'fatherly feelings':—

He has something of *the patriot* in his composition.

Move upward, working out *the beast*,  
And let *the ape* and (*the*) *tiger* die.—Tennyson.

All *the father* rises in my heart.—Addison.

162. (6) 'The' with Proper Nouns.<sup>1</sup> (a) The following generally take the Definite Article, because they are regarded mainly as epithets:—

Peoples, parties, sects: *the English, the Whigs, the Pharisees.*

Rivers, seas, oceans: *the Ganges, the Mediterranean, the Atlantic, the Bosphorus.*

Mountain-ranges: *the Alps*; but not the names of single mountains: *Snowdon, Olympus, Vesuvius.*

(b) The following generally take no Article, because they are regarded as single wholes:—

Continents, countries, islands, provinces, towns: *Europe, India, Ceylon, Bengal, Calcutta*; except the names of some districts: *the Deccan, the Carnatic, the Crimea, the Tyrol, the Punjab*, and of plural terms for countries and groups of islands: *the West Indies, the Netherlands, the Azores, the Orkneys.*

Times of the year: *May, Sunday, Christmas, Lent.*

Languages and branches of knowledge: *English, Algebra, Astronomy.*

NOTE.—The names of literary works come under no fixed rule. We say *The Deserted Village, The Faery Queen, The Tempest*, (omitting *the*, however, after the author's name, as *Shakspeare's 'Tempest'*, but '*The Tempest*' of *Shakspeare*), *Old Kensington, Vanity Fair, In Memoriam, Paradise Lost*, according as *the* is or is not part of the title. But *the* (or *a*), though in the title, is sometimes omitted for the sake of brevity, as (The) *Winter's Tale*, (A) *Midsummer Night's Dream*; and is sometimes inserted where it is not part of the title, as *the Areopagitica, the In Memoriam, the Paradise Lost*. Generally, however, where the title is the name of a person, no article is inserted, as *Hamlet, Romeo and Juliet, David Copperfield, Robinson Crusoe, Marmion*; but it may sometimes be introduced, as *the Comus, the Lycidas, the Endymion*.

Names of diseases usually do not take *the* before them:—*fever, headache, diphtheria*; sometimes, however, *the* may be used:—*the gout, the measles, the mumps, the ague, the cholera.*

#### USES OF THE INDEFINITE ARTICLE

163. (1) Individualising 'a.'—The Indefinite Article individualises without defining. Thus, in 'There was once *a man* who' etc., '*a man*' = *a certain man*; in 'I have *a great respect* for

<sup>1</sup> For *the* and *a* with Proper Nouns used in a descriptive sense. see 114.

you,' 'a great respect' = *some* great respect<sup>1</sup>; in 'Not a drum was heard,' 'a drum' = *one* drum. So, *a* = (*a*) *one*, or (*b*) *the same* in—

- (a) They were killed to *a* man.  
 I will come in *a* minute or two.  
 One at *a* time. Seven at *a* blow. *A* rupee a yard.  
 In a day or two. I see that at *a* glance.  
 He has not *a* leg to stand upon. We are both of *a* mind.
- (b) Birds of *a* feather. Two of *a* trade can never agree.  
 They are much of *an* age—of *a* size.  
 This is all of *a* sort—of *a* piece.

164. (2) **Generalising 'a.'**—The Indefinite Article generalises. Thus, in 'Give me *a* book,' 'a book' = *any* book; in '*A* son should obey his father,' 'a son' = *any* son, all sons. Compare:—

*A* horse is a useful animal.  
*The* horse is a useful animal.  
*Horses* are useful animals.

These sentences are all equivalent in meaning, because *a* horse = *any* horse = *horses generally*; while *the* horse [161, (a)] stands for the whole species of horses, and so is also equivalent to *horses generally*.

NOTE.—The Indefinite Article = *some* in 'a few,' 'a little.' Thus 'he had *a* few supporters' draws attention to the fact that he had at least *some* supporters, and *a* few is contrasted with *none*; 'he had *few* supporters' draws attention to their fewness only, and *few* is contrasted with *many*.

#### OMISSION OF THE ARTICLES.

165. Since both the Articles individualise the noun to which they are added, the general rule is that, where a noun has no article, it is to be taken in a general and indefinite sense and not in a particular and limited sense. Thus, *a* man and *the* man both mean 'some one man'; but *man* (as in '*Man* proposes, but God disposes') means 'man in general' and includes all men.

166. (1) **With Abstract, Material, and Collective Nouns.**—  
 (a) The Articles must never be joined to Abstract nouns:—

*Love* shall still be lord of all. *Trade* is flourishing. *Happiness* is transient. *Order* was evolved out of *chaos*. *Error* is the enemy of *Knowledge*. *History* is *philosophy* teaching by *experience*.

In 'I feel *a* great *love* for you,' 'He is at the head of *the* *trade*,' 'a great *love*' means a great *amount* of love, and *the* *trade* means some special trade, and so the notion set forth by the

<sup>1</sup> Other instances of *a* = *some* are:—'in *a* great degree'; 'on *an* average'; 'a great deal'; 'to be at *a* loss'; 'I am, in *a* manner, compelled to,' etc.; 'I am amazed to *a* degree' (= to some great degree).

noun is no longer abstract but concrete, and the articles are rightly used (116).

(b) The Articles are not joined to Material nouns, when the thing in general is denoted :—

Midas longed for *gold*.

But in 'this is a pure *gold*,' a *gold* means a *kind of gold* (112).

(c) A few Collective nouns, used in a general sense, dispense with the Definite Article, as *mankind*, *society*, *company*, *posterity*, *people*, *cattle*, *committee*, *parliament*, *government* :—

*Society* (=gentlefolk generally) refused to receive him.

The Houses of *Parliament*.

The question was discussed in *committee*.

He held an appointment under *Government*.<sup>1</sup>

Compare the following :—

(a) To be a member of *society* = to belong to a civilised community.

(b) To be a member of a *society* = to belong to an association of persons.

(a) He has *company* (=guests) to dinner.

(b) He is chairman of a *company* (=a body of shareholders).

(a) *The people* = the popular classes.

(b) *A people* = a nation.

(c) *People* = persons generally.

167. (2) **With Class Nouns.**—The Articles may be omitted before a singular concrete noun, where it represents a general notion—especially in comparative, negative, and interrogative sentences, and after *never*, *ever*, and *such*. Thus in—

More tunable than *lark* to *shepherd's* ear,

the whole species of larks, and the whole class of shepherds are meant, and not any particular lark or shepherd. Examples :—

*Eye* hath not seen nor *ear* heard the things etc.—*Bible*.

As fair as *day*.—*Shaks*. Braver *man* never drew *swora*.

Never *man* spake like this man.—*Bible*.

Never *master* had a page so kind.—*Shaks*.

When did *knight* of Provence avoid his foe?—*Bulwer*.

He shall receive such weekly *sum* as the court may see fit.

I whirl like leaves in roaring *wind*.—*Tennyson*.

He was all that *servant* ought to be.

NOTE.—*Never man* spake like this man = at no time did a man speak like this man. *Never a man* spake like this man = not one man spake like this man. Cf. 'Where woman has *never a soul* to save' (*Hood*), i.e. has no soul at all to save.

---

<sup>1</sup> *The Government* would also be correct. *Ministers* (of the Cabinet), without the, is admissible; but we must say *the Ministry*.

**168. (3) With Descriptive Nouns.**—The Articles may be omitted before a noun indicating rank, occupation, station, etc., when the noun is used in a descriptive sense (almost like an adjective) after verbs of incomplete predication. Thus, 'to be *king*' means merely to hold the position of king, 'to be a *king*' means to act like a king, to exercise the royal prerogatives:—

Thy father was *duke* of Milan (*Shaks.*); Becket was *Archbishop* of Canterbury; He is *heir* to the estate; Galileo was *prisoner* to the Inquisition; Ram was *apprentice* to a carpenter; Each to each is, dearest *brother* (*Tennyson*); *Father* of twenty children was he (*Longfellow*); She is *sister* to my uncle; He was *devil* for aught they knew (*Tennyson*); He turned *shoemaker*; He was created *Emperor*; I dub thee *knight* (*Scott*); He was elected *President*; Make thyself *prince* over us (*Bible*); Who calls me *villain*? (*Shaks.*); He is *hypocrite* enough for anything.

**169. (4) With Descriptive Nouns in Apposition.**—The Definite Article is omitted before these descriptive nouns (168), when they are used appositionally either (a) before or (b) after Proper Names:—

(a) *King Henry*; *Lord Tennyson*; *Bishop Ridley*; *Cardinal Newman*; *Pope Alexander*; *Father Dominic*; *General Wolseley*; *Captain Foley*; *Doctor Robinson*; *Lawyer Clippurse*; *Astronomer Bailey*; *Farmer Williams*; *Neighbour Flamborough*; *Dame Margaret*; *Sister Anne*; *Saint John*.

(b) *Henry, King of England*; *Richard, Duke of Gloucester*; *John, nephew to Robert*; *Elizabeth, daughter of Henry*; *Moloch, scepter'd king*; *Night, eldest of things*; *John Jones, undertaker*; *Brown and Co., booksellers and stationers*.

But this usage is not universal, and does not justify us in saying poet *Homer* instead of the poet *Homer*.

NOTE.—(a) *The* is similarly omitted before *mount, lake, cape*: *Mount Pelion, Lake Huron, Cape Wrath*. (b) Similar is the omission of *the* before adjectives: *Great Juno, young Ferdinand, impious Pharaoh, God-like Turenne, jesting Pilate* (but *Charles the Great, James the Second, Araby the Blest*). (c) Similar also is the omission of *the* in exclamatory appositional phrases: 'He gained his suit, *happy man*!'; '*Poor soul*!' his eyes are red as fire with weeping' (*Shaks.*).

**170. (5) In Enumeration and Opposition.**—(a) When different objects are enumerated, or (b) when the same objects are placed in correlation to each other, *a* or *the* (or the possessive pronoun) is often omitted, partly for the sake of brevity, partly to give greater point and emphasis to the enumeration or the correlation:—

(a) *Altar, sword and pen,*  
*Fireside, the heroic wealth of hall and bower.*—*Wordsworth.*  
*In robe and crown the king steeped down.*—*Tennyson.*



## CAUTIONS ON THE STUDY OF ENGLISH.

Draw to one point and to one centre bring  
*Beast, man, or angel, servant, lord, or king.*—*Pope.*

*Aged or young, the living or the dead,*  
*No mercy find.*—*Byron.*

The house was on fire: *door and window, roof and chimney, were in a blaze.*

He was attired in *hat and wig* (But 'he was attired in *hat*' would be inadmissible).

Observe the similar omission of the Indefinite Article with *more—than, half—half, either—or, neither—nor, or, both—and, in one, in turn* :—

He is more *knave* than *fool*. (But,—He is more of a *knave* than a *fool*.)  
He is half *knave*, half *fool*.  
He is either *knave* or *fool*.  
He is neither *knave* nor *fool*.  
Is he *knave* or *fool*?  
He is both *knave* and *fool*.  
He is *knave* and *fool* in one.  
He is *knave* and *fool* in turn.

But this usage does not justify us in saying 'This man is *knave*,' instead of 'This man is a *knave* (or *knaveish*).'

(b) *Fire answers fire, steed threatens steed.*—*Shakspeare.*

So from the first eternal order ran,  
And creature linked to creature, man to man.—*Pope.*

They stood *face to face*. Similarly with *foot to foot, hand to hand, shoulder to shoulder, side by side, arm in arm, time after time*, etc.

1 (6) **In Phrases.**—The Articles (and sometimes the possessive pronoun) are omitted for the sake of conciseness in many (a) Verbal phrases, (b) Prepositional phrases :—

(a) To give *ear*; to make *head* against; to set *eyes* on; to set *foot* on; to shake *hands*; to clap *hands*; to turn *tail*; to leave *town, school, college*; to attend *court*; to keep *house*; to break *prison, bounds*; to take *ship, horse*; to set, make, shorten, hoist, strike *sail*; to cast, drop, weigh *anchor*; to take, strike *root*; to bring, send *word*; to lose *heart*; to take *heart, oath, hold, effect, leave, fire, breath*; to give *battle, answer*; to do *penance*; to make *choice, boast, shipwreck*; to lay *hold, wait, siege*; to bear *interest*; to pass *muster*; to follow *suit*; to make *signal*; to call to *mind*.

(b) On *earth*; on *land*; by *land*; under *ground*; on *shore*; in *shore*; off *shore*; at *sea*; to *town*; in *town*; to *court*; at *court*; at *school*; at *college*; at *church*; to *prison*; in *jail*; fast in *dungeon* shut (*Buller*); in *bed*; out of *doors*; at *table*; at *arm's* length; the smallest mouse that creeps on *floor* (*Shaks.*); out of *place*; on board *ship*; at *anchor*; on *deck*; in *jest*; in *time*; in *turn*; in *view*; on *foot*; in *question*; in *point* (but, 'to the *point*'); in *point of fact*; by *rule of thumb*; under *sentence*; at *last* (and 'at the *last*'); at *full* (and 'at the *full*'); to make one's hair stand on *end*; to set one's teeth on *edge*; to take a thing to *heart*; to go to *sea*, to *bed*.

to school, to church, to dinner, to market, to law; to come to light; to come (or call a dog) to heel; to call to mind; helmet on head; sword in hand; from top to bottom; from head to foot; to live from hand to mouth; whatever comes to hand; to have in hand; to have at hand; to be to hand; to be of age; to hold at arm's length; at peep of day; to make to order; to put to vote (or 'to the vote'); valiant only in name; to take to task; to bring to book; payable at sight; the fleet is not in sight; swift of foot; tall of size; genteel in figure; short in stature; high in rank; sick at heart; out at elbows; by word of mouth; on purpose; in high feather; a prisoner for life; an action at law.

But observe that we say—in the dark; in the lump; in the wrong; to put to the blush—to the rack—to the test.

NOTE.—The article is often omitted, when an adjective precedes the noun:—in fair field; swords of foreign make; with naked foot; with drawn sword; a cliff of immense height; love at first sight; the debate of last night; on most occasions; fit to bear the weight of mightiest monarchies (Milton).

## PRONOUNS.

172. *Definition.*—A **Pronoun** (Latin *pro*, instead of) is a word used either instead of a noun or in relation to a noun: as, 'Ram told me (= the speaker) that he (= Ram) struck the dog that (relates to 'dog') bit him (= Ram)'; 'Neither (= neither book) of these books is mine (= my book)'.

173. Pronouns may be classified as follows:—

	SUBS.	ADJ.
I. Personal	<i>I, thou, he, she, it, they</i>	<i>mine, my; thine, thy; his; her, hers; its; our, ours; your, yours; their, theirs</i>
II. Reflexive	<i>myself, ourselves, etc. himself, themselves, etc.</i>	...
III. Demonstrative	...	<i>this, that; these, those; so, such, the same, yon</i>
IV. Interrogative	<i>who, what?</i>	<i>what, which?</i>
V. Relative	<i>who, what, which, that, as</i>	<i>what, which</i>
VI. Conjunctive	<i>who, what</i>	<i>what, which</i>
VII. Indefinite	<i>one, none, other, aught, naught, enough, much</i>	<i>one, any, few, some, other, many</i>
VIII. Distributive	<i>each, either, neither</i>	<i>each, every, either, neither</i>

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

174. There are three persons: the person who speaks, called the *First Person*; the person spoken to, called the *Second Person*; and the person spoken of, called the *Third Person*.

(a) Personal Pronoun of the First Person:—

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	I	we
<i>Poss.</i>	mine, my	our, ours
<i>Obj.</i>	me	us

(b) Personal Pronoun of the Second Person:—

	SING.	PLUR.
<i>Nom.</i>	thou	ye, you
<i>Poss.</i>	thine, thy	your, yours
<i>Obj.</i>	thee	you

(c) Personal Pronoun of the Third Person:—

	SING.			PLUR.		
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	he	she	it	<i>Nom.</i>	they	
<i>Poss.</i>	his	her, hers	its	<i>Poss.</i>	their, theirs	
<i>Obj.</i>	him	her	it	<i>Obj.</i>	them	

175. **Thou, Ye, We, He.**—*Thou* and *thee* are now limited to poetry, to the language of the *Society of Friends*, and to addresses to the Deity; their place is taken by *you*. *Ye* is now confined to poetry. *We* is used in place of *I* by royal personages, and *ourselves* in place of *ourselves*. A Newspaper Editor also writes of himself as *we* (but *ourselves*).

The third Personal pronoun was originally and is still sometimes a Demonstrative pronoun:—

So reads *he* nature whom the lamp of truth  
Illuminates (*Cowper*),

where *he* (=that man) only points to the following description, 'whom the lamp' etc. So in—

I should  
Desire *his* jewels and this other's house (*Shakspeare*.)

*his* = 'this one's,' and is strictly demonstrative.

176. **Two Forms of Possessive.**—The simple Possessive forms, *my, thy, her, our, your, their*, are used when the Possessive is placed before its noun:—

This is *my* book. *Your* knife is blunt.

The double Possessive forms, *mine, thine, hers, ours, yours, theirs*; with *his*, are used when the noun that they qualify is not expressed after them :—

This book is *mine*. My knife and *yours* are both blunt.

NOTE.—*Its* is written without the apostrophe marking elision, because there was never any vowel to be elided, for *its* is not a contraction of *ites*, as *man's* is of *manes* (131). *Hers, ours, yours, theirs* are also written without the apostrophe. The forms *mine, thine* are still retained attributively in poetry—

(a) When the former pronoun follows the noun in the vocative case :—  
' Brother *mine* ! '

(b) Before a word beginning with a vowel, or mute *h* :—

Give every man *thine* ear, but few thy voice.—*Shakspeare*.

**177. Emphatic Possessives.**—The simple possessive pronouns are made emphatic by adding *own* :—

This is *my own* book. This book is *my own*.

**178. Substantive Use.**—Traces of the substantive force of the possessive cases still exist in their use as antecedents to relatives :—

The prize shall be *his*, who is highest in the examination (=shall be given to *him* who etc.). Cf. 601.

The scholarship is *yours*, who have worked so hard for it (=belongs to *you* who etc.).

But they may now be classed as adjectives.

## II. REFLEXIVE PRONOUNS.

**179.** These are formed by subjoining the word *self* to the Personal pronouns. *Self* (=same) was originally an adjective agreeing with the pronoun after which it was placed, but at a very early period *self* came to be regarded as a substantive, and was preceded by the pronoun in the possessive case ; so that, instead of *me-self, us-selves, thee-self* or *you-self, you-selves*, we get *my-self, our-selves, thy-self, your-selves*. But as regards *he, she, it, they* this change was not carried out ; and we have *him-self, it-self, them-selves*, and not *his-self, its-self, their-selves*.<sup>1</sup>

To express an adjectival reflexive, the word *own* is appended to the possessive pronoun :—

Virtue is *its own* reward.

<sup>1</sup> *Self* as an adjective occurs in *selfsame*, and as a noun in 'one's better *self*,' 'one's other *self*.'

**180.** *Self* is also used with the Personal pronouns and with nouns to make them emphatic :—

I did it *myself*. I saw the man *himself*.

Personal Pronouns can be made doubly emphatic by adding *own* :—

I did it *my own self*. Who *his own self* bare our sins.—*Bible*.

### III. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

**181.** *This, that, these, those* are used as substitutes for nouns in the following instances :—

(a) When two things already mentioned are referred to, *this* (pl. *these*) refers to what was mentioned last, *that* (pl. *those*) to what was mentioned first :—

Virtue and vice have different results: *this* (=the latter) leads to misery, *that* (=the former) leads to happiness.

(b) *That* (with its plural *those*) is used as a substitute for a preceding noun, to avoid repeating it :—

A courage beyond *that* (=the courage) of woman.—*Prescott*.

The valleys of the Danube, as well as *those* (=the valleys) of its tributary streams.

**182.** *This, that* are used as substitutes for sentences in the following instances :—

(a) *This* or *that* may take the place of the substance of a sentence previously mentioned (cf. 491, note) :—

You have apologised; *this* (=your apologising) shows that you are sorry. I saw him there; and *that* (=my seeing him there) reminded me of his loss.

(b) When we wish to introduce an expression emphatically, *that* is often used instead of a repetition of the previous sentence :—

I must see him, and *that* quickly (=I must see him, and *I must see him* quickly).

(c) Similarly, *that* may refer to the general idea contained in the preceding sentence :—

Learn your lesson, *that's* a good boy (where *that* =one who learns his lesson).

NOTE.—*There* is used in the same way: '*There's* a good boy.'

**183.** *So, such, the same, yon, yonder*.—*So* is still used as a pronoun :—

I told you *so* (=that).

I will accompany you for a mile or *so* (=about that distance).

We should make people our friends, and keep them *so* (=such).

You tell me I am selfish; *so* (=such) is every one.

NOTE.—Hence it is wrong to repeat the adjective after *so*, as in 'You tell me I am selfish; *so* is every one *selfish*.'

*Such* and *so* are sometimes used as indefinite demonstratives :—

If you repay me not on *such* a day (=some given day), in *such* a place, *such* sum or sums etc.—*Shakspere*.

She had only to say that she wanted *such* and *such* a thing (=any given thing) to be so and so.—*Dickens*.

I was talking to *so* and *so* (=some given person), when the bell rang.

*Such* (382) can represent a preceding noun singular or plural, or an adjective :—

He is chairman of the meeting, and as *such* (=chairman) gives the casting vote.

Thieves often become *such* (=thieves) by their surroundings.

He was witty, and as *such* (=witty) was admired by many.

*The same* is a demonstrative in—

I will do *the same* as you (=I will do *that* which you do).

With reference to the property in this schedule, I have entered into possession of *the same* (=it).

*Yon*, *yonder* are now mostly confined to poetry. *Yonder* is properly an adverb, but is sometimes used as a demonstrative adjective :—

In *yonder* grave a Druid lies.—*Collins*.

NOTE.—For *he*, *his* used demonstratively see 175.

#### IV. INTERROGATIVE PRONOUN.

184. Who ? what ? are thus declined :—

	SING. AND PLUR.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	who	what
Poss.	whose	
Obj.	whom	what

185. *Who* is used only of persons. *What* can be used of persons as well as of things—as ‘*What is he ?*’ ‘*What man is that ?*’—but with a different meaning from that of *who*. Thus—

‘*Who is he ?*’ ‘*Who is that ?*’ are enquiries about a person’s name or designation.

‘*What is he ?*’ ‘*What man is that ?*’ are enquiries about a person’s occupation, character, or social status.

186. *What* is often used in exclamations in the sense of ‘how great,’ as ‘*What folly !*’ ‘*What a traveller you are !*’ Compare the two sentences—

(1) *What was my delight at the news !* (=how great was my delight etc.).

(2) *What was not my delight at the news !* (=no delight was greater than etc.).

187. **What not** is placed after an enumeration, almost in the sense of 'etc.' :—

He took with him books, paper, scissors, paste, string, and *what not* (= what else did he not take ?).

188. **Which ?** can be used of persons, as '*Which* is the head boy of this class ?' '*Which boy* do you mean ?' with the difference that *which* asks for one out of a definite number, while *who* and *what* ask indefinitely :—

- *Which* of you three boys spoke ?
- Who* among you all spoke ?
- Which* pen is the better ?
- What* pen can be better than this ?

## V. RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

189. **Who, which,** are thus declined :—

	SING. AND PLUR.	
	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	who	which
Poss.	whose	of which
Obj.	whom	which

190. **Who** (and *which*;) has three uses :—

(a) It connects two clauses, the one introduced by it being adjectival to some word in the other :—

I know the man who <sup>1</sup> (=that) spoke to us yesterday.

NOTE.—*That* is used of generic, *who* of particular, persons :—'He (anyone) *that* is not with me is against me'; 'He (Lazarus) *whom* thou lovest is sick.'

(b) It connects two clauses, the one introduced by it being adverbial to the other :—

I admire this king, *who* (=since he) treats his subjects so kindly (28).

(c) It connects two co-ordinate clauses :—

I met a man in the village, *who* (=and he) told me the road to take (23).

NOTE.—In (a) the relative clause *restricts* or limits the sense of the noun, and is said to be *restrictive*; in (b) and (c) the relative clauses *continue* or add to what has been said in the preceding clauses, and are said to be *continuative*.

191. **Omission of Relative.**—The Relative Pronoun, in the objective case, is often omitted in restrictive clauses :—

Here is the man (whom <sup>1</sup>) I saw yesterday.

Bring me the book (that) I told you to buy.

The Relative must not be omitted when there is danger of ambiguity, as in 'I am grateful for the pleasure the kindness and the forethought of my parents have given my friends.' Insert *that* after 'pleasure.'

<sup>1</sup> In these examples *that* is better than *who* and *whom*; see 198.

**192. Relative and Antecedent.**—The relative agrees in person as well as number with its antecedent.—

*O thou that hearest prayer.*—*Bible.*

*Trust in me who am your leader.*

In strict accordance with this rule, in such a sentence as ‘Thou art he that hearest prayer,’ *hearest* should be *hears*, since *he* is the antecedent of *that*. But general usage disfavours such a sentence as ‘Thou art he that *hears* prayer,’ and *hears* becomes *hearest* by attraction of *thou*. Similarly :—

*Thou art a God that hidest thyself.*—*Bible.*

**193. Whose**, as the possessive case of *which*, is used of inanimate objects in poetry and sometimes in prose :—

The roof, *whose* thickness (=the thickness of *which*) was not vengeance-proof.—*Byron.*

They laid the Pilgrim in a large upper chamber *whose* window opened towards the sunrising.—*Bunyan.*

**194. Which** relates only to animals or things. It can take a preposition both before and after it :—

I have a garden *in which* I walk. I have a garden *which* <sup>1</sup> I walk *in*.

NOTE.—Observe that in such sentences the infinitive can be substituted :—  
‘I have a garden *in which to walk*’; ‘I have a garden *to walk in*.’

**195. What.**—The antecedent to *what* is generally suppressed :—

*What* (=that which) is done cannot be undone.

He lost his money, and *what* (=a thing which <sup>1</sup>) was worse, his life.

The antecedent is sometimes expressed after it for emphasis :—

*What* I say, *that* I do.

**196. What (with)—what (with)** are sometimes used (like *both*—*and*) to connect two clauses, describing different, but co-operating, causes :—

*What* with the loss of his fortune, and *what* with the pressure of his creditors, he was in great difficulty.

**197. That** has the following uses :—

(a) It may refer to either persons (or animals) or things :—

The man *that* I saw. The book *that* I bought.

(b) It is adverbial, equivalent to *in which* (time) or *when* :—

Now *that* you are young you should work hard.

The moment *that* you stir I shall shoot.

(c) Sometimes its antecedent is supplied from the previous sentence :—

Did you see Ram ?—Not (a seeing) *that* I recollect.

---

<sup>1</sup> In these examples *that* is better than *which*; see 192.



198. *That*, not *who* or *which*, should be employed generally in restrictive (190, note) clauses :—

Wit *that* (not *which*) can creep, and pride *that* licks the dust.  
Nature never did betray the heart *that* (not *which*) loved her.

and especially, in such clauses, after—

(a) A superlative :—

He is the tallest man *that* (not *whom*) I ever saw.

(b) *Only* :—

The only lady *that* (not *who*) spoke was the duchess.

(c) *Any* :—

I will come any time *that* (not *which*) suits you.  
Take anything *that* (not *which*) you like.

(d) *It is, there is* :—

It is John not Charles *that* (not *who*) is to blame.  
There is nothing *that* (not *which*) I like better.

199. *As* is used as a relative pronoun, especially after *the same* and *such* :—

This is the same story *as* (=that) you have just told me.

Your conduct is not such *as* (=which) I can approve.

As many candidates *as* came were chosen.

This is not true, *as* (=a thing which) I said before.

The results are *as* (=what) follow.

NOTE.—But *as* or *such as* should not be used instead of the relative pronoun in 'With great caution, *as* (which) indeed was very necessary, I followed his steps'; 'The face does not wear the dignity and grace *such as* (that) are characteristic of Leonardo's work.'

#### CORRELATIVES.

200. Correlatives<sup>1</sup> are words that have a reciprocal relation to each other in a sentence :—

(1) *Such—as* :

There are no *such* writers *as* you mention.

The blow was *such as* to cause a wound.

NOTE.—*Such* followed by *who, which, that*, etc., is incorrect, as in 'I omit *such* of the members *who* (as) have resigned.'

(2) *Such—that* :

*Such* (=so great) was his diligence *that* he passed the examination.

(3) *That—that* :

He was of *that* (=such) tenderness *that* he would not brush away a mosquito.

<sup>1</sup> These are inserted here for the sake of convenience, but they are not, of course, all pronouns.

(4) **The same—as :**

This is *the same* book *as* that.

NOTE.—*Same* may also be followed by *that* (not by *who* or *which*), as 'This is the *same* man *that* I saw yesterday.' It is sometimes incorrectly followed by *with*, as 'LORD slept in the *same* room *with* Hardy.'—*Edgeworth*.

(5) **So, as—as :**

I am not *so* (or *as*) tall *as* you are.

I am *as* (not *so*) tall *as* you are.

*As* (or *so*) soon *as* he entered, I saw him.

Come *as* (not *so*) soon *as* possible.

He is *so* (not *as*) ill *as* not to be able to go out.

(6) **As—so, so—as :**

*As* the hart panteth after the water-brooks, *so* longeth my soul after thee, O God !—*Bible*.

*So* fight I, not *as* one that beateth the air.—*Ib*.

(7) **So—that, as :**

He is *so* ill *that* he cannot go out.

He is *so* ill *as* to be unable to go out.

He is not *so* much idle *as* forgetful of his work.

NOTE.—*So that* expresses consequence or result, as 'I am ill, *so that* I cannot go out.' Sometimes *so* is omitted in questions, as 'Are you mad, (*so*) *that* you act thus ?' *So that* expresses condition in 'You can stay as long as you like, *so that* (= provided that) you catch the train.'

(8) **How—as :**

*How* shall I do this ?—Do it *as* (not *how*) I do it.

(9) **No sooner—than :**

*No* sooner had he gone *than* I arrived.

(10) **Scarcely (or hardly)—when, before (cf. 794) :**

*Scarcely* had he left the house *when* I arrived.

*Hardly* was the house finished *before* it was inhabited.

(11) **Other—than :**

I have *other* books *than* these.

NOTE.—Here *other than* means 'different from.' But when no comparison is intended, *other* is followed by *besides* (or *beside*), *as well as*, etc., as 'I have *other* books *besides* these,' where *other besides* means 'other in addition to.'

(12) **Too—for (or infinitive) :**

It is *too* wet *for* a picnic. It is *too* hot *to* walk.

NOTE.—*Too*, when used absolutely, denotes excess over what is reasonable or fitting or agreeable :—

You are *too* kind. I shall be only *too* glad to help you.

I fear this news is *too* true.

With . . . chains they made all fast, *too* fast they made  
And durable.—*Milton*.

(13) **Not only—but** (sometimes with *also*) :

He *not only* went away *but* never came back.

He was *not only* foolish *but also* dishonest.

NOTE.—For *both—and, either* (or *or*)—*or, neither* (or *nor*)—*nor, whether—or*, see 290. *Though* (or *although*) is followed by *yet*; *notwithstanding* by *nevertheless*; *because* by *therefore*; *if* by *then*.

## VI. CONJUNCTIVE PRONOUNS.

201. The interrogative pronouns are also used as Conjunctive Pronouns. Thus *who* and *what* are conjunctive substantive pronouns in 'I know *who* you are,' 'I know *what* you mean,' the clauses 'who you are,' and 'what you mean' being noun clauses, objects to the verb 'know.' Similarly *what* and *which* are conjunctive adjective pronouns in 'I wonder *what* book he is reading,' 'I wonder *which* prize he will choose,' the clauses 'what book he is reading' and 'which prize he will choose' being noun clauses, objects to the verb 'wonder.'

## VII. INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

202. **One**—As an adjective, *one* is used in the sense of 'some particular' :—

*One* day, as I was going home, I found a rupee.

As a substantive—

(a) *One* is used as a substitute for a preceding or a succeeding noun :—

Here are three flags : a red *one* (=flag) and two white *ones* (=flags).

Give me *one* (=a pen) of your pens.

NOTE.—This *one* should not be introduced unnecessarily, as 'The examination was an easy *one*.' Say, 'The examination was easy.'

(b) *One* is used as an indefinite demonstrative :—

He lodgeth with *one* Simon (=a person, viz. Simon), a tanner.—*Bible*.

The tares are the children of the wicked *one* (=person).—*Bible*.

He left his wife and little *ones* (= persons) at home.

*One* (=any or every person) ought to take care of *one's* (not *his*, 629) books.

NOTE.—*You* and *they* have the same indefinite use : 'You (=anyone) cannot make a silk purse out of a sow's ear': 'They (=people in general) say he is bankrupt.'

203. **Enough** (362) is sometimes equivalent to *very* :—

I was glad *enough* (=as glad as any one could wish, *very* glad) to see you come.

Sure *enough*, he was there (=it turned out *quite* true that he was there).



*Every other* (= every second) often means 'each alternate':—

He came *every other* day (i.e. he missed coming one day and came the next day, and so on).

207. *Either* has two meanings—(1) *one of two*, (2) *each of two*:—

(1) We can take *either* road (= one or the other road).

(2) There were trees on *either* side of the river (= on both sides).

NOTE.—Caution is required in this latter use, since it may cause ambiguity. Thus in 'A statue may be placed at *either* end of the avenue,' the meaning might be—(1) at one end or the other, or (2) at both ends.

208. *Each other*, *one another*.—In the sentences—

(1) The two sisters loved *each other*.

(2) They all hated *one another*.

*each* and *one* are the subjects of the verb, *other* and *another* are the objects of the verb, and the full construction is—

(1) The two sisters loved, *each* loved *other*.

(2) They all hated, *one* hated *another*.

*Each other* is better used when two are referred to, *one another* when more than two are referred to, as is shown in the examples given. *Each other*, *one another* may be called *Reciprocal Pronouns*.

## VERBS.

209. *Definition*.—A Verb (Latin *verbum*, the word) is a word that states something about a person or thing, as 'the child *talks*.'

210. *Two Classes*.—Principal (as distinguished from Auxiliary) Verbs<sup>1</sup> are divided into two main classes:—

I. *Transitive Verbs*, in which the action or feeling denoted by the verb *passes over to*, or is directed towards, some object, as 'Ram *loves* his mother.'

II. *Intransitive Verbs*, in which the action or feeling affects the subject only, and is not directed towards some object, as 'Ram *laughs*.'

## USES OF TRANSITIVE VERBS.

211. *Without an Object*.—Transitive verbs are sometimes used without an object, when the object can be understood from the context, as in 'Blind men *saw*,' where *saw* means 'saw things in

---

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes called Notional Verbs, because they express a notion or conception, whereas Auxiliary Verbs have no meaning of their own, but merely *help* to form tenses or moods of Principal Verbs. The Auxiliary Verbs are—*be* (248), *have* (250), *shall* (253), *will* (254), *may* (255), *do* (257).

general,' i.e. 'received the power of sight.' Similarly with '*hear*,' meaning 'I hear what you say'; 'The clock *is striking*' (the hour); 'They sat down to *eat and drink*'; etc.

**212. Reflexive Use.**—A Transitive verb is used reflexively when the action denoted by it is done by the doer to himself, as '*He threw himself* upon the ground,' '*He interested himself* in the matter.' But the reflexive pronoun is often omitted, so that the verb stands by itself with an intransitive force :—

*He keeps (himself) away from college. He got (himself) injured in the accident. The waves break (themselves) on the rocks. The sun sets (itself). The earth moves (itself). The clouds spread (themselves) over the sky.<sup>1</sup> He turned (himself) towards me.<sup>1</sup> The ships drew (themselves) clear of one another. They rested (themselves) on the grass.<sup>1</sup> They enlisted (themselves) in the army.<sup>1</sup> She could not refrain (herself) from tears.<sup>1</sup> His children gathered (themselves) round him.<sup>1</sup> He fed (himself) on rice. The snow melted (itself). The fog lifted (itself). He dashed (himself) out of the room. The men dashed (themselves) forward. He has qualified (himself) as surgeon. The army drew (itself) off in good order. The travellers pushed (themselves) on to the North. The regiment formed (itself) up in line. He stole (himself) into the jungle. He stopped (himself) short. He proved (himself) faithful.<sup>1</sup> He soon sobered himself down. The days are lengthening (themselves). They made (themselves) merry. The gorge gradually widened (itself). (Cf. 604.)*

Note the difference between the following pairs of sentences :—

*He possessed large property* (= owned).

*He possessed himself of my property* (= took possession of).

*He joined our party* (unemphatic form).

*He joined himself to our party* (emphatic form).

*He turned editor of a newspaper* (= became).

*Satan turned himself into a serpent* (= changed into).

*He set to work at once* (= began).

*He set himself to carry the business through* (= determined).

*He settled in Bengal* (of habitation).

*He settled himself in an armchair* (of bodily position).

**213.** Some verbs, generally or in a particular use, are always followed by a reflexive pronoun :—

*He absented himself from the interview. You acquitted yourself well in this matter. Do not addict yourself to gambling. I will avail myself of your kindness. They betook themselves to arms and rebellion. I bethought myself that something was wrong. He committed himself to the proceeding. He confessed himself in error. I shall so demean myself<sup>2</sup> as not to give offence. He greatly distinguished himself in the business. I hope you will enjoy*

<sup>1</sup> In these examples the insertion of the pronoun is unusual but not incorrect, as it is in the rest.

<sup>2</sup> From confusion with the adjective *mean*, 'to demean oneself' is often vulgarly used in the sense of 'to degrade oneself,' as in 'I will not demean myself by taking notice of these calumnies.'

*yourselves*. You must not *exert yourself* too much. Urge me no more, I *shall forget myself* (Shakspeare). I *ingratiated myself* with him. Do not *overeat yourself*. Vaulting ambition which *o'erleaps itself* (Shakspeare). I *overslept myself* this morning. He *plumed himself* on his courage. He made himself of no reputation (Bible). He soon *recollected himself* and altered his tone. I cannot *reconcile myself* to your going. They have *resigned themselves* to the loss of their son. *Revenge yourselves* alone on Cassius (Shakspeare). They *lost themselves* in a wilderness of jungle.

214. **Quasi-Passive Use.**—A few Transitive verbs sometimes have a sort of passive sense with an active form :—

The cakes *eat* short and crisp (*i.e.* are short and crisp when they are eaten). This play *reads* better than it *acts*.

The book will not *sell* (*i.e.* lend itself to be sold). This house *lets* well.

The bed *feels* hard (*i.e.* is hard when it is felt).

The wine *tastes* sour. The rose *smells* sweet. The meat *cuts* tough.

These objections *count* for nothing. The cloth *is wearing* thin.

In these instances the verbal action is attributed to the subject of the sentence, because the action denoted by the verb is so habitual to, or inherent in, the object, that the object is regarded as itself contributing to produce it. Thus in 'This speech *reads* well,' the action of reading attributed to the speech implies that the quality of readableness is found to be inherent in the speech itself and does not depend upon the reader. (Cf. 239.)

215. **Allied Use.**—Allied to this is the use of the Imperfect Participle (as an adjective) in such expressions as *declining years* = 'years when a person declines,' *falling sickness* = 'sickness in which the patient falls.' Other examples are :—

I shall remember this to my *dying day*. In his *expiring moments* (Southey). Let us drink a *parting glass*. I paid him a *flying visit*. A *living wage*.

Other adjectives are commonly used in the same way, as 'He has risen from a *sick bed*.' Similarly we have *sick visitors*, *female education*, the *poor law*, *convalescent homes*, *monumental masons*, *juvenile reformatories*, *consumptive hospitals*, the *Foreign Office*, etc.

NOTE.—This analogous use, together with the difference of stress, shows that the first-named expressions (*declining years*, etc.) cannot be regarded as instances of Verbal Noun + Noun, as in *walking-stick* (73).

### USES OF INTRANSITIVE VERBS.

216. **Transitive Use.**—Some Intransitive verbs are also used transitively :—

To *speak* English, to *talk* nonsense, to *blow* the fire, to *stay* one's leisure, to *survive* a person or a thing.

many verbs, usually intransitive, are also employed with a transitive meaning, and are then called *Causative* verbs :—

The horse *walks*. The groom *walks the horse*.—Birds *fly*. Boys *fly kites*.—Flowers *grow*. We *grow flowers* in our garden.—I *rejoice*. Your success *rejoices me*.—She *stood*. She *stood the candle* on the floor (*Dickens*).

**217. With a Preposition.**—Some Intransitive (and Transitive) verbs are habitually followed by a preposition (or adverb) which coheres so closely with the verb that the two may be regarded as forming one expression,<sup>1</sup> equivalent to a transitive verb, as ‘to look at,’ ‘to think of.’ Such a combination may be called a *group-verb*, and is logically equivalent to a transitive verb, since *think of* = *consider*. These group-verbs may even be used in the passive voice :—

The man *laughs at* the boy.

The boy *is laughed at* by the man.

NOTE 1.—In ‘the boy is laughed at,’ *at* must be parsed as an adverb, and not as a preposition, since it has no object. It is the same with *on* in such a sentence as ‘I have no chair to sit *on*.’ Compare the sentences : ‘The garden was run over by hens’—‘The garden was overrun by hens.’

NOTE 2.—Observe that such group-verbs as ‘to take care of,’ ‘to find fault with’ can be turned into the passive in two ways :—

*Active* : The nurse takes care of the child.

*Passive* : (1) The child is taken care of by the nurse.

(2) Care is taken of the child by the nurse.

**218. Group-verbs.**—The following is a list of the commoner *group-verbs* with their equivalents.

Ask for	request	Cast out	eject
Bear out	corroborate	Catch up	overtake
with	tolerate	Clear up	explain
Beg of	entreat	Come about	occur
Blow up	explode	after	succeed
Break down	fail (in exam., etc.)	at	attain
up	disperse	by	acquire
Bring about	cause	down	descend
forth	produce	in	enter
to	resuscitate	off	emerge
on	cause	on	advance
up	educate	round	} recover
out	publish	to	
Call for	demand ; require	to	approach
forth	evoke	upon	encounter
up	recollect	up with	overtake
upon	visit	Cry down	depreciate
Carry out	accomplish	up	extol
Cast off	discard	out	exclaim

<sup>1</sup> Cf. ‘Though you *bind-in* (=inclose under your sway) every shore.’—*Shirley* (‘Golden Treasury’ reading).



Cut down	diminish ; curtail	Let off	release ; discharge
Dash off	despatch	out	divulge
Deal out	distribute	Lie down	recline
Do away with	abolish	Lift up	exalt
up	repair ; fatigue	Light up	illuminate
Draw back	recede	upon	discover
in	retract	Look at	observe
near	} approach	down on	despise
on		for	expect
out	extract ; prolong	forward to	anticipate
up	arrange ; indite	into	inspect
Drive out	expel	over	examine (papers)
Dwell in	inhabit	up to	respect
Egg on	instigate	Make away with	destroy
Eke out	supplement	for	approach
Fall away	revolt	out	discover
back	retreat	over	transfer
off	decline	up	compensate
out	quarrel ; result	Meet with	encounter
upon	assail	Melt away	dissolve
Fill up	complete	Ooze out	transpire
Find out	discover	Pass away	expire
Gain over	persuade	over	forgive
Get at	attain	Pick out	select
down	descend	up	gather
off, away	escape	Put forth	exert
up	study	off	postpone
Give in	submit	out	extinguish ; dis-
over	} abandon	concert	
up		up with	tolerate
Go after	pursue	Run down	depreciate
away	depart	out	expire, exhaust
back	return	See about or to	investigate
between	intervene	Send away	dismiss
beyond	exceed	off	despatch
on	proceed	Set about	commence
with	accompany	apart	reserve
Hand down	transmit	aside	disregard
over	deliver	down	record
Hold in	restrain	off or out	depart
on	continue	off	embellish
out	endure	on	incite
up	elevate	up	erect
Keep back	reserve	upon	assail
from	refrain	Show up	expose
off or out	repel	Shut out	exclude
up	maintain	up	confine
Knock up	fatigue ; awake	Stand by	support
Laugh at	deride	out	resist
Lay down	resign	Stir up	excite
out	expend	Strike in	interpose
up	deposit	Take after	resemble
Leave off	desist	away	remove
out	omit	in	deceive
Let down	lower	off	ridicule

Take over	receive	Turn out	expect; result
up	occupy; arrest	Wait on	attend
Talk over	discuss; persuade	Ward off	defend
Think over	consider	Watch over	protect
of	recollect; intend	Wear out	exhaust
Throw out	offer; derange	Wish for	desire
up	resign	Work out	elaborate

NOTE.—Group-verbs and their equivalents do not, of course, comprehend all the meanings of either. Thus in the sentence 'He knocked at the door and asked for the owner of the house,' we cannot substitute *requested* for *asked for*.

219. With a Complement.—Some Intransitive verbs may take a Complement (9) after them, the verb and its complement together forming a verbal phrase with a transitive force :—

*He laughed me to scorn. He coughed himself into a fit.*  
*He looked me in the face. The nurse sang the child to sleep.*  
*She cried her eyes out. I talked him over.*  
*The assassin ran him through. I spoke him fair.*  
*There some female atheist talks you dead.—Pope.*  
*You have played me false. He drank himself drunk.*

NOTE.—The fact that such a sentence as 'He laughed me to scorn' can be turned into the passive form (223)—'I was laughed to scorn by him,' shows that a preposition should not be understood before *me*—'He laughed ~~at~~ me to scorn.'

220. With Cognate Object.—Some Intransitive verbs may take a noun of cognate or kindred meaning for their object, called the *Cognate Object*, as 'to sleep a sleep.' This may be done in three ways :—

(a) The noun may be strictly cognate to the verb in both form and meaning :—

*I have fought a good fight.—Bible.*  
*He sighed a sigh and prayed a prayer.—Scott.*

(b) The noun may be strictly cognate to the verb in meaning, but not in form :—

*To fight a battle. It blows a heavy gale. The bells rang a merry peal.*  
*Act well your part. My career is nearly run. He nodded assent.*  
*Thither he wings his airy flight.—Cowper. Rivulets dance their wayward round.—Wordsworth. Death grinned horrible a ghastly smile.—Milton.*

(c) The verb and the noun may be only partially cognate or co-extensive in meaning. In these instances either the verb or the noun contains a descriptive sense of its own in addition to its cognate meaning. Thus in 'he looked a look,' the verb is strictly cognate to the noun; but in 'he stole a look,' which means 'he

*stealthily looked a look*, the verb contains a superadded notion. Similarly, 'he *shouted a shout*' is regular; but in 'he *shouted applause*,' i.e. 'he *shouted an applauding shout*,' the noun contains the superadded notion :—

To *fight* (or *grope*) one's *way* (=to make one's way by fighting, etc.). To *go* one's *rounds*. The wind was *blowing great guns*. It *rained fire and brimstone*. He *looked daggers* at me. I *danced attendance* upon him daily.

No stationary steeds  
'*Cough* their own *knell*.—*Cowper*.  
I *sighed* a long *adieu* to fields and woods.—*Id*.  
The placid marble Muses, *looking peace*.—*Tennyson*.

NOTE 1.—A *Transitive* verb can sometimes take a cognate object :—'to *strike a stroke* or a *blow*,' 'to *make* (or *push* or *feel*) one's *way*,' 'to *serve an apprenticeship*,' 'to *scrape acquaintance*,' 'to *drink one's fill*,' 'to *write a good hand*.'

*Fear not their fear*.—*Bible* (Revised Version).  
What *choice to choose*.—*Milton*.  
Satan . . . towards the gates of hell  
*Explores* his solitary *flight*.—*Milton*.

NOTE 2.—Sometimes there is an ellipse of the noun of the cognate object :—'he *did his best* (*doing*),' 'you may *do your worst*,' 'he *tried his hardest* (*trying*),' 'he *breathed his last* (*breath*),' 'You must *behave your best* (*behaviour*). For cognate *it* see 492, (b).

221. **Summary of Uses.**—The *Intransitive* verb *run* will illustrate all four uses given above :—

1. He *ran* a thorn into his finger (transitive use).
2. He *ran up* the ladder (with a preposition).
3. He *ran me hard* for the prize (with a complement).
4. (a) He *ran seven runs* (at cricket) for one hit (formally cognate).  
(b) The disease must *run its course* (informally cognate).  
(c) He *ran a great risk* (partially cognate).

NOTE.—For the use of *Transitive* and *Intransitive* verbs as *Verbs of Incomplete Predication*, see 9 and note.

### VERBS WITH TWO OBJECTS.

222. **In the Active Voice.**—Many verbs, such as *give*, *bring*, *tell*, *teach*, *forgive*, etc., may take two objects. One of these is directly affected by the action of the verb and is called the *Direct Object*; the other is indirectly affected, and is called the *Indirect Object*. Thus in 'Give *me* the *book*,' *book* is the direct object, and *me* the indirect object of the verb *give*. Examples :—

He asked the *boy* his *name*. He heard *me* my *lesson*. Forgive *me* my *fault*. The Magistrate ordered the *prisoner* a *whipping*. This mistake will lose *you* many *marks*. He allowed his *son* fifty *rupees* a month. He played *me* a sad *trick*. Mind you write your *father word* of what happens. The doctor forbade his *patient rice*. I gave *him* to understand that I should

*some.*<sup>1</sup> The medicine did *Ram good*. 'Will you do *me* a favour? It caused *her* many a tear. I bore *him* great affection. I envy *you* your good health. I can refuse *him* nothing. He charged *me* five rupees for the ticket. You do *yourself* an injustice.

NOTE 1.—An Indirect Object (*Dative of Interest*) is sometimes inserted after verbs which usually take either no object or only a direct object, in order to express the *interest* of some person in the action of the verb :—

Words failed *him* to express his gratitude.

Convey *me* Salisbury into his tent.—*Shakspeare*.

I dread *me*, if I draw it, you will die.—*Tennyson*.

Your wickedness . . . in asking *you* a king.—*Bible*.

Come, play *us* a tune. This will last *you* a lifetime.

NOTE 2.—The Indirect Objective case (*Reflexive Dative*) of the personal pronoun of the same person as the subject of the sentence is found after many intransitive verbs :— 'I went *me* to rest' (*Piers Ploughman*); 'Stand *thee* close'; 'Sit *thee* down'; 'Hark *thee*, a word' (*Shakspeare*); 'Avoid *thee*, fiend'; 'They knelt *them* down' (*Scott*); 'Rest *thee* sure' (*Tennyson*); 'Fare *thee* well'; 'He hied *him* home'; 'Where the Norman encamped *him* of old' (*Campbell*).<sup>2</sup>

223. In the Passive Voice.—When an Active Verb, taking two objects, is changed into the Passive Voice, either of the two objects may become the subject of the passive verb, while the other is retained as object. Hence, this object is called the *Retained Object*. Thus 'I forgave *him* his fault' may be turned into the passive form in two ways :—

(1) His fault was forgiven *him* by me.

(2) He was forgiven his fault by me.

In (1), the original direct object, *fault*, is taken as the subject of the passive verb, and the indirect object, *him*, is retained as the indirect object of the verb; in (2), the original indirect object, *him*, is taken as the subject of the passive verb, and the direct object, *fault*, is retained as the direct object of the verb.

NOTE 1.—Construction (2) should be sparingly used. 'The boys were served out with long canes' (to beat the bounds) is very awkward for 'Long canes were served out to the boys'; and it is better to write 'A policeman showed me the way' than 'I was shown the way by a policeman,' and 'My attention has been called to the fact that' than 'It has been called to my attention that.'

NOTE 2.—Such constructions as 'The question was attempted to be discussed' (An attempt was made to discuss the question), 'Success is hoped to be attained' (It is hoped that success will be attained) are both clumsy and wrong.

<sup>1</sup> Here the whole expression 'to understand,' etc., is the direct object [8, (5)].

<sup>2</sup> This Dative is misinterpreted by some as a Direct Objective, and the verb (especially *sit*) as used in a causative sense: 'Then *she* sat *herself* down in her chair and had a good cry' (*Trollope*). Hence we find even 'I sat *her* on a settle' in modern verse.

**MOOD.**

**224. Definition.**—**Mood** (=mode) represents the *manner* in which the action or state denoted by the verb is viewed by the speaker. There are four Moods :—

(1) *The Indicative Mood*, which is used in stating an action, or asking a question about an action, viewed as a *fact* ; or in expressing a mere supposition (227) :—

*He loves his mother. Have you my pen ? If he goes, I will stay.*

(2) *The Imperative Mood*, which is used in commanding or requesting :—

*Bring me the book.*

(3) *The Subjunctive Mood*, which is used in stating an action viewed as a *thought* :—

*If I were you, I should accept his offer.*

(4) *The Infinitive Mood*,<sup>1</sup> which is the substantival form of the verb, and speaks of an action without reference to person, number, or time :—

*I wish to help you.*

**USES OF THE IMPERATIVE.**

**225. First and Third Persons.**—To express the first or the third person of the imperative, we generally use the verb *let*, as ‘let us go,’ ‘let him go.’ In such sentences *let* is the second person of the imperative with its subject omitted.

**226. Suppositional Use.**—The Imperative Mood is sometimes used to express a supposition, where we might substitute for it *if* or *though* with the Subjunctive :—

*Give me good fortune* (=if good fortune is given me), *I will strike him dead.*—*Tennyson.*

*Remove* (=though you remove) *a devil where you will, he is still in hell.*

*Nothing venture, nothing have* (=if you venture nothing, you will have nothing).

*Scratch a Russian, you will find a Tartar.*

**NOTE.**—The use in ‘He is sure to contribute a large sum, *say* a thousand rupees, to this object’ is similar. Another way of expressing an hypothesis is by a question :—‘*Is any afflicted ?*’ (=if any one is afflicted) *let him pray.*’—*Bible.*

<sup>1</sup> Though usually classed as a Mood, the Infinitive has nothing in common with the Moods, except only in such a sentence as ‘He saw his son *drown*,’ where ‘drowning’ is predicated of ‘son.’

## USES OF THE SUBJUNCTIVE.

**227. Conditional Use.**—The Subjunctive Mood is used to express a supposition that is treated as a mere conception of the mind, whereas the Indicative is used to express a supposition that is treated as an actual fact :—

If it *were* so (which may be imagined, but must not be assumed as a fact), it was a grievous fault. (Subjunctive.)

If he *was* guilty (which is assumed as a fact), he ought to have been punished. (Indicative.)

NOTE.—Hence the Subjunctive is wrong in ‘If he *were* (was) satisfied, why did he make objections?’ and in ‘If he *be* (is) ready, it is time to start.’ In both sentences *if* is equivalent to *since* or *seeing that*.

The Subjunctive mood in conditional sentences is not necessarily preceded by *if*, *unless*, *though*, etc. :—

*Were* he here, I should tell him this (*i.e.* if he were here).

*Please* God, I shall arrive home to-morrow (*i.e.* if I please God).

‘Come weal, come woe, by Bruce’s side,’

Replied the chief, ‘will Ronald bide.’—*Scott*.

(*i.e.* whether weal or woe come.)

*Be* that as it may, you must say nothing (*i.e.* let that be as it may be, or however that may be).

*Happen* what may, I shall go (*i.e.* let what may happen, happen, or whatever may happen).

This is so, *deny* it who can (*i.e.* let him who can deny it, deny it, or whoever may deny it).

**228. After ‘that,’ ‘lest,’ etc.**—The Subjunctive Mood is used after the conjunctions *that*, *lest*, *till*, *if*, *whether*, *after*, *before*, in dependent clauses denoting that something is *thought of* as a possible or probable contingency :—

The sentence is that the prisoner *be* hanged.

I wish that it *were* possible.<sup>1</sup>

Beware lest sin *surprise* thee.

Blow till thou *burst* thy wind.—*Shakspeare*.

Do you hear whether Antonio *have* had any loss at sea or no ?—*Id.*

When I ask her if she *love* me.—*Tennyson*.

NOTE.—In modern English the tenses of the Subjunctive are often replaced by phrases compounded of the auxiliaries *may*, *might*, and *should* or *were to*. Thus, for ‘Give him bread, that he *eat*,’ we now say ‘that he *may eat*’; for ‘Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in him,’ we say ‘though he *should* (or *were to*) *slay* me.’ For the use of *should* and *would* in subordinate clauses and conditional sentences, see 327.

<sup>1</sup> Here the construction shows that the event desired is impossible; it is only *thought of* as possible.

**229. Optative Use.**—The Subjunctive Mood is used to express a wish [863, (g)] :—

Mine *be* a cot beside the hill.—*Rogers*.  
 Long *live* the king ! God *save* the queen !  
*Forbid* it shame, *forbid* it decent awe.—*Crabbe*.

A wish can be expressed in four ways :—

- (1) Mine *be* a cot !
- (2) May a cot *be* mine !
- (3) Oh (*or would*) that a cot *may* (*or might*) *be* mine !
- (4) If only a cot *could* (*or might*) *be* mine !

NOTE.—In (3) 'Would that' is for 'I would that'; and in (4) there is an ellipse of a clause like 'I should be happy.'

#### USES OF THE INFINITIVE.

**230. The Infinitive** is used as—

- (1) The *Simple* or Noun Infinitive : 'I like *to write*' (= writing).
- (2) The *Gerundial* or Dative Infinitive : 'I came *to write*' (= for writing).

**231. The Simple Infinitive** is used—

- (1) As the subject or the object of a verb :—

*To err* is human. I want *to go*.  
 He is a queer man, that is *to say*, he does odd things.  
 They prize hard knocks and *to be won* by force.—*Tennyson*.

- (2) As a Complement to a verb (or verbal noun) of incomplete prediction (9), and to a conjunctive adverb<sup>1</sup> :—

I will *come*. You need not *go*.  
 I like a boy *to be* truthful. I saw him (to) *fall*.  
 I will go *seek* him. He was taught *to swim*.  
 He was pleased at my wishing *to help* him.  
 I told him how *to parse* the word.

- (3) After *but*, *except*, *about*, and *than* :—

There is nothing left but *to submit*. I was about *to remark*.  
 He resigned rather than *be transferred*.

- (4) Absolutely in interrogation and exclamation :—

And now what *to do* ? where *to go* ?  
*To think* that it should come to this !<sup>2</sup>  
 Thou wear a lion's hide ! Doff it for shame,—*Shakspeare*.

<sup>1</sup> See 264. Also after *whether* :—'I am doubtful whether *to go* or *stay*.'

<sup>2</sup> In such sentences the infinitive is sometimes omitted :—'That it should come to this !'

**232. The Gerundial Infinitive** is used to express the purpose, the cause, the condition. or the result of an action. It may be attached—

(1) Adverbially to a verb :—

I have come *to see* you (purpose : 'for seeing').

He came only *to find* that he was too late (result : 'so as to find').

How did this come *to pass* ? (result : 'come so as to pass,' 'happen').

She wept *to hear* this news (cause : 'at hearing').

The last man is *to receive* the prize (result : 'will receive').

NOTE.—This use sometimes causes ambiguity, as in—'He was forced to halt, but only *to enter* the town the next day,' where *to enter* might be construed with *forced*. Write, 'but he nevertheless entered.'

(2) Adverbially to an adjective :—

I am sorry *to hear* this news (cause : 'at hearing').

He is slow *to forgive* (condition : 'about forgiving').

Matters too numerous *to mention* (purpose : 'for mentioning').

It is never too late *to mend* (purpose : 'for mending').

(3) Adjectivally to a noun or a pronoun (attributively or predicatively, 147) :—

Give me water *to drink* (purpose : 'for drinking').

I beg (leave) *to send* you a ticket (purpose : 'for sending').

I have enough and (enough) *to spare* (condition : 'for sparing').

This house is *to let* (purpose : 'for letting').

Your mistake is *to be deplored* (condition : 'deplorable').

You are *to blame* (condition : 'blameable').

Rabbi, which is *to say*, Master (condition : 'for saying,' 'the same as saying').—*Bible*.

(4) Parenthetically to a sentence :—

He was intoxicated, so *to speak*, with joy at the news (condition : 'if I may speak so').

*To tell* the truth, I was half asleep (purpose : 'in order to tell the truth, I tell you that I was etc.').

*To be* brief, I lost the train (purpose : 'in order to be brief, I say that I lost etc.').

*To hear* you talk, one would think you knew everything (condition : 'on hearing you talk').

He has sixty cows, *to say* nothing of the calves (condition : 'without saying anything').

This is a 'tortoise' race, the last man *to receive* the prize (result : receiving,' 137, note).

Careless fellow ! *to lose* his umbrella ! (cause : 'careless for losing').

NOTE.—Cf. 'We differ on many questions, (to) *let* alone Home Rule.' *To be sure*, *to wit* are similar parenthetical infinitives, and are equivalent to 'that you may be sure,' 'that you may wit (=know).' In 'To be sure, he is not clever, but he is honest,' *to be sure* means 'I admit'; in 'Will you come ?—To be sure I will,' *to be sure* means 'certainly.'



## 233. The Infinitive without 'to' is used—

(1) After the auxiliary verbs—*do, may, shall, will*; and after the common verbs—*bid, can, dare* (intrans.),<sup>1</sup> *let, make, must, need, please* :—

I *do not like* this. He *will go*. I *bid* him learn his lesson. How *dare* you act so? He *let slip* the opportunity. To *make* both ends meet. He *need* not stay any longer. *Please* be quiet.

NOTE.—*To* is not inserted after *have* in such sentences as 'I must *have* you attend,' 'You will *have* your father blame you'; nor by some speakers after *go* and *help* as 'I must *go see* what is the matter,' 'I *helped* him dress his wound.' *Bid, make, need, please, and dare* (which in the sense of 'challenge' always takes *to*) are occasionally followed by *to*; as are also the verbs under (2) below.

(2) After various verbs denoting perception :—*hear, feel, see, view, behold, mark, watch, observe, perceive, survey*.

I did not *hear* you call. He *felt* a hand touch him. I *saw* him die. I *watched* him take the rupee. You will *perceive* the fish rise out of the water.

Ye statesmen who *survey*

The rich man's joys *increase*, the poor's *decay*.—*Goldsmith*.

NOTE.—But *to* is inserted after the passive forms of these verbs : as, 'He *was seen to take* the rupee'; also after the passive of *bid, dare, make, need, please*, in (1). We say 'I know him *to be* a miser'; but, 'I have known him *tell tales by the hour together*.' In poetry *to* is often inserted for metrical reasons : 'At last Centlivre *felt* her voice *to fail*' (*Pope*).

(3) After *had better, had rather, had sooner, had as soon* (279) :—

You *had better* go home. I *had rather* not accept your offer. Will you ride?—I *had sooner* walk. I *had as soon* go as stay.

(4) After *but, except, than, as* :—

He did nothing *but laugh*. I cannot *but accept* his offer.

He did everything *except give* a straight answer.

Sooner *than resist*, I am ready to die.

They are taught to read rather *than* (they are taught to) *write*.

He is more likely to sink *than* (he is likely to) *swim*.

I did no more *than make* a beginning.

He did not so much *as say* he was sorry.

(5) Absolutely :—

What *do* then?—*Keats*.

Why *cross* the gloomy firth to-day?—*Scott*.

<sup>1</sup> In affirmative sentences *to* is often inserted, as 'He *dares to deny* it (but *dare* without *to*).<sup>2</sup> 'I *dared to interrupt* him'; also always after the imperative :—'*Dare to follow* the right.'

<sup>2</sup> *Need*, with infinitive without 'to', has for its 3rd pers. sing. *need* instead of *needs*; cf. 252, note. If *needs* is used, its infinitive requires *to*; but 'He *needs not* (or, he did not *need*) to stay' is unidiomatic. In 'He *needs must stay*, *needs* is an adverb (256).

**234. The Imperfect (or Active) Participle and the Verbal Noun (or Gerund),** which were once distinct in form, have now only one form, *writing*, to express both uses :—

- (1) He is *writing* (Imperfect Participle).
- (2) *Writing* is useful (Verbal Noun).

**235. The Imperfect Participle.**—As a consequence of this assimilation in form, a confusion arose between the Imperfect Participle and the Verbal Noun, and hence our modern apparent participle often is really a Verbal Noun with an omitted preposition :—

I shall go *fishing* [=a fishing, on fishing, 52 (1)].

The illustrations *preparing* for the third volume (=a-preparing, in preparation).

While these preliminary steps were *taking* (=in taking).

**236.** Similarly we find that what is really a Verbal Noun qualified by a possessive is, by the omission of the possessive inflexion, made to appear like an Imperfect Participle qualifying a noun or a pronoun :—

*Incorrect* : He died in consequence of the *doctor not coming*.

*Correct* : He died in consequence of the *doctor's not coming*.

*Incorrect* : I insist on *you doing* this.

*Correct* : I insist on *your doing* this.

*Incorrect* : There is no objection to *John and me going*.

*Correct* : There is no objection to *John's and my going*.

**237.** This error sometimes causes obscurity, e.g. : 'There is the right dash of irony in this *country* (for *country's*) bowing before a philosophy at the very moment when the rest of the world is casting it away'; where *bowing* might be taken as a participle. The possessive inflexion is, however, omitted when the noun is followed by a descriptive phrase : as, 'He died in consequence of the *doctor*, who was out of town, not coming.' And, as possession is naturally associated with a person (144), there is a tendency to adopt the incorrect form when we are speaking of things, not persons :—'I insist on the *letter* going at once (instead of *letter's*). In all such cases, however, it is better to turn the sentence differently. Thus, for 'He died,' etc., write 'He died because the *doctor*, who was out of town, could not come.' Similarly, for 'He objected to his name *appearing* on the title-page,' write 'He objected to the *appearance* of his name'; 'There is no proof of the horse in the meadow *having* been stabbed,' write 'There is no proof *that* the horse, etc., *has* been stabbed.'

**238. The Verbal Noun (or Gerund).—**As a result of the same confusion, the Verbal Noun is sometimes found with the functions of the Participle, since—

(1) It can be modified by an adverb or by a complement :—

He gained a prize for *reading correctly*.

They ceased *firing upon the ship*.

(2) It is allowed to govern a case :—

*Flying kites* is a pleasant game (old form : *The flying of kites*).

On *opening the envelope*, I found nothing inside (old form : On *the opening of the envelope*).

It was Tom who first put *the poisoning the dog* into my head.—*Miss Edgeworth* (old form : *The poisoning of the dog*).

There is no *bearing your impertinence* (i.e. *the bearing of your impertinence*) does not exist as a possible thing).

Sometimes, however, it is better—(a) to insert *of*, or (b) to substitute a noun :—

(a) *The starting* (of) the new policy took place yesterday.

*The hearing* (of) the case is fixed for Monday.

(b) I condemn his *promoting* (promotion of) disorder for his own ends.

*Admitting* (The admission) that you are wrong does not acquit you of blame.

**239. The Perfect Participle** of a few intransitive verbs may be used when an agent is spoken of as being so affected by his own act that it has produced in him a character, habit, or state. Thus, 'a *learned man*' is a man who has attained the character caused by learning; 'a *plain-spoken man*' is a man in whom plain speaking has produced the habit of speaking plainly; 'a *retired tradesman*' is one who is in the state of having retired from business. Similarly with 'an *outspoken man*,' 'you are very *outspoken*,' 'a *pretended friend*,' 'a *well-read man*,' 'a *travelled man*,' 'a *well-behaved man*,' 'an *expired ticket*' (= a ticket that has ceased to be available), 'time-expired soldiers,' 'escaped prisoners,' 'the undersigned (persons),' 'they were *perished* with cold' (cf. 214).

### TENSE.

**240. Tenses** are varieties of form in verbs, which show—

(a) The *time* of the action, as *Present*, *Past*, or *Future*.

(b) The *state* of the action at the time, as completed (*Perfect*) or incomplete (*Imperfect*).

(c) The *nature* of the action, as *Momentary*<sup>1</sup> or *Continuous*.<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Sometimes called *Indefinite*.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes called *Definite*.

Thus in a complete mood there are twelve tenses :—

		PRESENT.	PAST.	FUTURE.
<i>Imperfect</i>	<i>Momentary</i>	I write	I wrote	I shall write
	<i>Continuous</i>	I am writing	I was writing	I shall be writing
<i>Perfect</i>	<i>Momentary</i>	I have written	I had written	I shall have written
	<i>Continuous</i>	I have been writing	I had been writing	I shall have been writing

241. The Present Imperfect Momentary ('I write') denotes—

(1) What is (a) always, or (b) habitually true :—

- (a) Copernicus discovered that the earth *moves* round the sun.
- (b) He told me that he *takes* a walk every day.

(2) What is (a) present, (b) past, or (c) future, according as indicated by the context :—

- (a) I *stand* here for liberty of conscience.
- (b) Napoleon's army now *advances* (=then advanced) and the great battle *begins* (=began).
- (c) I *go* (=shall go) to Agra to-morrow. If it *rains* (=should rain), I shall stay at home.

NOTE.—The tense in (b) is called the Historic Present, used to give vividness to a narrative. The tense in (c) is emphatic: 'I *go*' = it is settled for me to go. So with 'Make the slightest noise, and you *are* a dead man.'

242. The Present Imperfect Continuous ('I am writing') expresses the continuance of the action over some time. It is, therefore, applied to actions that contain the idea of continuance, as occupations :—

He *is pursuing* his studies. The boys *are playing* ;

—and not to actions that are immediate :—

Please lend me your knife ; I *want* it (not, I *am wanting*).

I *offer* you ten rupees ; will you take them ? (not, I *am offering*).

Now observe : I *take* up this coin, and I *place* it on the edge of the table (not, I *am taking*—I *am placing*). See 642.

NOTE.—In 'Are you taking him to the Lecture this evening ?' the time is future, as in 241, (c) above.

Hence verbs like *love*, *despise*, *esteem*, *know*, *believe*, *understand*, which denote a state as distinct from an act, have as a rule no continuous forms.

243. The Present Perfect Momentary ('I have written') is applied to actions that have been finished at the present time, but whose results still remain ; whereas the Past Imperfect

**Momentary** ('I wrote') is applied to actions that were finished at some past time (it is the *historic* tense). Thus, 'Ram *has lived* in Calcutta for five years' implies that Ram is still living there; but 'Ram *lived* in Calcutta for five years' implies that he lives there no longer. Compare :—

- (a) I *have known* him from his boyhood, and often meet him.  
I *knew* him in his boyhood, but have not met him since.
- (b) I *have seen* the Viceroy once (*i.e.* on a single occasion).  
I once (*i.e.* on some previous occasion) *saw* the Viceroy.
- (c) I *will* pay you when you *have done* the work.  
I paid you when you *did* the work.
- (d) A year *has passed* since I saw him last.  
A year *passed* before I saw him again.

NOTE.—This latter tense (besides being used historically, as in 'On his arrival he *wrote* to me') is used also in the sense of the Past Imperfect Continuous, as 'He *wrote* (= was writing) while I *read* (= was reading).'

**244. The Present Perfect Continuous** ('I have been writing') is applied to actions begun in past time and continuing up to the present :—

*I have been suffering* (not *I am suffering*) from fever all the week.  
*It has been raining* (not *it is raining*) since five o'clock.

**245. 'Has gone,' 'is gone.'**—Some intransitive verbs of *going* or *becoming* take two forms of the Present Perfect Momentary, '*has gone*,' '*is gone*,'—'*has arrived*,' '*is arrived*.' Similarly with—*come, depart, retire, return, rise, fall, ascend, descend, begin, end, cease, vanish, fly, decay, degenerate* :—

The harvest is past, the summer *is ended*.—*Bible*.  
The rest *were* all *retired*.—*Milton*.  
Two hundred years *are flown*.—*M. Arnold*.

NOTE.—We say '*begone*,' imperative, not '*have gone*' (cf. '*Have done* with this nonsense!'). Sometimes there is a difference of usage: thus we say, 'He *is descended* from noble ancestors,' but, 'He *has descended* from the tree.'

**246. Strong and Weak Verbs.**—Verbs are classified, according to the mode of forming the Past Imperfect Momentary tense, into—

(a) *Strong* verbs: in which the Past Imperfect Momentary (or Preterite) tense is formed by a change of vowel only; nothing is added to the root: *blow, blew; drink, drank*.

(b) *Weak* verbs: in which the Past Imperfect Momentary tense is formed—

(1) by adding *-d* or *-t* to the verbal root (the *e* before *d* unites the suffix to the root) : *jump, jumped* ; *burn, burnt*.

(2) by shortening the vowel of the root : *feed, fed* ; *meet, met*.

(3) by making no change : *put, put* ; *spread, spread*.

**247. Special Verbs.**—The conjugation is here given of a few verbs in which mistakes are often made.

PRESENT	PRETERITE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
Abide	abode	abode
Awake	awoke, awaked	awoke, awaked
Bear	bore	{ borne (carried, given birth to) born (given birth to)
Begin	began	begun
Bid (to command)	bade, bid	bidden, bid
Cleave (to split)	clove, cleft	cloven, cleft, cleaved
Cleave (to adhere)	cleaved	cleaved
Eat	ate, eat	eaten
Fall	fell	fallen
Fell	felled	felled
Flee	fled	fled
Flow	flowed	flowed
Fly	flew	flown
Hang	hung, hanged	hung, hanged
Lade	laded	laden, laded
Load	loaded	loaded, laden
Lay	laid	laid
Lie (to recline)	lay	lain
Lie (to speak falsely)	lied	lied
Light	lit, lighted	lit, lighted
Loose	loosed	loosed
Lose	lost	lost
Make	made <sup>1</sup>	made
Pen (to enclose)	pent	pent
Pen (to write)	penned	penned
Rid	rid, ridded	rid, ridded
Ride	rode	ridden
Ring	rang, rung	rung <sup>2</sup>
Saw	sawed	sawn, sawed
See	saw	seen
Set	set	set
Sew	sewed	sewed, sewn
Sow	sowed	sowed, sown
Shear	shore, sheared	shorn, sheared
Sing	sang	sung
Sit	sate, sat	sat

<sup>1</sup> *Made* is a contraction of *made*. 'A *made* man' means 'a man whose fortune is made.' Cf. *accomplished*, *finished*, used in a similar way.

<sup>2</sup> A tree is *ringed* (notched round), not *rung*. Similarly we have 'a well-sprunged (not *sprung*) carriage,' 'a stringed instrument.'

PRESENT	PRETERITE	PERFECT PARTICIPLE
Spit (to eject saliva)	spat, spit	spat, spit
Spit (to put on a spit)	spitted	spitted
Swell	swelled	swelled, swoller
Swim	swam, swum	swum
Wind (to twist)	wound	wound
Wind (to fill with wind, or, to scent on the wind).	winded <sup>1</sup>	winded

NOTE.—For special uses of Perfect Participles, see 400-402.

A few notes may be added upon certain of these verbs :—

**Abide.**—The simple verb *bide* is now, for the most part, used only in 'to *bide* one's time,' with p.p. *bided*.

**Bear.**—The p.p. *borne* is the general term: 'He has *borne* his losses bravely.' It is also used in reference to birth: 'She has *borne* ten children;' 'No children were *borne* by her' (but '*born* to her'). *Born* is used only in reference to birth: 'He was *born* blind'; 'Beauty *born* of murmuring sound.'

**Bid.**—*Bade* and *bidden* are the usual forms, *bade* being pronounced *bād* (Tennyson has 'Do the thing I *bad* thee'); but at auctions both the pret. and p.p. are *bid*. We also say, 'Do as you are *bid*' (not *bidden*).

**Eat.**—The pret. *eat* is pronounced *ēt*, and is found in Shakspeare and Milton.

**Flee, fly.**—*Fly* in the sense of 'run away' has long usurped the place of *flee*, but with the development of aviation tends to be ambiguous: 'To escape arrest, he resolved to *fly* to England' suggests an aeroplane. The pret. and p.p. *fled*, however, is used, not *flew* and *flown*.

**Flow.**—The p.p. is *flowed*, not *flown*. Hence 'The river has *overflowed* its banks' should be *overflowed*. The Revised Version (1 *Chron.* xii. 15) retains the obsolete *overflowed*.

**Hang.**—Curtains, pictures, etc., are *hung*; criminals are *hanged*.

**Lade, load.**—We *lade* (not *load*) a ship; we *load* (not *lade*) a waggon. But *heavy-laden* is used of both. Cf. 401.

**Lay, lie.**—*Lay* is transitive only: 'He *laid* himself down to rest'; *lie* is intransitive only: 'He *lay* down to rest.' Similarly a mother *overlies*, not *overlays*, her infant.

**Light.**—*Light, lighted* (to alight) was confused with *light, lit* (to illuminate), and hence *lit* and *lighted* are used in both senses: 'He *lighted* (or *lit*) the lamp'; 'The bird *lit* (or *lighted*) on the fence.' But we say 'a *lighted* (not *lit*) candle; and *alight*, not *alut*: 'The house was well *alight*.'

**Rid.**—The pret. and p.p. *rid* are commoner than *ridded*.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. Sir J. E. Tennent: 'They (the elephants) *winded* the scent of the herd.' Scott (*L. of L.*, I. 17) has 'his horn he *wound*,' where *wound* is a mistake for *winded*, i.e. 'sounded with the breath.' Conversely, he has *winded* for *wound* (*L. of L.*, V. 2). Cf. Tennyson, *Pelleas and Etarre*: (Gawain) 'raised a bugle hanging from his neck and *winded* it'; and Shaks. *Much Ado*, I. i. 243.

## DEFECTIVE AND ANOMALOUS VERBS.

## 248. Be.

SING.					PLUR.		
	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	am	art	is		are		
<i>" Subj.</i>	be	be	be		be		
<i>Past Ind.</i>	was	wast	was		were		
<i>" Subj.</i>	were	wert	were		were		
<i>Infin.</i>	be			<i>Imperf. Part.</i>			
		<i>Imperat.</i>		being	<i>Perf. Part.</i>		
		be			been		

249. Uses of 'be.'—*Be* is used—

(a) As a Principal Verb of complete predication, with the meaning of 'exist, take place':—

To *be* or not to *be*, that is the question.—*Shakspeare*.

There *are* cats without tails.

The wedding will *be* to-morrow.

(b) As a Principal Verb of incomplete predication, employed as a mere copula :—

The sky *is* red. The bird *was* on the tree.

(c) As an Auxiliary Verb with participles :—

He *is* going. The glass *was* broken.

## 250. Have.

SING.					PLUR.		
	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	have	hast	has		have		
<i>" Subj.</i>	have	have	have		have		
<i>Past Ind. &amp; Subj.</i>	had	hadst	had		had		
<i>Infin.</i>	have			<i>Imperf. Part.</i>			
		<i>Imperat.</i>		having	<i>Perf. Part.</i>		
		have			had		

## 251. Can.

SING.					PLUR.		
	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres. Ind.</i> <sup>1</sup>	can	canst	can		can		
<i>Past. Ind.</i>	could	couldst	could		could		

## 252. Dare.

SING.					PLUR.		
	1	2	3		1	2	3
<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	dare	darest	{ dare dares		dare		
<i>" Subj.</i>	dare	dare	dare		dare		
<i>Past. Ind. &amp; Subj.</i>	durst	durst	durst		durst		
<i>Infin.</i>	dare			<i>Imperf. Part.</i>			
		<i>Imperat.</i>		daring	<i>Perf. Part.</i>		
		dare			dared		

<sup>1</sup> Here, and in other instances, Subjunctive forms are not given, because the Old English Subjunctive forms became obsolete, and the Indicative forms took their place.



**NOTE.**—Since *dare* (like *shall*, *may*, *must*, *can*) is an old preterite, its third person is correctly *he dare*, like *he can*, *he shall*, etc.; but *he dares* is often, though wrongly, used. *Dare* makes a new preterite and perfect participle *dared*, when it is used transitively in the sense of 'to challenge':—'*He dared me to do it.*' *Dared* is also in use for *durst*. In '*I dare say*' (=probably) *dare* is quite unemphatic, whereas '*I dare to say*' = '*I make bold to say*'.

253. *Shall*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	shall	shalt	shall	shall		
<i>Past. Ind.</i>	should	shouldst	should	should		

254. *Will*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	will	wilt	will	will		
<i>Past. Ind.</i>	would	wouldst	would	would		

255. *May*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
<i>Pres. Ind. &amp; Subj.</i>	may	{mayest mayst}	may	may		
<i>Past. Ind. &amp; Subj.</i>	might	{mightest mightst}	might	might		

*May* expresses—

(a) *Permission* :

You *may* leave the room.

(b) *Possibility* :

He *may* come yet, but I hardly think he will.

*Maybe* (=it may be, perhaps) he will relent.

(c) *A wish* :

*May* you be happy.

(d) *A purpose* :

Bring the book here, that I *may* see it.

**NOTE.**—In (a) and (b) *may* is a principal verb; in (c) and (d) it is an auxiliary (p. 116, footnote) in the subjunctive mood (226, 227).

256. *Ought*.

	SING.			PLUR.		
	1	2	3	1	2	3
ought	oughtest	ought		ought		

**NOTE.**—*Ought* is the past tense of the verb *to owe*<sup>1</sup>; hence, what a man *ought* to do = that which is *owed* or *due* from him. *Ought* is now used as a

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 'You *ought* him a thousand pounds.'—*Shakespeare*. *To owe* originally meant to possess, as is seen in the adjective *own* (=possessed).

present, and reference to past time is indicated by using a perfect infinitive after it, as 'He ought to have done it.' The preterite of *owe*, in its modern sense, is *owed*.

## 257. Do.

	1	SING. 2	3	PLUR. 1 2 3
<i>Pres. Ind.</i>	do	{ doest <sup>1</sup> dost	{ doeth <sup>1</sup> doth does	do.
<i>Past Subj.</i>	do	do	do	do
<i>Past Ind. &amp; Subj.</i>	did	didst	did	did
<i>Infjn.</i> do <sup>1</sup>	<i>Imperat.</i> do	<i>Imperf. Part.</i> doing <sup>1</sup>	<i>Perf. Part.</i> done <sup>1</sup>	

258. Do has two functions : it is (1) A *Principal* verb ; (2) An *Auxiliary* verb.

(1) As a *Principal* verb it is used—

(a) As a Transitive verb :—

You must *do* (=perform) your duty.

(b) As an Intransitive verb :—

You must not *do* (=act) so.

(c) As a pro-verb, or substitute for a preceding verb, to avoid repeating it :—

He runs faster than I *do* (=than I run).

Here they lived, as all their forefathers had *done* (=had lived).—*Wordsworth*.

NOTE.—Caution is necessary in dealing with this use of *do* :—

(a) *Do* and the verb it represents must not be used together :—' Sooner or later he will go to the scaffold, as *gone* he would have *done*, had not,' etc. Omit either *gone* or *done*.

(b) *Do* cannot represent the verb *be* with its complement :—' He *is* generous to others when *to do so* is serviceable to himself.' Substitute 'such generosity' for 'to do so.'

(c) The subject and the voice of *do* must not be different from those of the preceding verb :—' It cannot be asserted, as Webster *does*, that this word is obsolete.' Substitute *asserts* for *does*.

(2) As an *Auxiliary* verb it is used—

(a) Immediately before the infinitive, to make a sentence emphatic :—

How you *do* talk ! *Do* be quiet !

(b) With *not* :—

I *do* not love you (instead of ' I love you not ').  
Do not talk (instead of ' Talk not ').

---

\* These forms do not belong to the verb when it is used as an Auxiliary.

(c) In asking and in replying to a question :—

*Do you love me ?* (instead of 'Love you me ?')—Yes, I *do*.<sup>1</sup>

NOTE 1.—To '*Do you love me ?*' the answer may be 'yes' or 'no'; '*Do you not love me ?*' expects the answer 'yes.'

NOTE 2.—*Do* as an auxiliary with *have* is permissible in such idioms as '*Do you have a walk every morning ?*' '*We did not have to wait long*'; but not generally, as in '*I do not have time for much walking*,' '*I should have objected, but I did not have an opportunity*.'

259. **Must** is now used only in the present indicative, and expresses—

(a) *Compulsion* :

He *must* obey his master.

(b) *Determination* :

He *must* always have his own way.

(c) *Certainty* :

He *must* have arrived by this time.

### IMPERSONAL VERBS.

260. These are *methinks* (= it seems to me), *meeseems* (= it seems to me), *melists* (= it pleases me). *Please* is impersonal in 'please God' (= if it please God), 'so please you' (= if it so please you). Some other verbs are used impersonally, taking *it* for their Subject and a Personal pronoun as their indirect Object :—

*It repents me of my conduct* = I repent of my conduct.

*It behoves you to go* = you ought to go.

*It became him to yield* = he was right to yield.

*It shames me to tell it* = I am ashamed to tell it.

*It irks me to do this* = I dislike doing this.

### ADVERBS.

261. *Definition*.—An **Adverb** (Latin *adverbium*, joined to verb) is a word used to modify any part of speech except a noun and a pronoun.

262. **Two classes**.—Adverbs are divided into two classes :—

I. *Independent* Adverbs, which merely modify words :— '*Where do you live ?*' '*I do it thus*.'

II. *Dependent* Adverbs, which not only modify words, but also connect the clause in which they occur with the rest of

<sup>1</sup> Here 'love you' is understood after *do*. This use must not be confused with (1). (c). above.

the sentence :—‘ This is the place *where* I live,’ ‘ I wonder *how* you do it.’

263. I. Independent Adverbs modify—(a) verbs : ‘ Ram runs *fast*’ ; ‘ *Where* are you going ?’ ; (b) adjectives : ‘ The bench is *too long*’ ; ‘ *How* many books have you ?’ ; (c) adverbs : ‘ He writes *very badly*’ ; (d) prepositions : ‘ I went *all* over the house’ ; (e) conjunctions : ‘ You laugh *just* because I do.’

NOTE.—Some independent adverbs, *certainly*, *undoubtedly*, *probably*, *possibly*, and the like, may also modify sentences :—‘ I *certainly* think so’ ‘ *Evidently* you are wrong,’ which are equivalent to ‘ It is certain that I think so,’ ‘ It is evident that you are wrong.’

264. II. Dependent Adverbs are subdivided, according to their uses, into (1) *Relative* adverbs ; (2) *Conjunctive* adverbs. Thus *why* is a Relative adverb in ‘ I know the reason *why* you did it,’ the clause ‘ why you did it ’ being an adjective clause, adjunct to the antecedent ‘ reason.’ But *why* is a Conjunctive adverb in ‘ I know *why* you did it,’ the clause ‘ why you did it ’ being a noun clause, object to the verb ‘ know.’

The following are used as Dependent Adverbs :—*when*, *when-ever*, *where*, *wherever*, *whither*, *whence*, *how*, *why*, *wherefore*, *whereby*, *wherein*, *whereat*, *whereon*, *while*, *as*.

NOTE.—The antecedent to a Relative adverb is often understood : *as*, ‘ Stay (there) *where* you are’ ; ‘ Come (then) *when* you are ready.’ *When* = ‘ and then ’ in ‘ We got on fairly well for a time, *when* the foremost camel lay down’ ; cf. 190, (c). *As* is a Conjunctive adverb in—‘ Pronounce the word *as* I do ’ (*manner*) ; ‘ He took the bundle, *just as* it was, to the police-station ’ (*condition*) ; ‘ You are not so tall *as* your brother ’ (*degree*) ; ‘ He arrived *as* we were starting ’ (*time*).

265. Adverbs in ‘-ly.’—Most adverbs are formed from adjectives and participles by the suffix *-ly* (like), as *divine*, *divinely* ; *loving*, *lovingly*. But adjectives ending in this *-ly* do not take the adverbial suffix, and the same form of the word is used as both adjective and adverb :—

We should live soberly, righteously, and godly in this present world.—*Bible*.

Men come to build *stately* sooner than to garden finely.—*Bacon*.

He turned *ghastly* pale. Very *likely* I am mistaken.

I expect him *daily* and *hourly*.

But adjectives in *-ly* in which *l* is part of the root take the suffix, as *holy*, *wily*, *silly*.

NOTE.—Past participles are found with this suffix, as *fixedly*, *hurriedly*, *confessedly*, *inadvisedly* (*Bible*), *assuredly*, etc. ; but its use with such participles requires caution : we do not say *terrifiedly*, *pleasedly*, *annoyedly*, *tiredly*.

**266. Genitival Adverbs.**—A few instances remain of adverbs which are the old genitive cases of nouns :—*Needs* (= of need, of necessity), *sometimes*, *unawares*, *afterwards*, *always*, *sideways*, *lengthways*,<sup>1</sup> *noways*. Similarly we say *of a truth*, *of course*, *of necessity*, *of right*, *of yore*, *of old* (time), *of late* (time), *of a day*, *of a morning*, etc.

**267. Prepositional Adverbs.**—A large class of adverbs consist of a noun (or an adjective used substantivally) with a preposition prefixed (52) :—*a-way* (on way), *a-sleep*, *a-foot*, *a-drift*, *a-broad*, *a-wry*; *a-new* (of new), *a-far*, *a-fresh*; *be-tween* (by twain), *be-times*, *be-sides*, *be-yond*; *for-sooth*, *forth-with*, *to-day*, *to-morrow*, *in-deed*, *over-board*, *with-al*.

**268. Compound Adverbs.**—These consist of nouns (in the objective case, 139) qualified by an adjective : *mean-time*, *mean-while*, *mid-way*, *yester-day*, *some-what*.

**269. Pronominal Adverbs.**—There is a class of adverbs which are derived from the pronouns *the* (= that), *he*, *who*.

PRONOUN.	PLACE.	MOTION TO.	MOTION FROM.	TIME.	MANNER.	CAUSE, DEGREE. the (258)
<i>The</i>	there	thither	thence	then	thus	the (258)
<i>He</i>	here	hither	hence	—	—	—
<i>Who</i>	where	whither	whence	when	how	why

There are also numerous compound forms :—*whereby*, *wherein*, *whereat*, *whereto*; *thereby*, *therein*, *thereat*, *thereto*; *hereby*, *herein*; *hitherto*.

NOTE.—*Why* is colloquially used to denote slight impatience or surprise, as in 'What is your income?—*Why*, sir, I can hardly tell at present.'

### SPECIAL ADVERBIAL FORMS.

**270. Ay, nay.**—*Ay* (yes) is the same word as *aye* (ever). *Nay* sometimes rejects a previous expression in order to introduce a stronger one, so that *nay* = 'nay more,' 'and what is more':—

'His trade was injured, *nay* ruined by the disaster.'

NOTE.—*Or rather* is similarly used :—'It is probable, *or rather* almost certain, that he will come.'

**271. Instrumental 'the.'**—*The* before comparative adjectives and adverbs is not the Definite Article, but represents the old

<sup>1</sup> We have also *lengthwise*, *endwise*, *coastwise*, *nowise*, due to confusion with adverbs formed with *wise* (guise, manner), as *likewise*, *otherwise*, *coastwise*.

Instrumental case of *the* used as a Demonstrative, and should be parsed as an Adverb :—

*The sooner, the better* = *By how much* the sooner, *by so much* the better.

*The more, the merrier* = *In what degree* they are more numerous, *in that degree* they are merrier [386, (i)].

*The nearer the bone, the sweeter the meat.*

He will be all (adv. = wholly, by the whole difference) *the better* for a little rest.

272. *Again* has the meanings—(1) a second time, (2) back, (3) in return, (4) into a former position, (5) furthermore, (6) in repeated or energetic response, (7) on the other hand :—

(1) You must promise not to do it *again*.

(2) Bring us word *again*.—*Bible*.

(3) Lend, hoping for nothing *again*.—*Bible*.

"It grieves me much," replied the peer *again*  
To love and to be loved *again*.

(4) Keep tight hold of this, so as not to drop it *again*.

A torment which Sycorax could not *again* undo.—*Shakspeare*.

(5) First there was a platform; next came a gallery; and this *again* was surmounted by another gallery.

And *again*, sir, shall we sow the headland with wheat?—*Shakspeare*.

(6) "Nothing, ma'am, upon my honour," said Mr. Pickwick, nodding his head so energetically that the tassel of his nightcap danced *again*.—*Dickens*.

Prick me Bullcalf till he roar *again*.—*Shakspeare*.

(7) Beauty cannot last; but yet certainly *again* it maketh virtue shine, and vices blush.—*Bacon*.

The one is my sovereign, the other *again* is my kinsman.—*Shakspeare*.

NOTE.—*Again* in 'This is as long *again* as that,' 'As much *again*, etc., indicates that the measure or quantity is repeated; hence 'as long *again*' = 'twice as long.'

273. *Very* means 'true, actual,' as an adjective :—

There is a *very* life in our despair.—*Byron*.

Hence it came to mean 'itself, themselves,' etc. :—

At that *very* instant he arrived. Your *very* looks betray you.

But *very* is much more common as an adverb, meaning 'truly,' and so, 'exceedingly' :—

'I am *very* glad to see you.'

*Very* merely emphasises 'best' and 'same' in such sentences as—

'My *very* best coat.' 'The *very* same reason.'

NOTE.—As an adjective, *very* has degrees of comparison :—*very*, *verier*, *veriest* :—'And ne'er was earth with *verier* tyrant curst.'—*Southey*; 'Thou hast the *veriest* shrew of all.'—*Shakspeare*.

**274. Never so, ever so.**—The old idiom was *never so* :—

(1) That (the adder) refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, charm he *never so* wisely (*Bible*), i.e. 'though he charm so wisely as (he or any one charmed) never before.'

This *never so* has, in modern English, been turned into *ever so*, and we say—

(2) That refuseth to hear the voice of the charmer, charm he *ever so* wisely, i.e. 'however wisely he may charm.'

NOTE.—The use of *ever so*, *ever such* = 'to any extent, exceedingly,' as in 'Ever so many people came,' 'It is *ever such* a long way off,' is colloquial.

**275. Adverbs as Adjectives.**—Adverbs are sometimes apparently used as adjectives :—

Our *sometime* sister, now our queen.—*Shakspeare*.

My *evermore* delight.—*Tennyson*.

In such instances a participle or an adjective is understood with the adverb. Thus :—

The *then* king = the *then* reigning king.

A *down* (or *up*) train = a *down* (or *up*) going train.

A *through* ticket = a ticket available *through* (the journey).

In *after* years = in years *coming after*.

An *outside* passenger = a passenger travelling *outside*.

A *homeward* voyage = a voyage *made homeward*.

The *above* description = the description *given above*.

An *out and out* hypocrite = a hypocrite *deceiving out and out*.

NOTE.—These forms strongly resemble those in 74, and *down train*, *through ticket* might almost be treated as compound words. Cf. 'the man *here*' (= the man who is here), 'the world *above*' (= the upper world), 'on the way *back*,' 'a journey *inland*.'

**276. Adverbs as Nouns.**—Some adverbs are used as nouns, with a preposition before them :—

I shall have finished by *then* (= that time).

Such things have been done before *now* (= the present time).

He lives two miles from *here* (= this place).

It is a long way from *here* to *there* (= that place).

NOTE.—Cf. 'at *once*,' 'at *unawares*,' 'by *far*,' 'for *ever*.' Adverbial phrases are used in the same way :— 'Wait till *after the holidays*'; 'I bought this book for *under two rupees*'; 'I have solved the mystery of *where he is gone*.'

**277. Adverb phrases with noun understood** :—

(a) *Measure, degree, rate* is understood with—*in full, at full, to the full, at the full, to the utmost, in the main, in general, not at all, at best, at least*.

(b) *Way, manner* is understood with—*in vain, in short, in brief, in public, in secret, out of the common, in earnest*.

(c) *Time* is understood with—*in a little, before long, to the last, at last, at latest, at soonest, of old, in future, at present, for the present, once for all*.

(d) *State, condition* is understood with—*in the dark, in the open* (out of doors), *for the best, in the ascendant, at large, on high*.

**278. Comparison of Adverbs.**—Adverbs that are the same in form as the corresponding adjectives (148) form their comparison in the same way: *hard, harder, hardest* (adv. and adj.); *fast, faster, fastest* (adv. and adj.). We have also *easier, earlier* and *earliest, seldomer, sooner* and *soonest, oftener* and *oftenest, as* adverbs: ‘*Easier said than done, least said, soonest mended.*’ Adverbs in *-ly* express the comparative and the superlative by prefixing *more* and *most*: *more wisely, most wisely.*

NOTE.—The *-ly* form, however, is common in poetry —

Destroyers *rightlier* called and plagues of men.—*Milton.*

Strange friend, past, present, and to be;

Loved *deepier, darklier* understood.—*Tennyson.*

From all foes save itself, that's *truliest* foe.—*Browning.*

**279. Rather** (comparative of the obsolete *rathe*) means (1), ‘sooner,’ and so (2) ‘somewhat’ :—

(1) I will go to meet him *rather* than wait for him.

(2) I am *rather* doubtful about this.

In *had rather, had sooner, had better, has as soon*, ‘had’ is subjunctive, meaning ‘should or would have’ :—

I *had rather* go = I *should have* it *rather* to go (i.e. I prefer to go).

I *had sooner* walk than ride = I *should have* it *sooner* to walk than to ride (i.e. I prefer walking to riding).

You *had better* stay = you *would have* (=find) it *better* to stay (i.e. it will be better for you to stay).

I *had as soon* walk as ride = I *should have* it *as soon* to walk as to ride (i.e. I should like equally to walk or to ride).

NOTE.—Similarly ‘I *had like* to have been drowned’ = I *had* it *likely* (i.e. I was likely) to have been drowned.

## PREPOSITIONS.

**280. Definition.**—A **Preposition** (Latin *præpositio*, placing before) is a word used to point out the relation in which one thing stands to some other thing: as, ‘Ram’s book is *on* the table.’ In this sentence the preposition *on* points out the relation (here, of *place*) in which Ram’s book stands to the table.

**281. Compound Prepositions.**—A large class of prepositions are formed by prefixing a preposition to a noun, or to an adjective used substantively. Thus, *amid* means *in the middle*, and *beside* means *by the side*. Hence, just as we can say ‘He stood *beside* me,’ without inserting the preposition *of* after *beside*, so we can say ‘Fields of rice lie *on either side* the river,’ where *on-either-side*



has the force of preposition.<sup>1</sup> The chief prepositions of this class are :—*about, above, across, against, along, around, among, behind, below, beneath, between, beyond, within, without* (see Chap VIII.). Also *on account of, because of, thanks to* (= owing to, through), the last often used without any notion of gratitude and sometimes sarcastically.

282. A year, a day, etc.—The *a* in such expressions as—

*Passing rich on forty pounds a year* (= yearly).—*Goldsmith.*

*Rice is three rupees a maund.*<sup>2</sup>

*He hired the coolies at two annas a man.*

—is not the Indefinite Article used distributively, but a weakened form of the preposition *on*. Thus in Old English we find—

*An halfpenny on day* = *a halfpenny a day*.

### PREPOSITIONAL USE OF PARTICIPLES.

283. Barring, bating, concerning, considering, excepting, regarding, respecting, saving, touching, owing (to), according (to) are participles which, from the frequency of their use in certain connexions, have come to be employed without any noun or pronoun for them to qualify. Thus—

*What is your opinion concerning these matters ?*

would be the regular construction, the noun 'opinion' being qualified by the participle 'concerning'; but in

*I should like to talk with you concerning these matters,*

'concerning' has no noun or pronoun for it to qualify, and is used by itself with the force of a preposition (= about).

Similarly,

*Considering his youth, I shall treat him with lenity*

is regular, since 'considering' qualifies the pronoun 'I'; but in

*Considering his youth, his conduct is excusable,*

'considering' (since it cannot qualify 'conduct') stands alone with a prepositional force [386, (13)].

284. Examples :—

*Barring* (= apart from) accidents, the vessel will sail to-morrow.

*His conduct, bating* (= except for) a few slight errors, was admirable.

*Saving* (= except) one picture, there was nothing worth looking at.

*Touching* (= in regard to) this matter, I am much puzzled.

*The money was lost, owing to* (= in consequence of) his failure (409, 6).

<sup>1</sup> We can, further, dispense with *on* and say 'I live *this side* the river,' where *this side* is an adverbial objective with prepositional force; see 139, (a).

<sup>2</sup> This preposition *a*, however, soon came to be regarded as the Indefinite Article—and hence we find *the* taking its place :—'Rice is three rupees *the* maund.'

NOTE.—*Speaking, talking, judging, seeing, granting* (or *admitting*), *assuming, supposing, allowing*, are sometimes similarly used (cf. 297) :—

*Speaking* generally, this will be found to be true.

*Talking* of guns, a sad accident happened yesterday.

*Judging* from his conduct, he is hardly to be trusted.

*Seeing* that the train is gone, it is useless to wait.

*Granting* that this is true, what follows ?

*Assuming* that you had some excuse, still your conduct was harsh.

*Supposing* that I am right, the money is lost.

*Allowing* for absentees, the roll of members is correct.

**285. During, notwithstanding, pending, except,\* save are, in** their origin, instances of the Absolute construction (137) :—

*During* this anxious night, Charles slept only two hours—i.e. *this anxious night during* (=lasting), or 'while this anxious night lasted.'

All were drowned *except one man* = all were drowned, *one man being excepted*.

Forty stripes *save one* = forty stripes, *one being saved or reserved*.

But they may now be regarded as prepositions, taking the objective case after them.

NOTE.—*Notwithstanding* is still placed, as an Absolute participle, after the noun it qualifies :—'He would go, all my orders *notwithstanding*.' Similarly we have '*Provided* (=so long as, if) you go, I will stay' (i.e. *it being provided that you go*). *Let alone*, as in 'The party disagrees on many important questions, *let alone* this Bill' (=this Bill being let alone, or exclusive of this Bill), seems to belong here, unless *let* is imperative (226).

**286. Detached Preposition.**—In relative clauses, and with interrogative pronouns and adverbs, whether independent or conjunctive, the preposition is often placed last :—

*Which*, traitor, thou would'st have me answer *to*.—*Shakspere*.

*Whom* do you take me *for* ?

Then thou knowest *what* colour jet is *of*.—*Shakspere*.

*Where* are you going *to* (=whither) ? Tell me *where* you are going *to*.

When the relative is omitted, or when the relative *that* is used, the preposition *must* come last :—

Here is the book (which) I spoke *of*.

This is the house *that* I once lived *in*.

A preposition used in this way is called a *Detached* preposition.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

**287. Definition.**—A **Conjunction** (Latin *conjunctio*, joining together) is a word used to join together sentences and like words, noun with noun, verb with verb, etc., as 'He said *that* he was a banker'; 'The man *and* the boy went together,' 'Valour will come *and* go.'

**288. Two Classes.**—Conjunctions are divided into two classes :—

(1) *Co-ordinative* Conjunctions : *and, or ; but, still, yet, however ; for, therefore, so, then.* These (besides joining together words) unite co-ordinate clauses or sentences :—

She maketh fine linen *and* selleth it.—*Bible.*

So runs my dream : *but* what am I ?—*Tennyson.*

(2) *Subordinative* Conjunctions : *that ; as, because, since, else ; if, unless, though ; than.* These unite a subordinate clause to a principal clause :—

He sold the horse *because* it went lame.

If it be so, it was a grievous fault.—*Shakspeare.*

### CO-ORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

**289. Both—and** should, strictly, couple only two notions :—

*Both* wind *and* tide were contrary.

But they are sometimes used to join more than two :—

The God that made *both* sky *and* earth *and* heaven.—*Milton.*

NOTE.—(a) The same thing is true of *either—or, neither—nor*, since *either* and *neither* are both compounded of *whether* = ‘which of two.’ But they have, for a long period, been used in relation to more than two objects.

(b) *Whether—or* are sometimes used elliptically with the meaning of *both—and* : ‘All his property, *whether* (it be) houses *or* lands, is lost.’

**290. Either** is sometimes appended adverbially to a word or to a sentence to emphasise them :—

I do not believe John would act so, *or* Charles *either.*

If you do not stay, I will not stay *either.*

**291. Or** has four uses :—

(1) It is strongly alternative :

You must apologise *or* resign.

(2) It has little or no alternative force :

Their strength *or* speed *or* vigilance were given

In aid of our defects.—*Cowper.*

(3) It introduces an alternative name or synonym :

Christ *or* the Messiah (=that is, in other words).

Brakespeare, *or* The Fortunes of a Free Lance (*Title of a Novel*).

(4) It is used for ‘otherwise’ :

You must obey my orders, *or* I shall be angry.

NOTE.—Only (1) and (4) admit of the emphatic *either—or*. When *nor* is used without a negative preceding, it is equivalent to ‘and not’ :—‘I stood still, *nor* did he move.’ Observe that *or* is subordinative in (4).

**292. For** (co-ord.), **because** (subord.).—The sentences—

- (1) I know it is cold, *for* it is snowing.  
 (2) I know it is cold *because* it is snowing.

have the same meaning with a different construction. In (1) 'it is snowing' is a statement given as the reason for another statement, 'I know it is cold'; whereas in (2) 'it is snowing' is given merely as the reason for its being cold. In (1) we have two sentences, joined by *for*; in (2) we have only one sentence, and 'it is cold because it is snowing' forms the object of *know*.

**293. But** (co-ord.), **though** (subord.).—Note the difference in meaning between—

- (1) He is poor, *but* honest = his poverty has not made him dishonest.  
 (2) He is poor, *though* honest = his honesty has not made him rich.

NOTE.—Hence, 'he is poor, but honest' and 'he is honest, though poor' have the same meaning.

### SUBORDINATIVE CONJUNCTIONS.

**294. If** is generally used to introduce a condition or a supposition :—

- (1) *If* (=on the supposition that) you go, I will stay.

But it is also used to introduce a reported interrogation (311) :—

- (2) I asked him *if* (=whether) he would go,

and a concession :—

- (3) *If* (=admitting that) I have failed, I have at any rate done my best.

**295.—That** is used to introduce a noun clause which is—  
 (a) complement to a verb, (b) object to a verb, (c) object to a preposition, or (d) in apposition to a noun :

- (a) My proposal is *that* you should be our leader.  
 (b) He said *that* I must go.  
 (c) In *that* he liveth, he liveth unto God.— *Bible*.  
 (d) The notion *that* he is a popular man is incorrect.

**296. Lest**.—*Les-t = less that = the less that*, for fear that that ... not :—

Ye shall not eat of it, *lest* ye die.— *Bible*.

NOTE.—*That* should be used, rather than *lest*, after verbs implying avoidance, as 'I fear *that* (not *lest*) you are ill'; 'I doubt *that* I have slain the Red Comyn' (*Scott*).

**297. Omission of 'that.'**—The words *after*, *before*, *ere*, *since*, *until*, *for*, *but* were originally prepositions followed by *that*, but by the omission of *that*, became conjunctions :—

- (1) Tell me *before* (prep.) that I go.  
 (2) Tell me *before* (conj.) I go.

Just as *that* is now omitted after *because* (= by cause), so it is often similarly omitted after *on condition*, *in case*, *for fear*, and after *directly*, *provided* (= if), *supposing* (= if), *granting* (= if), *assuming* (= though), *seeing* (= since).

NOTE.—*Now* is a conjunction in the colloquial 'Now (that) you have finished your work, you may go'; cf. 'The moment (that) you have finished, you may go.'

298. *While* was once 'the while that,' and is really an Objective of Duration of Time [139, (b)]. Thus '*While* the ploughman whistles' = '(During) *the while* (= time) *that* the ploughman whistles.' *While* has three different senses :—

- (1) Do you play *while* (= at the same time that) I sing.
- (2) *While* (= as long as) the Coliseum stands, Rome shall stand.
- (3) Some people are punctual, *while* (= whereas) others are never in time.

NOTE.—*While* should not be used as a mere variation for *and*, as in 'The Mayor presided, *while* the King sat on his right hand.' In 'While being sorry for your loss, I must say you were careless,' *while being* is wrong for *while I am*.

299. '*Than*,' '*as*,' in comparative sentences should have the same case after them as before them :—

He likes you better than *I* (like you).  
 He likes you better than (he likes) *me*.  
 I am not so tall as *he* (is tall).

We sometimes, however, find *than*, *as* incorrectly used as prepositions :—

A man no mightier than thyself or *me*.—*Shakspeare*.  
 Is she as tall as *me*?—*Ib.*  
 The nations not so blest as *thee*.—*Thomson*.

But *than*, in sentences in which it cannot have a verb understood after it and so cannot be a conjunction, must be parsed as a Preposition :—

I will not take less *than* five rupees.  
 The next king was Solomon, *than* whom there was none wiser  
 He got more *than* (what) he gave.  
 I will starve rather *than* (that) she should want.  
 I did no more *than* make a beginning.

#### INTERJECTIONS.

300. *Definition*.—An Interjection (Latin *interjectio*, throwing between) is an exclamatory word or sound thrown into a sentence to express an emotion of the mind, and is not, properly, a part of speech, since it does not enter into the construction of sentences :—  
*Oh!* *Ah!* *Alas!* (grief); *Hurrah!* *Ha!* *ha!* (joy); *Fie!* (reproof); *Pshaw!* *Tut!* *tut!* *Pooh!* *Pish!* *Faugh!* (disgust);

*Hark ! Hush ! Hist !* (attention); *Heigh-ho !* (weariness); *Bravo ! Hear ! hear !* (approval); *Ho ! Holloa !* (a call); *Humph ! Hem ! Hoity-toity !* (surprise).

**301. Interjectional Phrases.**—Many phrases and elliptical expressions are used interjectionally:—*O dear me !* (=O dear for me), *Ah me !* (=ah for me), *Woe is me !* (=woe is to me), *Fie for shame ! For shame ! Alackaday !* (=ah, lack, or loss, on the day), *Hail !* (=be hale or healthy), *Welladay !* (for *welaway*=O.E. *wá lá wá*, woe ! lo ! woe !), *Good bye* (=good b' w' ye, =God be with you), *Good heavens !*



*I drank, because I was thirsty.*  
*He worked hard, that he might win the prize.*  
*He said that he should go.*

**303. Exceptions to (2).—**(a) If the dependent clause states an action that is *universally* or *habitually* true, the present tense should be used in the dependent clause :—

*He seemed hardly to know that the earth goes round the sun.*  
*He asked me why I take a walk for two hours every day."*

(b) After *than* the present or the future tense may be used in the dependent clause :—

*He loved me more than he loves you.*  
*He loved me more than he will love you.*

**304. The present imperfect momentary tense of the infinitive mood may be used with any tense of the principal verb :—**

<i>I hope</i>	} to see you.
<i>I shall hope</i>	
<i>I hoped</i>	
<i>I had hoped</i>	

**305. But the present perfect momentary tense of the infinitive mood must be used when the act expressed by the infinitive is regarded as completed before the time denoted by the principal verb :—**

*He appears to have been mistaken (on some previous occasion).*

**306. After the past tenses of verbs expressing *wish, hope, intention, duty, etc.*, the present perfect tense of the infinitive implies that the *wish, etc.*, was not realised :—**

*I meant to have seen him (but I was not able to do so).*  
*I hoped to have obtained a prize (but I did not obtain one).*  
*They ought to have come in time (but they neglected to do so).*

NOTE.—Hence 'I intended to have won the prize, and I succeeded.' is wrong; say, 'I intended to win.' *I should like*, though expressing conditionally present desire, is past in form. Compare the following :—

If I have time, I should like (=shall like) to go.  
 If I had (or should have) time, I should like to go.  
 If I had had time { I should like to have gone.  
                                   I should have liked to go.

But 'I should have liked to have gone' is inadmissible.

**307. I am to (go), I have to (go), require special notice (654) :—**

*I am to go* = it is settled or arranged that I shall go.  
*I was to go* = it was settled or arranged that I should go.  
*I have to go* = I am under obligation to go.  
*I had to go* = I was under obligation to go.



**NOTE.**—Since 'He is to be' = 'it is settled or established that he shall be,' a sentence like 'He is to be trusted with the business' may have two meanings—(1) 'It is intended to trust him with the business,' (2) 'He is worthy of being trusted with the business.' Observe that 'If I were to (go)' is often used merely for 'If I should (go).'

The present perfect tense of the infinitive may be used after *I was*, but not after *I am*, *I have*, *I had* :—

*I was to have gone* = it was settled or arranged that I should go (but I did not go).

### REPORTED SPEECH.

**308. In reporting speech** one of two general methods may be followed :—(a) we may give the actual words used by the speaker : this is called *Direct Report*<sup>1</sup> ; (b) we may give in the form of a narrative the substance or meaning of the words used by the speaker, without quoting his actual words : this is called *Indirect Report*.<sup>1</sup>

**309. In Direct Report** the actual words used by the speaker must be introduced by some verb expressing simple assertion (as *say*, *remark*, etc.) and must be marked off by inverted commas ("——"), the signs of quotation, which are placed at the beginning and at the end of the speech reported :—

Ram said, "It is twelve o'clock."

### 310. In Indirect Report—

(1) The conjunction *that* is inserted before the reported speech, except in the case of Reported Interrogations (311), and some Reported Exclamations (313) :—

*Direct* : Ram says, "The man is dead."

*Indirect* : Ram says that the man is dead.

**NOTE.**—*That* is often omitted in spoken, less often in written, English :—  
'Ram says the man is dead.'

(2) If the verb used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech is in the present or the future tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech remains unchanged :—

*Direct* : Ram says (or will say), "*I am wrong.*"

*Indirect* : Ram says (or will say) *that he is wrong.*

*Direct* : Ram says (or will say), "*I was wrong.*"

*Indirect* : Ram says (or will say) *that he was wrong.*

---

<sup>1</sup> Also called *Direct and Indirect Speech* or *Narration*.

(3) If the verb used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech is in the past tense, the tense of the verb in the reported speech must correspond to it :—

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *I am wrong.*”

*Indirect* : Ram said *that he was wrong.*

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *He has gone.*”

*Indirect* : Ram said *that he had gone.*

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *I will walk.*”

*Indirect* : Ram said *that he would walk.*

NOTE.—For the change of *shall* to *will* in the reported speech, see 305.

(4) But if the reported speech states an action as universally or habitually true [303, (a)], the tense of the verb in the reported speech remains unchanged :—

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *The earth is round.*”

*Indirect* : Ram said *that the earth is round.*

(5) The person of the pronouns and of the verbs in the reported speech must correspond to the person of the individual or the object with reference to whom the original speech is made :—

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *I am wrong.*”

*Indirect* : Ram said *that he (Ram) was wrong.*

*Direct* : Ram said to him (Sham), “ *You are wrong.*”

*Indirect* : Ram told him *that he (Sham) was wrong.*

*Direct* : Ram said to me, “ *You are wrong.*”

*Indirect* : Ram told me *that I was wrong.*

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *My father is at home.*”

*Indirect* : Ram said *that his father was at home.*

But no change of person is necessary when the speech is reported to the person to whom it was originally addressed :—

*Direct* : Ram said to you, “ *You are wrong.*”

*Indirect* : Ram told you *that you were wrong.*

NOTE.—We see that in such sentences as ‘Ram told him that he was wrong,’ there may be some confusion as to whether the pronoun *he* refers to the speaker, Ram, or to the person spoken to. This can be obviated only by inserting after *he* the name or designation of the person referred to, as ‘*he (Ram),*’ or ‘*he (the speaker),*’ or ‘*he (Sham).*’

(6) Certain words expressing nearness in place, time, or manner—*this, these, here, hither, hence, now, to-day, to-morrow, yesterday, last night, ago, thus, hereby* used by the original speaker, must often be changed into words expressing remoteness—*that.*

*those, there, thither, thence, then, the next day, the day before, the night before, before, so, thereby*, in the indirect report of the speech :—

*Direct* : Ram said, "I do not know *this* man."

*Indirect* : Ram said that he did not know *that* man.

*Direct* : Ram said, "The matter shall be decided *here and now*."

*Indirect* : Ram said that the matter should be decided *there and then*.

*Direct* : Ram says, "I shall go *to-morrow*."

*Indirect* : Ram says that he shall go *the next day*.

*Direct* : Ram said, "I left home long *ago*."

*Indirect* : Ram said that he had left home long *before*.

*Direct* : My letter says, "I *hereby* grant you the appointment."

*Indirect* : My letter says that he *thereby* grants me the appointment.

. But if *this, here*, etc., refer to objects present at the time of the report of the speech, or to the place in which reporter is at the time of the report, they are not changed to *that, there*, etc., in the reported speech :—

*Direct* : Ram said, "*This* is my book."

*Indirect* : Ram said that *this* (i.e. the book before us) was his book.

*Direct* : Ram said, "The custom is *now* (i.e. in modern times) obsolete."

*Indirect* : Ram said that the custom was *now* obsolete.

*Direct* : Ram said, "Men cannot expect happiness *here* (i.e. in this world)."

*Indirect* : Ram said that men could not expect happiness *here*.

**311. Reported Interrogations.**—In reporting interrogations some verb expressing interrogation (instead of a verb expressing simple assertion) must be used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech, followed, if necessary, by *whether* or *if*, and the Interrogative order of words [135, (1)] must be changed to the Affirmative order :—

*Direct* : Ram said to you, "Are the mangoes ripe?"

*Indirect* : Ram asked you *whether* (or *if*) the mangoes were ripe.

*Direct* : Ram said to me, "Why do you not go home?"

*Indirect* : Ram asked me why I did not go home.

*Direct* : Ram said to him, "How do you do?"

*Indirect* : Ram asked him how he did.

*Direct* : Ram said to them, "What do you mean by such conduct?"

*Indirect* : Ram demanded of them what they meant by such conduct.

*Direct* : Ram said to the man, "Where are you going?"

*Indirect* : Ram enquired of the man where he was going.

*Direct* : I said, "Who says to me 'You are a thief'?"

*Indirect* : I asked who called me a thief.

312. **Reported Commands or Requests.**—In reporting *Commands* or *Requests* originally expressed by the imperative mood, some verb expressing command or request, with an object or the person, must be used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech (without *that*, 788), and the imperative mood must be replaced by the infinitive :—

*Direct* : Ram said to him, “ *Do not talk nonsense.*”

*Indirect* : Ram told him not to talk nonsense.

*Direct* : Ram said to me, “ *Lend me your pen, please.*”

*Indirect* : Ram requested me kindly to lend him my pen.

*Direct* : Ram said to them, “ *Please be quiet.*”

*Indirect* : Ram begged them to be quiet.

*Direct* : Ram said to me, “ *Welcome home.*”

*Indirect* : Ram bid me welcome home.

313. **Reported Exclamations and Wishes.**—In reporting exclamations and wishes, some verb expressing exclamation or wish (followed, where necessary, by *that*) is often used by the reporter to introduce the reported speech, such verb representing the force of ejaculations used by the original speaker, which could not be otherwise expressed in the indirect report; or the force of such ejaculations may be represented by some additional word or phrase. The Optative [135, (4)] and the Exclamatory [135, (2)] order of words must be changed to the Affirmative order. Verbs omitted in the original exclamation must be supplied in the reported exclamation :—

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *How happy I am* ” (or “ *am I* ”) !

*Indirect* : Ram said that he was very happy.

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *Good heavens! What a disaster (it is)!*”

*Indirect* : { Ram cried out what a disaster it was.

{ With a cry of horror, Ram exclaimed that it was a great disaster.

*Direct* : The spectators cried out, “ *Bravo! (It is) A capital hit!*”

*Indirect* : The spectators cried out with applause that it was a capital hit.

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *Alas! I am ruined.*”

*Indirect* : Ram exclaimed with a sigh that he was ruined.

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *O (I wish) that I could see them!*”

*Indirect* : Ram exclaimed that he wished he could see them.

*Direct* : Ram said, “ *Could I but see them!*”

*Indirect* : Ram expressed a wish that he could but see them.

*Direct* : The captive said, “ *May Heaven hear my cry!*”

*Indirect* : { The captive prayed Heaven to hear his cry.  
{ The captive prayed that Heaven might hear his cry.

**314. Special Examples:—**

*Direct* : Ram said, "Depend upon it, I shall succeed."

*Indirect* : Ram said that he was quite sure that he should ~~succeed~~  
(or to succeed).

*Direct* : Ram said, "Heaven knows that I am innocent."

*Indirect* : Ram called Heaven to witness that he was innocent.

*Direct* : Ram said, "Good-bye, my friends !"

*Indirect* : { Ram said good-bye to his friends.  
Ram bade his friends good-bye.

*Direct* : Cortes said, "We are few against many, brave comrades !"

*Indirect* : Cortes, calling them his brave comrades, told them they  
were few against many.

*Direct* : Ram said to him, "For shame, you coward !"

*Indirect* : Ram cried shame on him for a coward.

*Direct* : The prisoner said, "My lord, so help me God, I am not  
guilty."

*Indirect* : The prisoner declared to the judge that, so help him God,  
he was not guilty.

*Direct* : Ram said, "To think that I should be mistaken !"

*Indirect* : Ram expressed great surprise at finding himself mistaken.

**INTERMEDIATE FORMS OF REPORTED SPEECH.**

In addition to the two distinct forms of reported speech, the Direct and the Indirect, there are other forms *intermediate* between them.

**315. First Intermediate Form.**

*Direct* : John Wilkes declared, "In the height of my success I have  
never myself been a Wilkite."

*Indirect* : John Wilkes declared that in the height of his success he  
had never himself been a Wilkite.

*Intermediate* : John Wilkes declared that "in the height of his success  
he had never himself been a Wilkite."

Here the Intermediate form is distinguished from the Indirect form merely by the insertion of quotation marks. The narrator wishes to draw attention to the fact that he gives not only the substance of what John Wilkes said but his *actual words*, with no change but the necessary ones in verbs and pronoun.

**316. Second Intermediate Form.**

*Direct* : I say, "Why do we not help them ?"

*Indirect* : I ask why we do not help them.

*Intermediate* : I ask, Why do we not help them ?

This form is the converse of the First Intermediate Form. It is often used when a person is reporting his own words. He

quotes the actual words which he originally used, but without the quotation marks, since he does not wish to draw attention to the fact that he is so quoting.

NOTE.—We occasionally find a mixture of the First and the Second Intermediate forms:—*Direct*: “Has Ram taken my book?” he asked. *Indirect*: He asked if Ram had taken his book. *Intermediate*: Had Ram taken his book? he asked.

### 317. Third Intermediate Form. •

*Direct*: The Greeks deliberated over the affair and said, “Our homes in the Peloponnesus are comparatively secure. Is it not better for us to fall back and defend the Isthmus of Corinth? Do not, O Leonidas, be foolhardy.”

*Indirect*: The Greeks deliberated over the affair and said that their homes in the Peloponnesus were comparatively secure; they asked if it was not better for them to fall back and defend the Isthmus of Corinth, and begged Leonidas not to be foolhardy.

*Intermediate*: The Greeks deliberated over the affair. Their homes in the Peloponnesus were comparatively secure; was it not better for them to fall back and defend the Isthmus of Corinth? Let not Leonidas be foolhardy.

Here the Intermediate form differs from the Indirect form in omitting the verbs *said*, *asked*, *begged*, used in the Indirect form to introduce the clauses of the reported speech. The reader is left to infer from the context that the author is reporting what the Greeks said or thought, the question and the request being indicated (as in the Direct form) by the construction of the sentences.

### SHALL AND WILL.

318. The primary sense of ‘shall’ is ‘owe, ought,’ implying the notion of *obligation*, or duty imposed by some external power.

The primary sense of ‘will’ is ‘wish,’ implying the notion of *volition*, or desire felt by the person himself.

319. *I shall go*, meaning originally *I owe* or *ought to go*, implies that my going is due not to my own wish but to some external compulsion or influence. But as it was considered polite, in speaking in the first person of one’s own future action, to represent the action as influenced by external circumstances rather than by one’s own wish, *I shall* came to be used as the general term to express future action on the part of the person speaking. Hence the original notion of *compulsion* in the word *shall* is lost when *shall* is used in the first person, and *I shall go* is a mere prediction.

On the other hand, it was considered more polite, in speaking in the second or the third person of another's future action, to represent the action not as influenced by external circumstances, but as dependent on the will or wish of the person spoken to or spoken of. Accordingly, *you will, he will* came to be used as the general terms to express future action on the part of the person spoken to or spoken of. Hence the original notion of *desire* in the word *will* is lost sight of when *will* is used in the second or the third person, and *you will go, he will go* are mere predictions.

Hence when *mere futurity* is to be expressed, we must use—

I shall	we shall
thou wilt	you will
he will	they will

320. The original notion of *desire* (easily passing into the notion of *determination* or *intention*) in the word *will* is preserved, when *will* is used in the first person. *I will go*, literally *I desire to go*, hence *I am determined to go* or *I intend to go*, is therefore used in promises or threats.

Similarly the original notion of *obligation* in the word *shall* is preserved, when *shall* is used in the second or the third person. *You shall go, he shall go* (i.e. *something will oblige you or him to go*), are therefore used to express promises, threats, or commands: that is, in all cases where the action is not dependent on the wish of the person spoken to or spoken of, but is due to some external influence exercised by the person speaking.

Hence when *promises, threats, or commands* are to be expressed we must use—

I will	we will
thou shalt	you shall
he shall	they shall

321. **Examples.**—The ordinary uses of *shall* and *will* in the first, second, and third persons, are illustrated in the following sentences:—

- (1) *I shall* be punished = punishment *is to be inflicted* on me.  
*I will* be punished = *I desire or am determined* to be punished.
- (2) To-morrow *will* be a holiday = to-morrow *is to be* a holiday. (This might be said by a schoolboy.)  
 To-morrow *shall* be a holiday = to-morrow *is to be* a holiday *by the permission or order of the speaker*. (This therefore might be said by a headmaster, but not by a schoolboy.)
- (3) Whoever finds the missing papers *will* be rewarded = a reward *is to be* given to the finder.  
 Whoever finds the missing papers *shall* be rewarded = *I promise a reward* to the finder.

- (4) Thou *shalt* not steal—is a *command*.  
Thou *wilt* not steal—is a *prediction*.
- (5) Come, we *will* slay him and *will* have his horse  
And armour, and his damsel *shall* be ours.—*Tennyson*. (Here *will*  
and *shall* express the *intention* or *determination* of the bandits.)
- (6) Why if thou *wilt*, so let it be—thou *shalt* (*Tennyson*) = if thou *wishest*  
(to be free), *I will allow* thee to be so.

*Shall* is the only form admissible in expressions like—

*I shall be much obliged, I shall be at a loss, I shall be able, I shall be very glad, I shall have much pleasure, etc.,*

which are mere predictions of what will happen, and into which the idea of *will* does not enter. *I will be very glad* would express a *promise* to feel glad, which is absurd.

### 322. Special uses of *shall* and *will* :—

- (1) On receipt of this letter you *will* at once return home.

Here the future tense gives an order under the guise of a prediction. This form is often used when the person to whom the order is given is addressed in the third, and not, as usual, in the second person : as, 'The Head Constable *will* investigate this case himself.'

- (2) You *will* always come when you are least expected.

Here *will* is emphasised, and implies that your *desire* or *determination* to come is so fixed as to have produced a *habit* of coming. Similarly in 'Accidents *will* happen,' the *will* is emphasised, and the *desire* to happen, leading to a habit of happening, in spite of all efforts to prevent them, is humorously attributed to accidents.

Hence *will*, not emphasised, has come to be used to express mere *habit* or *tendency*, the idea of *desire* being lost sight of : as, 'He *will* spend hours together in studying the heavens,' i.e. he *is in the habit* of spending, etc.

- (3) This picture *will* be meant to represent the Duke of Wellington.

Here *will* merely predicts the result of further investigation ; and '*will* be meant' = '*will turn out on enquiry* to be meant,' implying present uncertainty. It is thus a form of enquiry, and is often followed by a note of interrogation.

- (4) He that *will* not when he may,  
He *shall* not when he *will* (*Old Proverb*).

These are good examples of the use of *will* and *shall* in their literal senses. 'He that *will* not' = he that *is unwilling* ; 'he



*shall* not' = the influence of external circumstances will prevent him; 'when he *will*' = when he *is willing*.

(5) Read the book and you *shall* not find a single mistake.

Here *shall* indicates that the belief of the speaker in the truth of his own prediction is so strong that he will give a guarantee for it. 'You *shall* not find' = 'I *promise* that you will not find,' though the influence of the speaker has really nothing to do with bringing about the result predicted. This *shall* then is used to express *confident prediction*, amounting to a *certainty*. Other examples are—

An election for a disputed borough *shall* (=is sure to) cost the parties £20,000 or £30,000.—*Paley*.

An English woman *shall* be a sort of she-bagman, and she *shall* yet show you this gentle, womanly consciousness.—*Addison*.

The cock's shrill clarion and the echoing horn  
No more *shall* rouse them from their lowly bed.—*Gray*.

**323. Shall and Will in Indirect Report.**—Since there can be no question of politeness when a person says anything about himself, *shall* is not altered to *will* nor *will* to *shall* with the alteration of persons which takes place when a speech is reported indirectly, but they remain what they were in the mouth of the original speaker:—

*Direct*: You say, "I *shall* be punished."

*Indirect*: You say that *you shall* be punished.

*Direct*: You say, "I *will* accept the offer."

*Indirect*: You say that *you will* accept the offer.

*Direct*: He says, "I *shall* be punished."

*Indirect*: He says that *he shall* be punished.

*Direct*: He says, "I *will* accept the offer."

*Indirect*: He says that *he will* accept the offer.

But, in the second person, when the speaker and the subject of the reported speech is the same person, *shall* is often replaced by *will*:—

*Direct*: You say, "I *shall* be punished."

*Indirect*: You say that *you will* be punished.

Hence, 'you will be punished,' in the latter sentence, may express either a prediction or a determination, according as the 'will' is unaccented or accented.

The same rule holds good in case of subordinate clauses, since

the hypothetical element neutralises the notion of compulsion. Thus we say—

He fears that he *shall* die. He will come when he *shall* receive orders.  
The sea will ebb and flow as long as earth *shall* last.

You are uncertain whether you *will* accept the offer.

—where *shall* in the third person denotes mere futurity, and *will* in the second person denotes determination or intention.

**324. Shall and Will in Interrogations.**—When *shall* is used interrogatively, the external influence exercised by the *person speaking*, implied in *shall* when used in assertions, becomes influence exercised by the *person spoken to* in interrogations; so that there is no need to shun the use of *shall* in the second person, out of a polite desire to avoid the suggestion of compulsion. Hence *Shall you?* is used as a simple enquiry as to future action. *Will you?* is an enquiry as to the wishes or intention of the person spoken to, and thus is used in requests. *Shall he?* is an enquiry as to whether external influence, exercised by the person spoken to, will be applied to the person spoken of as *he*. *Will he?* is the interrogative form of *he will*, and is therefore used as a simple enquiry as to his future action. *I will* is an assertion of my own wishes or intention, about which it would be absurd of me to ask for information from any one else; hence *Will I?* is inadmissible, and *Shall I?* is used both for simple enquiry into future events and in requests for permission which depends on the wish of the person spoken to. Thus—

Shall I?	} are enquiries as to future events (or actions)
Shall you?	
Will he?	
	} in relation to the <i>person represented by the pronoun</i> .
Shall I?	} are enquiries as to the wish or intention of
Will you?	
Shall he?	
	} the <i>person spoken to</i> .

Compare the following sentences:—

(1) *Shall you go to the meeting to-day?*

(2) *Will you come to the meeting to-day?* (680, note).

NOTE.—*Will I?* is permissible when it is a partial repetition of some other person's previous utterance: as, 'You will be sure to get the worst of the encounter.' 'O I will, *will I?*'; or 'Will you do this for me?' 'Will I? You know I will.' *Will I?* may also occur in a rhetorical question: as, '*Will I* eat the flesh of bulls?' (*Bible*), i.e. 'I do not wish to eat,' etc. *Will we?*, though rarely found, is an admissible form, since the speaker may reasonably feel doubt concerning the wishes or intention of others included with himself in the word *we*: as, '*Will we* not be content with such things as we have?'

**325. Examples.**—The ordinary uses of *shall* and *will* in interrogations may be seen in the following sentences :—

(1) *Shall I show you my pictures?* = Is it your *wish* that I should show you my pictures? (enquiry as to *wish*).

*Shall I die, if I drink this?* = Is my death *certain to take place*, if I drink this? (enquiry as to future event).

(2) *Shall he be punished?* = Is it your *wish or intention* that he shall be punished?

*Will he be punished?* = Is he *going to be* punished?

(3) *Where shall we dine to-day?* = Where *do you wish* us to dine to-day?

*Where shall we be this time next year?* = Where *are we destined* to be this time next year?

(4) *Shall you be at home this evening?* = *Are you sure* to be at home this evening?

*Will you be at home this evening?* = *Do you promise* to be at home this evening?

(5) *What shall you do in case of failure?* = *What are you sure* to do in case of failure?

*What will you do in case of failure?* = *What is it your intention* to do in case of failure?

(6) *Who shall say me nay?*—is a challenge.

*Who will say me nay?*—is an appeal.

### SHOULD AND WOULD.

**326.** The original force of *obligation* or *duty* in *should*, and of *volition* or *desire*—hence *intention*, *determination*—in *would* is retained in all three persons when *should* and *would* are used in sentences expressing a simple, unconditional assertion :—

I (you, he) *should* work hard in lesson time = I (you, he) *ought to work* hard in lesson time.

I (you, he) *would* work hard in spite of the heat = I (you, he) *was (were) determined* to work hard in spite of the heat.

**327.** In (1) sentences containing subordinate clauses and (2) conditional sentences, where *shall* and *will* are used after a present or a future tense, *should* and *would* are used after a past tense :—

(1) I *know* that I *shall* die.  
I *knew* that I *should* die.

I *know* that you (or he) *will* die.  
I *knew* that you (or he) *would* die.

*Do you think* that you *shall* go? *Do you think* that he *will* die?  
*Did you think* that you *should* go? *Did you think* that he *would* die?

*I will inform* you when the next meeting *will* take place.  
*I informed* you when the next meeting *would* take place.

There *will* be an order in the Gazette that no new works *shall* be begun.

There *was* an order in the Gazette that no new works *should* be begun.

(2) If he *comes*, I *shall* go } simple statement of future action.  
 If he *came*, I *should* go }

If he *comes*, I *will* go } statement of intention.  
 If he *came*, I *would* go }

If he *comes*, you (or he) *will* go } statement of future action.  
 If he *came*, you (or he) *would* go }

If he *comes*, you (or he) *shall* go } statement of obligation.  
 If he *came*, you (or he) *should* go }

328. In interrogative conditional sentences, *should* and *would* are used in the different persons according to the rules given for *shall* and *will* used interrogatively :—

If he *comes*, *shall* I go? } enquiry as to future action or  
 If he *came*, *should* I go? } enquiry as to the wishes of  
 the person addressed.

If he *comes*, *shall* you go? } enquiry as to future action.  
 If he *came*, *should* you go? }

If he *comes*, *will* you go? } enquiry as to intention.  
 If he *came*, *would* you go? }

If he *comes*, *will* he go? } enquiry as to future action.  
 If he *came*, *would* he go? }

If he *comes*, *shall* he go? } enquiry as to the wishes of the  
 If he *came*, *should* he go? } person addressed.

329. *Special uses of should and would* :—

(1) The old man *would* often recount his adventures.

Here '*would* recount' = (originally) *wished* (or *was determined*) to recount, and hence *was in the habit* of recounting. Cf. 322, (2).

(2) A simple child—

What *should* it know of death?—*Wordsworth*.

Here '*What should* it know?' = What *ought* it to know? and hence, What *could* it be expected to know?

(3) He did not know that he *should* die.

Here '*should* die' = *was certain to* die.

- (4) *Should I give you* } a little more ?  
*Would you give me* }

These forms, with a suppressed condition ('if you wished,' 'if I were to ask you'), are less direct and therefore more courteous than 'Shall I give you a little more?' or 'Will you give me a little more?'

- (5) *Would you like me to go with you ?*

This form, with a suppressed condition ('if I should be willing'), is ordinarily used in colloquial language, though '*Should you like ?*' (which is also conditional) is the more correct form ; since *Would you ?*, which, strictly speaking, is an enquiry as to *wish*, ought not to be used with *like*, which also denotes *wish*.

- (6) 'Those who saw the Winter Exhibition of the Royal Academy *would* notice a portrait of Dr. Adam.'

Here *would* notice=*most probably noticed* ; it expresses less absolute certainty than *noticed*.

**330. Confusion of 'should' and 'would.'**—*Should* and *would* are sometimes confused even by good writers. The following are miscellaneous examples of such confusion :—

- (1) I *would* like to ask you a question. (For *would* write *should*, since 'I would like' = 'I should like to like.' For the same reason 'I *would* be glad to see you,' 'I *would* be happy to meet him' are wrong.)

- (2) What *would* we do, if you left us ? (For *would* write *should*, since the enquiry is not about wish but merely about future action.)

- (3) He hoped that nothing *should* happen to prevent it. (For *should* write *would*, since simple futurity is indicated.)

- (4) He promised that nothing *would* prevent it. (For *would* write *should*, since the speaker's declaration is 'Nothing *shall* prevent it.')

- (5) You expected that you *should* obtain the appointment. (For *should* write *would*, since simple futurity is indicated.)

- (6) He said that I *would* rue the day when I acted thus. (For *would* write *should*, since the speaker threatens—'You *shall* rue the day.')

#### GRAMMATICAL FUNCTION OF *SHALL*, *WILL*, *SHOULD*, *WOULD*.

**331.** Observe that when *shall*, *will*, *should*, *would* express mere futurity, they are Auxiliary verbs ; but that when they express promises, threats, or commands, they are not Auxiliary verbs but Principal or Notional verbs. Thus in 'He *will* go' (with *will* unemphasised) *will* expresses futurity and is an Auxiliary verb ; but in 'He *shall* go' *shall* expresses compulsion and is a Principal verb (Present tense) with the infinitive *go* for its object or complement. Similarly with *should* in 'You *should* (=ought to) not make personal remarks.' The test in each instance is whether *shall*, *will*, etc., have a meaning of their own. Thus in 'I *shall* go' *shall* has no meaning ; it merely marks the future tense whereas in 'You *shall* go' *shall* has the meaning of compulsion.

## CHAPTER V.

### PARSING.

332. Every part of speech in a sentence bears a grammatical relation to some other part of speech in the sentence. The nature of this relation is a guide to discovering what part of speech a word in a sentence is, and determines its form (if it is capable of inflexion).

333. **Parsing** is a grammatical description of a word (or group of words) in a sentence, showing—

- (a) What part of speech it is and of what kind.
- (b) The name of its form (if it is capable of inflexion).
- (c) Its relation to some other part of speech in the sentence.

Thus, in parsing the word *man* in the sentence '*Man is the lord of Creation,*' we state—

- (a) that it is a *noun*, of the kind *common, class* (110, 113);
- (b) that it is of the *masculine* gender, *singular* number, *nominative case*;
- (c) that it is *subject* of the verb '*is.*'

It is clear that the most important of these points is (c), the relation that *man* bears to *is*; for the knowledge that *man* is subject to the verb *is* enables us to state (a) that *man* is a noun, and (b) that it is of the *singular* number, *nominative* case.

Hence in parsing we must enquire first what (c) relation the word to be parsed bears to some other member (or members) of the sentence. That being discovered, the other points, (a) what part of speech it is, and (b) its form, may be readily determined.

Below is given a list of the various relations in which the parts of speech stand in a sentence and the forms they assume, when inflected, to denote these relations.

## NOUNS AND PRONOUNS.

**334. The Nominative Case is used—**

- (1) As Subject of a verb :—  
The *shepherd* feeds his flock. *He* is gone.
- (2) In Apposition to the subject of the verb :—  
Wellington, the *hero* of Waterloo, died in 1852.
- (3) As Subjective Complement of a verb [10, (3)] :—  
*He* was elected *chairman*.
- (4) In the Absolute construction (137) :—  
The *rebels* being routed, peace was restored.
- (5) Before the infinitive in Exclamations [231, (4)] :  
*He* to desert me !

**335. The Direct Objective (or Accusative) Case is used—**

- (1) As Direct Object of a verb :—  
The wolf killed the *lamb*. What ails *him* ?
- (2) In Apposition to another object :—  
He praised Ram, the head *boy* of the class.
- (3) An Object of an intransitive verb and its complement  
(219) :—  
He stared *me* in the face.
- (4) As Objective Complement of a verb [10, (3)] :—  
The army made him its *leader*.
- (5) As Cognate Object (220) :—  
He dreamt a *dream*.
- (6) As Retained Direct Object of a transitive verb in the  
passive voice (223) :—  
He was taught *Sanskrit* by a Pundit.
- (7) As Object of a preposition or a prepositional phrase  
(281).  
This is the land of my *birth*. He went aboard the *ship*.
- (8) As Adverbial Objective (139) :—  
The house stands twenty *feet* back from the road.  
When you come our *way*, call and see *us*.
- (9) In Exclamations :—  
Unhappy *me* ! Oh dear *me* !  
Poor *fellow* ! what a fate was *his* !

**336. The Indirect Objective (or Dative) Case is used—**

- (1) As Indirect Object (222) of a verb :—

I granted the *man* leave. His courage failed *him*.

- (2) As Retained Indirect Object (223) of a verb in the passive voice :—

Leave was granted the *man* by me.

- (3) As Dative of Interest (222, note 1) :—

Saddle *me* the ass.—*Bible*.

- (4) As Reflexive Dative (222, note 2) :—

They sat *them* down upon the yellow sands.—*Tennyson*.

- (5) With certain impersonal verbs (260) :—

*Methinks* it is an easy leap. So please your *Majesty*.

- (6) In certain interjectional phrases (301) :—

Ah *me* ! Woe is *me* ! Alas the *day* !

- (7) After
- like*
- ,
- unlike*
- ,
- nigh*
- ,
- near*
- ,
- next*
- , whether used as adjectives or adverbs :—

The child is like (adj.) his *father*.

No man like (adv.) *him* the horn could sound.—*Wordsworth*.

He is next *me* in the class.

**337. The Possessive (or Genitive) Case is used—**

- (1) Adjectivally :—

This is *John's* book. I object to *Ram's* going on leave.

- (2) As Complement of a verb :—

This book is *John's*.

**338. The Vocative Case is used as the Case of Address :—**

*Soldiers* ! follow your commander.

Where is your father, my *boy* ?

**ADJECTIVES.****339. Adjectives may be used—**

- (1) To qualify a noun or a pronoun, attributively or predicatively (147) :—

The *good* shepherd. The shepherd is *good*.

O *miserable* me ! I am *miserable*.

- (2) As Subjective or Objective Complement of a verb

(1)] :—

I feel very *cold*.

He struck the man *dead*.



## VERBS.

340. The Infinitive Mood may be used as—(a) the Simple Infinitive (231), (b) the Gerundial Infinitive (232).

(a) The *Simple Infinitive* may be used—

(1) As a noun; it is then the subject of a verb, or the object of a verb or of a preposition :—

*To live* here is pleasant.

I like *to go* to school. He was taught *to swim*.

He did nothing but *laugh*. Sooner than *submit*, he resigned.

(2) As Complement of a verb or a verbal noun of incomplete predication [10, (5)], or of a conjunctive adverb :—

He tried *to deceive* me. I punished him for trying *to deceive* me.

I do not know when *to start* or where *to go*.

(3) Absolutely :—

Thus *to rob* me of my child !—*Goldsmith*.

(b) The *Gerundial Infinitive* may be used—

(1) As an adverb :—

I went there *to see* him. This is *hard to bear*.

(2) As an adjective :—

He has books *to sell*.

(3) Absolutely :—

The property was divided between them, Ram *to have one-third*

(4) Parenthetically :—

*To speak* plainly, he is a rogue.

341. Participles may be used—

(1) Attributively with a noun or a pronoun :—

The wind scattered the *gathering* clouds.

Have you any pens ?—Only some *broken ones*.

(2) As Complement of a verb [10, (2)] :—

The sky looks *threatening*

The walk made him *tired*.

(3) Absolutely (137) :—

Let us start, you *going* first.

There were 300 souls on board, all (*being*) *lost*.

(4) Impersonally (284), *note* :—

*Talking* of heat, was it not hot yesterday ?

(5) As nouns [133, (4), *note*] :—

Our *surroundings* are pleasant.

342. The Indicative, Imperative, and Subjunctive Moods are the moods of the Finite verb (4). In giving the *relation* of a verb in one of these moods, it is sufficient to state what it has for its Subject.

### ADVERBS.

343. Adverbs (261) may be used to modify—

A verb or a verbal noun :—

He ran *quickly*.

Running *quickly* is hard work.

(2) An adjective :—

You are *very* kind.

(3) An adverb :—

Walk *quite* slowly.

(4) A preposition :—

The train is *nearly* through the tunnel.

(5) A conjunction :—

He went away *long* before I came.

(6) A sentence :—

*Clearly* this is true.

**NOTE.**—Adverbs are sometimes apparently used as adjectives (262).

Adverbs may also be used—

(7) As Complement of a verb [10, (6)] :—

Do you feel *better* to-day? This is *so*.

### PREPOSITIONS.

344. Prepositions are used—

(1) To govern nouns or pronouns :—

The teacher of the class gave a prize *to* each of the boys.

(2) To form group-verbs (217) :—

He is *not to* be trifled *with*.

### CONJUNCTIONS.

345. Conjunctions are used to couple words, phrases or sentences :—

The Ganges *and* the Jumna unite at Allahabad.

That was the gift of a poor *but* honest man.

I will go, *if* you will stay.

**346.** Having first discovered in which of the above relations the word to be parsed stands in the sentence, we must next proceed to determine what part of speech it is ; and since many parts of speech are sub-divided into classes, what particular class it belongs to. Lastly, unless the word be a preposition or a conjunction, which are not capable of inflexion, we must ascertain the particulars of its form.

The following Parsing Scheme includes all the requisite particulars to be stated as to *class* and *form* for the different parts of speech ; the *relation*, though it should be ascertained first, is generally stated last.

#### PARSING SCHEME.

##### **347. Noun.**

(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :

*Class* : Common (Class, Collective, Material), Proper, or Abstract.

(b) FORM :

*Gender, Number, Case.*

(c) RELATION (334-338).

##### **348. Adjective.**

(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :

(b) FORM (if capable of inflexion) :

*Degree* : Positive, Comparative, or Superlative.

(c) RELATION (339).

##### **349. Pronoun.**

(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :

*Class* : Substantive or Adjective ; and whether Personal, Reflexive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, Relative, Conjunctive, Indefinite, or Distributive (173).

If Substantive :—

(b) FORM :

*Person, Gender, Number, Case.*

(c) RELATION (334-338).

NOTE.—In parsing a Relative Pronoun state also what is its antecedent.

If Adjective :—

(b) FORM :

*Person, Gender, Number.*

(c) RELATION (339).

**350. Verb.****I.—Infinitive.****(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :**

*Class* : { (1) Transitive, Intransitive, or Auxiliary.  
 (2) Simple or Gerundial.

**(b) FORM :**

*Voice, Tense.*

**(c) RELATION (340).****II.—Participle.****(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :**

*Class* : Transitive, Intransitive, or Auxiliary.

**(b) FORM :**

*Voice, Tense.*

**(c) RELATION (341).****III.—Indicative, Imperative, or Subjunctive.****(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :**

*Class* : Transitive, Intransitive, or Auxiliary

**(b) FORM :**

*Voice, Mood, Tense, Number, Person.*

**(c) RELATION (342) :**

Having for Subject what noun or pronoun.

**351. Verbal Noun.****(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :**

*Class* : Transitive or Intransitive.

**(b) FORM :**

*Voice, Number, Case.*

**(c) RELATION (334-338).**

Having for Object [238, (2)] what noun or pronoun.

**352. Adverb.****(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :**

*Class* : Independent, Relative, or Conjunctive.

**(b) FORM (if capable of inflexion) :**

*Degree* : Positive, Comparative, or Superlative.

**(c) RELATION (343).****353. Preposition.****(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH.****(b) RELATION (344) :**

Having for Object what noun or pronoun.

**354. Conjunction.**

(a) WHAT PART OF SPEECH :

*Class* : Co-ordinative or Subordinative.

(b) RELATION (345) :

Joining together what words, phrases, or sentences.

**THE SAME WORD USED IN DIFFERENT RELATIONS.**

**355. Form and Relation.**—A word may have various senses or uses, so that it is sometimes difficult to determine its relation.

(a) The same word may be a noun in one sentence and an adjective or a verb in another. Thus the word *light* is a noun in 'The *light* of the moon is clear'; an adjective in 'This room is very *light*'; and a verb in '*Light* the lamp.'

(b) A word that by origin is one part of speech may be used as another part of speech. Thus a noun may be used as an adjective or a verb. *Iron*, by origin a noun, is used as an adjective in 'Break it with an *iron* hammer'; and it is used as a verb in 'He told the washerwoman to *iron* the cloth.'

In all cases where a word shows by its *form* that it is one part of speech while in *use* or relation it is a different part of speech, it should be parsed according to its *use*, the particulars of its *form* being also stated. Thus in 'He plunged into the *thickest* of the fight'—

*Thickest* is in *form* an adjective of the superlative degree, and in *use* is a noun, common, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *into*.

**356. Nouns used as Adjectives.**—Thus *garden* is—(a) a Noun : 'Come into the *garden*.'(b) a Noun used as an Adjective : 'Sit on this *garden* seat.'

So with 'A *gold* ring,' 'the *summer* holidays,' 'on *Monday* morning,' '*drinking* water,' etc. (144).

**357. Prepositions used as Adverbs.**—Thus *above* is—(a) a Preposition : 'Ram was *above* Sham in the class.'(b) a Preposition used as an Adverb : 'Look *above* for consolation.'

So with *abroad*, *about*, *across*, *along*, *around*, *behind*, *below*, *beneath*, *between*, *beyond*, *down*, *in*, *off*, *on*, *over*, *round*, *to*, *under*, *underneath*, *up*, *within*, *without*.

**358. Prepositions used as Conjunctions.**—Thus *for* (see 297) is—

- (a) a Preposition : 'I will do it *for* him.'
- (b) a Preposition used as a Conjunction : 'I will do it, *for* I like him.'

**359. Prepositions used as both Adverbs and Conjunctions.**—Thus *before* is—

- (a) a Preposition : 'The prisoner was brought *before* the judge.'
- (b) a Preposition used as an Adverb : 'Look *before* and behind.'
- (c) a Preposition used as a Conjunction : 'See me *before* you go.'

So with *after* and *since*.

**360. Adverbs used as Conjunctions.**—Thus *however* is—

- (a) an Adverb : '*However* quick you are, you will not be in time.'
- (b) an Adverb used as a Conjunction : 'You are quick ; *however*, you will not be in time.'

So with *still* and *nevertheless*.

#### WORDS OF NUMBER, QUANTITY, AND AMOUNT.

**361. Any** is used as—

- (a) an Adjective : 'Have you *any* rice ?' 'Any pen will do.'
- (b) an Independent Adverb : 'Are you *any* better to-day ?'
- (c) a Substantive Pronoun : '*Any* of these pens will do.'

**362. Enough** (203) is used as—

- (a) an Adjective : 'This paper is not *enough* for the whole class.'
- (b) an Independent Adverb : 'The rice is not boiled *enough*.' 'He was kind *enough* to invite me.'
- (c) a Substantive Pronoun : '*Enough* has been done.' 'I have had *enough* of this folly.'

**363. Little** is used as—

- (a) an Adjective : 'A *little* child came with her.'
- (b) an Independent Adverb : 'He was *little* hurt.'
- (c) a Substantive Pronoun : 'It is but *little* that I ask.'
- (d) a Noun : 'Give me a *little* of your valuable assistance.' 'I should like a *little* (of) sugar.' 'Wait a *little*' (of time).

**364. Few** (205) is used as—

- (a) an Adjective : 'There were *few* boys in the class.'
- (b) a Substantive Pronoun : '*Few* shall part where many meet.'
- (c) a Noun : 'There were a *few* (of) boys in the class.'

**365. Many** (205) is used as—

- (a) an Adjective : '*Many* soldiers were killed.' 'I confess the *many* faults that I have committed.' '*Many* a time have I seen him.'
- (b) a Substantive Pronoun : 'Few shall part where *many* meet.'
- (c) a Noun : 'A great *many* (of) mistakes were made.'

**366. Much is used as—**

- (a) an Adjective : 'It gives me *much* pleasure.'
- (b) an Independent Adverb : 'I am so (=very) *much* better to-day.'
- (c) a Substantive Pronoun : 'I do not ask *much* of you.'
- (d) a Noun : 'I can tell you only this *much*.'

**367. More is used as—**

- (a) an Independent Adverb : 'Ram is *more* careful than his brother.'
- 'I saw him no *more*.'
- (b) an Adjective : '*More* soldiers than officers were killed.'
- (c) a Substantive Pronoun : 'Give me health ; I ask no *more*.'

**368. Some is used as—**

- (a) an Adjective : '*Some* people are always complaining.'
- (b) an Independent Adverb : '*Some* twenty boys were absent' (204).
- (c) a Substantive Pronoun : '*Some* said one thing, *some* another.'
- 'Give me *some* of your pens.'

**369. One (202) is used as—**

- (a) an Adjective : 'Only *one* class was dismissed.' 'One day I went out for a walk.'
- (b) a Substantive Pronoun : 'Give me *one* of your pens.' 'He likes an old book—I like a new *one* (or, new *ones*).'  
'*One* trusts *one's* friends.' 'One in a certain place testifieth' (Bible). 'There I met *one* Mr. Robinson.'

**370. Once is used as—**

- (a) an Independent Adverb : 'We can die only *once*.' 'I was *once* a boy like you.' 'Disease attacked his *once* hardy constitution.'
- (b) a Subordinative Conjunction : 'A great future awaits America *once* (=as soon as) it is free from corruption.'
- (c) a Noun : 'I will allow it for this *once*' (=one time). 'Go at *once*.'

**371. Half is used as—**

- (a) an Adjective : 'To-day is a *half* holiday.'
- (b) an Independent Adverb : 'He was *half* drowned.'
- (c) a Noun : 'The *half* of my goods I give to the poor' (Bible). 'He walked *half* (of) a mile.'

NOTE.—*Dozen, score, hundred, etc.*, are similarly used : 'a dozen (of) men,' 'a score (of) sheep,' 'a hundred (of) years.'

**372. None is used as—**

- (a) a Substantive Pronoun : 'There are *none* so blind as those who will not see.' 'Give me some sugar.—There is *none*.' 'Give me some books.—There are *none*.'
- (b) an Independent Adverb : 'He is *none* the happier for all his wealth.'

NOTE.—*None* (=no one) is properly only singular : '*None* but the brave *deserves* the fair' ; but it is now usually plural, with *no one* for its singular : 'All were saved ; there are *none* missing.'—'All were saved ; there is *no one* missing.'

**373. No is used as—**

- (a) an Adjective : 'No soldier should be a coward.' 'I am *no* orator.'
- (b) an Independent Adverb : 'I saw him *no* more.' 'The patient is *no* better to-day.'

**374. Only is used as—**

- (a) an Independent Adverb : 'He *only* laughed at my complaints.'
- (b) an Adjective : 'He is an *only* son.'
- (c) a Co-ordinative Conjunction : 'I would pardon him, *only* (=but) it is against the law.'

**375. Both is used as—**

- (a) an Adjective : 'He examined *both* classes.'
- (b) a Substantive pronoun : 'He examined *both* (of) the classes.' 'I asked one, but *both* came.'
- (c) a Co-ordinative Conjunction : 'You cannot *both* eat and have your cake.'

**THE WORDS 'AS,' 'THAT,' 'WHAT,' 'HOW,' 'WHY,' 'SO,' 'SUCH,' 'ELSE,' 'SINCE,' 'NEXT.'**

**376. As is used as—**

- (a) a Subordinative Conjunction : '*As* (=since) it is fine, I shall go out.' 'Fine *as* (=though) it is, I shall not go out.'
- (b) a Conjunctive Adverb : 'This is not so big *as* that (is).' '*As* to that (=as far as relates to that), I cannot decide at present.' 'What are your intentions *as* (it) regards me ?'
- (c) a Relative Pronoun : 'You are wrong, *as* (=which) was to be expected.' 'This is the same horse *as* I rode yesterday.' 'The noise was such *as* I never heard before.'
- (d) an Independent Adverb : 'I will go *as* (=so) soon as possible.'

**377. That is used as—**

- (a) A Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun : 'Who is *that* man ?'
- (b) a Demonstrative Substantive Pronoun : 'Who told you *that* ?'
- (c) a Relative Pronoun : 'He is the man *that* I saw.'
- (d) a Subordinative Conjunction : 'Tell them *that* I will come.' 'Not *that* (=because) I loved Cæsar less.' 'I speak loud *that* (=in order that) you may hear.'

**378. What is used as—**

- (a) an Interrogative Adjective Pronoun : 'What time is it ?'
- (b) an Interrogative Substantive Pronoun : 'What did you say ?'
- (c) a Relative Substantive Pronoun : 'What I have written I have written.'
- (d) a Relative Adjective Pronoun : 'Tell me *what* books you want.'
- (e) an Indefinite Substantive Pronoun : 'I tell you *what* (=something) : I will accept your offer on one condition.'
- (f) an Adverb : 'What (=partly, 196) with one thing and *what* with another.'
- (g) a Subordinative Conjunction : 'I do not doubt but *what* (=that, p. 264, foot-note) you are right.'
- (h) an Interjection : 'What ! have you no better reason than this ?'



## 379. How is used as—

- (a) an Independent Interrogative Adverb : ' *How* do you do ? '
- (b) a Dependent Conjunctive Adverb : ' Tell me *how* it is made. '
- (c) a Noun : ' Somehow or other (*how*) he escaped. '

NOTE.—*Somehow* (and *somewhere*) may be regarded as one word and parsed as an adverb.

## 380. Why is used as—

- (a) an Independent Interrogative Adverb : ' *Why* did you do it ? '
- (b) a Dependent Relative Adverb : ' Tell me the reason *why* you do it. '
- (c) a Dependent Conjunctive Adverb : ' Tell me *why* you did it. '
- (d) a Noun : ' Tell me the *why* and the wherefore. '
- (e) an Interjection : ' *Why*, how now, Claudio ? ' (*Shakspeare*).

## 381. So is used as—

- (a) an Independent Adverb : ' As you treat me, *so* I treat you. '
- (b) a Co-ordinative Conjunction : ' He is gone, *so* I shall go too. '
- (c) a Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun : ' That you are tall is certain ; that you are strong is no less *so* ' (= certain).
- (d) a Demonstrative Substantive Pronoun : ' You are my friend, and will, I hope, always be *so* ' (= my friend).

## 382. Such is used as—

- (a) an Adjective : ' *Such* birds are rare. ' ' *Such* a bird is rare. ' ' *Such* is life. '
- (b) a Demonstrative Adjective Pronoun : ' He is guilty and must be punished as *such* ' (= guilty).
- (c) a Demonstrative Substantive Pronoun : ' I bring you peace and happiness ; for *such* (= peace and happiness) he sent. '

## 383. Else is used as—

- (a) an Independent Adverb : ' You cannot buy this anywhere *else* ' (= besides).
- (b) a Subordinative Conjunction : ' I killed the snake, *else* (= otherwise) it would have bitten me. '
- (c) an Adjective : ' I have nothing *else* (= no other thing) to say. '

## 384. Since is used as—

- (a) a Preposition : ' I have not seen him *since* last year. '
- (b) an Independent Adverb : ' We parted at the station, and I have not seen him *since*. '
- (c) a Subordinative Conjunction : ' *Since* you say so, it must be true. '

## 385. Next is used as—

- (a) an Adjective : ' I shall go by the *next* train. '
- (b) an Independent Adverb : ' You fire first ; I will fire *next*. '
- (c) a Preposition : ' I live *next* the post office. '

## 386. EXAMPLES OF PARSING.

## (1) 'The more, the merrier.'

*The* is in *form* a pronoun, adjective, demonstrative, neuter gender, singular number, instrumental case (271); in *use* it is an adverb modifying the adjective *more*.

*More* is an adjective, comparative degree, qualifying a noun (*persons*) understood.

*Merrier* is a verb, comparative degree, qualifying a pronoun (*they*) understood.

The sentence expressed in full would be : 'The more persons there are, the merrier they are.'

## (2) 'The more you look, the surer you will be to find it.'

*More* is an adverb, comparative degree, modifying the verb *look*.

*To find* is a verb, gerundial infinitive, transitive, active voice, imperfect momentary tense, used as an adverb to qualify the adjective *surer*.

## (3) 'Where do you come from?'

*Where* is in *form* an adverb; in *use* it is a noun, common, class, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *from*.

## (4) 'I go there every day, or seven times a week.'

*Day* is a noun, common, class, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being an adverbial objective expressing Point of Time [139, (b)].

*Times* is a noun, common, class, neuter gender, plural number, objective case, being an adverbial objective denoting Point of Time.

*Week* is a noun, common, class, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *a* (= on, 282).

## (5) 'To reign is worth ambition.'

*To reign* is in *form* a verb, intransitive, active voice, simple infinitive mood, imperfect momentary tense; in *use* it is a noun, being subject of the verb *is*.

*Ambition* is a noun, abstract, neuter gender, singular number, objective case, being an adverbial objective denoting *Value* [139, (c)].

## (6) 'His courage failed him in the emergency.'

*Him* is a pronoun, substantive, personal, third person, masculine gender, singular number, indirect objective case, being the indirect object of the verb *failed* (222, note 1).

## (7) 'Were it not for this, I should go to see him, as I want to go very much.'

*Were* is a verb, intransitive, subjunctive mood, imperfect momentary tense, singular number, third person, having for its subject the pronoun *'t* [491, (a)].

*To see* is a verb, transitive, active voice, gerundial infinitive mood, imperfect momentary tense, used as an adverb qualifying the verb *should go*.

*To go* is a verb, intransitive, active voice, simple infinitive mood, imperfect momentary tense, used as a noun, being object of the verb *want*.

(8) 'The *police* were punished for *letting* the *accused* go.'

*Police* is a noun, common, class, common gender, singular number in *form* (but, being collective, it is plural in *use*), nominative case, being subject of the verb *were punished*.

*Were punished* is a verb, transitive, passive voice, indicative mood, past imperfect momentary tense, plural number, third person, having for its subject the noun *police*.

*Letting* is a verbal noun, transitive, active voice, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *for*, and having for its object the noun *person* understood.

*Accused* is a verb, transitive, passive voice, perfect participle, qualifying a noun (*person*) understood.

*Go* is a verb, intransitive, active voice, simple infinitive mood, imperfect momentary tense, used as complement of the verbal noun *letting*.

(9) 'Hunting the fox is very *exciting*.'

*Hunting* is a verbal noun, transitive, active voice, singular number, nominative case, being subject of the verb *is*, and having for its object the noun *fox* [238, (2)].

*Exciting* is a verb, transitive, active voice, imperfect participle, being used as complement of the verb *is* [341, (2)].

(10) 'This is *no laughing* matter.'

*No* is an adjective qualifying the noun *matter*.

*Laughing* is in *form* a verbal noun; in *use* it is an adjective, qualifying the noun *matter*.

(11) 'On *going* into the room, I saw him.'

*Going* is a verbal noun, intransitive, active voice, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *on*.

(12) 'While *going* into the room, I saw him.'

*Going* is a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperfect participle, qualifying the pronoun *I*.

NOTE.—*While* is a conjunction irregularly used with the participle, owing to a confusion between the two constructions, '*Going* into the room' and '*While I was going* into the room.'

(13) '*Considering* your age, you have made great progress.'

*Considering* is a verb, transitive, active voice, imperfect participle, used impersonally; or—

*Considering* is in *form* a verb, transitive, active voice, imperfect participle; in *use* it is a preposition having as its object the noun *age* (283).

(14) 'Generally *speaking*, summer is preferable to winter.'

*Speaking* is a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperfect participle, used impersonally; or—

*Speaking* is in *form* a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperfect participle; in *use* it forms with '*generally*' an adverbial phrase, qualifying the sentence '*summer is preferable to winter*' (284, *note*).

(15) ' *There* was a man *there*.'

*There* (1) is an independent indefinite adverb, used to introduce the subject *man* (491, note).

*There* (2) is an independent adverb of place, used as subjective complement of the verb *was* [10, (6)].

(16) ' He feels *cold*.'

*Cold* is an adjective, positive degree, used predicatively as subjective complement of the verb *feels* [10, (1)].

(17) ' I count upon your *coming* to see me.'

*Coming* is a verbal noun, intransitive, active voice, singular number, objective case, being object of the preposition *upon* (236).

(18) ' I was glad to find you *coming* to see me.'

*Coming* is a verb, intransitive, active voice, imperfect participle, qualifying the pronoun *you*.

(19) ' Do not trifle *with* me ; I will not be trifled *with*.'

*With* (1) is a preposition, having for its object the pronoun *me*.

*With* (2) is an adverb, independent, qualifying the verb *trifled* (217, note 1).

(20) ' I travel *outside* the tramcar ; those who travel *outside* are called *outside* passengers.'

*Outside* (1) is a compound preposition, having for its object the noun *tramcar* (281).

*Outside* (2) is an independent adverb, modifying the verb *travel*.

*Outside* (3) is apparently an adjective, qualifying the noun *passengers* ; it is really an adverb, modifying the participle *travelling* understood after it (276).

(21) ' He is stronger *than* his brother ' (is strong).

*Than* is a subordinative conjunction joining the subordinate clause ' his brother is strong ' to the principal clause ' he is stronger.'

(22) ' I cannot do less *than* accept your offer.'

*Than* is a preposition having for its object the simple infinitive *accept* [299, 231 (3)].

(23) ' He looked *me* in the face.'

*Me* is a pronoun, substantive, personal, third person, singular number, objective case, being object of the verb and its complement, *looked in the face* (219).

## CHAPTER VI.

### IDIOM.

**387. Idiom** denotes any special use of a word or words that is peculiar to a language. The subject of this and the two following chapters is the study of idiom in connexion with the phraseology rather than with the grammar of English.

**388. Metaphor in Idioms.**—Metaphor enters largely into idiomatic phraseology, and frequently the idiom consists in the use of a word or words in a metaphorical sense. Thus, when we tell a person to *hold his tongue*, we do not mean that he should literally take hold of his tongue; it is a figurative way of telling him to *be silent*. Similarly, to say that a man is *made of money* is a figurative way of saying that he is *immensely rich*; and when we say that an incident *speaks volumes*, we say metaphorically that it *conveys much information*. Here two methods of study may be recommended:—

(1) Trace the special metaphorical use of a word or expression up to the literal or the general use of the word. Thus, ‘to drive a sword *home*’ means to drive it in up to the hilt, as when it is driven fully into its home, the scabbard.

(2) Collect and classify the various metaphorical meanings in which the same word is used in different expressions. Take, for instance, the word *world*, which bears the general meaning of ‘the earth.’ We find it used in the following expressions:—

- (1) The way of the *world*.
- (2) The *world*, the flesh, and the devil.
- (3) To begin the *world* afresh.
- (4) A *world* of good.

*World* means in (1), ‘mankind, human society’; in (2), ‘irreligion’; in (3), ‘course of life’; and in (4), ‘a very large quantity.’ Of additional expressions—‘a man of the *world*,’ ‘as

*the world goes* ' belong to (1) ; ' *to get on in the world* ' belongs to (3) ; ' *I would not do it for the world,* ' ' *for all the world like so and so,* ' belong to (4).

389. The Translation of English Idioms into a vernacular, or the reverse process, forms an excellent exercise in composition. In regard to translating from one language into another the following hints may be given :—

(1) Before beginning your translation, carefully *read through the whole passage*. In order to translate, you must understand ; and very often words or phrases or sentences in one part of the passage will give you a clue to the meaning of other parts. In the case of a difficult word or expression, consider its relation to the rest of the sentence in which it occurs—in other words, *use the context* to help you to decide the meaning of such words or expressions.

(2) Do your best to give your translation *the same general tone* that marks the original text. Follow as far as possible its style and diction. If the style of the original, for instance, is terse and pithy, or lively and fluent, let your translation be terse and pithy, or lively and fluent, in accordance with it.

(3) The translation should be *faithful*, that is, it should truly and exactly represent the meaning of the original. Do not omit or insert anything, but keep close to your text ; and do not slur over a difficulty. At the same time, do not attempt a *word for word* translation. Give the *sense* of each sentence as it comes, without necessarily adhering to the forms of expression or the individual words of which it is composed.

(4) In translating *idioms*, be careful *not to translate literally*,<sup>1</sup> but to render the idiomatic word or phrase of the one language by the *corresponding* idiomatic word or phrase of the other. Thus, to indicate that a bench is full, we say in Bengali *স্থান নাহি*. Translate this not by 'There is no *place*,' but by 'There is no *room*,' since 'room' is the English word which, in this sentence, idiomatically corresponds to the Bengali word *স্থান*. It is the same with sentences : thus, *অনেক কাল পরে তোমাকে দেখিতেছি* is, literally translated, 'After a long time I am seeing you' ; but the true idiomatic translation is 'I have not seen you for a long time.' Here again, make it your aim to reproduce the *sense* of the idiom as a whole.

<sup>1</sup> The instances where this can be done are rare

(5) The translation of *figurative language* requires caution. A metaphor may sometimes be rendered literally, but, as a rule, it is best to convey its meaning in *simple language*. Thus, 'This report *bristles with errors*' may be expressed in the translation by 'This report *is full of errors*,' and 'He waded to the throne through a sea of blood' by 'He obtained the throne by the slaughter of all his opponents.'

(6) In regard to *order of words* and *sentence-structure* be careful to follow the genius or idiom of the language into which you translate. For example, in a Bengali sentence, as a rule, the verb comes last; whereas it is placed at or near the beginning of an English sentence. Thus the Bengali এই বইখানি তাঁহাকে দিও, expressed in English in the same order of words, is 'This book him give'; but the true English order is 'Give him this book.'

(7) Remember, finally, that the prime object of a translation is to reproduce the *facts* and *ideas* of the original in such a form as will make them *clear* to the reader of the translation.

**390. Fixed Character of Idiom.**—When an idiomatic expression is met with, the exact words of which it is composed should be carefully noted, since, as a general rule, no other word or words can be substituted without spoiling the idiomatic character of the expression altogether. Thus, we say a thing is '*pulled in* (or *to*) *pieces*,' never '*drawn in pieces*.' Such an idiom as 'How do you do?' admits of very little variation: we could not say, 'How *did* you do yesterday?' 'A *clap* of thunder' (or a *thunder-clap*) is correct, but not 'the thunder *was clapping*.' A writer speaks of 'killing two birds *in one shot*'; '*at one shot*' would have been correct English, but he has missed the true phrase, namely, 'To kill two birds *with one stone*.' Sometimes an entire sentence is thus dealt with, as when we find 'he cuts off from his view' for 'he loses sight of.' Examples:—

CORRECT	INCORRECT
Bathed in tears (of mourners)	washed in tears
To kick <i>against</i> the pricks (of useless opposition)	to kick <i>at</i> the pricks
To jump <i>to</i> a conclusion (hastily conclude)	to jump <i>at</i> a conclusion <sup>1</sup>
To carry a thing to extremes	to put a thing to extremes
The matter trembled in the balance (was at a crisis)	the matter shook in the balance

---

<sup>1</sup> But 'To jump *at* an offer' is correct.

CORRECT

To *throw* dust in a man's eyes (deceive him)  
 To make it a point of honour  
 He *came of age* to-day  
 The appointment is *at* his disposal  
 I shook *hands* with him  
 I shook *him by the hand* }  
 He *wiped* his feet on the mat  
 He pelted frogs with stones  
 He *rose* from his seat  
 One of the frying-pan *into* the fire  
 (from a bad situation into a worse)  
 His *better* half (wife)  
 To *cut off* one's nose to spite one's face<sup>2</sup>  
 To go to ruin  
 To *cast* one's eye upon a thing  
 To *beat* (or *cudgel*) one's brains  
 (think deeply)  
 This excuse *will not hold water* (is not valid)  
 I left no stone unturned (did everything I could)  
 Many a time and *oft*  
 To fly *in* the face of (rashly oppose)  
 Out of *doors*  
 To bring to *bay* (to his defence)  
 To laugh *in* one's sleeve (secretly)  
 To lie stretched *at full length*  
 To *pick* a quarrel with any one  
 To *pocket* an insult (submit to it)

INCORRECT

to *give* dust in a man's eyes  
 to make it a point of *glory*  
 he *grew up to age* to-day  
 the appointment is *in* his disposal<sup>1</sup>  
 I shook *his hand*  
 he *cleaned* his feet over the mat  
 he pelted stones at frogs  
 he *stood up* from his seat  
*from* the frying-pan *to* the fire  
 his *dear* half  
 to *cut* one's nose to spite one's face  
 to go to *ruins*  
 to *throw* one's eye upon a thing  
 to *hit* one's brains  
 this excuse *holds no water*  
 I turned every stone  
 many a time and *often*  
 to fly *at* the face of  
 out of *the door*  
 to bring to *the bay*  
 { to laugh in one's *sleeves*  
 { to laugh *up* one's sleeve  
 to lie *fully* stretched  
 to *pick up* a quarrel with any one  
 to *pocket up* an insult

**391. Particularisation of Use.**—Some words and expressions have come to be restricted in their use, so that they can be employed idiomatically only in certain connexions or with certain meanings. Thus in modern English we speak only of *fast friends*, and never of *fast enemies*. The word *addicted* is always used in relation to a *bad habit*: we say a man is *addicted to gambling*, but never that he is *addicted to economy*. *Devoted*, on the other hand, is almost always used with a good sense—'He is *devoted to literature*,' but not 'He is *devoted to intemperance*.' Similarly, *interference*, when not modified by an epithet like 'friendly,' usually implies intrusion. We speak of a *full-blown rose*, but

<sup>1</sup> But we say 'The appointment is *in* the gift of Mr. Jones.'

<sup>2</sup> To do oneself an injury in trying to punish others. Cf. 'to cut one's own throat,' 'to run one's head against a stone wall.'



a name is not *full-known* but *well-known*. We say 'an apple of discord,' but 'a bone of contention.' Examples :—

## CORRECT

He was totally *defeated, mistaken, wrong*, etc.  
 He richly deserves *punishment*, his *fate*, etc.  
 His *failure, misfortune*, etc., served him right  
 You must abide by the consequences (said of something *bad*)  
 He is prone to *idleness*, etc.  
 I broke the news to him (said of *bad news*)  
 He cut a *sorry* (or *poor*) figure  
 He died in the lap of *victory*  
 I pocketed the *injury, affront*, etc.  
 This bodes *ill* (or *no good*)  
 He is in *bad plight*  
 He imprecated *curses* upon me  
 He is an inveterate *talker, gambler*  
 He perpetrated a *crime*, etc.  
 I must retrench my *expenditure*, etc.  
 He was implicated in the *conspiracy*, etc.  
 An accident has happened to him (said of something *bad*)  
 Egregious *folly, carelessness*, etc.  
 Implicit *confidence, faith, obedience, reliance*  
 Condign *punishment*  
 A *flagrant blunder*, etc.  
 A *glaring error*, etc.  
 A *foregone conclusion*  
 Sheer *loss, folly*, etc.  
 Utter *ignorance, folly*, etc.  
 A bevy of *ladies*  
 The *livelong day, night*  
 He came the other *day, night*  
 At *night*

## INCORRECT

He was totally *victorious, correct, right*, etc.  
 He richly deserves *reward, good fortune*, etc.<sup>1</sup>  
 His *success, good luck*, etc., served him right  
 You must abide by the consequences (said of something *good*)  
 He is prone to *diligence*, etc.  
 I broke the news to him (said of *good news*)  
 He cut a *noble figure*<sup>2</sup>  
 He died in the lap of *conquest*  
 I pocketed the *favour, kindness*, etc.  
 This bodes *good*  
 He is in *good plight*<sup>1</sup>  
 He imprecated *blessings* upon me  
 He is an inveterate *reader, learner*  
 He perpetrated a *duty*, etc.  
 I must retrench my *trade*, etc.  
 He was implicated in the *good work*, etc.  
 An accident has happened to him (said of something *good*)<sup>3</sup>  
 Egregious *wisdom, care*, etc.  
 Implicit *love, hope*, etc.  
 Condign *reward*  
 A *flagrant excellence*, etc.  
 A *glaring truth*, etc.  
 A *foregone result*  
 Sheer *gain, wisdom*, etc.  
 Utter *knowledge, wisdom*, etc.  
 A bevy of *gentlemen*  
 The *livelong week, month, year*  
 He came the other *week, month, year*  
 At *day*

NOTE.—Similarly, the word *polemical* is generally confined to *religious* discussions or disputes, and *defalcation* and *default* are chiefly applied to dishonesty about *money* matters. *Competence* and *subsidy* are used of *money* or property only. Some words have become so specialised as to be almost wholly technical :—*manslaughter, missionary, retriever, book keeper, undertaker, occultation, parole, militant, condone, commute, distemper, rohabit*.

<sup>1</sup> These are very occasionally used.

<sup>2</sup> But 'to cut a *fine* figure' may be said ironically.

<sup>3</sup> But we can speak of 'a *happy* accident.'

**392. Obsolete words preserved.**—Words otherwise obsolete or nearly obsolete, and obsolete meanings or uses of words are often preserved in idiomatic expressions. Such words should not be taken out of their settings and brought into general use, since they are mostly restricted to the expressions in which they occur. Thus the word *nill* (ne-will, not will) survives only in the expression ‘will he, *nill* he’<sup>1</sup> (whether he will or not), and therefore may not be introduced elsewhere, as in ‘The Hon’ble Judge did *nill* (refuse) the offer.’ The following are the principal expressions of this kind :—

EXPRESSION	MEANING
<i>Kith</i> and kin	<i>relatives</i> and kinsfolk
<i>Cark</i> and care	<i>anxiety</i> and care
<i>Stark</i> and stiff	<i>rigid</i> <sup>2</sup> and stiff
To go to <i>rack</i> and ruin	to go to <i>wrack</i> (wreck) and ruin
To keep watch and <i>ward</i>	to keep watch and <i>guard</i>
<i>Time</i> and again	repeatedly
To be at a man’s <i>beck</i> and call	to be at a man’s <i>nod</i> and call
To be in a <i>fix</i>	to be in a <i>difficulty</i>
<i>Picking</i> and stealing	<i>pilfering</i> and stealing
Without <i>rhyme</i> or reason	without <i>sound</i> or sense (without any cause whatever)
Without <i>let</i> or hindrance	without <i>obstruction</i> or hindrance
Sick or <i>sorry</i>	sick or <i>ill</i> (used of a horse)
Part and <i>parcel</i>	part and <i>portion</i>
<i>Odds</i> and ends	<i>points</i> (bits) and ends
Wear and <i>tear</i>	wear and detriment
<i>Tare</i> and <i>tret</i>	(allowance for) receptacle and waste
<i>Spick</i> and <i>span</i> new	new as a <i>spike</i> (nail just made) and a <i>chip</i> just cut off
<i>Likes</i> and dislikes	<i>likings</i> and dislikes
Waifs and <i>strays</i>	waifs and <i>wanderers</i>
<i>Weal</i> <sup>3</sup> and woe	<i>welfare</i> and woe
By <i>hook</i> or by <i>crook</i> <sup>4</sup>	by some means or another
In jest or <i>earnest</i>	jocosely or seriously
Cheek by <i>jowl</i>	cheek by <i>jaw</i> (with heads together in close proximity)
<i>Tit</i> for <i>tat</i>	<i>tip</i> for <i>tap</i> (blow for blow)
To stand one in good <i>stead</i> <sup>5</sup>	to be a good substitute ; hence, to be of great use
He came in my <i>stead</i>	he came instead of me
In the <i>nick</i> of time	just at the right moment

<sup>1</sup> Or ‘will ye, nill ye,’ often written *willy-nilly* ; cf. ‘to *shilly-shally*’ (=shall I? shall I?), to hesitate.

<sup>2</sup> Hence *strong* ; and then *strongly*, *utterly*, as in ‘*stark* mad.’

<sup>3</sup> Cf. ‘the common *weal*.’

<sup>4</sup> Under the old forest laws villagers were not allowed to cut wood ; they might take only what withered boughs, etc. they could collect by employing *hooks* and *crooks*.

<sup>5</sup> *Stead*=standing ; cf. *instead*.

EXPRESSION	MEANING
On <i>pain</i> of death	on <i>penalty</i> of death
To fall (or run) <i>foul</i> of	to come into collision with
To run a <i>rig</i>	to have a frolic
To pay one's <i>shot</i>	to pay one's <i>scot</i> (share)
To get off <i>scot-free</i>	to get off free from <i>payment</i> ( <i>unhurt</i> , safe)
To say (or have) one's <i>say</i>	to say what one has to say
To do a man a <i>shrewd</i> turn	to do a man an <i>ill</i> turn
To give a man a <i>shrewd</i> blow	to give a man a <i>severe</i> blow
To take <i>umbrage</i>	to take <i>offence</i>
To be in one's <i>teens</i>	to be from 13 to 19 years of age
To raise a <i>hue</i> and cry <sup>1</sup>	to raise a <i>hoot</i> (clamour) and cry
To <i>wage</i> war	to carry on war
To <i>chop</i> <sup>2</sup> and change	to <i>veer</i> and change
To toil and <i>moil</i>	to toil and <i>drudge</i>
To learn by <i>rote</i>	to learn by repeating over the words without attention to the meaning
To have neither <i>chick</i> nor child	to have no child, little or big
To be in <i>vogue</i>	to be in <i>fashion</i>
To be of no <i>avail</i>	to be of no effect
To come, etc., without <i>fail</i>	to come without <i>failing</i> (or <i>failure</i> )
To look for a needle in a <i>bottle</i> of hay	to look for a needle in a <i>bundle</i> (or <i>truss</i> ) of hay
To lie in <i>wait</i>	to lie in <i>ambush</i>
Widow's <i>weeds</i>	widow's <i>mourning</i> clothes
In <i>fine</i>	in <i>conclusion</i>
In the <i>heyday</i> of youth, of life	in the <i>highest</i> vigour of youth, of life.

NOTE.—Similarly with the italicised parts of the following:—*still-born*, *strait-laced* (of. 'a *strait* waistcoat'), *ill-favoured* (ill-looking), *sooth-sayer* (of. 'sooth to say'), *wayfarer*, *laughingstock*, *gazingstock*, *newfangled*, *woe-begone* (beset with woe), *safe-conduct* (passport), *footpad*, *freebooter*, *journeyman*, *onslaught*, *ruthless*, *reckless*.

### WORD-COLLOCATION.

393. In employing idiomatic expressions, it is important not only to use the right word, but also to put it in the right place. Thus 'to be at the door of death,' 'to have a thing at the ends of one's fingers' are inadmissible for 'to be at death's door,' 'to have a thing at one's fingers' ends.' 'I will do as much as *lies in me*' is not so idiomatic as 'I will do as much as *in me lies*.' 'I cannot, *for the life of me*, understand what you mean' is the true order; *for my life* is idiomatically incorrect. We say 'bound in honour,' but 'in duty bound.'

<sup>1</sup>This expression is often misused in India to denote any kind of outcry; it should be used only of the cry raised to stop a thief, etc.

<sup>2</sup>We also say 'the wind *chops*,' and speak of 'a *chopping* sea.'

**394. Double phrases.**—In the case of phrases where two words or notions are coupled together, care should be taken to place the words or notions that compose them in the idiomatic order. Thus, we should not say '*shade and light*' instead of the more idiomatic '*light and shade*.' In the same way '*kin and kith*,' '*through thin and thick*' are unidiomatic collocations for '*kith and kin*,' '*through thick and thin*.' Two general principles govern the collocation of the parts of these phrases.

**395. I.** Where there is a distinction in meaning between the parts, that part is mentioned first which naturally and logically occurs first to the mind—

(a) As being *first* in time or order of events: thus in 'to destroy a thing *root and branch*,' *root* is placed before *branch* because a tree is cut down before it is cut up. Similarly, in 'he has lived on the estate *man and boy* for the last twenty years,' *man* is put first, because, in a review running backwards from the present time, that which is the more recent naturally occurs to the mind first:—

Much cry and little wool (boastful promises with small results)	To buy and sell
To tar and feather	Bought and sold (betrayed)
Cut and dried <i>or</i> dry (ready for use)	Forgive and forget
Born and bred	This and that
First come, first served (the first comer will be supplied first)	Here and there
House and home	(That is) neither here nor there ( <i>aside</i> from the point at issue)
Hand and ( <i>or</i> in) glove (very intimate)	Now ( <i>or</i> once) and again
(To be) up and doing	Time and again (frequently)
(To live) from hand to mouth	Now and then
(It is) a word and a blow (with him) (he is very quarrelsome)	Ever and anon
In word and deed	To and fro
Law and equity	Off and on
(It was) touch and go (a narrow escape)	Up and down
From first to last	Up hill and down dale
Past and present	For ever and a day
The ebb and flow	Many a time and oft
Head or tail	Now or never
Milk and water	Wear and tear
(To repent) in sackcloth and ashes	(To go down) on hands and knees
Pen and ink	(To be) at sixes and sevens (in a state of disorder)
Warp and woof	Odds and ends (stray bits)
Sin and shame	Sooner or later
Winds and waves	Enough and to spare
Coat and waistcoat	Room and to spare
	(To ply) whip and spur
	Penny-wise and pound-foolish (careful about small expenses and careless about large ones)

Shoes and stockings  
Bread and butter  
To give and take  
To come and go

Over head and ears (in love, in debt)  
(deeply in love, etc.)  
A fair field and no favour  
(To play at) hide and seek

(b) As being *higher* in place :—

From head to foot  
From top to bottom  
From top to toe  
High and low  
Heaven and earth  
(To drag a thing in) by the head  
and shoulders (forcibly)  
(To be all) skin and bone (very  
thin and lean)

Hand (signature) and seal  
Cap and gown  
(To turn one out) neck and crop *or*  
heels (in hasty and summary fashion)  
(To smite a foe) hip and thigh  
(severely defeat him)  
(To bind one) hand and foot  
Stocks (blocks of wood) and stones  
Hedge and ditch

(c) As being the *pleasanter* :—

Friend or foe  
Right or wrong  
Weal (happiness) or woe  
Rich and poor  
By fair means or foul  
(To blow) hot and cold  
Peace and war  
(A matter of) life and death (a  
very serious matter)  
Fair and false  
(Sins of) omission and commission  
Yes or no  
Use and abuse

Ups and downs (success and failure)  
For better for worse (with good or  
bad fortune)  
For love or money (under any condi-  
tions)  
Little or nothing  
More or less  
The pros and cons (arguments for and  
against)  
To bear and forbear  
To play fast and loose (with any one)  
(to be untrustworthy)  
The sublime and the ridiculous

NOTE.—*Kill or cure, sink or swim*, would seem, at first sight, to be opposed to this rule; but, in these phrases, *kill* and *sink* are put first on purpose to show that the person who uses them is as fully prepared for the occurrence of the former as of the latter alternative; the phrases imply recklessness about consequences; cf. *neck or nothing* (at any risk, desperately). Observe that we say *here and now*, but usually *then and there*.

(d) As being the more *important*, emphatic, general, or familiar :—

Great and small  
More or less  
A thousand and one  
(To go) through thick and thin<sup>1</sup>  
Fire and sword  
Horse and hounds  
Horse and foot (of soldiers)  
(To become) man and wife (to be  
married)

Life and soul  
Body and soul  
Out and about  
(To beat one) black and blue (so as  
to make the skin black and blue)  
(To do a thing) by fits and starts  
(Driven) from pillar to post (hustled)  
Wind and tide  
(To rain) cats and dogs (very heavily)

<sup>1</sup> 'Thick and thin' must not be used for 'hand and glove,' as 'I am *thick and thin* with him.' We say colloquially 'I am very *thick* (intimate) with him,' 'We are very *thick*.'

Light and shade  
Flesh and blood  
Son and heir  
A man and a brother

Man and beast  
Far and near  
Far and wide  
At home and abroad

Offence and defence

Right and left

(To play) ducks and drakes

The rank and file (ordinary men)

Tagrag and bobtail (low-class people)

Each and all (but 'All and every,'  
below)

One and all

(To fight) tooth and nail (with one's  
utmost power)

Heart and soul<sup>1</sup>

(To lead) a cat and dog (a quarrel-  
some) life

Through the length and breadth of  
the land

(To be left) high and dry (stranded)

Rough and ready (methods)

Slow and steady

The long and short of it

Near and dear

Public and private

(To lose) heart and hope

(To keep under) look and key

Life and limb

Meat and drink

Hearth and home

For good and all (permanently)

To beg or borrow

To hum and haw

NOTE.—When there is little or no distinction in meaning between the parts, the more familiar term is also usually placed first:—*fair and square, fair and above board, by leaps and bounds, ways and means, safe and sound, hard and fast, over and above, to toil and moil, well and good, null and void, watch and ward.*

396. II. Where there is little or no distinction of meaning between the parts so as to cause one part naturally to occur to the mind first, and where one part is of more than one syllable, there is a tendency, for the sake of euphony, to place the longer word last:—

Free and easy  
High and mighty  
Sick or sorry (ailing)

Sure and certain

Pure and simple

One and the same

Fair and above board

First and foremost

Wit and wisdom

Wind and weather

Hole and corner (underhand)

Nook and corner<sup>2</sup>

(To go) through fire and water

Sum and substance

Will and pleasure

To all intents and purposes

Fire and fury

Fire and brimstone

Pith and marrow (gist, essence)

Rites and ceremonies

Airs and graces (affectation)

The loaves and fishes (gain, emolu-  
ment)

Goods and chattels

Stuff and nonsense

Bag and baggage

Part and parcel

Gall and wormwood

Pins and needles

Rough and tumble (turmoil)

Pains and penalties

All and every (and 'Any and every')

Far and away (by far)

Out and away

NOTE.—(a) In *early and late, chapter and verse, hammer* (strong instrument) *and tongs, powder and shot, to meddle and make, merry and (yet) wise, little and* (also) *good*, the natural or logical order is preserved. **W**

<sup>1</sup> 'To try *head and heart*' is inadmissible.

<sup>2</sup> 'Creek and corner' is inadmissible.

say 'good, bad, and indifferent,' 'births, deaths, and marriages,' because *good and bad, births and deaths* are natural antithetical couples, to which *indifferent and marriages* are respectively additions. 'Free, gratis, and for nothing' follows Rule II. (b) Where the phrase is a quotation, the original order of the words must be preserved: as, 'The feast of reason and the flow of soul' (*Pope*); 'Few and far between' (*Campbell*); 'Men of light and leading' (*Burke*); 'Weeping and gnashing of teeth' (*Bible*); 'Moth and rust' (*Ib.*); 'Jot or tittle' (*Ib.*); 'Milk and honey' (*Ib.*); 'In season and out of season' (*Ib.*); 'Over the hills and far away' (*Gay*); 'Sound and fury' (*Shakspeare*); 'Head and front' (*Id.*).

### THE COLLOCATION OF SOME ADJECTIVES.

397. Adjective after Noun.—There are a few phrases, consisting of a noun and its qualifying adjective, in which the adjective is placed *after* instead of *before* the noun. In some instances this is due to French influence, as in 'court martial'; in others, to a desire to emphasise the adjective by its unusual position, as when a newspaper paragraph is headed 'Tiger-hunting extraordinary.' Similarly, 'I yield to no man *living*' (to no one in the world) is more emphatic than 'I yield to no living man' (to no man now alive); and 'I appeal to Philip *sober*' means 'I appeal to Philip *when he is sober*.' Examples:—

blood royal <sup>1</sup>	tartar emetic
battle royal	honour due <sup>1</sup>
theatre royal	Church militant
Astronomer royal	Church triumphant
body politic	Viceroy elect
wealth untold <sup>1</sup>	sum total <sup>1</sup>
point-blank	God Almighty <sup>1</sup>
matters ecclesiastical <sup>1</sup>	devil incarnate <sup>1</sup>
time immemorial	letters patent
heir apparent	heirs male
generations unborn <sup>1</sup>	darkness visible <sup>2</sup>
lord paramount	duration vile <sup>2</sup>
notary public	Lords Temporal and Spiritual <sup>2</sup>
procurator fiscal	proof positive
malice prepense	House Beautiful <sup>2</sup>

NOTE.—We say 'For the *time being*'; also 'On *Monday next*' (or *last*), but 'Next Monday,' 'last Monday' (without the preposition). 'On the *following Monday*' or 'On the *Monday following*' are both correct. *Page* (chapter, etc.) *three* is common for 'the third page' or 'page the third.'

398. Words in 'a-'.—There is a group of so-called adjectives, all compounded with the prefix *a-* (52), which are not true

<sup>1</sup> In this case the adjective *may* (less emphatically) come before the noun.

<sup>2</sup> This is a quotation.

<sup>2</sup> That is, the Peers and the Bishops.

adjectives, since they can be used only predicatively and cannot be placed as epithets before the noun.<sup>1</sup> Thus, we can say 'The boat is *adrift*,' but not 'The *adrift* boat'; and 'The man is *ashamed*,' but not 'The *ashamed* man.' Similarly with—

abroad	alive	afloat	aghast	afraid
amiss	alike	awry	awake	aware
aloof	asleep	akin	athirst	

But *above* (cf. 275), *adroit*, *alert*, though belonging to this class of words, may come before the noun. *Live* (short for *alive*) is placed only before the noun:—'a *live* lion,' but not 'the lion is *live*.'

**399. Other Adjectives.**—*Alone* is almost always placed after its noun; *lone* (short for *alone*) may come either before or after the noun. Thus we can say 'A *lone* widow,' but not 'An *alone* widow.' Compare the difference in meaning between—

- (1) I *alone* did it = No one but me did it.
- (2) I did it *alone*<sup>2</sup> = I did it without help.

*Content* (for *contented*), *well* (in good health), and *nigh* come after the noun only: 'A *content* mind,' 'a *well* man,' 'a *nigh* house' are incorrect. *Livelong* is used only before the noun:—'the *livelong* day'; not, 'the day is *livelong*.' *Gentle*, in the sense of noble, well-mannered, comes before rather than after the noun: as, 'a *gentleman*,' 'he is of *gentle* blood'; but in 'he is *gentle*,' *gentle* means mild, kind. *Sorry* has a different meaning according as it is used before or after the noun: thus, 'the fellow is *sorry*' means that he is *grieved*; but 'a *sorry* fellow' means a *contemptible* fellow.

NOTE.—A '*sad* fellow' means not one who is himself sad, but one who makes others sad to think of him. *Stout*, applied to a person, when not joined with another adjective (as in 'stout and strong'), usually means *fat*; and 'a *stout* man' = 'a *fat* man.' We also say 'he *stoutly* denied it,' for 'he vigorously denied it.'

**400. Adjectival and Participial forms.**—Sometimes one or both forms of the passive participle of a verb are used as

<sup>1</sup> Some of them can be placed *after* nouns to qualify them:—'There is something *amiss* with him'; 'His education *abroad* has improved him'; 'Man *alive* what do you mean?' Cf. 275, note.

<sup>2</sup> 'Alone I did it' is the emphatic order.



adjectives and placed before the noun, while another form is used as a participle, or *vice versa* :—

## ADJECTIVAL FORM

A *drunken* (not *drunk*) man  
*Past* (not *passed*) days  
 A *sunken* (not *sunk*) ship  
 A *shrunk* (not *shrunk*) limb  
*Roast* (not *roasted*) meat  
*Molten* (or *melted*) lead  
 A *gilt* (not *gilded*) frame  
*Dread* (or *dreaded*) thunder  
 A *hidden* (not *hid*) meaning  
 A *lighted* (not *lit*) candle  
 A *burnt* (not *burned*) child  
 Ill-*gotten* (not ill-*got*) gains  
 A *bidden* (not *bid*) guest  
*Mown* (not *mowed*) grass  
*Sown* (not *sowed*) ground  
 A *sewn* (not *sewed*) cloth  
 A *stricken* (not *struck*) deer  
 A *horn* (not *sheared*) lamb  
*Hewn* (not *hewed*) stone  
*Forgotten* (not *forgot*) promises  
 A *graven* (not *graved*) image

## PARTICIPIAL FORM

the man is *drunk* (not *drunken*)  
 the days have *passed* (not *past*)  
 the ship has *sunk* (not *sunken*)  
 the limb has *shrunk* (not *shrunk*)  
 the meat is *roasted* (not *roast*)  
 the lead is *melted* (not *molten*)  
 the frame is *gilded* (or *gilt*)  
 the thunder is *dreaded* (not *dread*)  
 the meaning is *hid* (or *hidden*)  
 the candle was *lit* (or *lighted*)  
 the child is *burned* (or *burnt*)  
 his gains are ill-*got* (or *gotten*)  
 the guest was *bid* (or *bidden*) to the feast  
 the grass is *mowed* (or *mown*)  
 the ground is *sowed* (or *sown*)  
 the cloth is *sewed* (or *sewn*)  
 the deer was *struck* (not *stricken*)  
 the lamb was *sheared* (or *horn*)  
 the stone is *hewed* (or *hewn*)  
 his promises are *forgot* (or *forgotten*)  
 the image is *graved* (or *graven*)

NOTE.—We speak of ‘*wrought iron*,’ but we say that mines are *worked*.

401. **Participial forms in Metaphor.**—Sometimes one form of the passive participle is used in metaphorical phraseology to the exclusion of the other :—

The mansion is *shorn* of its splendours (not *sheared*).  
 He is *laden* with guilt (not *laded* or *loaded*).<sup>1</sup>  
 These truths are *graven* on my memory (not *graved*).  
 My flesh has often *creeped* (not *crept*) to hear him talk.  
*Conscience-stricken*, *heart-stricken*, *poverty-stricken*, etc. (not *struck*; but, *moonstruck*, *thunderstruck*, etc.).  
*Well-stricken* in years (not *struck*).  
 His enemies are *clothed* with shame (not *clad*).<sup>2</sup>  
 He is *girt* about with foes (not *girded*).  
 He is *bereft* of all hope (not *bereaved*).  
*Close-knit*<sup>3</sup> friendship (not *knitted*).  
 The *gilded* mountain-tops (not *gilt*).  
 The news is *fraught* with joy (not *freighted*).  
 Day had *broke* (not *broken*).  
 Our *bounden* (not *bound*) duty.

NOTE.—*Rough-shod*, when used literally, is a participle: ‘a *rough-shod horse*’: but when used metaphorically, it is an adverb: ‘to ride *rough-shod* over (ill-treat, crush) one’s feelings.’ *Broad-cast* is generally used

<sup>1</sup> But we can say, ‘His memory is *loaded* with facts.’

<sup>2</sup> But ‘A *vine-clad* hill’ is right.

<sup>3</sup> So ‘Firmly *knit* (strong and sinewy) was Malcolm Græme.’—*Scott*.

metaphorically and adverbially: 'errors are sown *broad-cast* (thickly) over his pages.' We say 'with colours flying,' when we wish to speak literally: 'The army marched *with colours flying*.' When we speak figuratively, we say 'with flying colours': 'He came off *with flying colours*' = he was triumphantly successful.

402. **Participial forms in Phrases.**—In some instances one participial form has come to be appropriated to certain phrases to the exclusion of the other:—

To go down on one's *bended* knees (not *bent*).  
 To be one's *bounden* duty (not *bound*).  
 The biter *bit* (not *bitten*).  
 To show the *cloven* foot (not *cleft*).  
 The ship was *hove* to (not *heaved*).  
 I am dead *beat* (not *beaten*).  
 I am much *beholden* (under obligation) to you (not *beheld*).  
 A *loaded* gun, cannon, etc. (not *laden*).

NOTE.—In 'a *moot* point' (a point for mooting or discussing), *moot* is a noun. *Aged* (disyllable) means 'old,' as 'An *aged* man'; *aged* (monosyllable) means 'showing signs of old age,' as 'He has *aged* very much since I last saw him.'

#### ADJECTIVES USED AS NOUNS.

403. There are many instances in English of Adjectives which have come to be used as Nouns,<sup>1</sup> the nouns that belonged to them being suppressed, usually for the sake of brevity: and often their conversion into substantives is so complete that they form plurals and possessives. Thus we have *a noble* and *nobles* instead of *nobleman* and *noblemen*; and *eatables* and *drinkables*, instead of *eatable things* and *drinkable things*. But it must be remembered that these noun-adjectives are *limited in number*, and that we cannot take any adjective and use it as a noun. If a person is described as unfit for a post, we must not speak of him as an *unfit*, or say that he belongs to the class of the *unfits*; though the *incapables* would be correct.<sup>2</sup> Such adjectives may be classified as follows:—

404. (1) The notion of 'person generally' is understood with—the *ancients*, the *moderns*, the *Commons*, the *Notables*, a *divine* (a clergyman) and *divines*, a *prodigal* and *prodigals*, an *unfortunate* and *unfortunates*, a *native* and *natives*, a *dear* and *dears*, a *mortal* and *mortals*, a *worthy* and *worthies*, a *sage* and *sages*, a *juvenile* and

<sup>1</sup> For the use of adjectives for their corresponding abstract nouns, as *sad* for *sadness*, see §63, (a); cf. also §60.

<sup>2</sup> We can say a coat is a good *fit*, i.e. well-fitting. We have also the noun *misfit*.

*juveniles*, an *innocent* and *innocents*, a *criminal* and *criminals*, a *rough* and *roughs*, a *lunatic* and *lunatics*, a *deaf-mute* and *deaf-mutes* (63, note), a *white* and *whites*, a *black* and *blacks*, a *detective* and *detectives*, a *fugitive* and *fugitives*, a *savage* and *savages*, a *brave* and *braves*, an *alien* and *aliens*, an *Oriental* and *Orientials*, an *official* and *officials*, a *stalwart* and *stalwarts*, an *individual* and *individuals*, *irreconcilables*, *inseparables*, *invincibles* :—

The Old Testament *worthies*=the worthy men or heroes of Old Testament history.

A mean *white*=a low-class white man ; a loafer.

He is a *stalwart*=a thorough-going political partisan.

The slaughter of the *Innocents*=of the Jewish children by Herod.

The two sisters were *inseparables*=they were always together.

A similar use is that of adjectives denoting equality, superiority, and inferiority, and of other adjectives in the comparative degree, preceded by the possessive pronoun :—

I never saw *his like*=anyone like him.

Make room for *your betters*=those better than you.

Similarly we have—one's *equal* and *equals*, one's *superior* and *superiors*, one's *inferior* and *inferiors*, one's *elder* and *elders*, one's *senior* and *seniors*, one's *junior* and *juniors*, a *minor* and *minors*.

NOTE.—National and sect or party names are adjectives used as nouns :—an *Italian* and *Italians*, a *Hindu* and *Hindus*, a *Christian* and *Christians*, a *Jacobite* and *Jacobites*. But names that end in a sibilant are not so used :—a *Dutchman* and *Dutchmen* (not a *Dutch* and *Dutches*), an *Englishman* and *Englishmen*. (But *Dutch*, *English*, etc., without an article, are used for the Dutch and the English languages, as 'I learn *English*.')

405. (2) The notion of '*thing generally*' is understood with—a *secret* and *secrets*, a *due* and *dues*, *good* (benefit) and *goods* (property), an *explosive* and *explosives*, a *missile* and *missiles*, an *extra* and *extras*, a *sweet* (sweetmeat) and *sweets*, a *liquid* and *liquids*, a *solid* and *solids*, a *fluid* and *fluids*, an *acid* and *acids*, a *cordial* and *cordials*, an *opposite* and *opposites*, an *antique* and *antiques*, an *equal* and *equals*, a *whole* and *wholes*, *bitters*, *bygones*, *necessaries*, *essentials*, *particulars*, *combustibles*, *valuables*, *moveables*, *breakables*, *disagreeables*, etc., *contraries* (and *the contrary*), *odds* :—

The *sweets* and the *bitters* of life=the sweet and the bitter things (or events) of life.

If *equals* be added to *equals*, the *wholes* are equal=equal or whole things or quantities.

To give the devil his *due*=to treat even the worst person justly.

I never saw the *like* of it=I never saw anything like it.

Let *bygones* be *bygones*=let us forget past annoyances.

Dreams go by *contraries*=dreams are in inverse relation to events (a bad dream indicates a good event, and *vice versa*).

406. (3) The notion of a particular person or thing is understood with—

A *general* (and *generals*) = a general officer in the army.

A *major* (and *majors*) = a major officer in the army.

A *private* (and *privates*) = a private soldier.

A *pink* (and *pinks*) = a species of pink flower.

An *empty* (and *empties*) = an empty receptacle for goods.

A *monthly* (and *monthlies*) = a monthly magazine.

A *fortnightly* (and *fortnightlies*) = a fortnightly magazine or newspaper.

A *weekly* (and *weeklies*) = a weekly magazine or newspaper.

A *daily* (and *dailies*) = a daily newspaper.

A *mute* (and *mutes*) = a hired mourner at a funeral, or a mute letter.

A *familiar* (and *familiaris*) = a familiar spirit, an attendant demon.

A *capital* (and *capitals*) = a capital town.

An *ironclad* (and *ironclads*) = an ironclad ship.

An *obituary* (and *obituaries*) = an obituary notice.

An *initial* (and *initials*) = an initial letter.

A *tributary* (and *tributaries*) = a tributary stream.

A *total* (and *totals*) = a sum total.

A *brilliant* (and *brilliantes*) = a diamond.

A *Political* (and *Politics*) = a Political officer.

A *uniform* (and *uniforms*) = a uniform dress.

*Incidentals* = incidental expenses.

*Canonicals* = ecclesiastical dress.

*Credentials* = documentary guarantees.

*Greens* = green vegetables.

*Simples* = medicinal herbs.

The *Reds* = the Red (flag) Republicans in France.

The *Territorials* = the Territorial forces.

On the *right* and on the *left* = on the right hand side and on the left hand side.

*Rights* and *lefts* = shoes for the right and the left foot. So of gloves.

A *penny dreadful* = a penny newspaper full of dreadful tales.

To go on all *fours* = on hands and feet (or knees).

A *four* (and *fours*) = a four-oared boat.

A coach and *four* = a coach drawn by four horses.

He was driving two *greys* = two grey horses.

To go from *bad* to *worse* = to go from a bad state of things to a worse state of things.

To put down a thing in *black* and *white* = to write a thing down with black ink on white paper; to make a formal written statement.

Two angels in *white* = in white clothes.

To be in *black* = to wear black clothes for mourning.

The *long* and *short* of a matter = the sum and substance of a matter.

To give a *loose* to one's appetite = to give a loose rein to one's appetite; to indulge it without restraint.

To go out in the *wet* = to go out in the wet weather.

NOTE.—(a) The words *panic* (a panic fear), *shoal* (shoal water), though properly adjectives, are now used chiefly as substantives. (b) Some grammatical terms are instances of adjectives used as nouns:—a *genitive* and *genitives*, a *plural* and  *plurals*, a *passive* and  *passives*, a *dental* and  *dentals*, a *liquid* and  *liquids*, etc.

407. (4) The notion of 'part,' 'portion,' or 'region' is understood with—*vitals, intestines, posteriors*, one's *right* and *rights*, a *green* and *greens* (as in 'a bowling-green'), a *common* and *commons* (as in 'the village common'), the *middle*, *wilds* (as in 'the wilds of America'), *levels* (= a plain). Examples:—

The *thick* (the thick or crowded part) of the fray. The *small* of the back. The *interior* of a house. The *white* of an egg. The *whites* of the eyes. The *best* of it<sup>1</sup> is that, etc.=the most interesting or noticeable feature of the business is that, etc. To prepare for the *worst* (event). Stung to the *quick* (the most vital or sensitive part)=deeply affected. The *fat* and the *lean* (parts of meat). To live on the *fat* of the land (on its richest products; in plenty). O'er *rough* and *smooth* she trips along (Wordsworth). To dash through *thick* and *thin* (Cowper). In the *open* (country). To come into the *open* (to disclose one's views or intentions).

408. (5) The following adverbial phrases may be classified together:—

(a) *Measure, degree, rate* is understood with—in *full*, *at full*, *to the full*, *at the full*, *to the utmost*, *in the main*, *in general*, *not at all*, *at best*, *at worst*.

(b) *Way, manner* is understood with—in *vain*, *in short*, *in brief*, *in public*, *in secret*, *out of the common*, *in common*, *in earnest*.

(c) *Time* is understood with—in *a little*, *before long*, *to the last*, *at latest*, *at soonest*, *of old*, *in future*, *at present*, *for the present*, *once for all*.

(d) *State, condition* is understood with—in *the dark*, *in the open* (out of doors), *for the best*, *in the ascendant*, *at large*, *on high*.<sup>2</sup>

## ELLIPTICAL SENTENCES.

409. Sometimes sentences or phrases are elliptical—that is, they require that some additional word or words, omitted for the sake of conciseness, should be supplied to make the construction formally complete:—

1. Sink or swim=*whether one sink or swim* (fail or succeed).
2. Waste not, want not=*if you do not waste, you will not want*.
3. Thank you=*I thank you*. Well done !=*it is well done*.
4. No sooner said than done=*it is no sooner said than it is done*.
5. Practice makes perfect=*practice makes one perfect*.
6. He recovered, owing to<sup>3</sup> his strong constitution=*he recovered, owing his recovery to his strong constitution*.
7. I am safe, thanks to<sup>3</sup> you=*I am safe, thanks (for my safety) being due to you*.

<sup>1</sup> But 'To have the *best* of it' (and 'To get the *better* of a person') means 'to gain the advantage.'

<sup>2</sup> Cf. Walford: 'When the room was at its *fullest* (state) and *noisiest* (state)'; and Tennyson: 'Black velvet of the *costliest* (kind).'

<sup>3</sup> *Owing to* and *thanks to* may be regarded as prepositional phrases equivalent to 'because of.' Cf. 281, 283.

8. I did it, no matter how=I did it, *it is no matter for enquiry* (or, it does not matter) how.

9. Come at once, please=come at once, *if y<sup>e</sup> u please* (but 'Please to come at once'=may it please you to come at once).

10. Briefly, he has lost his post=*to put the matter briefly*, he has lost his post.

11. The moment I saw it, I fired=*at the moment at which* I saw it, I fired.

12. So much for his debts; now for his assets=*so much has been said for* (i.e. in regard to) his debts; now *something must be said* for his assets.

13. To let well alone=*to let that which is well alone*.

14. The weather is as hot as hot can be=*the weather is as hot as it can be hot*.

15. His hour (or time) was come=*his hour of death—of suffering—of effort—was come*.

16. This coin will pass current here=*this coin will pass as being current here*.

17. He laid about him with a stick=*he laid blows about him with a stick*.

18. To see fair play (also To see fair)=*to see that play is fair*.

19. He is ill, and no wonder, since, etc.=*he is ill, and there is no (cause for) wonder at it, since, etc.*

20. No wonder you are ill=*there is no (cause for) wonder that you are ill*.

21. You may take it and welcome=*you may take it and be welcome to it*.

22. To act like one possessed=*to act like one possessed by evil spirits*.

23. One more goodbye, and we must part=*one more goodbye must be said, and then we must part* (i.e. after one more goodbye we must part).

24. One more effort, and you will succeed=*one more effort must be made and then you will succeed* (i.e. if you make one more effort, you will succeed).

25. He was so kind as to ask me to dinner=*he was so* (i.e. to such an extent) *kind as one would be kind to ask* (i.e. in asking) me to dinner.

26. I am not so foolish as to believe that=*I am not so foolish as I should be foolish to believe* (i.e. for believing) that.

27. He acted as if he were mad=*he acted as he would act* if he were mad.

28. He acted as though he were mad=*he acted as he would not act* though he were mad (i.e. he acted worse than a madman).

29. He acted as though he were the father of his country=*he acted as he would not act* though he were the father of his country (i.e. he acted better than the father of his country).

30. He regarded me as his enemy=*he regarded me as he would regard* his enemy.

31. Come as soon as possible=*come as soon as may be possible*.

32. I worked hard so as to get home early=*I worked hard so* (i.e. in such a way) *as I should work* (in order) to get home early.

33. This method has been tried and found wanting. *this method has been tried and found to be wanting*.

34. He thought fit (or proper) to refuse my offer=*he thought it to be fit to refuse my offer*.

35. To be up and doing=*to be standing up and doing work*.

36. Time out of mind I have told you this=*at time now out of mind* (i.e. at times too numerous to remember) I have told you this.

37. I can make no use whatever of this=*I can make no use, whatever it may be, of this*.

38. A Douglas thou, and shun to wreath the victor's brow? = *Art thou a Douglas, and (yet) dost thou shun, etc.?*

39. I make bold to differ from you = I make *myself* bold enough (i.e. I venture) to differ from you.

40. I shall return in an hour, if not sooner = I shall return in an hour, if I *do not return* sooner.

41. He more than smiled, he laughed outright = he *did something* more than smile, he laughed outright.

42. I am more than surprised at your conduct = I am more than surprised, *I am astonished* at your conduct.

43. Not but he acted for the best = *I do not say* but that he acted for the best.

44. He had the impudence to refuse = he had the impudence *sufficient* to refuse (i.e. for refusing).

45. He gave me of his best = he gave me *some* of his best things.

410. Often the omitted word is an adjective, which is easily supplied from the context:—

1. A man of family, birth, breeding, position, etc. = a man of *good* family, birth, breeding, position, etc.

2. A man of principle = a man of *good* principle.

3. A person of quality = a person of *high* quality.

4. Women of condition = women of *high* condition.

5. To shout at the pitch of one's voice = to shout at the *highest* pitch of one's voice.

6. He is stupid to a degree = he is stupid to an *indefinitely great* degree.

7. This is just the thing = this is just the *right* thing, the only proper thing.

8. I was in time for the meeting = I was in *sufficient* time for the meeting.

9. The train is behind time = the train is behind *its due* time.

10. That remark is out of place = that remark is out of the *right* place.

11. He gave himself airs = he gave himself *conceited* airs.

12. He made a figure on the occasion = he made a *fine* figure on the occasion.

13. I came of age yesterday = I came of (legally) *full* age yesterday.

14. To call one names = to call one *ill* names.

15. To be in a temper = to be in a *bad* temper.

16. Out of temper = out of *good* temper.

17. I lost my train, as luck would have it = I lost my train, as *ill* luck would have it.

18. Valour and conduct = valour and *good* conduct.

## CHAPTER VII.

### WORDS FOLLOWED BY PREPOSITIONS.

411. Many Nouns, Adjectives, Verbs, and Participles in English take particular prepositions after them. In a few instances, more than one preposition may be admissible: thus we can speak of a river as *abounding in* fish or *abounding with* fish; or a person may be said to be *careless of* or *careless about* the consequences of his actions. As a general rule, however, only one preposition can follow a particular word used in a particular sense; and it is wrong to say 'I am *ashamed for* your conduct' instead of 'I am *ashamed of* your conduct'; or 'in *respect for* these matters' instead of 'in *respect of* these matters,' though 'I have a great *respect for* your opinion' is correct.

412. **Infinitive wrongly introduced.**—The use of the Infinitive after this class of words, in place of a preposition followed by a Verbal Noun, is a common error. Thus 'He was prevented *to go*' is wrong for 'He was prevented *from going*'<sup>1</sup>; and 'He was successful *to gain* the prize' is wrong for 'He was successful *in gaining* the prize'; and 'They go *to hunt* in winter' is unidiomatic for 'They go *hunting*.' Sometimes either construction is admissible: thus 'he was accustomed *to take* long walks' is equally correct with 'he was accustomed *to taking* long walks'; and 'I am afraid *to speak* on that topic' with 'I am afraid *of speaking on* that topic.' Examples:—

#### INCORRECT

Hindered *to come*  
Prohibited *to go*  
Debarred *to compete*  
Precluded *to apply*

#### CORRECT

hindered *from coming*  
prohibited *from going*  
debarred *from competing*  
precluded *from applying*

---

<sup>1</sup> We can say 'I prevented *him from going*,' or 'I prevented *his going*,' but not 'I prevented *him to go*.'



## INCORRECT

Discouraged to proceed  
 Resigned to submit  
 Assisted to do  
 A chance to succeed  
 Fearful to fail  
 Confident to prevail  
 Bent to come  
 Intent to win  
 Negligent to pay  
 Am I correct to think this?  
 You are right to believe this  
 I am fortunate to have a son  
 I think to take a walk  
 He despaired to pass  
 He refrained to speak  
 He desisted to talk  
 He persisted to refuse  
 He insisted me to come  
 He dissuaded me to go  
 He finished to read  
 He excelled to paint  
 He repented to speak  
 He meditated to resign  
 He took a pride to do it  
 He persevered to go  
 Fondness to read  
 A passion to gamble  
 An excuse to be late  
 A pretext to stay

## CORRECT

discouraged from proceeding,  
 resigned to submitting  
 assisted in doing  
 a chance of succeeding  
 fearful of failing  
 confident of prevailing  
 bent on coming<sup>1</sup>  
 intent on winning  
 negligent in paying  
 am I correct in thinking this?  
 you are right in believing this<sup>2</sup>  
 I am fortunate in having a son<sup>3</sup>  
 I think of taking a walk  
 he despaired of passing  
 he refrained from speaking  
 he desisted from talking  
 he persisted in refusing  
 he insisted on my coming  
 he dissuaded me from going  
 he finished reading  
 he excelled in painting  
 he repented of speaking  
 he meditated resigning  
 he took a pride in doing it  
 he persevered in going  
 fondness for reading  
 a passion for gambling  
 an excuse for being late  
 a pretext for staying

NOTE.—We say ‘He had the kindness to ask me,’ but ‘I thanked him for his kindness in asking me.’ We have both ‘I intend to call’ and ‘I intend calling.’ We hesitate to accept, not at accepting.

413. **Prepositions confused.**—The following prepositions are liable to be confused:—

(1) *In—into.* We speak of—‘falling in love,’ ‘coming in sight,’ ‘taking in hand,’ ‘revelling in mischief,’ ‘being immersed in pleasure,’ ‘steeped in misery,’ ‘dipped in water,’ ‘bathed in blood,’ ‘dissolved in tears’ (but ‘melted to tears’), ‘cut in two (and in or to pieces),’ ‘divided in half,’ ‘engaged in business,’ ‘immured in prison,’ ‘sunk in depression,’ ‘put in danger,’ ‘entangled in a scheme,’ ‘implicated in a crime,’ ‘involved in a difficulty,’ ‘enlisted in the army,’ ‘merged in a total.’ But we speak of—‘falling into a passion,’ ‘bursting into tears’ (but ‘to burst out crying’), ‘coming

<sup>1</sup> But we may be *determined to come* or *on coming*; we may be *resolved to speak* or *on speaking*; we may *decide to go* or *on going*.

<sup>2</sup> But ‘It is right to believe this’ is correct, where *to believe* is a simple infinitive.

<sup>3</sup> But we say ‘He was the first to go,’ not ‘in going.’

*into* the mind,' 'coming *into* a person's presence,' 'taking *into* consideration,' 'relapsing *into* poverty,' 'penetrating *into* a secret,' 'prying *into* a matter,' 'sinking *into* insignificance,' 'plunged *into* debt,' 'inveigled *into* a pian,' 'introduced *into* society,' 'imported *into* a country.'

NOTE.—We say 'A story founded *on* fact,' 'An argument founded *on* reason'; but 'This has no foundation *in* reason,' not *of* or *on* reason. Also 'This matter was brought *to* (not *into*) light'; 'I cannot call *to* (not *into*) mind his name'; 'I will take the business *in* (not *into*) hand'; 'This is sad *in* (not *to*) the extreme'; 'The mangoes *on* (not *in*) this tree are ripe'; 'The sum devoted *to* (not *in*) the purpose.' We can 'throw dust *in* (rarely *into*) a person's eyes,' i.e. deceive or confuse him; we can 'come *in* or *into* contact with one,' but we 'come *into* (not *in*) collision with him.'

(2) *Upon, on—over.* The preposition *upon* (or *on*) follows the verbs *congratulate, determine, dilate, descant, speculate, calculate, discourse, expatiate, reflect, ruminare, encroach, enjoin, enlarge, doat, hinge, dawn.* We say 'He meditated *upon* (considered) the shortness of life,' but 'He meditated (purposed or planned) revenge.' To *seize upon* is more emphatic than to *seize*. *Over* follows *muse, ponder,* and such verbs as *rule, domineer, exult, triumph, tyrannize, preside,* and such nouns as *predominance, precedence, rule, control.* We say 'a great improvement *upon* (not *over*) last term's work.'

NOTE.—*Influence* (noun) may be followed by *upon* and *with* as well as by *over* (see p. 213). We say 'Your advice had no effect *upon* (not *to* or, *over*) him'; 'He is *pre-eminent above* (not *over*) all the rest.' We are *revenged* or *revenge ourselves* on our enemies. A person may *fall on* the ground on his head.

(3) *By—with.* When *by* and *with* are used in the same sentence to denote causality, *by* marks the *agent* and *with* the *instrument* of the action:—

Abel was killed *by* Cain *with* a stone.  
The tiger was shot *by* the sportsman *with* a rifle.  
He was punished *by* the magistrate *with* a fine.

NOTE.—We say 'The man was struck *by* (not *with*) lightning,' 'He made a fortune *by* (not *with*) his own exertions,' 'He perished—*by* the sword, *by* his own hand, *by* poison,' 'The engines are worked *by* team,' 'A cart drawn *by* four horses,' 'The town was destroyed *by* fire.'

**414. Prepositions inserted or omitted.** Prepositions (or prepositions used as adverbs) are sometimes wrongly (1) inserted or (2) omitted after words of this class.

(1) We do not *assist to* a person, but *assist him*; we do not *benefit to* a person, but *benefit him*; we do not *sim to* a deed, but

*sign it* ; we do not *husband out* (adv.) resources, but *husband them* ; we do not *purge a thing out* of its impurities, but *of them* ; we do not *open out* (adv.) a school, but *open it* ; a thing does not *give out* (adv.) a good result, but *gives it* ; a decree is not *issued out* (adv.), but *issued* ; we do not *violate against* a rule, but *violate it* ; we do not *examine or investigate into* a matter, but *examine or investigate it* ; we do not *contemplate upon* a landscape, but *contemplate it* ; we do not *superintend over* a business, but *superintend it* ; we do not *ascend on* (or *up*) a hill, but *ascend it* ; we do not *catch up* a speaker's words, but *catch* (=hear) them ; we do not *skip over* a chapter, but *skip it* ; a thing does not *answer to* our purpose, but *answers it* ; we do not *confuse up* things, but *confuse them* ; we do not *criticise upon* an action, but *criticise it* ; a feeling does not *pervade through* our mind, but *pervades it* ; we do not *recommend for* a person, but *recommend him* ; we do not *resign from* a post, but *resign it* ; we are not *spent up* (adv.), but *spent with toil* ; an ape does not *resemble to* a man, but *resembles him*.

NOTE.—Both *share and share in*, *repent and repent of*, *approve and approve of*, *request and request of*, *consign and consign over* (adv.), *follow and follow after*, *seek and seek for* are found ; but the prepositions are mostly redundant.

(2) We do not *dispense a person's services*, but *dispense with them* ; we do not *prevail a person*, but *prevail with or upon or over him* ; we do not *tyrannise a person*, but *tyrannize over him* ; we do not *encroach a person's leisure*, but *encroach upon it* ; we do not *drive our enemies*, but *drive them out* (adv.) ; we do not *muse a matter*, but *muse over it* ; we do not *boast<sup>1</sup> our talents*, but *boast of them* ; we should not *beware<sup>1</sup> dogs*, but should *beware of them*. Similarly we are *aware of* a fact, *partake of* a meal, *acquiesce in* an opinion, *believe in* God, *confess to* a suspicion, *enquire for* a friend or *about his health*, *despair of* success, *resort to* a plan, *refer to* a matter, *proceed with* a business, *comply with* a demand, or say that an action *admits of* no excuse.

NOTE.—We *compensate a loss*, but *compensate a person for* a loss. We *meet a person*, but *meet with* an accident. 'Do not think it' means 'do not think so,' but 'to think of a thing' means to call it to mind. We *combat an argument*, but *combat with* a person. We *inform, upprize, assure, remind ; convince, suspect, accuse, convict ; deprive, cheat, balk, defraud, beguile, cure, etc., persons of things* : we *ask, demand, require, beg, crave, buy, etc., things of or from persons*. We do not *rob money from a person*, but *rob him of it*. We do not *scrape money*, but *scrape it together*. We can *lament a loss or lament for it*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Except in poetry : 'Boast no more (of) your mighty deeds' (*Shirley*) ; 'Beware (of) the pine tree's withered branch' (*Longfellow*). Cf. 884.

**415. Corresponding words with different Prepositions.**—As a general rule, the same preposition follows words that are related to each other ; as participle and noun, or adjective and noun in—

{ I am <i>acquainted</i> with him.	{ I am <i>ignorant</i> of his intention.
{ My <i>acquaintance</i> with him.	{ My <i>ignorance</i> of his intention.

It is the same with *anxious for*—*anxiety for*, *dependent on*—*dependence on*, *apprehensive of*—*apprehension of*, *fit for*—*fitness for*, *jealous of*—*jealousy of*, *exempt from*—*exemption from*, and many others. But not a few of such related words take different prepositions after them :—

{ I <i>sympathise</i> with you.	{ I am <i>satisfied</i> with your conduct.
{ I feel much <i>sympathy</i> for you.	{ I feel great <i>satisfaction</i> in (or at) your conduct.
{ I <i>solicited</i> him for his help.	{ <i>Preparatory</i> to departure.
{ I am <i>solicitous</i> of his help.	{ <i>Preparation</i> for departure.
{ He is <i>descended</i> from the king.	{ <i>Proud</i> of his children.
{ He is a <i>descendant</i> of the king.	{ <i>Pride</i> in his children.
{ <i>Regardful</i> of his interests.	{ I am <i>hopeful</i> of success.
{ <i>Regard</i> for his interests.	{ I <i>hope</i> for success.
{ <i>Fond</i> of money.	{ <i>Delighted</i> with him.
{ <i>Fondness</i> for money.	{ <i>Delight</i> in him.
{ <i>Pursuant</i> to his wishes.	{ <i>Ashamed</i> of him.
{ In <i>pursuance</i> of his wishes.	{ <i>Shame</i> at his conduct.
{ <i>According</i> to your advice.	{ I went in <i>search</i> of him.
{ In <i>accordance</i> with your advice.	{ I went to <i>search</i> for him.

Similarly we say *capable of* but *capacity for*, *desirous of* but *desire* (noun) *for*,<sup>1</sup> *prejudicial to* but *prejudice* (noun and verb) *against*, *partial to* but *partiality for*, *derogate from* but *derogatory to*, *except* (trans. verb) *from* but *exception to*, *result* (verb) *from* but *result* (noun) *of*, *ambitious of* but *ambition for*, *confident of* but *confidence in*, *respectful to* but *respect for*, *alien to* but *alienation* (and *alienate*) *from*, *angry with* a person but *angry at* a thing, *envious of* but *envy at*, *affectionate to* or *towards* but *affection for*, *conform to* but *conformity with* (or *to*), *aspire to* (or *after*) but *aspiration after*, *need of* (or *for*) but *needful for*, *agree with* (or *to*) but *agreeable to*, *wanting in* but *want of*.

**416. Corresponding forms with different Prepositions.**—In some instances, words that differ but slightly in form from each other, and which might be expected to take the same prepositions

<sup>1</sup> We say 'his desire for wealth,' but 'I have a great desire to see (not for seeing) you.'

after them, are followed by different prepositions. Thus we say 'he is *dependent on* your aid,' but 'he is *independent of* your aid'; 'regard for appearances,' but 'disregard of appearances.' Similarly we say—

I have a <i>dislike</i> to him	<i>but</i>	I have a <i>liking</i> for him.
I am <i>sensible of</i> pain	„	I am <i>insensible to</i> pain.
He is <i>equal to</i> me		he is <i>co-equal with</i> me.
He is <i>qualified to compete</i>		he is <i>disqualified from competing</i> .
He <i>encouraged</i> me to proceed		He <i>discouraged</i> me from proceeding.
My <i>trust in</i> you is great		my <i>distrust of</i> you is great.
This is <i>contrary to</i> that		this is <i>contrasted with</i> that.
<i>Subsequent to</i> his departure		<i>consequent upon</i> his departure.
I am <i>different from</i> you		he is <i>indifferent to</i> my entreaties.
He is <i>neglectful of</i> his business		He is <i>negligent in</i> his business.

417. The same words with different Prepositions.—As has been seen already, there are some words of this class which can be followed by more than one preposition. In such instances, a difference of preposition generally carries with it a difference in usage or in meaning. Thus, in ordinary usage, we are vexed *with a person* and vexed *at an event*; it is the same with *angry*, *disgusted*, *displeased*, *enraged*, *annoyed*, *offended*, *exasperated*, *delighted*. Similarly we are *irritated*, *provoked*, *excited*, *affected*, etc., *by persons*, *at events*. Compare the following :—

{ You had the <i>advantage of</i> me.	{ This is the <i>subject of</i> inquiry.
{ You gained an <i>advantage over</i> me.	{ This is a <i>subject for</i> inquiry.
{ I waited <i>upon</i> him at his office.	{ You are <i>disqualified from</i> competing.
{ I waited <i>for</i> him two hours.	{ You are <i>disqualified for</i> the post.
{ He prevailed <i>upon</i> me to consent.	{ You are <i>liable for</i> damages.
{ He prevailed <i>over</i> me in the dispute.	{ You are <i>liable to</i> a fine.
{ No argument prevailed <i>with</i> him.	{ I <i>concur with</i> you.
{ I agree <i>with</i> you.	{ I <i>concur in</i> your decision.
{ I agree <i>to</i> your proposal.	{ The statesman <i>deals with</i> politics.
{ I commence <i>by</i> remarking.	{ The grocer <i>deals in</i> tea.
{ I commence <i>with</i> the remark.	{ He <i>lent</i> money at high interest.
{ I attended <i>upon</i> his leisure.	{ He <i>lent</i> money on good security.
{ I attended <i>to</i> his commands.	{ We are <i>responsible to</i> God.
{ He was <i>invested with</i> the crown.	{ We are <i>responsible for</i> our actions.
{ His money is <i>invested in</i> the funds.	{ I charge my failure <i>to or upon</i> you.
{ I am <i>afflicted with</i> fever.	{ I charge you <i>with</i> my failure.
{ I am <i>afflicted at</i> your failure.	{ His face is <i>familiar to</i> me.
{ I blush <i>for</i> you.	{ I am <i>familiar with</i> his face.
{ I blush <i>at</i> your misconduct.	{ Let us <i>proceed to</i> business.
{ What is the <i>cause</i> <sup>1</sup> of this delay?	{ Let us <i>proceed with</i> the business.
{ Is there any <i>cause for</i> this delay?	

<sup>1</sup> So with *reason*, *occasion*, *ground*, etc.; but *pretext* is followed by *for* only.

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| { He is the <i>slave</i> (or <i>victim</i> ) of his passions. | { I have done my <i>duty</i> <i>by</i> him.           |
| { He is a <i>slave</i> (or <i>victim</i> ) to his passions.   | { I have done my <i>duty</i> <i>in</i> this matter.   |
| { He is <i>possessed of</i> (=master of) property.            | { <i>Think over</i> (or <i>on</i> ) what I have said. |
| He is <i>possessed with</i> (=mastered by) an idea.           | { <i>Think of</i> me when I am gone.                  |
| { I <i>differ with</i> you on that question.                  | { He is <i>destined for</i> the Bar.                  |
| { I <i>differ from</i> you in disposition.                    | { I am <i>destined to</i> failure.                    |
| { To <i>compare</i> great things <i>with</i> small.           | { He was <i>disappointed of</i> the prize.            |
| { Ovid <i>compares</i> anger to madness.                      | { I am <i>disappointed in</i> you.                    |
| { Saul was <i>converted to</i> Christianity.                  | { I demand <i>vengeance upon</i> him.                 |
| { His sorrow was <i>converted into</i> joy.                   | { I demand <i>vengeance for</i> his deeds.            |
| { I am <i>tired of</i> doing nothing, and wish to change.     | { God will <i>provide for</i> our wants.              |
| { I am <i>tired with</i> my exertions, and wish to rest.      | { We must <i>provide against</i> this risk.           |
| { What is the <i>use</i> <sup>1</sup> of asking?              | { <i>Communicate with</i> him on this.                |
| { There is no <i>use in</i> asking.                           | { <i>Communicate this to</i> him.                     |
| { I have no <i>use for</i> this.                              | { I am not <i>concerned in</i> the transaction.       |
| { He made <i>war upon</i> luxury.                             | { I am much <i>concerned at</i> his losses.           |
| { He waged <i>war with</i> witchcraft.                        | { I <i>except</i> you from blame.                     |
| { This treatment was not <i>expected from</i> you.            | { I <i>except to</i> <sup>2</sup> your testimony.     |
| { It is not <i>expected of</i> us to know Greek.              | { He <i>parted with</i> his property.                 |
|   | { He <i>parted from</i> his family.                   |
|   | { I am <i>reconciled with</i> my brother.             |
|   | { I am <i>reconciled to</i> his marriage.             |
|   | { The victory was <i>credited to</i> Nelson.          |
|   | { Nelson was <i>credited with</i> the victory.        |

NOTE.—Cf. 'I *charged him with* (=accused him of) *taking* my book,' and 'I *charged* (=commanded) *him to take* my book.' Observe that 'in respect of' means 'in point of,' while 'with respect to' means 'concerning,' as: 'With respect to the question of precedence, I am his superior *in respect of* birth.' Compare 'He *witnessed* (=saw) the assault' with 'He *witnessed to* (=gave evidence about) the assault.'

418. **Analogy misleading.**—In dealing with these words, we cannot always rely upon the guidance of analogy. We *consent to* or *agree to* a demand, but we do not therefore *comply to* or *acquiesce to* a demand; we *comply with* and *acquiesce in* it. Compare the following :—

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| { He is <i>short of</i> money.                                | { I am <i>inured to</i> misfortune.        |
| { He is <i>deficient in</i> politeness.                       | { I am <i>hardened against</i> misfortune. |
| { I am <i>alarmed at</i> your rashness.                       | { He <i>pretends to</i> great accuracy.    |
| { I am <i>afraid of</i> your rashness.                        | { He <i>aims at</i> great accuracy.        |
| { I was <i>amused at</i> his proceedings.                     | { This is <i>foreign to</i> the purpose.   |
| { I was <i>interested in</i> his proceedings.                 | { This is <i>remote from</i> my intention. |
| { He is <i>eager for</i> renown.                              | { He is <i>free from</i> fever.            |
| { He is <i>covetous</i> (or <i>desirous</i> ) <i>of</i> gain. | { He is <i>rid of</i> fever.               |

<sup>1</sup> *Necessity takes of* only; *need takes of* or *for* indifferently.

<sup>2</sup> More commonly, 'I take exception to.'

{ His pay is not <i>adequate</i> to his needs.	{ He gave the book to me.
{ His pay is not <i>sufficient</i> for his needs.	{ He bestowed the book on me.
{ In <i>proportion</i> to his powers.	{ He gave way to me.
{ In <i>excess</i> of his powers.	{ He made way for me.
{ They had a <i>design</i> upon his life.	{ This habit is <i>characteristic</i> of foreigners.
{ They laid a <i>plot</i> against his life.	{ This habit is <i>peculiar</i> to foreigners.
{ Be <i>attentive</i> to his wishes.	{ He is <i>extravagant</i> in his compliments.
{ Be <i>observant</i> of his wishes.	{ He is <i>prodigal</i> of his compliments.
{ He <i>despaired</i> of victory.	{ I am <i>maimed</i> in my knee.
{ He <i>hoped</i> for victory.	{ I am <i>lame</i> of one leg.
{ He <i>helped</i> me to do this.	{ He is <i>remiss</i> in his payments.
{ He <i>assisted</i> me in doing this.	{ He is <i>careless</i> of his expenditure.
{ I am <i>absorbed</i> in my work.	{ The speech was <i>replete</i> with wit.
{ I am <i>taken up</i> with my work.	{ The speech was <i>full</i> of wit.
{ He is <i>poor</i> in clothing.	{ You are <i>wanting</i> in firmness.
{ He is <i>destitute</i> of clothing.	{ You are <i>devoid</i> of firmness.
{ He is <i>rich</i> in good works.	{ This farm is <i>fertile</i> (or <i>fruitful</i> ) in corn.
{ He is <i>lavish</i> of praise.	{ This soil is <i>productive</i> of corn.
{ He is <i>diligent</i> in his business.	{ In <i>proportion</i> to his powers.
{ He is <i>careful</i> of his money.	{ In <i>excess</i> of his powers.
{ This ruler is <i>dear</i> to his subjects.	{ Power <i>joined</i> to (or <i>with</i> ) wealth.
{ This ruler is <i>popular</i> with his subjects.	{ Power <i>combined</i> with wealth.
{ I am <i>acquainted</i> with him.	
{ I am <i>known</i> to him.	

#### 419. LIST OF WORDS WITH THEIR APPROPRIATE PREPOSITIONS.

[This list is inserted here on account of the importance and difficulty of the subject. The use of wrong prepositions after words is an error into which English writers and speakers often fall, and to which the Indian student is particularly prone. He should commit all the examples to memory, and should be given frequent exercises to test his knowledge of the subject.]

Abhorrence *of* gambling.

Abhorrent *to* the feelings.

Abide *by* a decision.

*with* a person.

Abound *in, with*—flowers, wealth.

Absent *from* school.

Absolved *from* guilt.

Absorbed *in* a novel.

Abstain *from* food.

Accede *to* a request.

Acceptable *to* a person.

Accessible *to* bribes.

Accessory *to* a crime.

Accommodate (adapt) oneself *to* circumstances.

(furnish) one *with* money.

Accompanied *by* a friend.

*with* delirium.

Accord (grant) *to* a person.

(agree) *with* truth.

Accordance *with* an order.

According *to* an order.

Account (verb) *for* the expenditure.

Accountable *to* God *for* one's actions.

Accrue *to* one *from* a source.

Accused *of* a crime.

Accustomed *to* riding.

Acquainted *with* a person or thing.

Acquiesce *in* a decision.

Acquitted *of* blame.

Adapted *to* one's ability.

*for* a purpose.

Add this *to* that.

Addicted *to* gambling.  
 Adequate *to* a want.  
 Adjacent *to* a house.  
 Admit *of* excuse.  
 Admitted *into* a house.  
     *to* the Bar.  
 Admonish one *for*—one's faults.  
 Adorned *with* jewels.  
 Adroit *in, at*—argument.  
 Advance *upon, against*—the foe.  
 Advantage *over, of* (with *get* or *have*)  
     —a person.  
 Advantageous *to* him.  
 Adverse *to* one's wishes.  
 Advert *to* a topic.  
 Advised *of* a matter.  
 Affection *for* a person.  
 Affectionate *to* a person.  
 Affixed *to* the paper.  
 Afflicted *with* lameness.  
 Afraid *of* punishment.  
 Agree *with* a person.  
     *in* his opinion.  
     *to* a proposal.  
     *upon* a policy.  
 Agreeable *to* one's wishes.  
 Aim (verb and noun) *at* a mark.  
 Akin *to* a person or thing.  
 Alarmed *at* a rumour.  
 Alien *to* the matter.<sup>1</sup>  
 Alienated *from* a friend.  
 Alight *from* a carriage.  
     *on* the ground.  
 Alive *to* the danger.  
 Alliance *with* a person.  
 Allied *with* a person.  
     *to* a thing.  
 Allotted *to* a person.  
 Allowable *for* a person.  
 Allowance *for* leakage.  
 Allude *to* an event.  
 Alternates *with* : 'day *with* night.'  
 Alternative *to* a course of action.  
 Amalgamate *with* alloy.  
     *into* one.  
 Amazed *at* an event.  
 Ambitious *of, for*—renown.  
 Amenable *to* the law.

Amount (verb) *to* ten rupees.  
 Analogous *to* a thing.  
 Analogy *to* or *with* a thing.  
     *between* two things.  
 Angry *with* him *for* laughing.  
     *at* a thing.  
 Animadvert *on* one's faults.  
 Annex *to* a document.  
 Annoyed *with* a person.  
     *at* a thing.  
 Answer (v. and n.) *to* a person *for*  
     one's conduct.  
     *to* the description.  
 Antagonistic *to* his views.  
 Antidote *to* a disease.  
     *against* infection.  
 Antipathy *to* medicine.  
 Anxious *for* the prize.  
     *about* his health.  
 Apart *from* the rest.  
 Appeal *to* one *for* redress.  
     *against* a wrong.  
 Appear *to* me.  
 Appetite *for* food.  
 Applicable *to* the case.  
 Apply *to* a person *for* a thing.  
 Appointed *to* a situation.  
 Apposite *to* the case.  
 (In) Apposition *to, with*—a noun.  
 Apprehensive *of* danger.  
 Apprenticed *to* a trade.  
 Apprised *of* an event.  
 Appropriate *to* the occasion.  
 Approve *of* an action.<sup>2</sup>  
 Approximate *to* the sum.  
 Apropos *of* a remark.  
 Apt (expert) *at* mathematics.<sup>3</sup>  
 Aptitude *for* business.  
 Arrive *at* a village or port.  
     *in* a country.  
     *at* a conclusion, resolution, &c.  
 Arrogate *to* oneself.  
 Ascribe glory *to* God.  
 Ashamed *of* one's conduct.  
 Ask a person *for* a thing.  
     *a* thing *of* a person.  
 Aspire *to, after*—fame.  
 Aspiration *after* fame.

<sup>1</sup> *Alien from* is also found.

<sup>2</sup> *Approve of* is common, but *approve* (without *of*) is more correct. Similarly, *accept of* is vulgar for *accept*. 'This empire *comprises* several states' is better than *is comprised of*.

<sup>3</sup> But 'Apt (liable) *to* make (not *at* making) mistakes.'



Assent (n. and v.) *to* conditions.  
 Assiduous *in* business.  
 Assigned *to* a person.  
 Assimilate *to, with* a thing.  
 Associate *with* a person or thing.  
 Assured *of* the truth.  
 Astonished *at* a proceeding.  
 Atone *for* a fault.  
 Attack (noun) *upon* the fort.  
 Attacked *with* fever.  
                   *by* robbers.  
 Attend<sup>1</sup> (listen) *to* a lecture or speaker.  
                   (wait) *upon* a person.  
 Attendance *upon* a person.  
                   *at* the Court.  
 Attentive *to* a lecture or speaker.  
 Attribute the loss *to* accident.  
 Avail oneself *of* an opportunity.  
 Averse *to*<sup>1</sup> study.  
 Avert danger *from* a person.  
 Aware *of* a matter.

Backward *in* one's studies.  
 Balk a person *of* his object.  
 Bare *of* grass.  
 Based *upon* facts.  
 Battle (n. and v.) *with* a foe.  
 Bear *with* one's weakness.  
 Beg a person *for* a thing.  
                   a thing *of* a person.  
 Begin *at* the first chapter.  
                   *with* the first part.  
                   *upon* a task.  
 Beguile a person *of* a thing.  
 Believe *in* one's sincerity.  
 Belong *to* a person.  
 Bend *to* the storm.  
 Beneficial *to* health.  
 Bent *on* a course of action.  
 Bereft *of* children.  
 Beset *with* difficulties.  
 Bestow a thing *upon* a person.  
 Betake oneself *to* a pursuit.  
 Betrayed *to* one's enemies.  
                   *into* one's enemy's hands.  
 Beware *of* mistakes.  
 Bigoted *in* his opinion.  
 Blest *with* children.  
 Blind *to* the consequences.  
                   *of* one eye.  
 Blush *at* one's conduct.  
                   *for* one's good name.  
 Boast (v. and n.) *of* success.

Border *on* the miraculous.  
 Born *of* a mother.  
                   *to* wealth.  
 Borrow *of, from*—a person.  
 Bound *in* honour or duty *to* confess.  
                   *by* considerations.  
 Bound (102) *for* Madras.  
 Brood *over, upon*—his wrongs.  
 Burst *into* tears.  
                   *upon* his vision.  
 Buy a thing *of* a person.

Calculate *upon* success.  
 Call *upon* (visit) a friend.  
                   *at* his house.  
                   *for* (request) a speech.  
 Capable *of* thought.  
 Capacity *for* thought.  
 Care (verb) *for, about*—pleasure.  
                   (noun) *of* one's welfare.  
 Careful *of* one's comfort.  
 Careless *of, about*—the consequences.  
 Carp *at* one's conduct.  
 Catch *at* an opportunity.  
 Caution *against* error.  
 Cautious *of* offending.  
 Cavil *at* an action.  
 Celebrated *for* skill.  
 Centred *in* self.  
 Certain *of* success.  
 Changed *into* an angel.  
 Characterised *by* versatility.  
 Characteristic *of* a person.  
 Charge a person *with* a business or  
                   crime.  
                   a payment *to* a person, or a  
                   property *with* a payment.

Cheated *of* his money.  
 Claim (noun) *upon* one.  
 Clamour (verb and noun) *for* justice.  
 Clash *with* one's designs.  
 Cleansed *from, of*—stain.  
 Clear (adj. and verb) *of* blame.  
 Cling *to* hope.  
 Close (adj.) *to, by*—the house.  
                   (verb) *with* an offer or a foe  
 Clothed *in* fine linen.  
                   *with* shame.  
 Clue *to* a mystery.  
 Coalesce *with* a person.  
 Coequal *with* another.  
 Cognate *with* the matter.  
 Cognisant *of* a matter.

<sup>1</sup> Some modern writers use the more correct 'averse from.'

Coincide *with* one's wishes.  
 Combat (v. and n.) *with* an enemy.  
 Combined *with* wealth.  
 Commemorative *of* a victory.  
 Commence *on* Monday.  
     *with* grammar.  
     *at* page 10.  
 Commended *to* one's care.  
 Commensurate *with* one's desire.  
 Comment (v. and n.) *on* a matter.  
 Committed *to* a course of action.  
 Common *to* both.  
 Communicate a thing *to* a person.  
     *with* a person *on* a thing.  
 Compare eloquence *with* learning.  
     eloquence *to* thunder.  
 Compatible *with* safety.  
 Compensate a person *for* his loss.  
 Compete *with* a person *for* a thing.  
 Competent *for* a post.  
 Complain *of* a person or thing.  
 Complaint *against* a person.  
     *about* a thing.  
 Compliment one *on* one's industry.  
 Comply *with* one's request.  
 Composed *of* a material.  
 Comprehended *in* a total.  
 Concentrated *on* a thing.  
 Concerned (anxious) *at*, *about*—an event.  
     *for* one, or *for* one's safety.  
     (taking part) *in* a matter.  
     (having to do) *with* a matter.  
 Concur *with* a person *in* his decision.  
 Condemned *to* death.  
 Condole *with* a person.  
 Conduce *to* success.  
 Conducive *to* health.  
 Confer a thing *upon* a person.  
     *about* a thing *with* a person.  
 Confess *to* a fault.  
 Confide (trust) *in* one's honour.  
     (entrust) a thing *to* a person.  
 Confidence *in* his honesty.  
 Confident *of* success.  
 Confined *in* a prison.  
     *to* one's bed.  
 Confirmed *in* the appointment.  
 Conform *to* a rule.  
 Conformity *to*, *with*—a pattern.  
 Confound the innocent *with* the guilty.  
 Confront a person *with* his accusers.  
 Congenial *to* one's tastes.

Congratulate one *on* one's success.  
 Congruous *to* the facts.  
 Connected *with* the press.  
 Connive *at* one's proceedings.  
 Conscious *of* guilt.  
 Consecrated *to* God  
 Consent *to* a proposal.  
 Consequent *upon* a business.  
 Consideration *for* a person.  
     *of* a matter.  
 Consign *to* destruction.  
 Consist (be composed) *of* materials.  
     (be contained) *in* causes or results.  
     (be consistent) *with* health, honour.  
 Consistent *with* safety.  
 Conspicuous *for* his talents.  
     *by* his absence.  
 Conspire *with* rebels *against* the king.  
 Constant *to* his purpose.  
 Contemporary *with* Gladstone  
 Contend *with* a foe.  
     *against* odds.  
 Contented *with* a little.  
 Contiguous *to* the border.  
 Contingent *upon* success.  
 Contrary *to* orders.  
 Contrasted *with* this.  
 Contrast (noun) *to* this.  
 Contribute *to* the fund.  
 Control (noun) *over*, *of*—one's actions  
 Convenient *for* travelling.  
 Converge *to* a point.  
 Conversant *with* persons or things.  
 Converted *into* money.  
     *to* a faith.  
 Convicted *of* a crime.  
 Convinced *of* his error.  
 Convulsed *with* laughter.  
 Cope *with* a person.  
 Correspond (write) *with* a friend.  
     (agree) *to*, *with*—a thing.  
 Count *upon* your help.  
     *for* nothing.  
 Covered *with* glory.  
 Covetous *of* gain.  
 Grave *for*, *after*—wealth.  
 Credited *to* his account.  
 Cure a person *of* a disease.  
 Customary *for* a person.  
 Cut *in*, *into*—pieces (of meat, etc.).  
     *to* pieces (of troops, etc.).  
 Dabble *in* chemistry.

Dally *with* a person.  
 Dawn (verb) *upon* a person.  
 Deaf *to* entreaty.  
 Deal *with* a person.  
     (fairly) *by* a person.  
     *in* cotton, tea.  
 Dear *to* me.  
 Debar *from* competing.  
 Decide *upon* a course.  
 Dedicated *to* the King.  
 Deduced *from* the premisses.  
 Defective *in* manner, body.  
 Defer *to* one's wishes.  
 Deficient *in* learning.  
 Deformed *in* one's limbs.  
 Defraud a person *of* his due.  
 Degenerate *into* a scribbler.  
 Deliberate *upon* a matter.  
 Delight (v. and n.) *in* study.  
 Delighted *with* success.  
 Deluged *with* water.  
 Demand a thing *of* a person.  
     (noun) *for* a thing.  
 Demur *to* a proposal.  
 Depend *on* one's efforts.  
 Dependent *on* your help.  
 Depose *to* facts.  
 Deprive a person *of* a thing.  
 Derive pleasure *from* walking.  
 Derogate *from* one's reputation.  
 Derogatory *to* one's reputation.  
 Descant (v. and n.) *upon* a matter.  
 Descriptive *of* the country.  
 Deserving *of* blame.  
 Design (noun) *upon* his life.  
 Designed *for* a purpose.  
 Desire (noun) *for* fame.  
 Desirous *of* fame.  
 Desist *from* an attempt.  
 Despair (v. and n.) *of* success.  
 Despoil a person *of* a thing.  
 Destined *to* the gallows.  
 Destitute *of* money.  
 Destructive *of* health.  
 Determined *upon* an action.  
 Deterred *from* his purpose.  
 Detract *from* one's fame.  
 Detrimental *to* one's interests.  
 Deviate *from* truth.  
 Devoid *of* truth.  
 Devolve *upon* a person.

Devoted *to* one's studies, parents, &c.  
 Dexterous *in, at*—manual operations.  
 Die *of* a disease, wounds, cold.  
     *by* hanging, poison, violence.  
 Differ *from* (to be unlike).  
     *with* (to be at variance *with*).  
 Difference *between* two things.  
 Different *from* that.  
 Diffident *of* success.  
 Digress *from* the point.  
 Dilate *upon* a matter.  
 Diligent *in* business.  
 Disappointed *of* success.<sup>1</sup>  
     *in* the result.  
 Discrepant *from* the text.  
 Discriminate *between* right and wrong.  
 Disgust *at* his conduct.  
 Disgusted *with* a person.  
     *with, at*—a thing.  
 (No) Disparagement *to* one's courage.  
 (Your) Disparagement *of* my courage.  
 Dispense *with* one's services.  
 Displeased *with* you.  
     *with, at*—your conduct.  
 Dispose *of* property.  
 Dispute *with* a person.  
 Disqualified *for, from*—competing.  
     *for* a post.  
 Dissent (v. and n.) *from* a proposal.  
 Dissuaded *from* an attempt.  
 Distasteful *to* me.  
 Distinct *from* that.  
 Distinguish *between* two things.  
     one thing *from* another.  
 Distinguished *for* his writings.  
     *by* a pointed chin.  
 Distracted *with* pain.  
 Distrustful *of* succeeding.  
 Dive *into* the water.  
 Diverge *from* the main road.  
 Diverted *from* his work.  
 Divested *of* authority.  
 Divided *in* half.  
     *into* parts.  
 Doat *upon* riding.  
 Domineer *over* one's inferiors.  
 Doubt (v. and n.) *of* one's ability.  
 Dream (v. and n.) *of* power.  
 Drenched *with* rain.  
 Drunk *with* joy.

<sup>1</sup> We are *disappointed of* a thing, when we fail to get it; *in* a thing, after we have got it.

Dubious *of* success.  
 Due *to* old age.  
 Dull *of* hearing.  
 Dwell *upon* a subject.  
 Dwindle *into* nothing.

Eager *for* distinction.  
 Eased *of* his load.  
 Easy *of* access.  
 Economical *of* time.  
 Effect (noun) *upon* his health.  
 Effective *for* the purpose.  
 Elicit the truth *from* a person.  
 Eligible *for* an appointment.  
     *to* an office.

Embark *on* an enterprise.  
     *in* speculation.

Embittered *against* a person.  
 Embodied *in* the motion.  
 Emboldened *by* poverty.  
 Eminent *for* genius.  
 Employed *in* writing.  
 Emulous *of* distinction.  
 Enamoured *with* a person.  
     *of* a thing.

Encroach *upon* one's rights.  
 End *in* nothing.  
 Endeavour (n. and v.) *after, for—*  
     *happiness.*

Endowed, endued *with* talents.  
 Engaged *to* a suitor.  
     *in* a business.

Engraved *on* the memory.  
 Engrossed *in* business.  
 Enjoin *upon* a person.  
 Enlarge *upon* a topic.  
 Enlist *in* the army.  
 Enmity *to* foreigners.  
 Enquire—see *Inquire*.  
 Enrolled *in* the band.  
 Entail mischief *upon* a person.  
 Entangled *in* a scheme.  
 Enter *upon* a career.  
     *into* one's views.

Entertained *with* music.  
 Entitled *to* a hearing.  
 Entrust—see *Intrust*.  
 Enveloped *in* a fog.  
 Envious *of* one's success.  
 Envy (noun) *at* one's success.  
 Equal *to* the task.

Equivalent (adj.) *to* the cost.  
     (noun) *for* the gift.  
 Escape (n. and v.) *from* prison.  
 Essential *to* one's happiness.  
 Estimate *at* its true value.  
 Estranged *from* one's friend.  
 Even *with* an opponent.  
 Exact payment *from* a person.  
 Excel *in* painting.  
 Excepted *from* punishment.  
 Exception *to* the rule.  
 Exchange one thing *for* another.  
 Excluded *from* the list.  
 Exclusive *of* extras.  
 Excuse a person *from* attendance.  
     (noun) *for* one's conduct.  
 Exempt (adj. and v.) *from* control.  
 Exhausted *with* his efforts.  
 Exonerated *from* blame.  
 Expatriate *on* the advantages.  
 Expensive *in* his habits.  
 Experienced *in* warfare.  
 Expert *at, in—*drawing.  
 Exposed *to* danger.  
 Expostulate *with* a person.  
 Expressive *of* satisfaction.  
 Extorted *from* him.  
 Extravagant *in* his expenditure.  
 Extricated *from* a difficulty.  
 Exult *over* a person.  
     *in* his misfortunes.

Fail *in* one's attempt.  
     *of* one's purpose.  
 Familiar *with* a language.<sup>1</sup>  
 Famous *for* his skill.  
 Far *from* home.  
 Fatal *to* his hopes.  
 Favourable *to* his hopes.  
 Favoured *with* one's approval.<sup>2</sup>  
 Fawn (verb) *upon* a person.  
 Fearful *of* the consequences.  
 Feed (intrans.) *on* rice.  
     (trans.) *with* fuel.  
 Fertile *in* expedients.  
 Fight *with, against—*an enemy.  
 Filled *with* fear.  
 Fire (verb) *at* a man.  
     *upon* a mob.  
 Fired *with* zeal.  
 Firm *in* his opinions.

<sup>1</sup> But a language is *familiar to* a person.

<sup>2</sup> But a letter is 'kindly favoured' (transmitted) *by* a person.

Fit *for* service.  
 Fitted *for* a post.  
 Fix *upon* a day.  
 Flash *upon* one's mind.  
 Flinch *from* danger.  
 Flirt (verb) *with* a person.  
 Flushed *with* victory.  
 Fly *at* its prey.  
     *into* a passion.  
 Foiled *in* an attempt.  
 Fond *of* jesting.  
 Fondness *for* jesting.  
 Foreign *to* the purpose.  
 Forgetful *of* his promise.  
 Founded *upon* fact.  
 Fraught *with* evil.  
 Free (adj. and v.) *from* blame.  
     *of* expense.  
     (adj.) *of* the city of London.  
     *with* his money.  
 Free *at* his refusal.  
 Frown *at, upon*—a person.<sup>1</sup>  
 Fruitful *in* resources.  
 Fruitless *of* profit.  
 Full *of* joy.  
 Furnished *with* money.

Gaze *at, on*—the prospect.  
 Germane *to* the matter.  
 Gifted *with* talents.  
 Glad *of, at*—the result.  
 Glance (v. and n.) *at* an object.  
     *over* a surface.  
 Glory (verb) *in* one's success.  
 Good *for* nothing.  
     *at* arithmetic.  
 Grapple *with* a difficulty.  
 Grasp *at* gains.  
 Grateful *to* a person.  
     *for* a thing.  
 Greedy *of, after*—riches.  
 Grieve *at, for*—an event.  
     *for* a person.  
 Grounded *in* a subject.  
     *on* fact.  
 Grumble *at* a rule.  
 Guard (protect) *from* harm.  
     (watch) *against* mistakes.  
 Guilty *of* murder.  
 Habituated *to* abuse.

Hanker *after* wealth.  
 Happen *to* a person.  
 Happy *in* his marriage.  
 Hatred *of, for*—falsehood.  
 Healed *of* his disease.  
 Hear *from* a person.  
     *of* an event.  
 Heedless *of* the consequences.  
 Hesitate *at* nothing.  
 Hindered *from* going.  
 Hindrance *to* study.  
 Hinge (verb) *upon* a decision.  
 Hint (v. and n.) *at* a reward.  
 Hit (verb) *upon* a plan.  
 Honoured *with* your confidence.  
 Hope (v. and n.) *for* success.  
 Hopeful *of* success.  
 Hostile *to* my advances.  
 Hover *over* the nest.  
 Hunt *for* a lost object.  
     *after* gain.  
 Hurtful *to* his prospects.

Identical *with* this.  
 Identified *with* one.  
 Ignorant *of* everything.  
 Ill *of* fever.  
 Illustrative *of* a question.  
 Imbued *with* confidence.  
 Immaterial *to* the argument.  
 Immersed *in* pleasure.  
 Immune *from* infection.  
 Impart *a thing to* a person.  
 Impatient *of* control.  
     *for* payment.  
     *with* your conduct.  
 Impediment *to* progress.  
 Impelled *by* necessity.  
 Impend *over* his head.  
 Impertinent *to* his master.  
 Impervious *to* rain, argument.  
 Implicated *in* the robbery.  
 Impose *upon* a person.  
 Impress *a thing upon* a person.  
 Improve *on* one's predecessors.  
 Impute blame *to* a person.  
 Inaccessible *to* attack.  
 Inadequate *to* the task.  
 Incapable *of* improvement.  
 Incapacitated *for* employment.

<sup>1</sup> But, when used metaphorically, both *frown* and *smile* are followed by *upon* only: as, 'Fortune frowned (or smiled) *upon* (not *at*) him.'

Incapacity *for* office.  
 Incentive *to* diligence.  
 Incident (adj.) *to* the matter.  
 Incidental (adj.) *to* the matter.  
 Inclined *to* indulgence.  
 Included *in* the catalogue.  
 Inclusive *of* expenses.  
 Inconsistent *in* his action.  
                     *with* the facts.  
 Incorporated *with* oil.  
                     *in* the Empire.  
 Inculcate *upon* a person.  
 Incumbent *upon* a person.  
 Indebted *to* the mahajan.  
                     *in* a large sum.  
 Independent *of* your help.  
 Indicative *of* change.  
 Indifferent *to* his complaints.  
 Indignant *at* his conduct.  
                     *with* him.  
 Indispensable *to* success.  
 Indulge *in* excess.  
 Indulgent *to* his children.  
 Infatuated *by, with*—his triumph.  
                     *with* a person.  
 Infected *with* disease.  
 Infested *with* rats.  
 Infirm *of* purpose.  
 Inflamed *with* passion.  
 Inflated *with* pride.  
 Inflict punishment *on* a criminal.  
 Influence (n.) *over, with*—a person.  
                     *on* his decision.  
 Inform. a person *of* a thing.  
                     *against* a person.  
 Infringe *on* his rights.  
 Infused *into* a mixture.  
 Ingratiate oneself *with* a person.  
 Inherent *in* the matter.  
 Inimical *to* a proceeding.  
 Injurious *to* his interests.  
 Innocent *of* a crime.  
 Inquire *into, about*—a matter.  
                     *of* a person (ask him).  
                     *for* a person (ask where  
                     he is).  
                     *after* one's health.  
 Insensible *to* pain.  
 Inserted *in* the book.  
 Insist *upon* your going.  
 Inspired *with* hope.  
 Instructed *in* the art.  
 Intemperate *in* his diet.  
 Intent *upon* his studies.  
 Intercede *with one for another.*

Interested *in* knowing.  
 Interfere *in* a business.  
                     *with* an attempt.  
                     *with* other people.  
                     *in* other people's affairs.  
 Intersect *with* each other.  
 Intimate (adj.) *with* a person.  
                     (verb) *to* a person.  
 Intolerant *of* opposition.  
 Intoxicated *with* opium.  
 Intrench *upon* his rights.  
 Introduced *into* a room.  
                     *to* a person.  
 Intrude *upon* one's leisure.  
                     *into* a garden.  
 Intrust a person *with* a thing.  
                     a thing *to* a person.  
 Inundated *with* applications.  
 Inured *to* fatigue.  
 Inveigh *against* injustice.  
 Inveigled *into* a scheme.  
 Invested *with* authority.  
                     *in* the funds.  
 Invited *to* dinner.  
 Involved *in* debt.  
 Irrelevant *to* the question.  
 Irrespective *of* the consequences.  
 Issue (verb) *from* a spring.  
 Jealous *of* his renown.  
 Jest (v. and n.) *at* his misery.  
 Join *with* a person *in* a thing.  
 Joined *to, with*—wealth.  
 Joy *in* his good luck.  
 Judge (v. and n.) *of* a question.  
 Jump *at* an offer.  
 Kick *at, against*—opposition.  
 Knock *at* the door.  
 Known *to* all.  
                     *for* his talents.  
                     *by* this name.  
 Labour *under* a delusion.  
 Laden *with* wheat.  
 Lame *of* one leg.  
 Languish *for* home.  
 Laugh *at* a joke.  
 Lavish (adj.) *of* money.  
                     (verb) money *on* trifles.  
 Lax *in* his morals.  
 Lead *into* temptation.  
 Lean *upon* my arm.  
                     *against* the wall.  
                     *to* an opinion.

**Level** (adj.) *with* the surface.  
 (verb) a house *with* the ground.  
                                   a gun *at* an object.

**Liable** *to* injury.

*for* his actions.

**Libel** (noun) *on* a person.

**Light** (verb) *upon* a quotation.

(noun) *upon* a subject.

**Limit** (noun) *to* my forbearance.

**Limited** *to* an allowance.

**Listen** *to* a person or a speech.

*for* a mispronunciation.

**Live** *in* Calcutta.

*at* 3, Camac St.

*on* milk.

*by* selling matches.

**Loaded** *with* corn.

**Long** (verb) *for*, *after*—fame.

**Lost** *to* all sense of shame.

*in* thought.

**Made** *of* money.

**March** *to* (go *to*) the camp.

*upon* (attack) the fortress.

**Marked** *with* ink.

*by* unselfishness.

**Marry** one person *to* another.<sup>1</sup>

*into* a family.

**Martyr** *to* the gout.

**Material** (adj.) *to* the business.

**Meddle** *with*, *in*—a matter.

**Mediate** *between* the disputants.

**Meditate** *upon* a doctrine.

**Meet** *with* a rebuff.

**Menaced** *with* punishment.

**Merged** *in* the total.

**Militate** *against* a theory.

**Mindful** *of* his promise.

**Minister** (verb) *to* one's wants.

**Mistaken** *in* his conclusion.

**Mix**, mingle *in* society.

*with* one's fellows.

**Moved** *at* the sight.

*by*, *with*—his entreaties.

*to* tears.

**Murmur** *at* his decision.

**Muse** (verb) *over* life's changes.

**Natural** *to* a person.

**Necessary** *for*, *to*—a purpose.

**Necessity** *of* the case.

*for* indulgence.

**Need** (noun) *of*, *for*—food.

**Needful** *for*, *to*—his wants.

**Neglectful** *of* his friends.

**Negligent** *in* business.

**Nibble** *at* a bait.

**Noted** *for* his skill.

**Notorious** *for* his crimes.

**Obedient** *to* parents.

**Object** (verb) *to* his interference.

**Obligatory** *on* a person.

**Obligated** *to* a person *for* a thing.

**Oblivious** *of* duty.

**Obnoxious** *to* a person.

**Observant** *of* his wishes.

**Obstacle** *to* success.

**Obstinate** *in* his conduct.

**Obstructive** *to* his design.

**Obtrude** one's views *on* others.

**Occupied** *with* a business.<sup>2</sup>

**Occur** *to* a person.

**Odious** *to* a person.

**Offend** *against* a rule.

**Offended** *with* a person.

*at* an action.

**Offensive** *to* a person.

**Officiate** *for* a person.

*in* a post.

**Officious** *in* his attentions.

**Open** (adj.) *to* the sky, *to* conviction.

**Operate** *upon* a patient.

**Operations** *against* an enemy.

**Opposed** *to* experience.

**Opposite** *to* the house.

**Originate** *with* a person.

*in* a thing.

**Overcome** (p.p.) *with* fatigue.

*by* entreaties.

**Overwhelmed** *with* grief.

*by* a wave.

**Pant** *for* breath.

**Parallel** *to* a line.

**Paramount** *to* everything.

**Parody** (noun) *on*, *of*—a poem.

**Part** (verb) *from* a friend.

<sup>1</sup> Said of the clergyman or of the father of the bride. A man *marries* or is *married to* a woman, and *vice versa*. Shakespeare speaks of one person *marrying with* another.

<sup>2</sup> But a house is *occupied by* a person; and one is *occupied in* writing a letter.

Part *with* money.  
 Partake *of* refreshment.  
 Partial *to* his eldest son.  
 Partiality *for, to*—poetry.  
 Participate *with* a person.  
                   *in* his gains.  
 Pass *by* his door.  
                   *over* his errors.  
                   *for* a man of means.  
 Passion *for* gambling.  
 Patient *of* insult.  
 Paved *with* stone.  
 Peculiar *to* the case.  
 Penetrate *into* a recess.  
 Penetrated *with* a desire.  
 Penitent *for* his faults.  
 Penurious *in* his habits.  
 Perplexed *at* his folly.  
 Persevere *in* an attempt.  
 Persist *in* his misconduct.  
 Persuaded *to* a course.  
 Pertain *to* the question.  
 Pitch (verb) *upon* one's head.  
 Play *at* cricket.  
                   *on* the sitara.  
 Pleased *with* you.  
                   *with, at*—your conduct.  
 Pledged *to* secrecy.  
 Plot (n. and v.) *against* his life.  
 Plunged *into* the water.  
                   *in* thought.  
 Polite *in* his manners.  
                   *to* his friends.  
 Ponder *over* your advice.  
 Popular *with* his neighbours.  
                   *for* his kindness.  
 Possessed *of* wealth.  
                   *with, by*—an idea, a dev.  
 Practised *in* deceit.  
 Precious *to* a person.  
 Precluded *from* acceptance.  
 Predilection *for* mathematics.  
 Prefer one thing *to* another.  
 Preferable *to* poverty.  
 Prefixed *to* a document.  
 Pregnant *with* meaning.  
 Prejudice (n. and v.) *against* a person.  
 Prejudicial *to* his interests.  
 Preliminary *to* an inquiry.  
 Prepare *for* the worst.  
                   *against* defeat.

Preparatory *to* the inquiry.  
 Preponderate *over* a thing.  
 Prepossessed *with* a notion.  
 Present a thing *to* a person.  
                   a person *with* a thing.  
 Presented *to* the view.  
 Preside *over* the meeting.  
 Press *upon* one's notice.  
 Presume *upon* his kindness.  
 Pretend *to* infallibility.  
 Pretext *for* interference.  
 Prevail *with, upon* (persuade) a person.<sup>1</sup>  
                   *over, against* (overcome) a person.  
 Prevented *from* going.  
 Previous *to* an event.  
 Prey (noun) *to* avarice.  
                   (verb) *upon* one's mind.  
 Pride *in* his birth.  
                   oneself *on* one's skill.  
 Privy *to* the secret.  
 Proceed *with* (continue) a business.  
                   *to* (commence) business.  
 Prodigal (adj.) *of* his gifts.  
 Productive *of* happiness.  
 Proficient *in* algebra.  
 Profitable *to* the seller.  
 Profuse *in* apologies.  
 Prohibited *from* coming.  
 Prompt (adj.) *in* his answers.  
 Prompted *by* bad motives.  
 Prone *to* idleness.  
 Proportionate *to* his wants.  
 Protected *from* harm.  
                   *against* attack.  
 Protest (v. and n.) *against* his proceedings.  
 Proud *of* his wealth.  
 Provide *for* his children.  
                   *against* mischance.  
 Provided *with* clothes.  
 Provident *in* his expenditure.  
 Proximity *to* a town.  
 Pry *into* his doings.  
 (In) Pursuance *of* his enquiries  
 Purged *of, from* guilt.  
 Pursuant *to* his enquiries.  
 Puzzled *at* his conduct.  
 Qualified *for* the post.

<sup>1</sup> We say, 'No arguments prevailed with him'; but, 'I prevailed upon him to submit.'



Quarrel (v. and n.) *with* a person.  
*over, about*—a thing.

Quartered *on* the village.

Quick *at* multiplication.

Rail *at* men's follies.

Ready *for* departure.

*at* figures.

*in* his answers.

Reason (verb) *with* him.

Rebel (verb) *against* the king.

Reckless *of* the consequences.

Reckon *on* a profit.

*with* a person.

Recompense (n. and v.) him *for* his pains.

Reconciled *to* the loss.

*with* justice.

Recourse *to* medicines.

Recover *of, from*—a disease

Redolent *of* camphor.

Redound *to* one's credit.

Reduced *to* poverty.

Refer *to* a matter.

Reflect *upon* a matter.

Refrain *from* drink.

Regard (n., care) *for* his interests.

(In) Regard (reference) *to* a question.

Regardful *of* his interests.

Relapse (v. and n.) *into* idleness.

Related *to* a family.

Relation *to* a matter.

Relations *with* a person.

Relative *to* the question.

Relevant *to* the subject.

Relieved *of, from*—a burden, service.

Relish *for* food.

Rely *on* a promise.

Remark (verb) *upon* his conduct.

Remarkable *for* her beauty.

Remedy *for* a disease.

Reminded *of* a thing.

Remiss *in* his conduct.

Remonstrate *with* a person.

Remorse *for* crime.

Rendered *into* English.

Renowned *for* his achievements.

Repent *of* a fault.

Repentance *for* sin.

Repine *at* misfortunes.

Replace one thing *by* another.

Replete *with* luxury.

Repose (verb) confidence *in* a person.  
(n. and v.) *on* a bed.

Repugnant *to* his wishes.

Request (noun) *for* a favour.

Require a thing *of, from*—a person.

Requisite *for* the purpose.

Resigned *to* his fate.

Resistance *to* an attack.

Resolved *upon* a course of action.  
*into* its elements.

Resort (v. and n.) *to* strong measures.

Respect (noun) *for* his master.

(In) Respect *of* a matter.

(With) Respect *to* a matter.

Respectful *to, towards*—superiors.

Respond *to* a call.

Responsible *to* the law *for* one's actions.

Rest (n. and v.) *on* a sofa.  
*in* a belief.

Restricted *to* a low diet.

Result (noun) *of* the examination.

(verb) *from* the evidence  
(cause).

*in* the verdict (effect).

Retentive *of* facts.

Retire *from* business.

*into* private life.  
*to* bed.

Retort *upon* an accuser.

Revol (verb) *in* luxury.

Revenge *on, upon*—his enemies.

(The) Reverse *of* polite (manners).

Revolt *from* allegiance.

Rich *in* houses.

Rid *of* the business.

Ripe *for* revolt.

Rob a traveller *of* his money.

Rule (v. and n.) *over* a country.

Sacred *to* his memory.

Sacrificed *to* idols.

Sanguine *of* success.

Satiated *with* enjoyment.

Satisfied (content) *with* a little.

(convinced) *of* his innocence.

Saturated *with* moisture.

Savour *of* malice.

Search (v. and n.) *for, after*—happiness.

(In) Search (n.) *of* happiness

Secondary *to* that.

Secure *from, against*—attack.

Seek *for, after*—gold.

Seize *upon* the property.

Seizure *of* the property.

Sensible *of* your kindness

Sensitive *to* blame.

Serve *in* the army.  
     *for* an excuse.  
     one *with* a summons.  
     a summons *upon* one.  
 Serviceable *to* a person.  
 Short *of* money.  
 Sick (tired) *of* doing nothing.  
 Side (verb) *with* a person.  
 Significant *of* his intentions.  
 Similar *to* this.  
 Sin (v. and n.) *against* God.  
 Skillful *at* drawing.  
 Skilled *in* music.  
 Slothful *in* business.  
 Slow *of* speech.  
     *at* his business.  
 Slur (verb) *over* (adv.) the matter.  
     (noun) *on* his character.  
 Smell *of* the lamp.  
 Smile *at, upon*—a person.<sup>1</sup>  
 Smitten *with* a disease.  
 Snatch *at* an opportunity.  
 Sneer *at* a person or thing.  
 Solicited *for* his vote.  
 Solicitous *of* a reply.  
 Sorry *for* his misfortunes.  
 Sparing *of* blame.  
 Specific *for, against*—cholera.  
 Speculate *in* shares.  
     *upon* possibilities.  
 Spite *against* a person.  
 Stained *with* vices.  
 Stare *at* a person.  
     a person *in* the face.  
 Start (set out) *for* Bombay.  
 Steal *into* a place.  
     *upon* a person.  
 Steer *for* the shore.  
 Stick *to* your work.  
     *at* nothing.  
 Stimulus *to* exertion.  
 Stoop *to* baseness.  
 Stripped *of* his property.  
 Strive *with, against*—opposition.  
     *for* truth.  
 Subject (adj.) *to* his decision.  
 Submit *to* authority.  
 Subordinate (adj.) *to* this.  
 Subscribe *to* a fund.  
 Subsequent *to* an event.  
 Subservient *to* the king.

Subsist *upon* rice.  
 Substitute one thing *for* another.  
 Subversive *of* discipline.  
 Succeed *to* an estate.  
     *in* an undertaking.  
 Succumb *to* a disease.  
 Sufficient *for* the purpose.  
 Suffer *from* fever.  
     *for* past follies.  
 Suffocated *with* dust.  
 Suitable *for* the purpose.  
     *to* his income.  
 Suited *to* one's taste.  
 Supplementary *to* the question.  
 Supply a person *with* a thing.  
     a thing *to* a person.  
 Sure *of* success.  
 Surprised *at* the news.  
 Surrender (n. and v.) *to* the foe.  
 Susceptible *of* explanation.  
     *to* an influence.  
 Suspected *of* theft.  
 Suspicious *of* his intentions.  
 Swerve *from* the right path.  
 Sympathize *with* a person.  
 Sympathy *for, with*—a person.  
     *with* his opinions.  
 Synonym *for* a word.  
 Synonymous *with* that.  
 Tamper *with* the accounts.  
 Tantamount *to* a refusal.  
 Taste (n. and v.) *of* salt.  
     (noun) *for* music.  
 Teem *with* fish.  
 Temperate *in* his diet.  
 Tenacious *of* his rights.  
 Tend *to* prosperity.  
 Testify *to* his innocence.  
 Testimonial *to* his merits.  
 Thankful *to* a person *for* a thing.  
 Think *of* me.  
     *on, over*—my advice.  
 Thirst (n. and v.) *for* revenge.  
 Tide *over* a difficulty.  
 Tired *of* waiting.  
     *with* his exertions.  
 Tolerant *of* criticism.  
 Touch *at* a port.  
     *upon* a subject.  
 Touched *with* pity *at* his distress.

<sup>1</sup> See foot-note to *frown* above. *Smile at*=to be amused at, to deride; *Smile upon*=to be pleased with, to favour.

Trade (n. and v.) *in* rice

Trample *upon* justice.

Translated *into* Bengali.

*to a sea.*

Transported *with* joy.

Treat *of* a subject.

*with* a person.

*him to* a dinner.

Trench *upon* his rights.

Trespass *against* a person.

*upon* his premises or  
patience.

Trifle (verb) *with* his feelings.

Triumph (v. and n.) *over* obstacles.

True *to* one's word.

Trust (v. and n.) *in* Providence (have  
faith *in*).

(verb) *to* my judgment (depend  
*upon*).

Umbrage *at* his conduct.

Uniform *with* the series.

Unison *with* his character.

Unite *with* others.

United (married) *to* a peer.

Unsuitable—see *Suitable*.

Unsuited—see *Suited*.

Upbraided *with* his treachery.

Urged *upon* his consideration.

Used *to* cycling.

Useful *to* a person *for* a purpose.

Vain *of* his fine clothes.

Variance *with* a person.

Veiled *in* mist.

Versed *in* science.

Vested *in* a magistrate.  
*with* powers.

Vexed *with* a person.  
*at* a thing.

Victim *of* oppression.  
*to* jealousy.

Victorious *over* difficulty.

Vie *with* him *in* luxury.

Void *of* meaning.

Wait *upon* (attend) a person.  
*for* (stay *for*) a person *or*  
thing.

Want (noun) *of* money.

Wanting *in* consideration.

War *with* Russia.

Warned *of* his danger.  
*against* the conspirator.

Wary *in* one's schemes.  
*of* another's schemes.

Weaned *from* a habit.

Weary *of* delay.

Wedded *to* his studies.

Wink *at* his carelessness.

Wish *for* quiet.

Work (verb) *upon* one's feelings.

Worthy *of* praise.

Wrapped *in* mystery.

Wrestle *with* difficulties.

Yield *to* persuasion.

Zealous *for* liberty.

Zest *for* enjoyment.

## CHAPTER VIII.

### PHRASAL USES OF WORDS.

#### PHRASAL USES OF PREPOSITIONS.

420. Prepositions were originally Adverbs expressing relation in *Space*, next they were applied to relation in *Time*, and lastly they were used figuratively to mark relation to other *Attendant Circumstances* :—

I was present *at* the Court (*Space*) *at* twelve o'clock (*Time*) *at* your request (*Attendant Circumstance*).

We can conceive of various Space-relations, which may be denoted by appropriate prepositions. These relations may be conceived of in connexion with the notions either of *Rest* or *Motion* :—

REST		
Rest near with contact	<i>at</i>	I was <i>at</i> home.
Rest near without contact	<i>by</i>	I stood <i>by</i> him.
	<i>with</i>	I sat <i>with</i> him.
Rest on the surface	<i>on</i>	The house is <i>on</i> the hill.
Rest in the interior	<i>in</i>	He rides <i>in</i> a carriage.
MOTION		
Motion towards, resulting in contact	<i>to</i>	He is gone <i>to</i> school.
Motion towards, before it results in contact	<i>for</i>	He sailed <i>for</i> Japan.
Motion away from the upper surface	<i>of</i>	The balloon passed within 100 yards <i>of</i> the ground.
	<i>off</i>	He jumped <i>off</i> the chair.
Motion away from the exterior	<i>from</i>	He came <i>from</i> the town.
Motion along the interior	<i>through</i>	The carpenter bored <i>through</i> the plank.
Motion to a higher point	<i>up</i>	He ran <i>up</i> the ladder.

These are the simple prepositions ; the rest, expressing these and other new relations, are all derivatives of these simple

forms. Prepositions will now be considered in detail, with special reference to the numerous idiomatic phrases in which they occur.

### About.

421. **About** (*on-by-out*, *on* that which is *by* the *outside*) has for its primary meaning *close proximity to the outside*, as in 'Bind them *about* thy neck' (*Bible*), 'Have you any money *about* you' (*on your person*)? 'Keep your wits *about* you' (*close to you, so as to be ready for use*). Then it is used more generally in the sense of *over*, *around*, as in 'A man *about* town' (*one who frequents fashionable town resorts*), 'To beat *about* the bush' (*a metaphor from hunting; to deal with the mere surroundings of a matter; not to come to the point*).

Hence it is used figuratively in the sense of—

(1) *Close to, on the verge of*:—

It is *about* three o'clock. I will come in *about* five minutes. This happened *about* a year ago [cf. its adverbial use in 'I am *about* tired out'; 'This wall is *about* as high as that'; 'His health is much *about* (very nearly) the same as it was yesterday']. He is *about* to be married.

(2) *Engaged in* (of occupations):—

I must be *about* my Father's business (*Bible*). I sent him *about* (to engage in) his business (implying angry or abrupt dismissal). What are you *about*?<sup>1</sup> (what are you doing?) Mind you set *about* the inquiry at once (set yourself to engage in it).

(3) *On all sides of, concerning*:—

To consult *about* a matter. Tell us all *about* the war. I will see *about* this. What *about* your promise? Go for the doctor, and be quick *about* (not at) it.

422. **Adverbial Uses.**—*About* is used as an adverb in the following phrases:—

He went two miles *about* (he made a *circuit* of two miles). They did it turn and turn *about* (every one in his turn). *About* ship! (turn her round) To turn (*or face*) *about* (round). To wander *about*. To come *about* (to come round, to happen). To bring *about* (to cause to happen). To be *about* (to be astir; as, after an illness). He cast *about* for (tried to find) an opportunity. He is too ill to get *about* (to leave the house). The men were hanging *about* (loitering near).

### Above.

423. **Above** (*on-by-up*, *on* that which is *by* the *upper* side) means primarily *close proximity to the upper surface*; and then it

<sup>1</sup>Here *about* indicates no very direct contact with the work—no open and definite aim; hence the question implies slight fault-finding.

is used merely in the sense of *higher than*, of position or order: as, 'I will catch him, if he is *above* ground' (unburied, alive), 'He managed to keep his head *above* water' (he avoided failure or bankruptcy), 'He was fair and *above* board' (honourable, straight-forward), 'He is *above* me in the class.'

Hence it is used figuratively in the sense of—

(1) *Out of the range of, beyond* :—

This is *above* my comprehension. His conduct is *above* suspicion. He lives *above* his means (spends more than his income). He did not *speak above* a whisper—*above* his breath (he spoke softly).

(2) *More than* (of quantity or degree) :—

Not *above* fifty people were present. The subscriptions came to *above* Rs. 500. I value this *above* everything. *Above* all (cf. *before* all and *beyond* all), be punctual. One day *above* the rest (particularly). This stock is *above* par (at a higher than the nominal value).

(3) *Superior to* :—

I am *above* such meanness. He is not *above* asking a favour. I am not *above* work (too proud to work). A man should not be *above* his business. He is *above* the common (not an ordinary man).

### Across.

**424. Across** (*on cross*, cross-wise) indicates *intersection*, and hence is used to indicate—

(1) *Motion from one side of a thing to the other* :—

A road runs *across* the plain. He sailed *across* the Atlantic Ocean.

(2) *Position on the other side of a thing* :—

My house is just *across* the street.

(3) *Position on both sides of a thing*; hence *contiguity* :—

He threw the load *across* his shoulders. I have not been *across* a horse (ridden a horse) for years. I came *across* him (*lit.* met him at an angle or sideways) yesterday.

### After.

**425. After** (*af-ter*, more off) indicates *distance measured from the back part* of a thing; hence it has the meaning of *behind*, with the notion of *following* or *sequence*, as 'He ran *after* me,' 'Ram was examined *after* the other boys.'

Hence it is used in the sense of—

(1) *Behind*, with the notion of *sequence in time* :—

Day *after* day passed by. He came night *after* night. He arrived *after dark* (after darkness had set in). To be *after* the fair (to be too late to share in some pleasure).

(2) *In accordance with, in imitation of:—*

He is a man *after* my own heart (just suited to my liking; cf. 'to my mind'). This boy takes *after* his father (is like his father in habits, disposition, etc.). Let us make man in our image, *after* our likeness (*Bible*). This picture is *after* Turner (painted in imitation of his style). He is named *after* his uncle. They acted *after* the fashion (or manner) of the times (according to the practice of). He succeeded—*after* a sort, *after* a fashion (to some extent).

(3) *In quest of, in regard to:—*

Seekers *after* God. He hankers *after* wealth. What are you *after*?<sup>1</sup> (what are you doing?) I inquired *after* his health. Please to see *after* (attend to) this matter. I have a man to look *after* the cattle.

(4) *As a result of, and so, in spite of:—*

*After* what you have said, I consent. Did you go then, *after* all? (denoting an *unexpected* consequence). You see that *after* all (in spite of all that was said or done) you were wrong. I succeeded *after* all (in spite of everything to the contrary). Cf. 743.

**Against.**

**426. Against** (*on going, in the way*) indicates *opposition*, as in 'To go *against* the stream' (metaph. for 'to be opposed to the general or popular course'), 'They complied much *against* the grain' (metaph. for 'unwillingly'), '*Against* (opposite to) the house there stands a tree,' 'Over *against* (opposite to at a distance) the park there is a lake.' Hence it marks *collision*, as 'He ran *against* me': and then mere *contact*, as 'He was leaning *against* the wall.'

It is used figuratively in the sense of—

(1) *Opposed to, in opposition to:—*

This is *against* the law. You are acting *against* your own interests. It is *against* reason to expect this. I am working *against* time (I am working in competition with time; I am working hard in order to finish within a given period). He is talking *against* time (in order to consume time). To hope *against* hope (when there are very slight grounds for hoping). There are 50 candidates this year *against* (as compared with) 30 last year. He drew bills *against* (in exchange for) merchandise shipped.

(2) *In provision for, with reference to some necessity or danger:—*

Keep your swords bright *against* the day of battle. We should lay up something *against* a rainy day (hard times).

NOTE.—In this sense, *against* was once used as a conjunction: 'It will be ready *against* you come' (in provision for your coming).

---

<sup>1</sup>Here *after* points to secrecy or evil intention; hence the question implies suspicion or slight fault-finding.

## Along.

427. **Along** (over against in length, length-wise) indicates *motion* *position by the side of* a thing or *in the direction of its length* :—

Rushes grew *along* the river-bank. The ships were anchored *along* shore. The army marched *along* the highway. Flowers were blooming all *along* the valley.

## Among, Amongst.

428. **Among** (in the crowd or company of) indicates *motion to or position in the midst of*, as 'He fell *among* thieves,' 'I was *among* them, but not of them.' Hence it is used in the sense of—

(1) *In the number of* :—

The chiefest *among* ten thousand. These years are *among* the most shameful in our history. *Among* the blind the one-eyed is king.

(2) *By the joint action of* :—

You must settle this *among* yourselves. You have, *among* you, killed an innocent lady.

(3) *For distribution to* :—

This money is to be shared *among* you. What are five loaves *among* so many hungry people?

## Around, Round.

429. **Around** (*on round*, in a round or circle) indicates *proximity on all sides*; it is generally used in the shortened form *round*. It denotes—

(1) *On every side of* :—

*Around* the house grew trees. He wore a belt *round* his waist.

(2) *Circuitously about* :—

He is travelling *round* the world. We sailed *round* Cape Horn. A murmur went *round* the audience at these words. The sparrow flew *round* and *round* the room. I got *round* him (circumvented or overpersuaded him).

430. **Adverbial Uses.**—*Round* is used as an adverb in the following phrases :—

You will have to go *round* (make a circuit). Spring has come *round* again. She soon came *round* (revived, as after a fainting fit). A little cold water brought her *round*. The carriage will be *round* (will be here after making a circuit) in half an hour. There was not enough fruit to go *round* (to provide for everybody). Pass the refreshments *round*. All the year *round* (from beginning to end). To pass the hat *round* (to collect money for some object). He is, taking him all *round* (in every direction, making a general estimate), one of the ablest men living. He is a clever all-*round* writer. A *roundabout* turn (in the opposite direction). The Muses . . . *round* about Jove's altar sing (*Milton*). He explained in a *roundabout* (tortuous, indirect) way.



## At.

**431.** *At* primarily indicates *external proximity* with the notion of contact actual or intended :—‘He is not *at* home,’ ‘I fell *at* his feet,’ ‘He aimed *at* the tiger,’ ‘The dog sprang *at* him.’

Hence it is used to denote—

(1) *Proximity* in relation to a *point in space*, in the phrases :—

I am sick *at* heart. He is out *at* elbows (in a ragged, dilapidated condition). His wife is always *at* his elbow (close beside him). He had a dog *at* his heels (close behind him). Up, guards, and *at* them ! (go *at*, attack them). He is *at* death's door (nearly dead). The invader is *at* the door (close at hand). The time is *at* hand (nearly arrived). I have my lesson *at* my fingers' ends (I know it thoroughly). I kept him *at* arm's length (at a distance ; I prevented his becoming intimate with me). He is a good man *at* bottom (in his inner nature). He lays this misfortune *at* my door (attributes it to me). What are you *at*?<sup>1</sup> (what are you doing?) Pray make yourself *at* home (behave as if you were at home). I am quite *at* home on this topic (familiar with it). He came with a jeering crowd *at* his back (behind him). Napoleon's power lay in the fact that he had the army *at* his back (supporting him).

NOTE.—*At* is generally used with reference to small places, regarded as *points*, as ‘He lives *at* Serampore,’ ‘He arrived *at* Chinsurah’; *in* is used with reference to large places, regarded as *spaces*, as ‘He lives *in* Calcutta,’ ‘He arrived *in* London.’ So, when they are used figuratively, *at* relates to *minor* operations, as ‘He is skilful *at* football’; *in* relates to *extensive* operations, as ‘He is skilful *in* war.’

(2) *Proximity* in relation to a *point in time* :—

He arrived *at* daybreak, *at* five o'clock. Wild beasts sleep *at* noon, and go abroad *at* night (night-fall). *At* dusk. *At* sunset. *At* this time of day (at so late a period). He yielded *at* the eleventh hour (at a very late time). Go *at* once (at one time, without any interval ; and so, immediately). *At* this (as soon as this happened), he went away *in* a rage. *At* first. *At* last. *At* latest. *At* earliest. *At* present. *At* all.

NOTE.—*On*, *in*, and *by* are used in relation to a *space of time* :—‘*on* Monday,’ ‘*in* the morning’ (but ‘*on* the morning of Tuesday, the 10th,’ etc.), ‘*by* day’ (not ‘*at* day’). ‘*At* length’ (after a long time, finally) belongs to (2); ‘*at* length’ (fully, without abridgement) belongs to (5).

(3) *Proximity* in relation to *value or degree* :—

This horse is valued *at* Rs. 100. Interest *at* 5 per cent. He sells cloth *at* six annas a yard. Wheat is *at* Rs. 3 a bushel. I will sell this *at* cost price (at the price I paid for it). He lends money *at* a high rate of interest. He ran *at* a great pace. The horse went *at* full speed. He shouted *at* the top of his voice. The cavalry advanced *at* a trot—at a gallop. *At* a snail's pace (very slowly). He set my advice *at* naught (valued it at nothing, despised it).

NOTE.—Hence *at* is used in adverbial phrases often with the notion of *degree* or *reckoning* understood :—‘He is a fool *at* best’ (at the best

<sup>1</sup> Denoting some degree of fault-finding : cf. *foot-notes*, pp. 220, 222.

reckoning; taking the best view of his character). 'Life is short *at the longest*' (however long in any special case it may be): of. 'The room was *at its fullest*.' 'I am not *at all* tired' (at all reckonings; however you regard the matter). So—*at worst, at most, at least; at all events* (whatever happens), *at any rate, at any cost, at all costs, at all risks, at all hazards*.

(4) *Proximity* in relation to the notions of *consequence* or *dependence* :—

He calmed them *at* (by means of) a word. The horse cleared the hedge *at* a bound. He came *at* my call. I can see that *at* a glance. I heard this *at* second hand (indirectly). This poem was thrown off *at* a heat (by a single, great effort). He walked ten miles *at* a stretch (with one effort). The fort was taken *at* the point of the bayonet (by a bayonet charge). He killed three men *at* a blow. I bought this *at* a venture (on the chance of its turning out well). You must be ready *at* short notice. Please reply *at* your earliest convenience. Love *at* first sight. A draft payable *at* sight. A tenant *at* will (of his landlord). I take you *at* your word (I act in dependence upon what you have said). I have always received good *at* your hands (from you). The boat is riding (or lying) *at* anchor. The ship is *at* the mercy of the storm. He lives *at* his father's expense. He was engaged *at* a salary of Rs. 100. My wealth is *at* your disposal—*at* your service. Every luxury was *at* his command (in his power, obtainable by him). When he wanted money, he stuck *at* nothing (was ready to do anything to get it). His blood boiled (his anger was excited) *at* the sight of cruelty. I jumped *at* (eagerly accepted) his offer. Drowning men catch *at* straws. The city surrendered *at* discretion (of the conquerors). Do it *at* your peril (you will incur danger by doing it).

(5) *Proximity* in relation to the notions of *occupation, situation, condition* :—

To play *at* cricket, cards, chess, etc. He is a good hand *at* essay-writing. I beat him *at* his own weapons (used his own weapons or arguments to overcome him). The storm was *at* its height. These lines are *at* right angles. He is *at* his best (in his best condition). To be *at* one's beck and call (submissive to his command). I am *at* your service (ready to do your bidding). I am *at* one (in agreement) with you in this matter. Armed *at* all points (completely armed). My mind is ill *at* ease (restless). He thwarts me *at* every turn (continually). Set *at* liberty. He was *at* the expense—at the trouble—of, etc. I was *at* the pains (took the trouble) to follow him. This will do *at* a pinch (in a difficulty; in default of anything better). The stag is *at* bay. He attacked me *at* a disadvantage (under conditions unfavourable to me). My business is *at* a low ebb (in a low state). I am *at* a dead stop (brought to an utter standstill). He is *at* the end of his tether (has reached the limit of his resources). They are *at* cross purposes (are unintentionally acting counter to each other). He worked five hours *at* a stretch (continuously). He is *at* his last gasp—at the point of death. I was *at* my wit's end (hopelessly puzzled). They are *at* daggers drawn (in a state of open hostility). Gold is *at* a premium—at a discount (above or below par value; hence the phrases often mean very valuable or of little value). To be *at* fault, *at* a loss (not to know how to proceed in any matter; but 'to be *in* fault' = to have done wrong). The world *at* large (as a whole). The prisoner is *at* large (free). *At* random (carelessly). *At* the first blush (at the first view). *At* stake (in danger). *At* odds or *at* variance. *At* issue (in dispute or in a state of disagreement).

*At one's ease. At a stand (in perplexity). At pleasure (whenever one pleases). At unawares. At an end. At war. At peace. At work. At leisure, etc.*

### Before.

432. *Before (by fore)* marks *motion or position in front of*, literally or figuratively :—

You must appear *before* the magistrate. He laid the petition *before* the king. Men *before* the mast (common sailors). He fell dead *before* my very eyes. *Before* God (in the sight of God). Come to me *before* 10 o'clock. You are *before* your (fixed) time. You put the cart *before* the horse (put things out of their proper order). He will arrive *before* long. Men have died of grief *before* now. The enemy sat down *before* the town (to besiege it). He advanced, and they fled *before* him (pursued by him). The ship is running *before* the wind (with the wind behind it). This is important *before* everything. He was *beforehand* with me (anticipated me in doing anything).

### Behind.

433. *Behind (by hind)* marks *motion or position at the back of*, literally or figuratively :—

The dog walks *behind* his master. The sun is *behind* a cloud. The train is *behind* (its due) time. You are *behind* the times or the age (do not keep up with modern ideas.) To be *behindhand* (late). Do not speak evil of a man *behind* his back (in his absence). He left one son *behind* him (at his death). To be *behind* the scenes (to know the secret working of a transaction). This happened *behind* the curtain (in secret). There is something *behind* his suggestion (he has some secret or ulterior motive).

### Below.

434. *Below (by low)* indicates *motion to or position at a lower point*, literally or figuratively :—

He went *below* the deck. He was struck *below* the knee. He is *below* me in the class. Life *below* stairs (in the kitchen). These shares are *below* par (at a discount). This essay is *below* the mark (inferior to the proper standard). This poem is *below* his genius. These answers are *below* mediocrity. To sit *below* the salt (among the inferior guests).

### Beneath.

435. *Beneath (by the nether part)* indicates *motion to or position at a lower point*, often with the added notion of *inferiority* :—

He dived *beneath* the water. He is buried *beneath* this stone. Beasts are *beneath* man in the scale of creation. They all fell *beneath* his sword. He married *beneath* him (he married a woman of lower rank than his own). His conduct is *beneath* your notice (too low to be worthy of your notice). It is *beneath* my dignity to notice his conduct. You are *beneath* contempt (not worth bestowing even contempt upon).

**Beside, Besides.**

**436. Beside** (*by side*) indicates *motion* or *position by the side of*, as 'He walked *beside* the river,' 'Lovely Thais sits *beside* thee.' Hence it is used in the sense of—

(1) *Aside from, outside of*:—

All this is *beside* the mark—the purpose—the question. He is *beside* himself (out of his senses) with joy.

(2) *In addition to* (also in the form *besides*):—

*Besides* three children at home, he has two at school. This book will be *useful* to others *beside* candidates for examination.

**Between.**

**437. Between** (*by twain*) means *in the middle of two*:—

I dropt it *between* my house and the station. I will come *between* twelve and one o'clock. I did not get wet, as I came *between* the showers. *Between* asleep and awake. *Between* you and me (I tell it you in confidence), I think him a fool. This matter is *between* ourselves (confidential). We can manage this *between* us (by our united action). I am *between* Scylla and Charybdis (two equally bad alternatives). What with his debts and what with his large family, he is *between* two fires (in a double difficulty). *Between* two stools, you are sure to come to the ground (*Proverb*). His speech must be read *between* the lines (it has a meaning which is not apparent on the surface). The ship was struck *between* wind and water (at the water-line, and so *metaph.* of a dangerous spot). He muttered something *between* his teeth (in a low voice).

**Beyond.**

**438. Beyond** (*by yonder*) means *on the further side of* and so *outside the limits of*:—

My home is *beyond* the sea. The life *beyond* the grave. He went *beyond* all bounds. The matter is *beyond* dispute (cannot be disputed). The result is *beyond* my expectation (better than I expected). *Beyond* all question you are right. The scene was magnificent *beyond* description. The book is quite *beyond* me (above my comprehension). It is *beyond* the power of medicine to cure him. He went into the river *beyond* his depth (so that the water was over his head). His conduct is *beyond* all praise. He was *beyond* measure (excessively) pleased. In saying this, you go *beyond* the mark (you say what is excessive).

**By.**

**439. By** indicates *proximity* (often without contact) either in connexion with rest or motion:—'He sat *by* his father,' 'I passed *by* his garden,' 'I have no money *by* me' (in my house; 'I have no money *with* me' = in my pocket). It is so used figuratively in—

I will stand *by* you (I will support you). To come *by* a thing (to acquire it). To set store *by* a thing (to put a high value upon it). To abide *by* a

decision (to act in accordance with it). We ought to do as we would be done *by* (we ought to act towards others as we desire others to act towards ourselves). I did my duty *by* him (towards him, concerning him). I say this *by* the way (beside the way; while on the way to some other and more important matter). Three yards in length *by* four in breadth. The wind is north-east *by* north.

Hence it is used to denote—

(1) *Proximity* in relation to *time* [cf. *against*, (2)]:—

I shall arrive *by* 12 o'clock (not later than 12 o'clock). He is dead and buried *by* this time (now that so much time has elapsed, and we have reached the present time). He is gone *by* now. We took a drive *by* moonlight *By* day and night (cf. *by* land and sea).

(2) *Agency* :—

'I can read *by* moonlight. The fort was taken *by* storm. I was completely taken *by* surprise. To travel *by* rail—*by* steamer—*by* land—*by* water. Send the letter *by* post, not *by* hand (by a messenger). His money was left him *by* will. He had six children *by* his first wife. The goods were sold *by* (not *in*) auction. This sonata is *by* Beethoven. He was conspicuous *by* his absence (said of one expected to be present). I delivered the message *by* word of mouth (orally). To learn *by* heart—*by* rote. He answered *by* return of post (by the next post after his receipt of the letter). This cloth was woven *by* hand (not by machinery). He did it *by* main force. He succeeded *by* (or *in*) virtue of his talents. He succeeded *by* dint of perseverance. I said it *by* way of a joke (jokingly). We met *by* appointment (previous arrangement). *By* all means (certainly). *By* accident (accidentally). *By* chance. *By* mistake. *By* stealth.

(3) *Manner* :—

I caught him *by* the leg. The favourite led the king *by* the nose (made him follow him blindly). He set the whole village *by* the ears (made them quarrel). We ought to take time *by* the forelock (be prompt). To take the bull *by* the horns (boldly to confront a difficulty). To lay a person *by* the heels (to shackle his feet, to put him in confinement). His life hung *by* a thread (was in great danger). He paid the money *by* instalments.

(4) *Measure, standard, amount* :—

It is 10 o'clock *by* (not *in*) my watch. He is a carpenter *by* trade. He is a doctor *by* profession. A man, Ram Chandra *by* name. *By* what name do you call him? What name does he go *by*? I go *by* (act according to) my instructions. They sell rice *by* the maund. He is dying *by* inches. They rushed out *by* hundreds. To do a thing *by* halves (partially, not thoroughly) *by* fits and starts—*by* snatches—*by* turns. To sell *by* wholesale. The Council, *by* a small majority, passed the bill. They arrived one *by* one (cf. drop *by* drop, year *by* year, little *by* little). He is taller *by* four inches. This is not large enough *by* a long way. Too small *by* half—*by* a great deal. Larger *by* one third. *By* far the best. He escaped *by* the skin of his teeth (very narrowly). To speak *by* the book (with strict accuracy).

NOTE.—The repetition of an action was originally denoted by repeating the adverbial phrase, as *by* drop, *by* drop<sup>1</sup>; then the first *by* was omitted,

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 'Which doth *by* little and little deface,' etc.—Bacon.

and so we get *drop by drop*. Cf. 'They went *by two and two—by twos—by one at a time*'; 'He went *by himself*.' See 149, (a).

(5) *Adjuration, appeal*:—

I swear *by* Heaven (near to, under the fear or binding influence of Heaven). He is a Liberal, and swears *by* Mr. Gladstone (regards him as a supreme authority). I entreat you *by* all that is holy. I beseech you *by* the mercies of God (*Bible*). *By* our Lady, I think it be so (*Shakspeare*).

440. *Adverbial Uses*.—*By* is used as an adverb in—

They passed *by* on the other side. He laid (or put) *by* (saved) a rupee every week. Let *bygones* be *bygones*. I gave him the *go-by* (avoided him). *By* and *by* (*lit.* 'near and near,' 'very near, very soon').<sup>1</sup> *By* the *by* (*lit.* 'near the near' (time), 'in passing'; cf. '*by* the way' above).

For.

441. *For* (*fore*) in Old English means *before, in front of*; hence, since one who fights in front of another may either *take his place* as his companion, or act *on his behalf*, or *confront* him as a foe—*for* is used in relation to the three main notions of (1) Substitution, (2) Causality, (3) Opposition.

(1) *Substitution*; with the meanings of—

(a) *In the place of, instead of*:—

A lamp-post served *for* a gallows. He passed *for* a rich man (he was regarded as rich). That was meant *for* a joke. I shall take you *for* my model. I took you *for* (regarded you as) a gentleman. I mistook him *for* his brother. I knew him *for* a thief. He was sold *for* a slave. He was taken up *for* dead (as dead). I gave myself up *for* lost. I, *for* one (as far as I am concerned, at any rate), refuse to go. You may take that *for* granted. This goes *for* nothing (is of no avail). I know this *for* certain. You will be killed *for* a dead certainty (without any doubt). Once *for* a! 'for all occasions).

(b) *In exchange for*:—

An eye *for* an eye, and a tooth *for* a tooth. I bought it *for* a song (a mere trifle). You could have it *for* the asking. He sells mangoes at six *for* an anna. He only got laughed at *for* his pains. So much *for* your objections. I could not *for* the life of me (even to save my life; in spite of every effort) understand his meaning. His face is *for* all the world like a monkey's (I would risk all the world that it is like; it is exactly like). Not *for* worlds (on no consideration) would I have this known. Do not, *for* your life, advance (if you advance, it will be at the risk of your life). This is an apology *for* a dinner (a poor dinner).

(c) *In correspondence to*:—

I wrote down his speech word *for* word (each word of the writer answering to each word of the speaker). These two books are page *for* page and line *for* line alike. He has ten vices *for* (as an offset to) one virtue.

<sup>1</sup> But, in earlier English, *by* and *by* meant 'forthwith'

(2) *Causality*; with the meanings of—(a) *On behalf of, in favour of, in the interest of:—*

We will die *for* our king. I am *for* peace. We are *for* going at once. I shall vote *for* this candidate. Let us strike *for* liberty. He stood (*was* candidate) *for* Bristol at the last Elections. People should think *for* themselves (be guided by their own opinion). You must shift *for* yourself (provide for your own safety or livelihood). There was nothing *for* it but to retreat (there was no other course left). Hurrah *for* the President! He called *for* his pipe.

(b) *For the sake of, on account of:—*

We choose dogs *for* scent and speed. He did it *for* love of me. Anything *for* a quiet life. He could not speak *for* tears. I did not fire, *for* fear of missing. This coat is the worse *for* wear. He is the worse *for* liquor (drunk). But *for* your kindness I should be undone. If it had not been *for* your help, I should have been drowned. O *for* a muse of fire! (*Shaks.*). I am sorry *for* you. Terror felt *for* a supernatural being. Fie *for* shame!

(c) *In regard of, in point of:—*

*For* my part, I don't care what happens. He did not want *for* friends. As *for* me, I do not object. It is not *for* me to dictate. *For* anything I know, you may be right. No employer and, *for* that matter (as far as that is concerned), no workman would accept such an offer. The walls are like rocks *for* solidity. He is small *for* his age (considering his age; taking his age as the index of what we might expect). He is tall *for* his years. She is brave *for* a woman (considering that she is a woman). So much *for* Bolingbroke.

(d) *For the purpose of:—*

This is not fit *for* food. Quinine is good *for* fever. He is too old *for* the appointment. He is a good-*for*-nothing fellow. He did it *for* effect (to make a fine show). He sat *for* his portrait. He gasped *for* breath. *For* example. *For* instance. To ride *for* a fall (intending to fall).

(e) *In the direction of:—*

He started *for* Delhi. We set out *for* home. He sailed *for* Japan. I shall go in *for* the examination. It all turned out *for* the best. Follow after the things that make *for* (tend towards) peace (*Bible*). A change *for* the better—the worse.

(f) *To the extent of:—*

He is lamed *for* life. I have known him *for* years. I have not seen you *for* an age. It is fine *for* the present. He was silent *for* a time. *For* the time being. *For* ever and aye. *For* better, *for* worse. Do be quiet *for* once. I met him, *for* the first time, yesterday morning. I pardon you *for* this time. He is ruined *for* good and all (entirely, irrecoverably). He is good *for* 100 rupees (he is to be relied on to that amount; he will contribute so much). I ran *for* all I was worth (as fast as ever I could). They are out *for* 50 runs. He failed *for* 10,000 rupees.

(3) *Opposition* ; with the meaning of—*In the face of, in spite of :—*

For all his wealth he is unhappy. I will do as I please for all your opposition. This news is strange, but it is true for all that (notwithstanding all its strangeness). He is gone, for anything (or aught) I know. She may go to France for me (there will be no opposition on my part). You may do it for all I care. We were so far off that he might have been drowned for us (as far as we were concerned).

**From.**

442. **From** indicates *motion away from*, and thence *rest at a distance from* :—‘Figs come from Turkey.’ ‘He is from (away from) home.’

Hence it is used in connexion with the two main notions of—

(1) *Starting-point, origin, cause :—*

He was bruised from head to foot. Driven from pillar to post (from one refuge to another ; harassed). He lives from hand to mouth (precariously). The book passed from hand to hand. I sympathise with you from the bottom of my heart (very heartily). These buildings date from Akbar’s time. I have watched his progress from his youth up. From a child (from childhood) he was fond of study. He was delicate from the cradle (from infancy). He has risen from the ranks (from a low social position). In Parliament he has, from first to last (throughout his whole career), been successful. I judge from his manner that he is innocent. I thought, from what you said, that it was so. He went from bad to worse. You are arguing from false premisses. From what I hear I think he is guilty. He acted from low motives. From time to time (occasionally). From this time onward (or forward).

(2) *Separation, distinction :—*

He is safe from danger ; free from care. I prohibit you from doing this. This is far from being the case. I did not know him from his brother.

**In.**

443. **In** marks *position within*. *Motion inward* is usually indicated by *into*, though *in* is occasionally employed : as in ‘to fall in, not into, love,’ ‘to fly in the face of,’ ‘to break in pieces,’ ‘to cast in one’s teeth,’ ‘to put in force.’

*In* is used in connexion with the notions of—

(1) *Place :—*

I met him in the street.<sup>1</sup> Go indoors. He looked (or stared) me in the face. They had news of what was in the air (prevalent). The whole matter is in the air (indefinite) at present. Castles in the air (visionary)

<sup>1</sup>So also ‘in the field,’ because *street* and *field* are enclosed places ; but we say ‘on the plain,’ ‘on the maiden.’



projects). He laughed in his sleeve (secretly). A tempest (or storm) in a tea-pot (a great disturbance about a trivial matter). The matter lies in a nutshell (can be easily explained). He basks in the sunshine of popular favour. Her voice rings in my ears. The trade of Malta is a drop in the ocean of British trade (a very insignificant part of it). The Tsar tried to fish in troubled waters (to gain some advantage at a time of public confusion or disorder). To be a thorn in one's side (to be continually troublesome to one). He is a man in a thousand (such that in a thousand you would find only one like him; of rare excellence). The very name of liberty stank in his nostrils (was odious to him). They took the oath in the teeth of their principles (in direct opposition to them). He cast it in my teeth (reproached me with it). I repent in sackcloth and ashes. Children in arms (that are carried; that cannot walk). He is still in the land of the living (alive). He lives in clover (in abundance, prosperity). He is in his master's black books—good books (in favour or disfavour with him). Born in the purple (of royal descent). We are in the clutches of the robbers (completely in their power). To die in harness (while still at work). Cotton is a drug in the market (there is no demand for it). My whole future trembled in the balance (was in a critical condition). You have placed me in a false position (made me appear to be in the wrong). This office is in the gift of the Crown (in the power of the King to give). His indolence is bred in the bone (is innate in him). The news is in every one's mouth (is the common talk). There is something in the wind (covertly in preparation). 'Tis not in mortals (in the power of mortals; cf. 'he hasn't got it in him') to command success. I will do as much as in me lies (as I can). He is still in leading-strings (not his own master).

(2) *State, hence manner* :—

I found her in tears (weeping). I am in a difficulty. He is in a dilemma. I am in a strait. They are in mourning for their father. I held him in check. He is over head and ears in love. He is in his cups (drunk). He persevered in the teeth of (in spite of) all opposition. They rushed out in a body (all together). I have never seen him in the flesh (while living). My star is in the ascendant (I am having good fortune). The Whigs were in the ascendant (were powerful). This landlord is not in touch (in sympathetic contact) with his tenants. He knew not what ills were in store for him (awaited him). He took my criticisms in good part (favourably, without offence). His strength stood him in good stead (was of great advantage to him). That will stand you in (cost you) a large sum. I was not in the vein (in the mood, inclined) for study. In a state of nature (naked). The King travelled in state (with all due pomp and ceremony). The dead Queen lay in state at Whitehall (lay in her coffin for the public inspection). To lie in ambush. The country is in the throes of (suffering from) civil war. A leap in the dark (an action of which we cannot foresee the consequences). They murdered him in cold blood (deliberately, without sudden passion). That's enough in all conscience (surely). I kept him in countenance (gave him my support). The hounds were in full cry. Put that down in black and white (in writing; 406). He went off in fine (or high) feather (in good health and spirits). He is in bad odour (unpopular, disliked). He died in the odour of sanctity (with a reputation for holiness). I am in favour of lenity. Vice follows in the train (or in the wake) of luxury (closely attends it). He praises and blames me in the same breath (at the same

instant). I have a case *in* point (an apposite instance). His honesty was never called *in* question (doubted). His promises ended *in* smoke (came to nothing). The new factory is *in* full swing (working busily). He does not say so *in* so many words (in exact terms). He spoke *in* no measured terms (in very strong language). His servant is *in* his confidence (is trusted by him). I cannot *in* conscience (conscientiously) do that. A change is *in* contemplation (intended). I am *in* good case (healthy, prosperous). He is *in* the good graces of (in favour with) his employer. To pay *in* cash (or *in* hard cash, in ready money). To pay rent *in* kind (in goods, not in money). *In* return for his abuse I paid him back *in* kind (in the same thing, viz. abuse). I acted *in* good faith (with sincerity). I came *in* compliance with your request. We have one thing *in* common (shared by both of us). The building is *in* course of erection (is being erected). He acted *in* defiance of (or *in* opposition to) my orders. I am acting *in* the interests (for the benefit) of the community. The whole town was *in* arms—up *in* arms (ready to fight). *In* case (if) I should not succeed, etc. *In* that case (if that happens) I shall resign. *In* case of (or in the event of) failure you must apply to me. Do not talk to me *in* that strain. He is *in* high spirits. His novels are *in* great request. They conversed *in* a whisper. The king was there *in* person. The enemy appeared *in* force (in large numbers). The treaty is still *in* force (valid). The corn trade is *in* a bad way (getting into a bad condition). *In* round numbers (in a number ending in a cipher, approximately). My speech was nipped *in* the bud (stopped at the outset). You are *in* the right about this. My essay is at present *in* the rough (unpolished). No one *in* his senses (not mad) would act so. Stock *in* trade (goods on hand for sale). He is rolling *in* wealth. You are reasoning *in* a circle (illogically). He is *in* a fair way (likely) to succeed. Your actions are not *in* keeping with (consistent with) your words. He was king only *in* name (not in reality). He was king *in* theory, but *in* practice his prime minister was king. *In* the name of God, I demand, etc. *In* the king's name. What, *in* the name of goodness, do you mean? I am bound *in* honour to tell the truth (it is my duty).

*In* is similarly used in numerous adverbial phrases:—

*In* a word (briefly), *in* brief, *in* advance (before it is due), *in* advance (ahead of), *in* all respects, *in* concert, *in* haste, *in* hot haste, *in* demand, *in* exchange, *in* hand, *in* deposit, *in* earnest, *in* good earnest, *in* fun, *in* jest, *in* common parlance (in the ordinary way of speaking), *in* abeyance (in a state of suspension), *in* addition, *in* conclusion (finally), *in* fine (in short), *in* behalf of, *in* a manner (to some extent), *in* company (with other people), *in* comparison, *in* consequence, *in* consideration of, *in* place (or lieu) of, *in* detail (minutely), *in* person, *in* passing, arm *in* arm (with arms interlocked), *in* view, *in* effect (virtually), *in* good (or bad) taste, *in* train (ready to effect a certain purpose), *in* private, *in* all probability, *in* general, *in* league with, *in* season, *in* luck, up *in* arms, *in* one's element (in a congenial situation), *in* possession of, *in* prospect, *in* public, *in* confidence, *in* pursuance of, *in* office, *in* front, *in* the rear, *in* attendance, *in* fashion, *in* secret, *in* reserve, *in* sunder, *in* reason, *in* the extreme (extremely), *in* the main, *in* the long run (in the end), *in* detail (minutely), *in* the lump, *in* the mass, *in* the wrong, *in* fact, *in* point of fact, *in* truth, *in* especial, *in* particular, *in* turn, *in* vain, *in* virtue of (by the force of), *in* vogue (in use, prevalent), *in* all (taking all together), *in* unison, *in* succession (one after another).

(3) *Point of reference* :—

Increased in goods. Firm in his opinions. There is no use in doing this. What is your object in asking this question? Garibaldi fought in the cause of freedom. I am stinted in my resources. You have shown yourself to be a brave man, in acting as you did. You had a dear bargain in this horse. An interesting volume in the shape of "Old Calcutta" has reached us. I am disappointed in him. We shall have most agreeable neighbours in the Throokmortons (*Cowper*). He is a host in himself.

(4) *Time* :—

I will come in (after) a few minutes. He was cut off in the prime of life. Do not sleep in (during) the daytime. In an evil hour (unfortunately for himself) he resolved to be avenged. He goes out in (at some time of) the evening. In the fulness of time (when the time was ripe). He arrived in (or at) the nick of time (exactly at the right moment). You are just in time. In the meantime (during the interval). In no time (very quickly).

444. *Adverbial Uses*.—In is used as an adverb in—

The Tories are in (in office). This horse must be broken in (trained to work). Pull the horse in (check his speed). He is so ill that you had better call in a doctor. I cast in my lot with you. A new fashion is coming in. He enlisted and was sworn in by the magistrate (entered the army by taking the oath). He came in for (received) a large property at his father's death. He was drawn in (induced) to join the plot. The troops fell in (got into marching order). I fell in with him (met him accidentally) yesterday. His speech falls in with (agrees with) my opinions. You can fill in (insert) the details afterwards. Have you got in (collected) your reports? You had better give in (yield).

**Into.**445. *Into marks*—(1) *Motion or direction inward* :—

You have driven me into a corner (placed me in a difficult position). Show the visitor into the room. To enter into (take part in) an agreement, a conversation, a discussion, a negotiation, etc. I cannot enter into your views (share your opinions) on this subject. I will take you into my confidence in this matter (trust you with the secret). He wormed himself into my confidence (artfully induced me to trust him). A new law has come into force—into operation. This serves for a bed and an armchair into the bargain (over and above, in addition). The writer has brought all his hero's good points into relief (given them prominence). My services were put into requisition (were called for). She burst (or broke) into a fit of laughter. The patient next fell into a fever. He has come into a fortune (inherited great wealth). These authors are thrown (or cast) into the shade (dimmed, outvalled) by their successors.

(2) *Change of condition* :—

The boy has grown into a young man. His stern features relaxed into a smile. The sea was lashed into a fury by the storm. The name of Cressus has passed into a proverb. You must render the Bengali into English (translate it). Your expenses shrink into insignificance (are reduced to almost nothing) beside his. I reasoned him into submission (induced him to submit by reasoning with him).

## Of, Off.

446. *Of, off* are different forms of the same word. They indicate *motion away from* or *rest at a distance from* something: as, 'The house is within a mile *of* the town,' 'The cat jumped *off* the chair,' 'The ship is anchored *off* Madras' (at a short distance from the coast of Madras; cf. *off-shore*).

Hence *of, off* have the meanings of—

(1) *From*, with the notion of *separation* :—

To deprive, rob, bereave, strip a person—*of* a thing. To get rid *of* a thing. I acquit you *of* blame. You should break yourself *of* that habit. To miss, fail, come short, be disappointed—*of* a thing. He is clear *of* debt. You are void *of* sense. I am short *of* money (in want *of* it). Nothing short *of* the crown (less than the crown) would satisfy him. I fought shy *of* him (distrusted and avoided him). He is cured (or healed) *of* his ailment. I must break him *of* this habit (make him give it up). You are very wide *of* the mark. I will relieve you *of* this burden. Upwards *of* (rising from, more than) 100 rupees was subscribed. He got *off* his horse. He was thrown *off* his balance by the news (was upset, confounded). I have taken the edge *off* my appetite (diminished its keenness). He is eating *off* (or *from*) a broken plate. He was *off* his guard (not on the watch, careless). He is *off* his head (insane). The officer is *off* duty. The hounds are *off* the scent.

(2) *Proceeding from*, with the notion of *source* or *starting-point* :—

He comes *of* good family. He is a chip *of* the old block (a son with the characteristics of his father). Nothing came *of* his proposal. To buy, hire, receive, etc., a thing—*of* a person. Evil must come *of* evil. Made *of* money (very rich). He made a fool *of* himself. What do you make *of* this (what do you think it means)? To make the best *of* a bad bargain—*of* a bad business (do as well as one can about it). He made game *of* (derided) me. A play *of* Shakspeare. A picture *of* Landseer (a picture painted by Landseer).<sup>1</sup> Give me something, *of* your charity. He is *of* right the heir. He gave it me *of* his own accord—*of* his own free will. The tree fell *of* itself (without external impulse). This is *of* the greatest importance. Resistance is *of* no avail (useless)—*of* no use. To be *of* no account (unimportant). I will take nothing short *of* (less than) 100 rupees. The amount was upwards *of* 100 rupees.

(3) *Resulting from*, with the notion of *cause* :—

He died *of* a broken heart. He is sick *of* a fever. I am sick (tired) *of* waiting. The tank is full *of* water. He acted *of* malice aforethought. This tastes *of* almonds. This smells *of* musk. I stand in awe *of* him.

NOTE.—*Of* was once used with the notion of *agency* :—'He was despised and rejected *of* (by) men' (*Bible*), 'The observed *of* all observers' (*Shaks.*).

<sup>1</sup>But 'A picture by Landseer' is preferable.

(4) *Appertaining to*, with the notions of—(a) *Possession* :—

The house of Ram. The light of the sun. A slip of the pen—the tongue. A picture of Landseer (a picture owned by Landseer).<sup>1</sup> The battle of Plassey. The Council of Nice. The debate of last night. The courage of despair. Bread is the staff of life. Money is the sinews of war. The crack of doom (the end of the world). Presence of mind (readiness of resource). This news will be the death of him (not 'his death').

(b) *Material*, and so *distinguishing characteristic* :—

A bar of iron. A rope of sand (a feeble bond). A man of straw (an imaginary person). A yoke of oxen. A bed of roses (an easy, comfortable situation). A gentleman of the long robe (a barrister). The tug of war (violent conflict). A matter of fact. A reign of terror. A debt of honour (one that cannot be legally enforced). He has paid the debt of nature (died). A passage of arms (a warlike encounter). Rule of thumb (a rough, unscientific process). A matter of taste—of opinion. The burden of proof (the obligation of proving a statement). The sick man requires a change of air. He made it a point of honour to, etc. (he regarded it as his duty). A present of Rs. 10. A sum of Rs. 10. A matter of a few annas. His savings of Rs. 2000. A farm of 10 acres. An army of 10,000 men. A large body of soldiers. A man of courage—of few words—of parts, etc. A man of his word (a man who will keep his word or promise). A beast of burden. A bird of prey. A bird of passage. A man—of good family, of mark, of honour, of business, of letters. A book of proverbs. A labour of love. An act of grace. A matter of course. A card of (not for) admission. A deed of gift. A war of extermination. To show a clean pair of heels (to run away). He is a tower of strength (a strong support). He has the courage of his opinions (acts up to his convictions). No one should eat the bread of idleness (everyone should work for his living). A labour of love (a work undertaken without expectation of reward). A creature of circumstances (one at the mercy of circumstances). We are of one mind (agreed) on this question. His conduct is of a piece with (like) his creed. That was the best of the joke. To the best of my power. He is of age (has passed his minority). He has come of age. A gem of the first water. A chapter of accidents (a succession of accidents). A picture of Landseer (a picture representing Landseer). A bone of contention (a subject of dispute). He has arrived at years of discretion (manhood). The republic of letters. A matter of life and death (involving the risk of loss of life). A right of way (passage). A matter of consequence. A custom of long standing. My success is only a matter of time (will only take time). A child of three years. An apple of discord (a cause of strife). A bone of contention (a subject of dispute). The country of one's adoption. A prisoner of war. A monster of depravity.

(c) *Apposition* :—

The city of Calcutta (but not 'The river of Ganges'). The month of May. The name of Ram. The hour of 12 (o'clock). A reward of five

<sup>1</sup> But 'A picture of Landseer's' is preferable.

rupees. The cry of 'Land ahoy !' The prison of the body. A rogue of a lawyer (a roguish lawyer). A brute of a dog. A monster of a pig. A darling of a child. A jewel of a servant (a most valuable servant). He is a fine figure of a man.

(d) *Partition* :—

A piece of cheese. A picture of Landseer's (146, note). A page of a book. A figure of speech. He is a bit of a poet (somewhat poetical). I am something of an artist. I am not of your religion. He gave me (some) of his best. I should like this of all things. To think that you, of all persons, should act so !

NOTE.—In 'some of them,' 'three of them,' *of* denotes partition. But in 'all of them' (they all), 'both of them' (they both), 'three of them' (they three), *of* cannot be partitive, and these latter phrases must be regarded as formed by analogy with the former.

(e) *Point of reference, object* :—

He is light of foot. Hard of heart. Lame of both legs. Short of money. Blind of one eye. Intolerant of contradiction. Beware of dogs. The ship ran foul of (came into collision with) a rock. To have the best of it, of him. We made the best of our way to Calcutta (went there quickly). To speak, tell, hear, know, think, accept, dispose of a thing. I do not think much of this book (value it). There is no book that treats of (deals with) this topic. What of that (what does it matter that it is so)? What of Ram's prospects? I don't know what became of him (what his fate was). This is easy of belief. It is foolish (or wrong) of you to talk so. What he says of me is false. He is a very smart youth of his years (considering his youth). He is small of his age. He was made free of the society (admitted to all its privileges, etc.) You have the advantage of me (over me). He had the best of it (gained the victory).

447. *Adverbial Uses*.—*Off* is used as an adverb in—

He took off his hat. This flower gives off (emits) a sweet smell. Take yourself off (depart) ! Be off ! Off with you ! He took me off (mimicked me). The captain paid off his crew. He was cut off (died) in early youth. His father cut him off with a shilling (left him no legacy). Cast (or left) off (discarded) clothes. Leave off (stop) jesting. The bargain is off (cancelled). He called off (tried to go back from his promise). He declared off (renounced the bargain). The background sets off (throws into relief, embellishes) the picture. A loss must be set off against a gain (placed over against as an equivalent). They set off (started) for Delhi. He broke off (stopped) in the middle of his story. The (marriage) engagement was broken off. He came off (at the end of the contest) victorious. The examination came off (took place) yesterday. The prisoner was let off (released). He got off (escaped) unhurt. I hope the rain will hold off (keep away). The mist cleared off. The gun went off (was discharged). Everything went off (took place) well. The goods went off (were sold) rapidly. She is very much gone off (deteriorated in looks). He palmed off damaged goods upon me (cheated me into accepting them as perfect). I laughed off (made light of) her fears. He has slept off his debauch. I have bought him off (released him by a money payment). These losses were written off (cancelled from the account). I warned him off (advised

him to go away). He struck *off* (printed) a hundred copies. You have hit *off* (well described in a few words) his character. He dashed *off* (wrote quickly) a letter. Let me finish *off* what I am doing. He has fallen *off* (declined) in diligence. He is well *off* (rich, prosperous). He is badly (or ill) *off*. I have known him, *off* and on (at intervals) for years.

### On, Upon.

448. *On* is from the same root as *in*, and originally meant *at* or *near*, with the added notion of superposition.

Hence *on*, *upon* (up-on) are used to indicate *contact with the upper surface* in relation to—

#### (i) *Place* :—

Calcutta stands *on* (on the banks of) the Hoogly. Dinner is *on* the table. To play *on*—the piano, the harp, etc. This is obvious to any man with a head *on* his shoulders (with brains). It is best to be *on* the safe side (not to run any risk). He touched me *on* my tenderest point (where I am most sensitive). The army was large *on* paper (in writing or as registered, but not in reality). I am *on* the brink (or verge) of ruin (very nearly ruined). He journeyed now *on* foot, now *on* horseback. A conspiracy was *on* foot (in preparation) to murder Elizabeth. He is *on* the high road to fortune (making good progress towards success). His mind is always *on* the rack (anxious and troubled). The stolen goods were found *upon* him. While the fit was *on* him. His blood is *upon* his own head (he is responsible for his own violent death). The gate is *on* the latch (latched, not locked). The door is *on* the jar (ajar, partly open). To draw *upon* a bank. He is *on* his last legs (near to ruin or death). I stand *on* the tiptoe of expectation. This is absurd *on* the face of it (obviously). This is probable *on* the face of it (seemingly). Millions *on* millions (millions heaped on, or added to, millions) were squandered. He gave me blow *upon* blow. He is *on* the sick list. I am *on* a level with him. This is a blot *on* his escutcheon (a stain on his good name). There was no pardon for him *on* this side the grave (in this life).

#### (2) *Time* :—

Come *on* Wednesday. Once *upon* a time. *On* that day. *On* the morrow. *On* the eve of the battle (just before it).

#### (3) *Attendant circumstances* :—

I throw myself *upon* your mercy. I take my stand *upon* the facts. To stand *on* ceremony—*on* one's rights—*on* one's dignity—*on* the defensive. To be *on* one's guard. There is a run *on* the bank (its clients are hurriedly drawing out their money). I have hit *upon* a plan. This is the rule we go *upon* (follow). He dwelt *upon* the topic. We entered *upon* the discussion. I have placed him on short allowance (allow him little money, food, etc.). I am *on* good terms with him. I am not *on* speaking or visiting terms with him (we do not speak to or visit each other). I am *on* a familiar footing with him. You are *on* the wrong scent, or track (are misled). He has something *on* his mind (something that troubles or depresses him). Time hangs heavy *on* his hands (he does not know what to do with himself). This sour fruit sets my teeth *on* edge. My house is *on* fire. Still harping *on* (continually

talking of) my daughter! (*Shaks.*). He practised *upon* my credulity (turned my credulity to account for his own ends). He worked *upon* the king's fears (excited his fears to gain advantage for himself). He fell back *upon* journalism for a living (resorted to it). I have many demands *upon* my purse (many expenses). I call *upon* (request) you to be firm. I called *upon* (visited) him yesterday. I prevailed *upon* (persuaded) him to submit. He rang the changes *on* his poverty (talked much about it). He received a pension *on* (charged *upon*) the revenues of Naples. I gave him five rupees *on* account (as part payment). A price was set *on* his head (a reward was offered for killing him).

NOTE.—*On* occurs in numerous adverbial phrases:—*On* the sly (slyly), *on* the wing (in flight), *on* the alert (prompt, ready), *on* a sudden, *on* a large scale (extensively), *on* view (placed for people to see), *on* one's guard, *on* the watch, *on* the move, *on* the (or an) average, *on* the look-out, *on* high, *on* foot, *on* all hands (in all directions), *on* all accounts, *on* no account (for no reason whatever), *on* account of, *on* one's account (for one), *on* one's own account (at one's own risk, for one's own benefit), *on* a par (equal), *on* duty, *on* service, *on* hand (in present possession), *on* the one hand—*on* the other hand, *on* purpose, *on* the contrary, *on* the spur of the moment (by the impulse of the moment), *on* occasion (at need), *on* the stretch (fully exercised), *on* the wane (in a state of decline), *on* the whole (considering the whole matter), *on* the point of going (just about to go).

Hence *on* acquires the notion of—

(4) *Reliance, dependence, aim*, as in 'Sheep feed *on* grass,' 'He lives *on* the bounty of his friends'; and it is used in the senses of—

(a) *Because of*:—

I congratulate you *on* your success. He complimented her *upon* her beauty.

(b) *Just after, and so in consequence of*:—

*Upon* my arrival I will see you. *On* hearing this, he fled. *On* second thoughts, I think you are right. *Upon* this, he went away in a rage. To pay *on* demand. He came *on* the stroke of twelve (just as 12 o'clock had struck). Do not bathe *on* a full stomach (just after a meal).

(c) *In the direction of, with a view to, against*:—

The enemy advanced *upon* the fortress. The Philistines be *upon* thee (about to attack thee), Samson! (*Bible*). The door was locked *upon* the prisoner. He made an attack *upon* me. He set his dog *on* me (made it attack me). The army marched *on* Paris. The guns opened fire *on* the fort. The troops retreated *on* the reserves. He has stolen a march *upon* me (secretly got the advantage of me). The policeman gained *upon* the runaway (began to overtake him). The love of money grew *upon* him (gradually gained power over him). I will not be hard *upon* him (treat him unkindly). He is gone *on* an errand. I was sent *on* a fool's errand (on a profitless adventure). To go *on* tour—*on* a pilgrimage. He started *on* an expedition. All advice is lost *upon* him. *On* them followed the archers. Shame *upon* you! Out *upon* it! (an exclamation of annoyance).



*(d) In accordance with, in dependence upon :—*

I will act *on* your suggestion—*on* your advice. He acted *on* the *maxim*, 'Never too late to mend.' I am acting *on* my own responsibility. I recommend this practice *on* the score (or ground) of convenience (because it is convenient). These books are arranged *on* a different plan. I wait *upon* your pleasure. He has retired *on* pension. *On* this supposition you are right. *On* the strength of your representations I bought the horse. He borrowed money *on* credit. I went there *on* the chance of seeing him. I take this *upon* trust. I promise this *on* my honour. He was liberated *on* parole (after giving a promise to return). To obtain money *on* false pretences. They gathered the wood *on* (or by) sufferance (without prohibition). I count *upon* (expect) your help. Hence, *on* thy life (at the risk of forfeiting it). I charge thee *on* thy allegiance. *Upon* my word (I assure you), you talk strangely. Calcutta is London *on* a small scale.

*(e) On condition of :—*

He is engaged *on* probation (on the condition that he is approved of). I will take this *on* approval. He is *on* his good behaviour (his success, etc., depends upon his good behaviour). But 'he is *on* his promotion' = his promotion depends upon how he conducts himself. This is forbidden *on* pain of death (with death as the penalty of disobedience). We live together *on* terms of equality. He lends money *on* good security.

**449. Adverbial Uses.**—*On* is used as an adverb in—

Go *on* and prosper. He lived *on* in spite of the accident. *On*, Stanley, *on* (go on)! (*Scott*). The beam struck him end-*on* (end foremost, not sideways). A house with water laid *on* (supplied by pipes). We will discuss this later *on*. They carried *on* a conversation. He helped *on* the cause of education. Fall *on* (begin your attack)! How are you getting *on* (progressing)? He is sure to get *on* (succeed) in the world. He kept his hat *on*. He had *on* (wore) a long robe. I cannot hold *on* (keep up my effort) in this business any longer. You must provide your own pens, ink, paper, and so *on* (and such-like, etc.; cf. 'and so forth').

**Out of.****150. Out of** is a compound preposition, indicating—*(1) Motion from the interior, and so origin, derivation :—*

I drove him *out of* the house. I laughed him *out of* that folly. Seduced and flattered *out of* all (*Milton*). He took a leaf *out of* my book (imitated my course of action). I took the wind *out of* his sails (gained the advantage over him). You are not yet *out of* the wood (escaped from the difficulty). In this matter you are *out of* court (your action is unjustifiable). He fell *out of* the frying-pan into the fire (in avoiding one evil he fell into a greater). He paid me *out of* his own pocket (with his own money). I judge you *out of* your own mouth (from your own words). This quotation is *out of* Shakspeare. He spoke *out of* the fulness of his heart (with intense feeling). He did it *out of* envy, spite, etc.

*(2) Rest on the outside, and so, exclusion, defect, loss :—*

I spend my time *out of* doors. He is *out of* prison. In his present position he is a fish *out of* water (out of his element or natural sphere).

The ship is *out of* her course. I shouted to him, but he was *out of* hearing (too distant to hear). *Out of* sight, *out of* mind. *Out of* debt, *out of* danger. He is *out of* breath with running. That is *out of* my reach. That dress is *out of* fashion. Quill pens are almost *out of* use. Such conduct is *out of* character (contrary to one's proper character). Mail-coaches are now *out of* date (obsolete). *Out of* use. *Out of* harm's way. *Out of* order (disarranged or contrary to rule). The time is *out of* joint (confused) (*Shaks.*). I feel *out of* spirits (dispirited) to-day. I seem to be quite *out of* it (dissociated from what is going on). *Out of* place. *Out of* tune. *Out of* humour—temper—patience. *Out of* practice. *Out of* employment. *Out of* sorts (slightly ill). *Out of* health. Time *out of* mind (longer or more often than can be recollected). I am *out of* pocket (I have lost money) by that bargain. The shopkeeper is *out of* pens, pictures, buttons, etc. (has none in stock). *Out of* keeping (not in harmony). The book is *out of* print. This fruit is *out of* season. This is *out of* the question (quite impossible). He is *out of* his depth (where he cannot touch bottom). The man is *out of* his wits (insane). That horse is *out of* the running (has no chance of winning the race). He lives in an *out-of-the-way* place. This is very *out-of-the-way* (strange) conduct. *Out of* the wood (free from danger or difficulty). In season and *out of* season. I felt quite *out of* countenance (abashed). She was frightened *out of* her senses by the thunder.

#### 451. Adverbial Uses of 'out.'—The adverb *out* is used in—

He was *out* (not at home) when I called. Find *out* (discover) the truth of this. I have found him *out* (discovered his true character). Murder will *out* (be discovered). The results will soon be *out* (published). The fire is *out* (extinguished). It rained before the day was *out* (ended). The Liberals are *out* (not in Government Office). Hear me *out* (to the end). Fight it *out*. He laughed *out* (without restraint). You are *out* (in error) in that matter. He is *out at* elbows (has holes in the elbows of his coat; hence, *metaph.* 'is impoverished'). My coat is worn *out* (not up, off, or away). His money is *out* on loan. Look *out* (take care)! Write *out* (copy in full) the lesson. To spin *out* a discourse. He bore *out* (confirmed) my statement. The secret leaked *out*. The fruit was served *out* to the guests. I will serve you *out* (punish you) for this. You must work *out* this problem. He eked *out* (supplemented) his income by teaching music. He is *out and out* (by far) the best boy in the class.

#### Over.

452. *Over* indicates—(1) *position above*:—'I wept *over* his grave'; (2) *motion above*:—'He travelled *over* the mountains'; (3) *position beyond*:—'My home is *over* the sea.'

Hence it is used with the senses of—

(1) *Above* (in place, time, or other relations):—

He is *over* head and ears in debt. He turned head *over* heels. He was *absent over* (more than) two hours. He came *overnight* (during the night just passed; before bedtime yesterday). He lords it *over* me. You have great advantages *over* him. Victory *over* temptation. He rules *over* a vast empire. The excess of my expenditure *over* my income. He tried to come the critic *over* me (he set himself up as my critic).

(2) *About the surface of, across :—*

I showed him *over* my house. He ferried them *over* the river. He threw a shield *over* the delinquents (protected them). We will draw (or throw or drop) a veil *over* their sufferings (hide them from public view). I have looked *over* your composition. Think *over* my proposal. To cry *over* spilt milk (to be troubled about what cannot be helped). Let us discuss it *over* a glass of port (while drinking a glass). I will sleep *over* the matter (not decide about it till the next morning). All the world *over*.

(3) *On the other side of, beyond :—*

He lives *over* the way (on the other side of the street). There is a man *over-board*. *Over* and above these considerations. He has got *over* his disappointment. I will pass *over* this fault (not punish it). He stayed *over* the next day. I have tided *over* (surmounted—*metaph.* from a ship crossing a bar) the difficulty.

453. **Adverbial Uses.**—*Over* is used as an adverb in—

My ancestors came *over* (from Normandy to England) with the Conqueror. I will make this *over* to you (give, transfer it). He has thrown me *over* (abandoned me). I will take *over* (accept) charge of the office on Monday. Is there any money *over* (remaining, not expended)? He was bound *over* to keep the peace for six months. The storm has blown *over* (passed away). Come to me when school is *over*. The pot is boiling *over*. He called *over* (read aloud) the names. I gained (or won) him *over* to my side. I succeeded in talking him *over* (persuading him). You must turn *over* a new leaf (reform your conduct). He gave *over* (abandoned) the attempt. This matter must stand (or be held, or lie, or hang) *over* (be postponed) till our next meeting. When all was *over*. It is all *over* with him (all is past and gone in his case; he is ruined or dead). He is all *over* mud (is muddy on all parts of his person). He is his father all *over* (in every part of him). He read it *over* and *over* again. You shall have the money twenty times *over* (in succession).

**Through.**

454. **Through**, from a root meaning to bore or pierce, indicates *motion along the interior* from side to side or from end to end of a thing.

It is thus used of—

(1) *Place :—*

They walked *through* the wood. The prize slipped *through* his fingers (was lost *through* carelessness). He climbed *through* the window. I will go *through* fire and water (risk any danger) on his behalf. His good name was dragged *through* the mire (was defamed). He went *through* thick and thin (was hindered by no obstacles).

(2) *Time :—*

*Through* the year. *Through* the ages. *Through* all eternity. *Through* life.

(3) *Attendant circumstances* :—

He passed *through* many dangers. He pulled *through* (managed to surmount) the crisis in his affairs. I can drive a coach and four *through* this enactment (infringe it with impunity). I have got *through* my lessons. He was my friend *through* evil and good report. I saw *through* his design.

Hence *through* is used with reference to that which we pass through in order to attain our object, and so gains the sense of—

(4) *By means of, in consequence of* :—

He escaped *through* his speed of foot. It is *all through* you that I failed. *Through* his industry he gained the prize.

**To.**

455. **To** indicates *motion towards* a point in space or time, with the notion of reaching it; as 'He is gone *to* school,' 'I shall be at home from 12 *to* 4 o'clock.' Then it denotes mere *proximity*, either of place, as 'I sat close *to* him,' or of time, past or future as '*to-day*' (for the day).

Hence it is used to mark—

(1) *The direction* of an action or a feeling *towards* an object or state :—

Sweet *to* the taste. Our duty *to* (towards) our parents. He is a friend *to* the poor. He came *to* the rescue. All his promises came *to* nothing. They wished *to* come to terms (to an agreement). This costs next *to* (almost) nothing. All is fish that comes *to* his net (he can turn everything to his advantage). My plan came *to* nothing (failed). I have come *to* the end of my tether (have no resources left). The two parties came *to* blows (fought together). You have no right *to* the prize. I gave him the lie *to* (not *in*) his face. I am a prey *to* anxiety. I put him *to* the blush—*to* shame (made him ashamed). I broke the news *to* him. He refused consent *to* (not *for*) the production of the play. Thanks *to* his lightness of foot he escaped. The crime was laid *to* his charge (he was accused of it). Undaunted by failure, he returned *to* the charge (made a second attempt). I jumped *to* the conclusion (hastily concluded) that he was deaf. He repeated his assertion in spite of assurances *to* the contrary. He extols (or lauds) the book *to* the skies (excessively). Do not proceed (or go) *to* extremities (take extreme measures). All fell victims (or a prey) *to* famine. She would believe nothing *to* his prejudice (against him). The men were true *to* their salt (faithful to their leaders). The barons bade defiance *to* the king. They showed much hostility *to* (not *against*) my proposal. Nothing was left but an appeal *to* arms (recourse to war). What is that *to* me? I drink *to* your success. Let us sing *to* the praise and glory of God. I would *to* God I were safe at home. I am alive *to* (fully conscious of) the difficulties. The tower is nodding *to* its fall. The fort was razed *to* the ground. We fell *to* talking (began to talk) about him. May I help you *to* this dish? Stand *to* your arms. *To* arms! It stands *to* (or with) reason (is clearly reasonable). All present rose *to* their feet (stood up), as he entered. He rose *to* the occasion. As *to* the result, it is uncertain.

A message *to* this effect (with this purport). He is given *to* opium-eating. Face *to* face. A hand *to* hand fight. We do not see eye *to* eye (agree exactly) in everything. They both worked shoulder *to* shoulder (with united effort). To speak *to* the question. This is greatly *to* your credit. *To* his honour he it said. His life is drawing *to* a close. I took him *to* task (I asked him to explain his conduct). I called him *to* account. Do not lay this *to* my account (attribute it *to* me). I lost Rs. 10 *to* him last night. He took *to* his heels (ran away). He took *to* his bed. I do not take *to* him (I do not like him at first sight). He took (or laid) my remarks *to* heart (felt them deeply). Napoleon was now brought *to* bay (to a position from which escape is impossible). *To* boot (in addition). It is so reported *to* this day (down to the present time).

(2) *Reference to some standard* :—

*To* all appearance he is guilty. This is the same *to* all intents and purposes (practically the same). *To* the best of my recollection he used those very words. He made one son his heir *to* the exclusion of the rest. He is not in Calcutta *to* my knowledge. Much *to* my surprise I found him gone. He is, *to* my mind (in my opinion), our greatest general. She tried *to* soothe him but *to* no purpose (vainly).

(3) *Adaptation, consonance* :—

An occupation *to* his taste (agreeable *to* him). A wife *to* his mind—*to* his liking (cf. *after* one's own heart). This is nothing *to* the purpose. It is not *to* my advantage. Her figure was shown (or displayed) *to* advantage (favourably) by her dress. I am Rs. 100 *to* the good (I have made a profit or saving of Rs. 100, or I have a credit of Rs. 100). The prospect is seen *to* the best advantage from this spot. She sang *to* his accompaniment on the harp. A meteor streaming *to* the wind (*Milton*). They marched *to* the music of the band. The article was written *to* order (according to instructions). It stands *to* reason (is clearly reasonable).

(4) *Comparison* ; hence used in wagers :—

As three is *to* six, so is four *to* eight. All that they did was piety *to* this [*B. Jonson*]. I'll lay four *to* one upon him. Ten *to* one (most probably) you will fail. My bow of yew *to* a hazel wand, Thou'lt make them work upon the Border (*Scott*).

(5) *Purpose* :—

I went *to* see him. I call you *to* (for, as) witness. *To* take *to* wife. Ready *to* one's hand (for immediate use). The nymph, *to* the destruction of mankind, Nourished two locks (*Pope*). *To* put one's money out *to* interest. *To* this end (with this object) he joined the Whigs.

(6) *Degree, limit* :—

They came *to* the number of fifty. They were slain *to* a man (all without exception). We will fight *to* the last man (even when all but one have been killed). *To* fight *to* the bitter end—*to* the death. You must pay me *to* the uttermost farthing. He was stripped *to* his shirt. She drained the cup of sorrow *to* the dregs. He remained my friend *to* the end of the chapter (all through my career or life). I was stung *to* the quick (deeply wounded) by his remark. Armed *to* the teeth (at all points). Steeped *to* the very lips in poverty (*Shaks.*). Game *to* the backbone (thoroughly courageous). Staunch *to* the core. He acted (or drew) it *to* the life. He came *to*

the minute (was exactly punctual in arriving). *Exact to* the letter. To do a thing *to* a nicety—*to* the best of one's ability. He is right, *to* a certainty. The meat is done (cooked) *to* a turn. Flatterers fooled him *to* the top of his bent (let him go on being as foolish as he would). I obeyed his order *to* a tittle—*to* a hair (with minute exactness). He loved her *to* distraction (madly). He succeeded *to* admiration. The Carthaginians were perfidious *to* a proverb (notoriously perfidious). Though I *to* dimness gaze (*Keats*). War *to* the knife. His house was burnt *to* the ground. I was frightened *to* death (excessively; but, 'frightened *into* fits').

(7) *Result* :—

Turned *to* stone. Worn *to* a shadow—*to* a skeleton. Crushed *to* death. Smashed *to* atoms. Torn *to* pieces. He was flattered *to* his ruin. He did it *to* his cost. They laughed him *to* scorn (derided him). Forged *to* 'hyself *to* marble (*Milton*).

456. **Adverbial Uses.**—*To* is used as an adverb in—

Go *to* (set yourself to prove what you say—a formula of remonstrance). *To* and fro (backwards and forwards). He fainted, but was soon brought *to* (was revived; so a person 'comes *to*'). Supper was brought in, and we fell *to* (began to eat).

**Toward, Towards.**

457. **Toward, towards** (*tending to*) signify in the direction of :—  
'The army marched *towards* the city.' Hence, they have the senses of—

(1) *Approaching to*, and so *near to* :—

*Towards* the end of his book, he states, etc. I will come *towards* the close of the day. It is *towards* evening, and the day is far spent (*Bible*).

(2) *With a view to*, for the *ail of* :—

I have done all I could *towards* that object. I will contribute something *towards* payment of the amount.

(3) *With reference to*, regarding :—

To have a conscience void of offence *toward* God and *toward* man (*Bible*).

**Under.**

458. **Under** marks *position* or *motion beneath* :—'He stood *under* a tree,' 'The boat is passing *under* the bridge.' It has this meaning in—

*Under* cover (sheltered). *Under* lock and key (locked up). *Under* sail (with the sails spread; hence also, '*under* steam'). *Under* weigh (in motion; of a ship). *Under* arms (with arms in the hands, ready for fighting). *Under* the rose (secretly, confidentially). *Under* the sun (in the world). *Under* one's nose (before one's very face). *Under* one's wing (protection). *Under* fire (exposed to the enemy's shot). *Under* one's thumb (in complete subjection). *Under* a cloud (in trouble or disfavour). *Under* the breath (in a whisper, very softly). *Under* age (a minor).

Hence it has the meaning of—

(1) *In subordination to, subject to :—*

The English army, *under* Clive, took up its position. Many reforms were introduced *under* Lord Bentinck. Be patient *under* misfortune. Christianity was established *under* the auspices of Constantine (with his favour or patronage). I will go *under* these conditions. *Under* (or, better, *in*) the circumstances, I ask permission, etc. The bill is *under* discussion—*under* consideration. The troops are *under* orders to embark (have received orders). The medicine, *under* God (by God's providence), saved his life. He is *under* sentence of death. A post *under* Government. Given *under* (authenticated by) my hand (signature) and seal. I tell you this *under* the seal (bond) of secrecy. He labours *under* the disadvantage of a poor education. This is forbidden *under* penalty of a fine—*under* pain of death (with a fine or death as the punishment for disobedience). I am *under* obligation to him. Every city was laid *under* contribution (was made to contribute). The building is *under* (in course of) construction. I am *under* the necessity of refusing. I do this *under* protest. I am *under* the impression that this is so. He came *under* suspicion. You are *under* a delusion (or mistake) in this matter. The case is *under* trial. He is *under* arrest. He was arrested *under* a warrant from the Court. I inherited this property *under* my father's will. This iter: comes *under* the head of receipts.

(2) *Falling short of, less than :—*

I will not sell it *under* ten rupees. The work cannot be finished *under* a fortnight. He will not associate with any one *under* a lord. This calculation is *under* the mark (less than the true amount). These goods are *under* the mark (inferior to the standard quality).

(3) *Covered, represented, designated by :—*

He travelled *under* the name of Courtenay. A statue of Pity, *under* the figure of an angel. He deceived me *under* the mask (or colour or guise or pretence or pretext) of friendship.

**459. Adverbial Uses.**—*Under* is used as an adverb in—

The doctor soon brought the fever *under* (subdued it). I was obliged to knock *under* (to yield). I keep *under* my body and bring it into subjection (*Bible*).

### Up.

**460. Up** indicates *motion to*, and sometimes *rest at*, a *higher point* :—

He is gone *upstairs*. I saw Ram *up* a tree. The ship sailed *up* the river. They went *up* stream. He is gone *up* country (to the interior parts). They travelled *up* the country (inland from the coast). This is very *uphill* (difficult) work.

**461. Adverbial Uses.**—*Up* is used as an adverb in—

To get *up* early. Let us be *up* and doing. Prices are looking *up* (have a tendency to rise). He offered (or put) *up* a prayer. To keep *up*

appearances (to maintain outwardly a good show). He brought *up* (educated) his son to his own trade. The barrister threw *up* his brief (abandoned it as hopeless). His blood was *up* (he was excited or in a passion). He fired *up* (was very angry) at this retort. To bear *up* (be firm) under difficulties. Buoyed *up* by the hope of success. I cheered him *up*. A case cropped *up* (came into notice). He came *up* (arrived, approached) soon after. He was *up* to time (he was ready at the appointed time). I caught him *up* (overtaken him). The general followed *up* his advantage by capturing the fort. This does not come *up* to (equal) my expectations. He was very much cried *up* (belauded) as a musician. I will show him *up* (expose him). The newspapers wrote him *up* (praised him). I will have you *up* (prosecute you) for assault. If the weather clears *up*—holds *up*. The band struck *up* a tune. To beat *up* (collect, *lit.* by beat of drum) recruits. To train *up* (educate) a child. I sat *up* all night. The matter was hushed *up*. His name calls *up* (recalls) old memories. I must act *up* to (in accordance with) my convictions. He is quite *up* (equal) to his work. I can put you *up* (lodge you). I put him *up* to asking the question (instigated him to ask it). I put him *up* to ask the question (utilised him as a means of asking it). We put *up* (roused) several snipe. It was soon known that Gladstone was *up* (on his legs, speaking). The roads are *up* (under repair). The rebels are *up* (have risen against the Government). The hunt is *up* (afoot). The game is *up* (the plan has failed). They are *up* in arms (in open warfare). It is all *up* with me (I am lost, done for). Time is *up* (exhausted). I knocked him *up* (waked him) at 6 o'clock. I feel quite knocked (or done) *up* (exhausted). He is laid *up* (confined to his bed) with fever. I have used *up* (expended) all my paper. He tore *up* the letter. They drew *up* (composed) a petition. The troops were drawn *up* (set in array). He pulled *up* his horses. The fort was blown *up*. I must get (or learn) *up* (thoroughly) that subject. They got *up* (set on foot) a concert. This is a got-*up* (concocted) affair. This is a trumped-*up* (invented) charge. He is well *up* (learned) in mathematics. He is hard *up* (in difficulty) for funds. The matter was patched *up* (arranged somehow). I fitted *up* these rooms at great expense. I will back you *up* in this matter (support you). The judge summed *up* the case. I must wind *up* my watch. The company was wound *up* (its business was closed). To store *up*—lay *up* treasure, etc. He is much out *up* (grieved) at his loss. The mutineers were cut *up* (killed) in large numbers. His book was cut *up* (severely criticised) in the papers. We have made *up* (composed) our quarrel. I have made *up* (set in order) my accounts. I have made *up* (compensated) his loss to him. He made *up* to me (tried to win my favour). Cast *up* (add up) the bill. When does your school break *up* (disperse for the holidays)? The meeting then broke *up*. The frost has broken *up*. He gave *up* (abandoned) the attempt. To give *up* the ghost (to die). To run *up* (incur quickly) a bill. To run *up* (erect quickly) a fence. To stir *up* strife. He was sold *up* (his property was seized and sold by his creditors). *Up* to the hilt (thoroughly, completely). He acted *up* to his principles (in accordance with them). I do not feel *up* to my work to-day (equal to doing it). He lives *up* to his income.

### With.

462. *With* first had the meaning of *from*, still seen in '*withhold*,' '*withdraw*,' '*to part with*,' '*to differ with*,' '*to break with*' (quarrel), etc. Then it took the meaning of *against*, seen in



'withstand,' 'to be angry *with*,' 'to fight *with*,' etc.<sup>1</sup> Lastly, it gained its modern sense of *association*, as in 'I will go *with* you,' 'I am *with* you in that matter,' i.e., 'I agree in your view of it.'

It is thus used in relation to—

(1) *Attendant circumstances* :—

I will come *with* pleasure. Born *with* a silver spoon in his mouth (fortunate from his birth). His interests are bound up (intimately connected) *with* mine. He heard the news *with* bated breath (in anxious silence). *With* you to help me, I shall succeed. *With* what object did you do this (What was your object in doing this)? *With* one exception, all the candidates passed. *With* (in spite of) all his diligence, he failed in the examination. England, *with* all thy faults, I love thee still (*Cowper*). *With* that (immediately after saying or doing that), he drew his sword. *With* these remarks, the speaker sat down. He works *with* a will (with zest, diligently). To do a thing *with* a vengeance (violently, excessively). He did it *with* the best intentions (meaning well). He took the reproof *with* a good grace (in a becoming manner). He entered into the project *with* heart and soul. Will you help me?—Yes, *with* all my heart (most heartily). He gazed *with* all his eyes (eagerly, intently). He received me *with* open arms (affectionately). He escaped *with* his life (he just escaped death). The doctor gave him quinine *with* a good result. The police came *with* a view to making enquiries. The Court sat *with* closed doors. No one could see it *with* dry eyes. They started off *with* one consent (by common agreement). *With* one voice (unanimously). *With* one accord. *With* difficulty—*with* ease.

(2) *The point of reference* of an action or a feeling :—

He is popular *with* his countrymen. It is the custom *with* the Hindus to burn their dead. What shall I do *with* it? It is all over *with* him (he is ruined, dead, etc.). I was beforehand *with* him. The decision lies (or rests) *with* you. My father is *with* God (in Heaven; no longer living). Poverty, *with* most, is self-inflicted woe (*Cowper*). Make haste *with* your lessons. I was much taken (pleased) *with* him. He made free *with* my money. What is the matter *with* you? The petition found favour *with* the king. It will go hard *with* me, if I fail to pay him (it will expose me to serious trouble). I will be even *with* you (be revenged upon you). The danger weighed little *with* him (he thought it of small importance). Do not break faith *with* me (violate your promise to me). Why do you find fault *with* me? Have patience *with* me. No arguments prevailed *with* him. Everything goes wrong *with* me to-day. I will not put up *with* (tolerate) your conduct. I hope you will bear *with* me. The Thugs made away *with*<sup>2</sup> (killed) the travellers. Some wish to do away *with*<sup>2</sup> (abolish) the House of Lords. I have broken *with* him (ceased to be friends with him). I have nothing to do *with* him. What has this to do *with* the matter? (how does it affect it?) I helped him on *with* his coat. I will

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 'He can make a watch *with* (in competition with) any one in the trade'; 'He can write an essay *with* the best' (essay-writers).

<sup>2</sup> The original phrases are 'to make away,' 'to do away,' without *with*, which has crept in from confusion with the exclamatory 'Away with' below. Cf. 'Is every landmark of the country to be *done away* in favour' etc. ?—*Burke*.

close *with* (accept) your offer. This is not in keeping *with* your position (in harmony with it). Get on (proceed) *with* your lessons. I cannot get on (be on friendly terms) *with* him. He charged him *with* the crime (accused him of it). He charged him *with* the message (entrusted him with it). Get along, be off—*with* you! Off *with* his head! Down *with* him! Down *with* your dust (pay your money at once)! Down *with* the tyrant (overthrow him)! Away *with* him!

### (3) Instrumentality :—

He did it *with* his own hands. He was elated *with* joy. The estate is saddled (burdened) *with* a debt of Rs. 5,000. To carry matters *with* a high hand (arbitrarily). He was punished *with* a fine by the magistrate.

### Within.

463. *Within* means *in the interior of* and so *inside the limits of* :—

He kept *within* doors. I will come *within* an hour (before an hour expires). He lives *within* easy distance of the town. I am *within* three months as old as you (I am less than three months your junior). He lives *within* his income (does not exceed it). The bough is *within* reach. The fort is *within* range of the enemy's guns. That is hardly *within* the range of probability (hardly ever likely to happen). *Within* the bounds of possibility (just possible). This amount is *within* the mark (below the truth, not exaggerated). The doctor was *within* call (near enough to be summoned). The ship was *within* hail. No one was *within* earshot (near enough to hear a call). The deserter was *within* an ace (or a hair's breadth, or a little) of being shot (was very near being shot). I will flog you *within* an inch of your life (till you are nearly dead). I am *within* my rights in doing this (legally entitled to do it). They buried him *within* hearing of the waves (where their sound could be heard). Wheels *within* wheels (a complication of circumstances, motives, etc.).

### Without.

464. *Without* means *on the outside of*, as, 'They stood *without* the door'; but in this sense *outside* has taken its place, and *without* is generally used to express *exclusion* or *deficiency* with reference to attendant circumstances only :—

He was left *without* a penny in the world. To make bricks *without* straw (to try to do something without the requisite materials or appliances). A distinction *without* a difference. He tried, *without* success, to win the prize. *Without* doubt you are right. We cannot do (manage) *without* some help. He went *without* (dispensed with) his dinner. I will come *without* fail (for certain). All, *without* exception, fled. I make this offer *without* prejudice (without detracting from my rights or previous claims). He told me his plans *without* reserve. His father gave him money *without* stint. He resigned *without* notice. He went off *without* a word. He reckoned *without* his host (he came to an unwarranted conclusion; he was disappointed). Everything was carried through *without* a hitch (smoothly).

## PHRASAL USES OF VERBS.

465. There are many common English verbs which enter largely into the idiomatic phraseology of the language ; and the same verb often seems to bear in one expression a very different meaning from that which it bears in another. Take, for instance, the verb *strike* ; we have :—

- (1) He *struck* (entered suddenly) into the conversation.
- (2) A man well *stricken* (advanced) in years.
- (3) The tree *strikes* (thrusts) its roots deep into the ground.
- (4) The clock *strikes* (sounds the hour of) twelve.
- (5) This *strikes* (impresses) me as strange.
- (6) The dealer *struck* (concluded) a bargain with him.
- (7) To *strike* (lower) sail, a flag, a tent.

Here it is difficult, at first sight, to understand how one verb can come to be used with such a variety of meanings, many of which seem to have little or no connexion with one another. But when we investigate the original meaning of the verb *strike*, we find that it is comparatively easy to trace all these different idiomatic uses up to that one original meaning. Thus the original notion contained in *strike* is that of *quick, regular motion*, a meaning which is seen underlying example (1) above. Then *strike* gained its common Old English sense of 'to advance,' a meaning which is seen exemplified in (2). In (3) *strike* is used transitively in the sense of 'to make to advance' and so 'to push or thrust.' The transition is easy from this meaning to the common one of 'to hit, to give a blow,' a sense which is illustrated in (4) by the *beats* of the clock's hammer which sound the hour, and which is figuratively employed in (5). 'To *strike* a bargain,' in (6), comes from the *striking* together or clasping of the hands of the two persons who make the bargain. Finally, the meaning of *strike* in (7) is derived from the swift, smooth motion given to the sail-yard, the flag, or the tent-pole in lowering them.

It forms a good exercise in idiom to classify the various idiomatic uses of a word by tracing them up to its original meaning, as in the following examples.

466. *Catch*.

The primary notion of *catch* is to *lay hold promptly or suddenly* on an object in motion, so as to retain it: as, 'to *catch* a ball,' 'to *catch* a thief,' 'to *catch* a notion.' So *catch* means to take or acquire anything that is fugitive: as, 'to *catch* a likeness,' 'to *catch* a habit.' Hence we get the meanings—

(1) *To captivate, win :—*

The soothing arts that *catch* the fair (*Dryden*). The speaker *caught* the ear (won the attention) of his audience. A *catch-penny* (a worthless thing, made to gain money).

(2) *To fasten upon, take hold of (as wild beasts catch their prey) :—*

The fire *caught* the adjoining house. The house *caught* fire. Drowning men *catch* at straws. He *caught* at my offer (received it eagerly). If this should *catch* the eye, etc. (attract the gaze). I *caught* his eye (I watched him till he looked at me). To *catch* hold of a thing.

(3) *To take, apprehend :—*

To *catch* cold ; to *catch* the measles. To *catch* one's death of cold. The disease is *catching*. The other tribes *caught* the contagion of rebellion. To *catch* a tune (by listening to the tune to be able to reproduce it). To *catch* the spirit of the occasion. The painter has *caught* his expression in the portrait. To *catch* a trick (to imitate unconsciously a habit or action). I *caught* a glimpse of him. I *caught* the sound of distant roaring. I do not *catch* the point of your remarks. *Elijah* was *caught* up to heaven.

(4) *To come upon unexpectedly, to find :—*

I *caught* him in the act of stealing. He was *caught* red-handed (in the actual execution of a crime). To *catch* one napping (to gain an advantage over one through his inattention). To *catch* one tripping (making a mistake or in fault). Mind I don't *catch* you at that again. You won't *catch* me going there again in a hurry. I have *caught* myself, when thinking in the dark of a horrid spectacle, closing my eyes firmly (*Darwin*). To *catch* a Tartar (to seize or attack one who is too strong for you).

(5) *To come up with, overtake, reach :—*

To *catch* a companion (as during a walk. 'To *catch up*' or '*catch up with*' has the same meaning). To *catch* a train.

467. **Take.**

The primary notion of *take* is *to lay hold of, to grasp with the hand* : as, 'to *take up* arms' (to go to war). Hence we get the meanings—

(1) *To assume, accept, adopt :—*

He *took* it into his head that, etc. (he conceived the notion that, etc.). He *took* it ill or amiss (was offended). He *took* it in good part (was not offended). I *take* it (I think) you are wrong. You may *take* my word for it (you may accept my statement as true). To *take* a thing for granted. The report was *taken* as read. I *take* you at your word (I accept your statement as true, and act accordingly). I *took* him by surprise (came upon him unexpectedly). Whom do you *take* me for? He *took* his leave (departed). I must *take* leave of you (part from you). I *take* leave (venture) to say you are wrong. I *take* the liberty (or the opportunity) of telling you this. He *took* possession of the property. You must not *take* liberties with him. He *took* advantage of my weakness. To *take* cold. The house *took* fire. His imagination *took* fire (was greatly excited). To

*take* the alarm. My horse *took* (leaped over) the fence well. I *took* a great fancy (or liking) to him. This watch *takes* (captivates) my fancy. A *taking* (captivating) person. He is *taking* the air in his carriage. The plot *took* air (was divulged). He *took* a turn (a short walk to and fro) in the garden. His disease has *taken* a favourable turn (change). You *take* things (or the world) easily. To *take* the bull by the horns (to face a danger boldly). I must *take* my own time to do it. This business will *take* (consume) a great deal of time. You have *taken* a false step (made a blunder). His army now *took* the field (entered upon warlike operations). A tiger will *take* (enter) the water. The ship *took* (touched) the ground. She has *taken* the veil (become a nun). We must *take* stock of our position (make an estimate of it). He was quite *taken* aback (dismayed) at my refusal. *Taking* one thing with another (on an average). To *take* a person in (to cheat him). To *take* a person off (to mimic him). To *take* a person to task (to find fault with him). To *take* a thing to heart (to feel it strongly). To *take* down evidence (to record it). To *take* to one's bed (through illness). To *take* to one's heels (to flee). To *take* (kindly) to a person [to feel a (great) liking for him]. To *take* upon oneself (to presume). To *take* after (to resemble). To *take*—part, effect, heart, place, stook, wing, flight, breath, aim, fright, note, notice, care, heed, pains, counsel, exception to, objection to, pity on, refuge in, action, a walk, hold of, in hand, into account, in tow, oath, offence, revenge, service, exercise, cognisance, the initiative (start, commence), the lead.

(2) *To accept without resistance, to submit to :—*

He never can *take* a joke. You must *take* the consequences. I will *take* my chance (accept what happens).

(3) *To understand (of mental apprehension) :—*

I do not *take* your meaning. Do you *take* me? He *took* the hint.

#### 468. Tell.

The radical meaning of *tell* is to count; we still speak of *telling* (counting) votes and beads, and those who count the votes in Parliament are called the *tellers*. Similarly we say 'The crew consisted of twenty-five men, all *told*' (reckoned). Hence a *tale* is literally a 'number' as in 'the *tale* of bricks' (*Bible*), and 'to *tell* a *tale*' is literally to 'reckon a reckoning.' So too 'untold gold' is 'countless gold.'<sup>1</sup> Hence we get the meanings—

(1) *To recount, narrate a string of events or story, inform :—*

*Tell* us all about the war. Shall I *tell* your fortune (predict what is to happen to you)? I hear *tell* that he is bankrupt (I learn by hearsay). You must promise not to *tell* (reveal the secret). These withered crops *tell* their own tale (show the want of rain, without any explanation being required; they *speak for themselves*). Not a man escaped to *tell* the tale (of disaster). To *tell* tales out of school (to betray secrets). I will *tell* your father of you (inform against you). To *tell* a lie.

<sup>1</sup> So persons are '*told off*' (counted off, appointed) to perform certain duties or functions; and cf. 'While one with moderate haste might *tell* a hundred' (*Shaks.*)

(2) *To command*.—

I *told* you not to do so.

(3) *To determine, know*.—

I cannot *tell* what he means. How could I *tell* that?

(4) *To be reckoned or count towards producing a sum total, and so to produce an effect*.—

Every shot *tells*. A *telling* (effective) speech. The great exertion *tells* upon his strength. Your bad writing will *tell* against you in the examination. The prisoner's youth *tells* in his favour.

[A selection of verbs follows, with special idiomatic uses appended to each verb. To classify these uses according to the method pursued above will form a good exercise in idiom; the exact meaning of each phrase should be learned.]

## 469. Draw.

To *draw*—a tooth, a sigh, a curtain, the veil, a sword, lots, rain, blood, water, breath, a fowl, a fox, a deed, a will, a cheque, a picture, interest, profit. I have *drawn* his teeth for him. To *draw* the long bow. To *draw* on a person for an amount. The ship *draws* twenty feet of water. Hanged, *drawn*, and quartered. A *drawn* game. To *draw* one out. This play will *draw* a good house. The year is *drawing* to a close. To *draw*—an inference, a moral, a conclusion, a comparison, a parallel. To *draw* in one's horns. To *draw*—near, back. To *draw* up—troops, a treaty. It is hard to *draw* a line between things so similar. He *drew* the pen through this clause. The huntsmen *drew* the cover.

## 470. Get.

You must *get* your lessons by heart or you will *get* into trouble. He *got* me into trouble. I cannot *get* him to go. *Get* this letter written. The ship *got* a mile out of her course. *Get* you gone. *Get* along with you! I *got*—the start of him, ahead of him, the better of him. To *get*—drunk, rid of, quit of, clear of, ready. I *got* round him. The invalid is *getting* better. I cannot *get* to sleep. I should like to *get* at the truth. The prisoner *got* loose (or free). How are you *getting* on? You must *get* on with your lessons. I cannot *get* on with him. He *got* off unpunished. He *gets* over the ground rapidly. He has *got* over his father's death. I have *got* through my work. The chairman *got* up and made a speech. This book is well *got* up. I like the *get-up* (noun) of this book. What time do you *get* up in the morning? He *got* up an entertainment. This is a mere *got-up* affair. The story *got* (or took) wind. I *got* wind of the affair. He *got* scent of the plot. It has *got* abroad that you intend to take leave. You will *get* the worst of it. He has *got* into hot water about that business. Take care you don't *get* into a scrape. To *get* into harness. He has *got* into the way of being late. He is too ill to *get* about.

## 471. Give.

Do not *give* yourself airs. The sentinel *gave* the alarm. Cows *give* milk. I will not *give* countenance to such accusations. *Give* ear to my

prayer. *His deeds give* the lie to his words. He *gave* rein (or the reins or a loose) to his passion. The rider *gave* the horse his head. His conduct *gave* rise to suspicion. This occupation *gives* scope to his talents. The boy *gave* him the slip and could not be found. He *gave* vent to his rage. I *give* you my word it is true. The general *gave* the word to halt. The king *gave* audience to the ambassador. The troops *gave* battle. This fact *gives* some colour to his complaint. They *gave* chase to the stag. I *give* you credit for meaning well. This shopkeeper *gives* no credit. The nation is *given* up to idolatry. He is *given* to being unpunctual. The king *gave* a garden party. He is *given* over by the doctors. They *gave* over the pursuit. I *gave* myself up for lost. It is *given* to some to be rich and great. I urged him, but he would not *give* way. The troops began to *give* ground. *Give* place to your betters. He *gave* me a box on the ear. The mob *gave* a great shout. I *gave* him a bit (or a piece) of my mind on that subject. She *gave* birth to a son. You must *give* effect to your proposal. I *gave* him the cold shoulder. The hounds *gave* tongue. To *give* up the ghost.

## 472. Go.

To *go* mad. This fish has *gone* bad. To *go* naked. To *go* halves. To *go* shares with one. To *go* without one's dinner. This *goes* for nothing. This flattery *goes* against the grain with me. I fear it will *go* hard with you. To *go* ill or well with one. You must *go* through with what you undertake. This excuse won't *go* down in a court of law. So the story *goes*. As things *go*. Everything has *gone* wrong with me. As the world *goes*. To *go* in for an examination. How do prices *go*? You must not *go* upon this supposition. Dead and *gone*. Look how his colour comes and *goes*. He is very far *gone*. Let bygones be bygones. The mast *went* by the board. He *goes* by the name of Narain. You had better *go* by my advice. I gave him the *go-by* (noun). You may *go* further and fare worse. He *went* head over heels. To *go* to law. He has *gone* to the dogs (coll.). The weaker must *go* to the wall. His property is *gone* to rack. He *went* through fire and water in the king's cause. He *went* the whole length (or all lengths) in that matter. I will not *go* the length of saying that he is a rogue. I will not *go* so far as to say that. The tax-collector is *going* his rounds..

## 473. Keep.

You must *keep* me company. I will not *keep* company with him. I *kept* my counsel in that matter. It was hard to *keep* one's countenance. I have been *kept* in the dark about this. *Keep* clear of debt. He *kept* in the background. Even poor people like to *keep* up appearances. He could hardly *keep* body and soul together. He wished to be friendly, but I *kept* him at arm's length. After that he *kept* aloof. You must *keep* warm. His memory is *kept* alive by his works. By great frugality they *kept* their heads above water. It is unwise to *keep* late hours. He ran so fast that I could not *keep* pace with him. The mayor *kept* open house. She *kept* house for him. I wish you would *keep* to the point. I *kept* my thoughts to myself. To *keep*—one's word, one's promise. They were so poor that it was hard to *keep* the wolf from the door. I was *kept* up all night. *Keep* up your spirits. They *kept* up the old customs. He *kept* his bed (or the house) for five weeks. To *keep*—the laws, the sabbath. He *keeps* three servants. *Keep* a shop, and the shop will *keep* you. I fear I have *kept* you a long time. The soldiers marched, *keeping* step. The rowers all *kept* time. The pickets were ordered to *keep* touch. *Keep* quiet! You

should *keep* accounts and a diary. He has *kept* three terms at Oxford. You must *keep* an eye on his doings. I warn you to *keep* your distance. So slippery was it, he found it hard to *keep* his feet. I want to *keep* my hand in. The army *kept* the field. You must *keep* the peace.

#### 474. Make.

To *make* (or drive) a bargain. To *make*—haste, choice, provision, mention, sail, war. To *make* the best of a bad bargain. He *made* the most of his spare time. You must *make* allowance for him. I *made* an appointment with him. He is *making* progress in his studies. He *made* the first advances. You are *making* a catpaw of me. He *made* a clean breast of the affair. They *made* common cause with the rebels. I shall *make* an example of him. I will not be *made* a fool of. He *makes* (or outs) a figure in society. I *make* bold to say you are wrong. It is easy to *make* free with other people's money. He *made* light of my offer. *Make* sure that you are right. *Make* sure of your proofs. They all *made* merry at his expense. I want to *make* friends with him. He *made* game (or sport, or fun, or a mock) of my scruples. My words *made* no impression upon him. Don't *make* such a noise. I am going out to *make* some calls. He *made* love to her. When found, *make* a note of. Have you any objection to *make*? He *made* a point of taking a walk daily. You may *make* your own terms. I will *make* it worth your while to accept. Do not *make* use of such expressions. He *made* a clean sweep of the whole gang. The king *made* short work of the rebels. Get a good education and you are a *made* man. His education *made* a man of him. The result will *make* or mar us. This story is all a *make-up*. Life is *made* up of incidents. You must *make* up for lost time. They have *made* up their quarrel. Come, shake hands and *make* it up. I will *make* up my accounts. I have *made* up my mind. He has *made* a fortune in business. He *made* a merit of refusing an offer which he could not accept. Tennyson *made* a name for himself as a poet. To *make*—a remark, an observation, a proposal, an offer, a sensation. He has *made* away with (p. 248, foot-note 2) all his money. The children *made* believe that they were a robber band. Poor people often find it difficult to *make* both ends meet. They *made* for the French coast. Thrift and industry *make* for progress. Do not *make* mouths at me. He was *made* much of in society on account of his wealth. He was so confused that I could *make* nothing (or little) of what he said. I do not know what to *make* of this proposal. The thief *made* off with the purse. Every one *made* way for the great man. He *made* his way home. The ship *made* ten knots an hour. This *makes* no difference. You must *make* amends for your wrong-doing. They *made* a landing on the coast. He *made* head against his opponents. The tide was so strong that the boat *made* little headway. The ship was *making* water fast.

#### 475. Pick.

You cannot *pick* and choose. To *pick* one's teeth. To *pick* a bone. I have a bone (or a crow) to *pick* with you. To *pick* fruit. To *pick* a pocket. *Picking* and stealing. To *pick* a person's brains. To *pick* a lock. He *picked* a quarrel with me. You must *pick*—your way, your steps. He was too indignant to *pick* his words. I have *picked* up a bargain to day. To *pick* oakum. She *picked* his character to pieces. He is always *picking* holes in people's coats. I *picked* acquaintance with him. The invalid is *picking* up. To *pick* up—a language, a livelihood, information. A white



boat *picked* out with gold. They were *picked* off by the enemy's *sharpshooters*.

#### 476. Play.

To *play*—the fool, the man, the mischief with, truant. You must *play* fair. He *played* me false (or, He *played* false with me). He was *playing* a part to deceive me. He *played* me a trick. He *played* a double game. He knows how to *play* his own game. She *played* fast and loose with him. The fountain *plays*. The fire-engine *played* on the flames. The wind *played* upon the surface of the water. He *played* the salmon. You *played* into his hand. He *plays* on the harp. You are *playing* upon words. He *played* off a fraud upon me. They are *playing* at cross purposes. In our youth we *played* at sailors. I *played* upon his love of flattery. He refused to *play* second fiddle. The candidate *played* his cards well. To *play* with fire is dangerous. Iago *played* off Othello's suspicions against Desdemona's simplicity.

#### 477. Put.

He *put* the question to me. I can *put* two and two together. You *put* the matter in its true light. To *put*—to sea, ashore. To *put*—in mind, in practice, on trial, to rights, to the vote, to the proof, to shame, to the blush, to the sword, to death, to flight, to inconvenience, to the rout. To *put* one—on one's guard, on one's mettle. The magistrate *put* the law in force. I *put* him at his ease. I have *put* a spoke in his wheel. He *put* a veto on my visits. I have *put* him on his good behaviour. You must *put* your best foot foremost. He has *put* the cart before the horse. *Put* out the light. The child was *put* out to nurse. My money is *put* out to interest. I was much *put* out at his conduct. He has *put* out his ankle. *Put* on your coat. He *put* on airs. The crew were *put*—or short allowance, on half rations. I have been *put* upon in this matter. He was *put* to many shifts to make a living. I was hard *put* to it for enough money to pay my fare. He did not *put* in an appearance. He has *put* in for a share in the profits. I shall *put* this off till to-morrow. He *put* me off with excuses. The boat *put* off to the ship. To *put* up a friend. They *put* up at the inn. I will not *put* up with this noise. To *put* up for sale. What *put* you up to asking this question? The ship *put* about. *Put* away your books.

#### 478. Run.

The bill has thirty days to *run*. His zeal *ran* away with his prudence. You must not *run* away with that notion. The lease is *run* out. To *run*—riot, wild, rampant, a muck (or amuck), a race, a risk, a rig. That tune *runs* in my head. His wildness of disposition *runs* in the blood. The wax began to *run* with the heat. This colour *runs* in washing. The waves *ran* high. The excitement *ran* high at the news. The ship *ran* foul of the pier and then *ran* aground. The story *runs* that, etc. Just *run* over these papers for me. The boy was *run* over by a bullock-cart. My cup *runneth* over (*Bible*). The four weeks had *run* out, and the money was due. He has *run* up a bill. To *run* up a building. The hunters *ran* down the stag. The boat was *run* down by a steamship. You are always *running* him down. He *ran* me hard for the prize. He has *run* through his fortune. He *ran* his enemy through. I have *run* short of pens and paper. Sharks frequently *run* to an enormous size. The plant is *run* to seed. His property is *run* to waste. He *ran* counter to my wishes.

I keep a *running* account. It has rained for three days *running*. A *running* fight. The army kept up a *running* fire. The *running* title of a book. The mill is still *running*. This play ran for fifty nights. This street *runs* east and west. Do not let your mind *run* on these topics. There is a *run* (noun) upon the Bank. Are you *running* a candidate for the post? My book has *run* the gauntlet of criticism. Do not *run* into debt. How you do *run* on!

## 479. Set.

To *set*—a trap, a razor, a clock, a tune, a broken leg, sail, one's teeth, the fashion, a task, an example, a precedent. He was the first to *set* foot on the island. A ring *set* with diamonds. He *set* his heart upon the marriage. He *set* them together by the ears. He *set* spurs to his horse. He *set* his dog upon me. He is *set* upon the marriage. I must *set* to work. His jokes *set* the table in a roar. He *set* me at defiance. He *set* at naught my advice. This item is not *set* down in the bill. This fellow must be *set* down. I *set* this failure down to your folly. To *set* up—a school, a howl, a claim, a type. He has *set* up his son in business. He *sets* up for a wit. He *set* the watch going. To *set* the ball rolling. That noise *sets* my teeth on edge. He *set* fire to the jungle. The jungle was *set* on fire. He will never *set* the Thames on fire. I have *set* my life upon a cast (*Shaks.*). I *set* my face against such conduct. He *set* his face as a flint. She *set* her cap at him. He *set* his hand to the document. To *set* store by a thing. To *set* a high value upon a thing. A price was *set* upon his head. To *set* one's house in order. To *set* a thing to rights. I *set* him right in the matter. The jelly (or cream) has *set*. The rains have *set* in. Let us *set* out at once. He *set* off (or forth) on his travels. Her beauty was *set* off by her attire. Men were *set* to cut a path through the jungle. A subscription was *set* on foot. This agreement cannot be *set* aside. The law must be *set* in motion. A *set* speech. He did it of *set* purpose. He abused me in good *set* terms. He *set* light by his opportunities. I *set* him at his ease. It is time to *set* about the business. He is *set* against all reforms. You may *set* your heart at rest on that matter. To *set* free. I never *set* eyes on him before. This song is *set* to music. I am hard *set* to find out the error. The current *sets* westwards.

## 480. Turn.

To *turn* ivory in a lathe. To *turn* an honest penny. To *turn* on—a tap, the water. He *turned* his talents to good account. He *turned* his attention to the subject. To *turn* prose into verse. The sick man has *turned* the corner. To *turn* tail. Success has *turned* his head (or his brain). I *turned* the tables on him. The thunder has *turned* the milk. To *turn* one's stomach. Everything *turned* upon the result of the battle. The talk *turned* on other matters. The troops *turned* the enemy's right. To *turn* a fort. He *turned* up his nose at my offer. I *turned* my horse loose. The tyrant is but a slave *turned* inside out. The boat *turned*—topsy-turvy, bottom upwards, upside down. *Turn* him out. I *turn* out at six every morning. It is time to *turn* in. The troops *turned* out 500 strong. The scheme *turned* out a failure. This machine *turns* out 100 buttons per minute. You had better *turn* to and finish the work. That evidence *turned* the scale in the prisoner's favour. He *turned* a deaf ear to my entreaties. The boat was *turned* adrift. Bismarck's marriage was the *turning* point in his life. He is *turned* sixty. The path *turns* off to the left. I have *turned* off a great deal of work. This tradesman *turns*

over Rs. 1000 a week. He has *turned* over a new leaf. *Turn* this over in your mind. He *turned* his back upon me. You should *turn* your opportunities to account—to advantage. He *turned* upon me in a fury. The political adventurer *turned* his coat. He can *turn* his hand to anything. This hard wood *turns* the edge of the saw. He then *turned* newspaper-editor. His influence with the prince was so great that he *turned* him round his finger. Even a worm will *turn*. His valour *turned* the tide of fortune.

**481 Other Examples.**—The following verbs are frequently found in idiomatic phraseology. It will form an excellent class-exercise to collect and classify the various phrases in which they occur :—

act	cast	fix	lead	show
bear	come	fly	leave	speak
beat	cry	gain	let	spring
bid	out	grow	lie	stand
blow	deal	hang	look	stick
break	do	have	lose	strike
bring	drop	hold	pass	throw
burn	fall	join	pay	touch
call	fetch	knock	raise	walk
carry	find	lay	see	work

### PHRASAL USES OF ADJECTIVES.

#### 482. Dead.

##### (1) *Deprived of life* :—

He is *dead* and gone. More *dead* than alive (nearly dead). To wait for *dead* men's shoes (to look out for promotion upon a death). A *dead* language (a language no longer spoken, as Sanskrit). *Dead* as a door-nail.

##### (2) *Destitute of life* :—

*Dead* matter. Faith without works is *dead* (*Bible*). He is *dead* (indifferent, callous) to all sense of honour. The *Dead* (unclaimed) Letter Office.

##### (3) *Death-like* :—

*Dead* darkness. He fell into a *dead* faint (or swoon). The *dead* (noun) — of night, of winter (the death-like part, the depth of).

##### (4) *Motionless, inert, impotent* :—

A *dead* calm. A *dead* sleep. A *dead* halt. A *dead* weight. A *dead* lift (a lift of a lifeless thing which cannot help to raise itself; hence, an effort of sheer strength). A *dead* pull. A *dead* reckoning (a reckoning by log book, without the advantage of taking observations). A *dead*-look (a stoppage with no power of motion left). A *dead* loss (a loss with no counterbalancing gain). I am *dead* (adv.) beat (utterly exhausted). The ball is *dead* (out of play, excluded from the game). This law is a *dead* letter (not in force, obsolete).

(5) *Unproductive, bringing no profit :—*

*Dead capital. Dead stock-in-trade. A dead heat* (a race in which the competitors are equal, a race without results).

(6) *Spiritless, dull :—*

*Dead colouring. A dead fire. Dead-alive* (half-dead and half-alive).

(7) *Monotonous, blunt :—*

*A dead level. A dead wall.*

(8) *Sure to kill, sure to hit, sure, certain :—*

He is a *dead* shot. He is *dead* upon (sure to notice) any mistake. He made a *dead* set (a determined attack) at me. A *dead* certainty. *Dead* (adv.)—ahead, in front (exactly ahead, etc. ; as, 'The wind was *dead* foul'). He was *dead* (adv., completely) against my plan.

484. *Fair.*

She is *fair* and false. The good ship started *fair* and free. The *fair* sex (women). The weather is *fair*. *Fair* play is a jewel. Is she *fair* or dark? She is *fair*-haired. By *fair* means or foul. He gave me *fair* (plausible) words. He is a *fair*-spoken (239) man. He is *fair* in his dealings. He is in a *fair* way to be ruined (likely to be ruined). He is on the *fair* road (or way) to ruin. This composition is *fair* (moderately good). He plays a *fair* game at chess. He bids *fair* (adv.) to become (is likely to become) a great author. He *fairly* (adv.) astonished me. I *fairly* (undeniably, actually) pushed him overboard. Make a *fair* copy of this exercise (638). My *fair* name is injured. He has acted *fair* (adv.) and square in the business. All I ask is a *fair* field and no favour. He is a *fair* subject of ridicule. Ram has a *fair* chance of winning the prize.

483. *Good.*

The *good* old time (or days). The *good* old rule. He died at a *good* old age. Write me a *good* (very) long letter. He stayed with me for a *good* (or for the best) part of last year. As *good* luck would have it. He is a *good*-for-nothing fellow. All in *good* time (there is no need for hurry). A *good* riddance. He pulls a *good* oar. I acted in *good* faith. Will you be *good* enough to cash this cheque? Put in a *good* word on my behalf. *Good* heavens! He was as *good* as his word. I am *good* for a 10-mile walk. He is *good* for Rs. 100. This rule still holds *good*. My promise stands *good*. I made his loss *good*. He gave me a *good* deal of trouble. He was a *good* way off. Take *good* heed to avoid him. A *good* many people. He subscribed a *good* round sum (a large sum). You must take a *good* strong dose of medicine. He arrived a *good* hour behind time. He is gone for *good* (noun). You must decide for *good* (noun) and all. He is working in *good* earnest. He has robbed me of my *good* name. We are *good* men and true. It does my heart *good* (noun) to see you. Their *good* swords are rust. A miss is as *good* as a mile. It was as *good* as a play to see them. He as *good* as refused me. I have got into his *good* graces. He is a *good* hand at (or *good* at) essay-writing. He has bought the *good*-will of the business. Do not throw *good* money after bad. I did him a *good* turn. He wished me *good* day.

## 485. Other examples for study :—

bad	dry	light	plain	sound
black	flat	long	quick	spare
clean	free	low	round	square
clear	great	main	simple	straight
close	hard	nice	small	tall
common	high	open	soft	white

## PHRASAL USES OF NOUNS.

## 486. Hand.

(1) *The extremity of the human arm :—*

At *hand* (near). He offered her his *hand* (made a proposal of marriage ; so, She gave him her *hand*=she accepted such a proposal). The letter was sent by *hand* (not through the post). Some commodities change *hands* (pass from one purchaser to another) many times before they are consumed. To receive at the *hands* of another (to receive from him). To wash one's *hands* of a thing (to disclaim responsibility for an event, to declare that one has nothing to do with it ; derived from Pilate's action at the trial of Christ). To have clean *hands* (to be innocent). In this matter my *hands* are tied (I am not a free agent). We are in God's *hands* (at his disposal). He killed all on whom he could lay *hands*. To shake *hands* (1. in salutation ; 2. as a token of reconciliation). A *hand* to *hand* fight (a fight at close quarters). *Hand* in *hand* (in close union). *Hande* off! (don't touch). *Hand* over *hand* (rapidly ; from passing the *hands* alternately one above the other in climbing a rope). To live from *hand* to mouth (to live precariously, without provision for the future ; *lit.*, using daily for food what is received by the hand). To do a thing off-*hand* (to do it without delay or hesitation ; so, out of *hand*). To be *hand* and glove (also '*hand* in glove') with a person (to be very intimate with ; *lit.*, as close as the glove is to the hand). To take (or have) in *hand* (to undertake). Money in *hand* (ready money). The subject in *hand* (the subject under discussion). To come to *hand* (to be received). To have on *hand* (to have for disposal or sale). We have an account of this event at first *hand* (from one who first knew about it ; from the original source). To buy at second *hand* (when no longer in the first or producer's hand, not new). These are second-*hand* books (not 'used books').

(2) *That which resembles it or performs its office :—*

The *hand* of a clock. (Cf. 'Fancy, like the *finger* of a clock.'—Cowper.)

(3) *A measure of a hand's breadth* (4 inches) :—

A horse fifteen *hands* high.

(4) *Side, part :—*

On the one *hand* ; on the other *hand*. It is agreed on all *hands* (by all parties).

(5) *Power of performance, agency, ability, skill :—*

To try one's *hand* at a thing (cf. 'a *handy* person'). He can turn his *hand* to anything. To bear (or lend) a *hand* (to aid). He had a *hand* in the business (was concerned in it). The business is in my *hands*. To

have one's *hands* full (to be completely occupied). To have the upper *hand* (to be superior). To carry matters with a high *hand* (to act arrogantly; so, high-handed = arrogant). He kept his men well in *hand* (under control). The younger men got completely out of *hand*. He made a bad *hand* of the business (mismanaged it). The Government gave the Viceroy a free *hand* (full liberty of action). He died by his own *hand*.

(6) *A performer, agent* :—

He is a good *hand* at composition. A mill *hand* (a worker in a mill). All *hands* (in a ship: all the sailors). In everything he is the Emperor's right *hand* (chief assistant).

(7) *Penmanship* :—

To write a good *hand*. A running *hand*.

#### 487. Face.

Darkness came over the *face* of things. How can you have the *face* to tell me this? The *face* of a watch or clock. The whole *face* of the ground was covered with frost. He persevered in the *face* of all obstacles. I withstood him to the *face*. We must put a good (or bold) *face* upon it. He fled from the *face* of the king. You are flying in the *face* of authority. I set my *face* against such practices. The six *faces* of a cube. This consideration gives some *face* to his proceedings. This is absurd on the *face* of it. He made *faces* at me. They stood *face to face*. The troops *faced* (verb) about. He boldly tried to *face* (verb) it out. They calmly looked death in the *face*. Ruin stared him in the *face*. They cursed him to his *face*.

#### 488. Head.

He has a *head* for mathematics. The *heads* of a discourse. Under what *head* does this item come? A *head-stone* (of a grave). At the bed's *head*. He is the *head* of the class. She has a beautiful *head* of hair. You have hit the nail on the *head*. I met him at the *head* of the street. Three hundred *head* of cattle (131). Matters have now come (or drawn) to a *head*. They sailed up to the *head* of the bay. I gave the horse his *head*. To make *head* against a difficulty. The rebellion gained (or gathered) *head*. He dragged in that topic by the *head* and shoulders [395, (b)]. This writer is *head* and shoulders above his contemporaries. This reservoir has a fine *head* of water. This beer has a good *head* on. These wet days my horse is eating his *head* off. She sat at the *head* of the table. Peel was now at the *head* of affairs. He did it out of his own *head*. A story has just come into my *head*. He took it into his *head* to object. Such an idea never entered my *head*. He did not know whether he was standing on his *head* or his heels. The boy fell *head* over heels. He was over *head* and ears in debt. I can't make *head* or tail of what he says. To break Priscian's *head*. Armed from *head* to foot.

#### 489. Other examples for study :—

breath	ground	light	order	side
day	heart	line	part	time
ear	home	matter	place	way
eye	life	mind	point	word

THE PRONOUN *IT*.

490. 1. The Neuter Pronoun *it*, followed by a relative clause either expressed or understood, is used in relation to a person or a thing, when it is intended that the reference should be quite indefinite.

(a) In questions :—

Who was *it* (the unknown person) that you saw? There is some one at the door—Who is *it*? (that is at the door). Who is *it* that is standing near the chair? What was *it* that you said?

(b) In statements; where it is used as a device for emphasising the main subject of the sentence :—

*It* was Ram that I saw (and no one else; more emphatic than 'I saw Ram'). *It* was he that broke the window (more emphatic than 'He broke the window'). *It* is a good divine that follows his own instructions. *It* is an ill wind that blows nobody any good. *It* is I; be not afraid (*Bible*).

NOTE.—Since the relative pronoun refers to *it*, the verb of which the pronoun is the subject should be in the third person; but we do not say '*It* is you that *says* so,' but '*It* is you that *say* so,' the verb being made by attraction to agree not with *it*, but with the subject *you* which immediately precedes the relative.

(c) In Ballad or Lyrical poetry, where a relative clause of some sort must be mentally supplied :—

*It* is an ancient mariner (that is going along), And he stoppeth one of three (*Coleridge*). *It* is the miller's daughter (that I write of), And she hath grown so dear, so dear (*Tennyson*). Hark! 'Tis the twanging horn (that we hear)! (*Cowper*).

(d) Indefinitely in relation to a person, without being followed by a relative clause :—

*It* is (he is) a peerless kinsman (*Shaks.*).

Generally, this application of a neuter word to a person implies familiarity or contempt :—

'What a flerry dog *it* is,' said Mr. Pickwick (*Dickens*). What a jealous old lady *it* is! (*C. Brontë*). What an ass *it* is! (*Shakspeare*). *It* is the most impenetrable cur that ever kept with men (*Id.*).

491. II. Similarly *it* is employed either to introduce or to represent a phrase or clause. Thus it may—

(a) Introduce a succeeding phrase or clause (*Introductory It*) :—

*It* is said that he is out of his mind. *It* is vain to make excuses. *It* is six weeks since I saw you last. I never thought *it* possible to act otherwise. What is *it* to be a gentleman? *It* seems you are wrong.

NOTE.—*This* is similarly used (with greater emphasis) :—‘*This* was his aim, to be loved rather than to be famous.’ *There* is used in a similar way to introduce the subject of a sentence :—‘*There* was once a man, who, etc.,’ instead of ‘Once a man was, who, etc.’

(b) Represent a phrase or clause, whether succeeding or preceding :—

He is out of his mind, *it* (that he is out of his mind) is said. He is, *it* is said, out of his mind. If *it* (to walk) is not too fatiguing, I should like to walk. If the day is fine, *it* (that the day is fine) will be pleasant for our journey. If she will, she will, you may depend on *it* (that she will). You can do so, but I do not think *it* (to do so) right. Should he command *it* (that my gold, etc., should be, etc.), my gold, my person, and all I possess shall be at your disposal (*Prescott*).

492. III. The Pronoun *it* is used elliptically in relation to some subject or object which is understood.

(a) Sometimes the thing which *it* relates to is understood from the context :—

*It* (the sky, the weather) rains. *It* snows. *It* freezes. If *it* is fine, I shall go out. *It* (the clock) is striking six. There is nothing (or no other course) for *it* (the matter in hand) but to submit. He has got the worst of *it* (the business). But yet, the pity of *it*, Iago! (*Shaks.*). I mean to have *it* out with you (clinch the matter in dispute). How far is *it* (the distance) to your house? *It* (the season) will soon be spring. *It* (the state of the tide) is low water. *It* (the time) is too late to go. ‘To be or not to be,’ as *Shakspeare* has *it* (expresses the idea). To ‘gab,’ as they term *it* (the practice). It is true, as *Tennyson* puts *it*, that, etc. Depend upon *it* (the state of things), you are wrong. Out upon *it*! I was too late, as ill luck would have *it* (the event). This is so, as I take *it* (the matter). There is no help for *it*. How is *it* (the state of things generally) with you to-day? *It* (life, success, etc.) is all over with him. We were late as *it* (the state of things) was. Please make *it* convenient to call to-morrow. I was, as *it* were, thunderstruck at the news. If *it* were not for my lameness, I should walk. I fear *it* will go hard with him. Have *it* your own way (do as you like). Did you have a good time of *it* in the vacation? I see you are still at *it* (engaged upon the business in hand). He was in for *it*, and could not draw back (he was committed to a certain course).

(b) Sometimes *it* forms a sort of Cognate Object (220) to a verb :—

Courage, father, fight *it* (the fight) out (*Shakspeare*). She (the mole) courteth *it* (her course) not on the ground as the rat or mouse (*Addison*). Come and trip *it* (your tripping) as you go (*Milton*). They frolic *it* along (*Cowper*). We can walk *it* perfectly well (*Goldsmith*). You will have to rough *it* (to have a rough time). I was hard put to *it* (was in a great difficulty). He carries *it* (conducts the affair) with a high hand. Run *it*! Go *it*!

NOTE.—In a similar way, *it* is placed after nouns when they are used as verbs, to represent the cognate notion :—‘Lord Angelo, dukes *it* well’ (*Shakspeare*). ‘Whether the charmer sinner *it* or saint *it*’ (*Pope*). To foot *it*. To queen *it*. To prince *it*. He lords *it* over his fellows.



THE PREPOSITION *BUT*.

493. *But* means 'by the outside,' and is used as—

(1) *Preposition*, with the sense of 'except':—

All is lost *but* honour. I cannot *but* go (I cannot do anything *except* go; I must go). *But* for you, I should have perished (*except* because of you, or if it had not been for you, I should have perished).

NOTE.—Owing to a confusion with *but* when used as a conjunction, the preposition *but* often takes a nominative case after it, as 'And was not this the Earl?—'Twas none *but* he,' as if 'but he' were for 'but it was he.' Similarly, 'All *but* he had fled' (*Hemans*) is a confusion of (1) 'All had fled *but* him,' and (2) 'All had fled, *but* he had not fled.'

(2) *Adverb*, with the sense of 'only':—

There is *but* a step between me and death (*Bible*). I can *but* go (I can only go; I can at least go).

NOTE.—Here we must remember that a negative has dropt out before *but*, and that the sentence should properly be 'There is *not but* a step' (there is *not* anything *except* a step; there is *only* a step).

(3) *Subordinative Conjunction*, with the sense of 'except that,' 'unless,' 'that not,' 'who not,' 'which not':—

He was all *but* killed (he was everything *except that* he was killed; everything happened to him *except* killing; he was very nearly killed).

Your conduct is anything *but* kind (your conduct is anything else *except that* it is kind; it is not at all kind).

Never dream *but* ill must come of ill (never dream anything *except that* ill must come of ill).—*Shelley*.

Not *but* he acted for the best (I do not say anything *except that* he acted for the best).

It never rains *but* it pours (*except that* it pours; without pouring).

Perdition catch my soul *but* I do love thee! (may perdition catch my soul *unless* I love thee).—*Shaks*.

It cannot be *but* you are right (it cannot be *except that* or otherwise than that you are right).

Earth does not hold a lonesome glen So secret *but* we meet again (so secret *that* we shall *not* meet; so secret as to prevent us from meeting).—*Scott*.

On the housetops was no woman

*But* spat towards him and hissed;

No child *but* screamed out curses

And shook its little fist.—*Macaulay*.

(there was no woman *that* did not spit, and no child *that* did not scream).

NOTE.—This *but* was originally followed by *that*, which was afterwards omitted for the sake of brevity:—

I cannot believe *but that*<sup>1</sup> you are wrong,

where *but* is a preposition having for its object the clause 'that you are wrong.' After verbs of 'doubting,' 'denying' (with or without a negative)

<sup>1</sup>Sometimes *what* is used for *that*:—'I do not say *but what* you are right about this.' But this is colloquial rather than literary.

*but* (or *but that*) as well as *that* may be used, and there is no difference in meaning, only in emphasis, between—

" (a) I doubt *that* you are wrong = I doubt (have misgivings about) the fact that you are wrong.

(b) I doubt *but* you are wrong = I doubt everything except the fact that you are wrong.

(c) I do not doubt *that* you are wrong = I do not doubt the fact that you are wrong.

(d) I do not doubt *but* you are wrong = I do not doubt anything contrary to the fact that you are wrong.

(4) *Co-ordinative Conjunction*, with the sense of 'still,' 'however,' 'on the other hand':—

He is poor *but* honest.

I love him, *but* he hates me.

NOTE.—This adversative use of *but* easily grew out of its prepositional use: thus 'I am sorry to punish you, *but* (conj.) you must learn to obey' would be, in older English, 'I am sorry to punish you *but* (prep., = except) *that* you must learn to obey.'

## THE ADJECTIVE *ALL*.

494. *All* is used as—

(1) *Adjective*, with the sense of 'the whole quantity or number of,' 'every,' 'any':—

" *All* flesh is grass (*Bible*). *All* hell shall stir for this (*Shakspeare*). *All* mine is thine. He works *all* day *all* the year. *All* these things are against me (*Bible*). *All* thoughts, *all* passions, *all* delights (*Coleridge*). Men shall say *all* manner of evil against you (*Bible*). He is beyond *all* controversy the first.

NOTE.—We can say 'we *all*' ('*all* we' is archaic) or '*all* of us' or 'we *all* of us':—

We <i>all</i> All of us We <i>all</i> of us	}	complain of the shortness of time.
---	---	------------------------------------

(2) *Substantive Pronoun*, with the sense of 'everybody,' 'everything':—

Death comes to *all*. Then I and you and *all* of us fell down (*Shaks.*). *All* that glitters is not gold. Is that *all* you can give? Above *all* (more than anything else) do not quarrel. I was surprised that he came at *all* (in any degree; on any consideration). He was not at *all* (in any way: to any extent) offended. I could not hear anything at *all* (anything whatever). The tree fell to the ground, nest, eagles, and *all* (and everything else). He lost his purse, money and *all* (including his money). Singing, laughing, ogling, and *all* that (everything of that kind). You must decide once for *all* (all purposes or occasions); cf. 'for good and *all*'. For *all* (notwithstanding that) you are my man, go wait upon my cousin Shallow (*Shaks.*). There were in *all* (in the whole number; counting everybody)

a hundred persons present. Her child *was all in all* to her (everything in everything to her; her whole existence).

NOTE.—For ‘after *all*,’ see 425, (4), 743; for ‘*all* but,’ see 493, (3); and for ‘*all* of them,’ see 446, (4), (d), *note*.

(3) *Noun*, with the sense of ‘a whole,’ ‘an entirety’:—

The widow gave her *all* (all her property). I have lost my little *all*. He is my *all* (everything to me). Her child *was all in all*.

(4) *Adverb*, with the sense of ‘completely,’ ‘quite’:—

I live *all* alone. You are *all* too late. I am *all* obedience (obedient or ready to obey in every respect). Like Niobe, *all* tears (*Shakspeare*). I was *all* ear (*Milton*). You are wrong *all* the same (nevertheless). He is *all* for (entirely in favour of) resisting. I told you *all* along (throughout, from first to last) how it would be. He did it with a grace *all* his own. It was *all* your fault. Trust me not at all or *all* in all. *All* at once (=suddenly).

NOTE.—For ‘*all* one,’ see 152; for ‘*all* the better,’ see 271; and for ‘*all* over,’ see 453.

## CHAPTER IX.

### MINOR AIDS TO COMPOSITION.

#### THE ALPHABET.

495. The English alphabet consists of twenty-six <sup>1</sup> letters, which represent two great divisions of sounds :—

(a) *Vowels*, or *open* sounds, which can be produced without the help of a consonant.

(b) *Consonants*, or *closed* sounds, which cannot be pronounced without the help of a vowel.

496. *Its Imperfection.*—The English alphabet is imperfect because it is—

(a) *Inconsistent* ; since the same letters are used to represent different sounds : thus the letter *a* represents five simple vowel sounds, as in *fate*, *fall*, *far*, *fat*, *want* ; and letters are often written but not pronounced, as in *know*, *hour*, *autumn*, *island*, *often*, *sign*, *talk*, *heart*, *lamb*, *through*, *yacht*, *wrap*, *psalm*.

NOTE.—Silent letters are often sounded in derivatives :—*autumnal*, *signature*, *phlegmatic*, *plumbago*.

(b) *Redundant* ; since the same sounds are represented by different letters or combinations of letters : thus the sound of *a* in *far* is the same as the sound of *e* in *clerk*, of *au* in *aunt*, and of *ea* in *heart* ; and the sound of *g* in *gave* is the same as the sound of *gu* in *guile* and of *gh* in *ghost*.

#### ACCENT.

497. *Accent* is the stress laid upon a *syllable* in pronouncing a word :—*commendâtion*, *recomménd*. It must not be confounded

---

<sup>1</sup> Of these, three letters, *c*, *q*, *x*, are superfluous : since *c* can be represented by *k* or by *s*, *q(u)* by *kw*, and *x* by *ks*.

with *Emphasis*, which is the stress laid upon a *word* in pronouncing a sentence :—‘ I come to *bury* Caesar, not to *praise* him.’

498. **Variation of Accent.**—(1) In many words, mostly of Latin origin, difference of accent makes up for the want of inflexional endings, and serves to distinguish—

(a) A *Noun* from a *Verb* ; the noun being accented on the first syllable, and the verb on the second—

NOUN.	VERB.	NOUN.	VERB.
ábstract <sup>1</sup>	abstráct	éxport	expórt
áccent	accént	éxtract	extráct
áffix	affix	férment	fermént
átttribute	attribúte	ímport	impórt
áugment	augmént	ímpress	impréss
óolleague	colléague	íncense	incéense
óollect	colléct	íncrease	incréase
óómmune	commúne	ínsult	insúlt
óómpound <sup>1</sup>	compóund	óbject	objéct
óómpress	compréss	pérfume	perfúme
óóncert	concért	pérmit	permit
óónduct	conduct	pérvert	pervért
óónfine	confine	préfix	prefix
óónflict	conflict	prel'ude	prelúde
óónserve	conserve	prem'ise (s)	premise (z) <sup>2</sup>
óónsort	consórt	pres'age	preságe
óóntest	contést	pres'ent	présént
óóntract	contráct	prod'uce	produíce
óóntrast	contrást	prógress	progréss
óónverse	convérsé	proj'ect	proyéct
óónvert	convért	prótest	protést
óónvict	convict	reb'el	rebél
óónvoy	convóy	rec'ord	recórd
décrease	decréase	ref'use (s)	refúse (z)
défile	defile	rétail	retáil
déscant	descánt	súbject	subyéct
des'ert	desért <sup>2</sup>	súrvey	survéy
digest	digést	tórmént	tormént
discount	discóunt	tránsfer	transfér
éscort	escórt	tránsport	transpórt
éssay	essáy	úndress	undréss
éxile	exile	úpsét	upsét

(b) An *Adjective* from a *Verb* ; the accents being various.

ADJ.	VERB.	ADJ.	VERB.
ábsent	absént	diffúse (s)	diffúse (z)
áltérnate	áltérnate	fréquent	fréquent
close (s)	close (z)	loath (or loth)	loáthe
consummate	cónsummate		

<sup>1</sup> Also used as an adjective.

<sup>2</sup> The noun *desért* (merit) is a different word.

<sup>3</sup> So, *excúse* (s) is the noun ; *excúse* (z) is the verb ; see 58.

(c) A *Noun* from an *Adjective*; the noun being accented on the first syllable, and the adjective on the second.

NOUN.	ADJ.	NOUN.	ADJ.
Aug <u>u</u> st	aug <u>u</u> st	min' <u>u</u> te	min <u>u</u> te
comp <u>a</u> ct	comp <u>a</u> ct	prec' <u>e</u> dent	prec <u>e</u> dent
exp <u>e</u> rt	exp <u>e</u> rt	súp <u>i</u> ne	sup <u>i</u> ne
inst <u>i</u> net	inst <u>i</u> net		

NOTE.—*In'valíd* is the noun, *inval'íd* is the adjective.

499. (2) Sometimes there is no difference of accent :—

assáy, consént, hérald, respét, cómment, suppórt (*nouns and verbs*)  
 cóncrete, pátent (*adjectives and nouns*)  
 exáct (*verb and adjective*)  
 contént (*adjective, noun, and verb*)

500. (3) Difference of accent occasionally marks a distinction of meaning :—

cónjure, to juggle  
 gállant, brave

conjure, to implore  
 gallánt, courteous

### SYLLABICATION.

501. The division of words into syllables is governed by pronunciation, and not by etymology. Thus we divide *preface* into *pref-ace*, *anklet* into *ank-let*, in accordance with their pronunciation, and not into *pre-face*, *ankl-et*, in accordance with their etymology. Compare *la-ment'* and *lam'-en-ta'-ble*; *pho'to-graph* and *pho-tog'-ra-phy*; *me-chan'-ic* and *mech'-a-nism*; *fi'-nite* and *in'-fin-ite*.

NOTE.—(1) Dissyllabic terminations that are sounded as one syllable should be so divided; as in—*fam-il'-iar*, *so'-cial*, *po-ten'-tial*, *re'-gion*, *po'-tion*, *pen'-sion*, *right'-eous*, *cap'-tious*, *spa'-cious*, *o'-cean*, *sup'-plied*.

(2) In words ending in double consonants, the consonants are not separated in syllabication their derivatives: *fall*, *fall-en*; *miss*, *miss-ing*; *pass*, *pass-ive*. But—*sob*, *sob-bing*; *sup*, *sup-per*.

### PUNCTUATION.

502. **Punctuation**, in writing, answers to pauses or variations of tone in speaking, the object in each case being to make the sense clear. It is also a guide to the grammatical construction of a sentence, by helping to show the relation of its different parts to one another.

503. **The Full Stop (.)** is used—

(1) At the end of a complete sentence :—

Time and tide wait for no man.

(2) After abbreviations and initials :—

*A.D.* for 'Anno Domini'; *Jan.* for 'January'; *W. T. Smith, Esq.*;  
*Edward VII* is King; see 130, note 2.

**504. The Colon (:) is used—**

- (1) After a statement, complete in itself, when it is followed by another statement or series of statements connected with it (without a conjunction) by way of *enumeration, example, consequence, cause, or antithesis*:—

They endured the greatest hardships: they were short of provisions; they were half dead with cold; night was coming on.

The subject generally precedes the verb: as, "Ram reads his book."

They are infatuated: to reason with them is vain.

No man should be too positive: the wisest often err.

The artillery lead the van: the rear is composed of infantry.

NOTE.—Also when the *general* statement comes *after* the *particular* statements, the colon is used before it:—'They were short of provisions; they were half dead with cold; night was coming on: these were the hardships they had to endure.' The enumeration may consist of *words*:—'The following are feminine: sow, duck, ewe, hind.'

- (2) Before quotations when not immediately dependent on the verbs that introduce them [sometimes followed by a dash (—)]:—

The inscription ran as follows: "This is the tomb of Cyrus."

**505. The Semicolon (;) is used—**

- (1) Between co-ordinate clauses with different subjects, when they are not connected by conjunctions:—

The carcases of horses and camels might be counted by hundreds; the plain was strewn with arms that had been thrown away in the flight; the roads were crowded with fugitives.

- (2) Between co-ordinate clauses connected by conjunctions, when their parts are divided by commas:—

The plain, where the battle took place, was strewn with arms, broken and blood-stained; and the roads were crowded with fugitives, few of whom were unwounded.

NOTE.—But in 'He pushed, pulled, beat, kicked the ass, but it would not stir,' commas are sufficient, since all the verbs have the same subject.

**506. The Comma (,) is used—**

- (1) To separate from the rest of the sentence phrases or clauses used as Adjuncts:—

Lord Wolseley, *the general of the forces*, ordered an advance.

The regiment, *full of enthusiasm*, dashed forward.

*Clad in complete armour*, the duke rode at the head of his troops.

Ram, *having spent all his money*, returned home.

*The river having been crossed*, the army resumed its march.

They soon overtook the enemy, *who were in great disorder*.

He, *the only field officer present*, took the command.

The proverb, "*Seeing is believing*," is not always true.

NOTE.—When a relative clause is restrictive (190, *note*), no comma should be used:—'This is the man *that I saw yesterday*'; 'Every one *whose opinion I value* thinks so.' Descriptive titles often take no comma:—'William the

*Conqueror,* 'Paul the Apostle.' Similarly, 'The Emperor William,' 'A man full of conceit' is to be avoided, without commas.

(2) Between two or more words or phrases, not connected (except the last two of a series) by *and*, that have the same grammatical relation to the sentence :—

*Horse, foot, and marines* were in one camp.

A long, narrow lane led to the house.<sup>1</sup>

They were all *well armed, in good spirits, and eager for the fight.*

The stores were *collected, forwarded, and served out* at once.

*Then, when all was ready,* the signal was given.

NOTE.—When such words go in pairs, connected by *and*, each pair is followed by a comma :—'*Rifles and bayonets, spades and axes, drums and trumpets,* littered the ground.' Similarly, repeated words require a comma between them :—'I will *never, never* consent.'

(3) To separate an adverb clause from a principal clause :—

He won the prize, *because he worked diligently.*

*When next you see him,* give him this.

NOTE.—In short sentences the comma may be omitted :—'Pay me *before I go.*'

(4) Often after adverbial phrases at the beginning of a sentence :—

*On the arrival of the general,* the troops presented arms.

(5) After a noun clause used as subject to a verb, when clearness demands it :—

*Whatever is,* is right.

*To be continually on the watch to find fault and to give no praise to honest effort,* shows an unkind disposition.

(6) Before and after words, phrases, or clauses let into the body of a sentence :—

They did not, *however,* succeed in their attempt.

He died, *appropriately,* on the eve of the French Revolution.

The enemy, *in accordance with their usual tactics,* harassed us at night.

When, *as we had expected,* we found the place deserted, we retired.

I am, *to tell the truth,* quite at a loss.

'Be off,' said he, 'and take your goods with you.'

(7) Between co-ordinate clauses with different subjects, connected by *and*; or between co-ordinate clauses with the same subject, connected by some other conjunction :—

His mother is dead, and his father is an old man.

He gained the prize, though he had little time for study.

NOTE.—But 'He shot at a pigeon and killed a crow,' without a comma, since the verbs have the same subject. Cf. example in 507, note.

<sup>1</sup> When two adjectives are similar in meaning the comma may be omitted :—'the good old rule.' Observe that an adverb is inadmissible between the adjectives : 'the good very old rule' is wrong; say 'the good and very old rule.'



(8) Before and after vocative cases, except when passion or emotion is to be expressed (508):—

Come here, *boy*, and sit down.  
I am, *Sir*, your obedient servant.

(9) After both of two prepositions used with a single noun:—

He studied hard *for*, and came out first *in*, the Examination.

(10) To indicate the omission of words logically necessary to the construction:—

To err is human: to *forgive*, divine.  
This is the camp of the English: *that*, of the French.

(11) Before direct quotations:—

He said, "I am your friend."

NOTE.—In the Indirect form no comma is needed:—'He said that he was my friend,' 'The proverb that seeing is believing is not always true'; see (1).

507. The Note of Interrogation (?) is used after direct questions:—

Where are you going?

but not after indirect questions:—

He asked me where I was going.

NOTE.—It is placed after the last only of two or more questions joined by *and*:—'Where are you going and why are you running?'

508. The Note of Exclamation (!) is used after vocative cases in emotional appeal, after phrases or sentences uttered with emotion, and after rhetorical questions that do not require an answer (hence it is oftener employed in poetry than in prose):—

*Earth!* render back from out thy breast A remnant of our Spartan dead.  
This folio of four pages, *happy work!*  
Oh, how shall man appear before his Maker!

509. The Dash (—) is used—

(1) To mark an abrupt break in a sentence:—

Here lies the great—false marble, where?  
Nothing but sordid dust lies here.

(2) After or before an enumeration of several particulars, when all are summed up in one common expression:—

The cotton mills of Lancashire, the wool manufactories of Leeds, the foundries of Sheffield—these are what make the wealth of England.  
Everything is lost—money, health, friends, reputation.

(3) To indicate a significant pause, made to emphasise what follows :—

The hero of the story is rich, clever, charming, but—a gambler.  
The two rivals met at last—in a prison.

(4) To indicate a parenthesis, one dash being placed at the beginning, and one at the end :—

. He described—and he was a long time about it—what had happened in my absence.

(5) To indicate the repetition of a word or a notion :—

I wondered at his errors—errors which could so easily have been avoided.  
This is a wonderful picture—perhaps the most perfect that has ever been painted.

**510. Brackets** [( )] are used, like dashes, to enclose a parenthesis :—

He gained from Heaven ('twas all he wished) a friend.

NOTE.—Expressions like 'I replied,' 'said he,' are marked off by commas only, not brackets. Brackets also mark off words used in explanation :—  
'I will come on the 15th (Thursday) at 10 o'clock.'

**511. The Apostrophe** (') is used to mark the omission of a letter or letters, mostly for the sake of shortness :—

*Boy's* for 'boyes' (140), *o'* for 'of' (as in 'two o'clock'), *tho'* for 'though,' *don't* for 'do not,' *doesn't* for 'does not,' *didn't* for 'did not,' *haven't* for 'have not,' *isn't* for 'is not,' *won't* for 'will not,' *can't* for 'cannot,' *shan't* for 'shall not,' *couldn't* for 'could not,' *I'll* for 'I will,' *I'm* for 'I am,' *I've* for 'I have,' *he's* for 'he is,' *'tis* and *it's* for 'it is,' *he'd* for 'he would' or 'he had,' *we're* for 'we are,' *we've* for 'we have,' *you've* for 'you have,' *'twill* for 'it will,' *'twas* for 'it was,' *let's* for 'let us,' *ma'am* for 'madam,' *lov'd* for 'loved,' *fall'n* for 'fallen,' *go'st* for 'goest' (but *canst*, *dost*, *mayst*, *hadst*, *couldst*, *shouldst*, *wouldst*, without any apostrophe). For poetic abbreviations, see 952, (d), (e), (f). Also write *teens*, not *'teens*.

#### CAPITAL LETTERS.

**512.** Capitals are used at the beginning of—

(1) The first word of every new sentence.

(2) The first word of every line of poetry.

(3) The first word of a quotation :—

Solon said, 'Know thyself.'

(4) Proper names and proper adjectives :—

India, Indian. Shakspeare, Shaksperian.

## (5) Personified objects :—

O *Death* ! where is thy sting ?

## (6) Months, days of the week, seasons, festivals :—

March. Friday. Spring. Midsummer Day. The Poojal Holidays.

## (7) Titles of honour or office, descriptive titles, forms of address in letters :—

Mr. Jones. Lord Ripon. His Honour the Lieutenant Governor. William the Conqueror. Charles the Bold. Edward the Seventh. My dear Sir. Dear Madam. My Lord Bishop.

## (8) Titles of books, newspapers, poems, etc. :—

The Holy Bible. The Daily News. Paradise Lost.

## (9) The name of the Deity (and its epithet) or a pronoun that stands for it :—

But chiefly *Thou*, O *Spirit* ! instruct me, that I may assert *Eternal Providence*.

## (10) Terms used technically :—

Political Economy. The Parts of Speech. The Reformation.

## (11) The pronoun I and the interjection O.

## UNDERLINING.

513. Underlining in writing is equivalent to italics in printing. It is used—

## (1) To emphasise a word or words :—

I will *never* consent to such a proposal.

NOTE.—It is better, wherever possible, to rely upon the *position* of the word for emphasis, and to write ‘Never will I consent to such a proposal.’

## (2) To indicate the name of a book or a periodical :—

Have you read Bacon’s *Essays* ? I take in *The Daily News*.

NOTE.—In this case quotation marks can be substituted :—Bacon’s ‘*Essays*.’

## (3) To show that a word or expression is foreign :—

A *virâ voce* (oral) Examination. An *al fresco* (open air) entertainment.

## (4) To show that a word is specified, or spoken of as a word :—

The original meaning of *miscreant* has become obsolete.

NOTE.—Here too quotation marks can be substituted :—The meaning of ‘*miscreant*.’

## SPELLING.

## RULES.

514. RULE I. Final *-e* is dropped before a suffix beginning with a vowel:—*leave*, *leav-ing*; *construe*, *constru-ing*; *cure*, *cure-able*.

*Exceptions*.—Final *-e* is retained—

(a) In all words ending in *-ce*, *-ge*, before suffixes beginning with *a*, *o*, or *u*, if the soft sound of *c*, *g* is to be retained:—*peace*, *peace-able*; *courage*, *courage-ous*, but *practice*, *practic-able*.

NOTE.—We write *singe*, *singe-ing*; *swinge*, *swinge-ing*, to distinguish them from *sing-ing*, *swing-ing*. We also find *age-ing* and *centre-ing*.

(b) In all words ending in *-ce*, *-oe*, *-ye*:—*agree*, *agree-able*; *hoe*, *hoe-ing*; *eye*, *eye-ing*. But *frece*, *frece-er*.

NOTE.—Monosyllables in *-ie* change *-ie* into *-y* before the suffix *-ing*:—*die*, *dy-ing*; *lie*, *ly-ing*; *tie*, *ty-ing*; *vie*, *vy-ing* (or *vie-ing*). But *hie*, *hie-ing*.

(c) In many words before the suffix *-able*, to show that the root vowel of the word has a long sound:—*sale*, *sale-able*; *debate*, *debate-able*.

515. RULE II. Final *-e* is retained before suffixes beginning with a consonant:—*care*, *care-ful*; *excite*, *excite-ment*.

*Exceptions*.—Words in *-dge*, *-le*, *-ue*, *-ve*, drop the *-e* final:—*judge*, *judgy-ment*; *whole*, *whol-ly*; *due*, *du-ly*; *awe*, *aw-ful*.

516. RULE III. Monosyllables in *-ll* drop the final *-l* before suffixes beginning with a consonant:—*full*, *ful-ly*; *well*, *wel-come*.

*Exceptions*.—Monosyllables in *-ll* do not drop the final *-l* before the suffix *-ness*:—*ill*, *ill-ness*, *still*, *still-ness*; *dull*, *dullness* and *dulness*.

517. RULE IV. Monosyllables in *-ll* drop the final *-l* when used as suffixes:—*roll*, *en-rol*; *fill*, *ful-fil*.

*Exceptions*.—Many monosyllables retain the final *-l*:—

Fall: *be-fall*, *down-fall* (but *of-fal*).

Call: *mis-call*, *roll-call*.

Well: *fare-well*, *un-well*.

518. RULE V. Monosyllables ending in a consonant preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel:—*sit*, *sitt-ing*; *dip*, *dipp-ed*; *run*, *runn-er*; *god*, *godd-ess*. Also *wool*, *wooll-en*.

**519. RULE VI.** Polysyllables accented on the last syllable and ending in a consonant preceded by a single vowel, double the final consonant before a suffix beginning with a vowel:—*refer*, *referr-ing*; *omit*, *omitt-ed*.

*Exceptions.*—Many words in *-l*, although not accented on the last syllable, double the final letter:—*travel*, *travell-er*; *libel*, *libell-ous*; *jewel*, *jewell-er*; *carol*, *caroll-ing*; but *unparallel-ed*. Also *worship*, *worshipp-er*, *worshipp-ed*; *rivet*, *rivett-er*; *bias*, *biass-ed*.

**520. RULE VII.** Words in *-y* preceded by a consonant, change the *-y* into *-i* before all suffixes except *-ous*:—*dry*, *dri-ed*; *deny*, *deni-al*; *lady*, *ladi-es*; *merry*, *merri-er*, *merri-ly*, *merri-ment*; *gloomy*, *gloomi-est*, *gloomi-ness*; *jolly*, *jolli-ly*, *jolli-ty*; *beauty*, *beauti-ful* (but *beaute-ous*). But *-y* preceded by a vowel remains unchanged:—*boy*, *boys*; *valley*, *valleys*.

*Exceptions.*—(a) Some monosyllables in *-y* preceded by a consonant have two forms before suffixes:—*dry*, *dry-ly* and *dri-ly*, *dry-er* and *dri-er*.

(b) Some words in *-y* preceded by a vowel, change the *-y* into *-i* before a suffix beginning with a vowel:—*pay*, *pai-(e)d*; *say*, *sai-(e)d*; *gay*, *gai-ety* (also *gayety*); *soliloquy*, *soliloqui-es*; *colloquy*, *colloqui-es* (but *guy*, *guys*). Also, *day*, *dai-ly*.

### NOTES.

**521. Ie, ei.**—The diphthongs *ie* and *ei*, when they have the *ee* sound, are often confused. The rule is that *i* precedes *e*, except after *c*. Thus—*field*, *yield*, *siege*, *liege*, *believe*, *achieve*, *mien*, *fierce*, *brief*, *chief*, *grief*, *niece*: but (after *c*)—*ceiling*, *deceive*, *conceit*, *receipt*.

*Exceptions.*—*Either*, *neither*, *leisure*, *plebeian*, *seize*, *weird*.<sup>1</sup>

**NOTE.**—To help the student's memory the rule may be given thus:—

Except after *c*,  
Put *i* before *e*;  
But—*leisure*, *seize*, *neither*,  
*Plebeian*, *weird*, *either*.

**522. -ceed, -cede.**—Words in *-ceed* and *-cede* introduced before the 16th century are spelt *-ceed*:—*exceed*, *proceed*, *succeed*; later words are spelt *-cede*:—*accede*, *concede*, *intercede*, *precede*, *recede*,

<sup>1</sup> *Counterfeit* is not one of these exceptions, as the *ei* has not the true *ee* sound; so with *surfeit*, *forfeit*, pronounced *surfit*, *forfit*. *Either*, *neither*, *leisure* are also pronounced *ether*, *nither*, *li'zher*.

**523. -our, -or.**—Most words in *-our* and *-or* are derivatives from Latin words in *-or* through Norman French words in *-eur*.

Some retain the Norman French *u* :—*arbour, ardour, armour, clamour, colour, honour, humour, labour, odour, rancour, valour, vapour, vigour*.<sup>1</sup>

Others have reverted to the Latin spelling :—*error, horror, languor, liquor, squalor, stupor, tenor, torpor, tremor*.

**524. -er, -or** (denoting persons).—Words in *-er* are generally formed with the English suffix *-er*, or through the Norman French *-eur* :—*adventurer, believer, biographer, player*.

Words in *-or* are generally such as represent words formed with the Latin suffix *-or* (often preceded by *t* or *s*) :—*actor, assessor, auditor, censor, professor, speculator*.

NOTE.—Observe also—*bachelor, councillor, creditor, donor, emperor, governor, oppressor, orator, sculptor, surveyor, survivor, tailor, warrior*.

Some words take *both* suffixes :—

Accepter—acceptor, asserter—assertor, detector—detector, detracter—detractor, exhibiter—exhibitor, exterminater—exterminator, granter—grantor, promiser—promisor, relater—relator, vender—vendor, voucher—voucher, warrenter—warrantor.

**525. -able, -ible.**—The following words end in *-ible*, whereas a much larger number end in *-able* :—

Accessible, admissible, audible, combustible, compatible, comprehensible, contemptible, credible, defensible, discernible, divisible, eligible, fallible, flexible, forcible, horrible, incorrigible, indelible, indivisible, invincible, irresistible, legible, permissible, possible, responsible, sensible, visible.

**526. -ce, -se.**—The rule is that *-ce* is used in nouns, *-se* in verbs :—

*-ce* :—*advice, device, licence, practice* (nouns).

*-se* :—*advise, devise, license, practise* (verbs).

**527. -el, -le** are liable to confusion :—

*el* :—*angel, chapel, chisel, gospel, lintel, shēkel*.

*le* :—*angle, apple, tussle, people, cattle, sickle*.

**528. -re (= -er).**—Words in *-re*, pronounced *-er* :—

Accoutre, acre, calibre, centre (also *center*, American), fibre, lucre, lustre, manoeuvre, massacre, meagre, mediocre, metre, mitre, nitre, ochre, ogre, reconnoitre, sabre, saltpetre, sceptre, sepulchre, sombre, spectre, theatre.

<sup>1</sup> Many of these words drop the *u* before a suffix :—*laborious, humorist, etc.*; but *colourable*. We have both *honourable* and *honorable*, *armourer* and *armorer*; but *armorial* only.

**529. -ory, -ary.**—The suffix *-ory* is generally added to stems in *s* or *-t* :—*curs-ory*, *audit-ory*, *consolat-ory*, *hist-ory*.

*Exceptions.*—(a) *-ary* is added, when *n* precedes the final *-t* of the stem :—*comment-ary*, *compliment-ary*, *element-ary*.

(b) *-ary* is added to stems ending in *-s* or *-t* in the following words :—

Adversary, caravansary, commissary, dispensary, glossary, hereditary, liminary, military, monetary, necessary, notary, proprietary, salutary, sanitary (*but* sanatory), secretary, solitary, tributary, voluntary, votary.

**530. -ic.**—Some words in *-ic* add *k* before suffixes beginning with a vowel :—*frolic*, *frolick-ing* (*but* *frolic-some*) ; *mimic*, *mimick-ing* ; *traffic*, *traffick-er* ; *physic*, *physick-ed* ; *picnic*, *picknick-ed*. But *comic-al*, *tragic-al*, *historic-al*, etc.

**531. In-, en-** (*im-*, *em-* before *b* and *p*) are liable to confusion. Some words take both forms, some take *in-*, *im-* only, and some take *en-*, *em-* only.

(a) *In-, im- or en-, em-* :—

Inclose—enclose, incrust—encrust, indorse—endorse, reinforce—re-enforce,<sup>1</sup> inquire—enquire,<sup>2</sup> ingrain—engrain, insnare—ensnare, insconce—ensconce, insure—ensure,<sup>3</sup> intral—enthral, intrust—entrust, intwine—entwine, intwist—entwist, inweave—enweave, intrench—entrench, incase—encase, incircle—encircle, imbrue—embrue, impanel—empanel, imbitter—embitter.

(b) *In-, im-* only :—

Include, increase, incur, indite, induce, indulge, infer, infect, infest, inflate, inflame, infold, infringe, infuse, inhale, inject, inscribe, insert, insist, inspect, intone, invest, inveigh, invoke ; imbibe, imbue, immure, impede, impel, impair, impeach, impend, imperial, imprint, imprison, improvise, impale, impoverish.

(c) *En-, em-* only :—

Enact, encamp, enchant, encompass, endear, endow, engage, engrave, enjoin,<sup>4</sup> enhance, enlarge, enlist, enrage, enrich, ensue, entice, entitle, entreat, envelop ; embalm, embark, embrace, embroil, employ, embezzle.

**532. -ent, -ant.**

(a) Words in *-ent* :—

Adherent, apparent, benevolent, clement, competent, component, confident (adj.), consequent, continent, convenient, correspondent, current, dependent (adj.), descendent (adj.), eminent, evident, excellent, expedient, impotent, incipient, incumbent, ingredient, innocent, latent, obedient, orient, parent, patient, penitent, pertinent, potent, precedent, president, prevalent, provident, recurrent, redulent, resident, reverent, salient, sentient, solvent, sufficient, transient, transcendent.

<sup>1</sup> But *enforce* only.

<sup>2</sup> But *inquest* and *inquisition* only.

<sup>3</sup> But *insurance* only.

<sup>4</sup> But *injunction*.

(b) Words in *-ant* :—

Abundant, arrogant, aspirant, complaisant, compliant, confidant (noun), defendant, dependant (noun), descendant (noun), disputant, dominant, emigrant, extravagant, extant, litigant, pedant, petulant, protestant, tenant, vagrant.

533. Anomalies.—The following may be noticed :—

Deceive, deceit	<i>but</i>	receive, receipt.
Suffer, sufferance	„	hinder, hindrance.
Pure, purity	„	sure, surety.
Pure, purify	„	rare, rarefy ( <i>and</i> rarify).
Mountain, mountainous	„	villain, villainous ( <i>and</i> villainous)
Murder, murderous	„	monster, monstrous.
Thunder, thunderous	„	idolater, idolatrous.
Murderer, murther	„	emperor, empress.
Duke, dukedom	„	wise, wisdom.
Mire, miry	„	fire, fiery.
Dexterous	„	ambidextrous.
Proceed	„	procedure.

534. Double Forms.—Some words are spelt in two ways, one of which is more accurate than the other. The better form is placed first.

apostasy	apostacy	lodestone	loadstone
attar (of roses)	otto	mosquito	musquito
aught	ought <sup>1</sup>	mould	mold
balk	baulk	negotiate	negociate
basin	bason	net (cf. <i>neat</i> )	nett
brahmin	brahman	pasha	pacha
brazier	brasier	pedlar	pedler
by the by	by the bye	plaster	plaister
calligraphy	caligraphy	potato	potatoo
cesspool	sesspool	pygmy	pigmy
chaps (jaw)	chops	reindeer	raindeer
cider	cyder	resin	rosin
cipher	cypher	show	shew
contemporary	cotemporary	siphon	syphon
curbstone	kerbstone	siren	syren
dispatch	despatch	syrup	sirup
dike	dyke	skulk	sculk
ecstasy	extasy	skull (head)	scull
endue (cf. <i>endow</i> )	indue <sup>2</sup>	somersault	somerset
gypsy	gipsy	surloin	sirioin
handiwork	handywork	surname	sirname
hibernate	hybernate	tire (of a wheel)	tyre
jewellery	jewelry	tiro	tyro
lackey	lacquey	trapan (ensnare)	trepan <sup>3</sup>
license (verb)	licence	visor	vizor
lodestar	loadstar	whisky	whiskey

<sup>1</sup> But *nought* is commonly used.

<sup>2</sup> *Indue* means to *put on*, as a dress.

<sup>3</sup> *Trepan* also means 'to use the *trepan*,' a small circular saw employed in surgery.



**535. Indifferent Double Forms.**—The following double (or treble) forms of spelling may be used indifferently. Some of them, however, are marked (M) as the more usual in *modern* writing; some are marked (C) as being *contracted* or *weakened* forms of the original words.

{ alchymy	{ develop	{ idyll (C)	{ programme
{ alchemy (M)	{ develop	{ idyl (C)	{ program (C)
{ almanac (M)	{ disc	{ jail (M)	{ reinforce (M)
{ almanack	{ disk	{ gaol	{ re-enforce
{ apophthegm	{ domicile (M)	{ janissary (M)	{ sergeant <sup>4</sup>
{ apothegm (C)	{ domicil	{ janizary	{ serjeant
{ hauble (M)	{ felly	{ jaunty (	{ seamstress
{ bawble	{ fellow	{ janty	{ sempstress (C)
{ bay-window <sup>1</sup>	{ fetich	{ jostle (M)	{ sled
{ bow-window	{ fetish	{ justle	{ sledge
{ booze (M)	{ frith	{ lackey (M)	{ sleigh (C)
{ boose	{ firth	{ lacquey	{ spew
{ borough (M)	{ garotte	{ lanch	{ spue (M)
{ burgh	{ garrotte	{ launch (M)	{ spinach
{ briar	{ gauge	{ lithesome	{ spinage (C)
{ brier	{ gage	{ lissome (C)	{ stanch
{ burden (M)	{ garish (M)	{ loath	{ staunch
{ burthen	{ garish	{ loth (C)	{ steadfast (C)
{ burgeon	{ gauntlet (M)	{ manikin	{ steadfast
{ bourgeon	{ gantlet	{ manukin	{ subtle (M)
{ caldron	{ gourmand (M)	{ mediæval	{ subtle
{ cauldron	{ gormand	{ medieval (M)	{ subtil
{ carcass	{ gray	{ mizzen	{ tarpauling
{ carcase	{ grey	{ mizen (C)	{ tarpaulin (C)
{ checker	{ guild (M)	{ moustache (M)	{ thrash
{ chequer (M)	{ gild	{ mustache	{ thrash <sup>5</sup>
{ choir (M)	{ hiccough	{ murky (M)	{ treadle
{ quire	{ hiccup	{ mirky	{ treddle (C)
{ clew	{ hotch-potch <sup>2</sup>	{ palanquin (M)	{ tumblel
{ clue (M)	{ hodge-podge	{ palankeen	{ tumbrel
{ coolie	{ hough	{ parakeet	{ wale
{ cooly	{ hock	{ paroquet	{ weal
{ coppice	{ hyena	{ pourtray <sup>3</sup>	{ woeful (M)
{ copse (C)	{ hyana	{ portray (M)	{ woful

<sup>1</sup> A *bay-window* is a window with a *bay* or recess; a *bow-window* is a *bowed* or *curved* window.

<sup>2</sup> The true form is *hotchpot*.

<sup>3</sup> But *portrait*, not *poustrait*.

<sup>4</sup> *Sergeant*, in the army or the police; *serjeant*, as a legal or official title.

<sup>5</sup> When the beating is applied to a person rather than to corn, *thrash* is used.

**36. Misspellings.**—The following words are often misspelt

accommodate	corroborate	indict	repetition
aghost	cruise	inveigh	rheumatic
agreeable	cypress	jeer	righteous
aisle	dearth	jeopardy	roguey
artisan	destroy	journey	sceptic
ascetic	dexterous	juvenile	schedule
awkward	dialogue	knoll	semillate
beggar	dilapidated	knowledge	scholar
benefited	dissyllable	lettuce	scythe
bicycle	drowsy	lozenge	sensitive
bleach	faint	magazine	separate
boulder	fascinate	mantelpiece	sewer
browse	fiery	medicine	stalactite
burglar	furlough	monkey	stupefy
calendar	furniture	muscle	syllable
chagrin	gibe	mutineer	symptom
chandelier	goodbye	mystery	tariff
chapel	grate	mythical	veil
chimney	grocer	obedience	vigorous
clamorous	guarantee	oculist	vilify
coarse	handsome	pamphlet	vinegar
college	hoarse	piebald	whether
committee	holiday	privilege	wholesome
comparative	horde	putrefy	woollen
comparison	humorous	rehearse	wreak
competitive	independent	remedy	yacht

PRONUNCIATION.

**537. Names of Letters.**—The names of letters in the English alphabet afford, in many cases, but a slight clue to the sounds of the letters when used in forming syllable; and the *names* of the letters should be taught quite separately from their *sounds*. The names of the following letters are often mispronounced:—

The name of C should be pronounced			See	not	Shēe.
"	F	"	Eff	"	Epf.
"	G	"	Jee	"	Zheh.
"	H	"	Aitch	"	Etch.
"	J	"	Jay	"	Zhay.
"	Q	"	Kew	"	Ker-ew.
"	V	"	Vee	"	Bhee.
"	X	"	Eks	"	Eksh.
"	Y	"	Wy	"	Ou-ai.
"	Z	"	Dsed	"	Dshed or Jed.

**NOTES.**—*C, S, X.* In pronouncing the names of these letters care must be taken to give the *sibilant* or hissing sound clearly, and to avoid the sound of *sh*.

*G, J.* The *sh* sound must not be heard. The surface of the tongue must be pressed against the palate.

**Q.** Pronounce (as near as possible) as *one* syllable, not as two separate syllables.

**V.** The lower lip must be pressed against the upper teeth and not against the upper lip.

**Z.** The *j* sound or the *sh* sound must be carefully avoided. Only the tip of the tongue should touch the palate and a hissing sound should be emitted.

**538. Sounds of Letters.**—The sounds of the following letters when used to form syllables are often mispronounced:—

**Au** is mispronounced *ah* :

*August* is wrongly sounded as *Ah-gust*.

**Dg** is mispronounced *z* :

*Judgment* is wrongly sounded as *juzment*.

**Ea** is mispronounced *ah* :

*Early* is wrongly sounded as *ahrly*.

*Earnest*        "        "       *ahrnest*.

**P** is mispronounced *f* :

*Depth* is wrongly sounded as *defth*.

**I (short)** is mispronounced *ee* :

*It is* is wrongly sounded as *eet ees*.

**J** is mispronounced *z*, *zh* :

*Jealous* is wrongly sounded as *zealous*.

*Jury*        "        "       *zhury*.

**O**, with *ñ* sound before *r*, is mispronounced *o* in *or* :

*Work* is wrongly sounded as *waurk*.

**S (and C)** is mispronounced *sh*, *z* :

*Assume* is wrongly sounded as *ashum*.

*Crimson*       "        "       *crimashon*.

*Propoal*       "        "       *proposhal*.

*Treason*       "        "       *treashon*.

*Sword*        "        "       *shord*.

*Consumption*       "        "       *conszumption*.

*Magnificent*       "        "       *magnifishent*.

**Sm, St**, at the beginning of a word, are mispronounced *esm*, *est* :

*Small* is wrongly sounded as *e-small*.

*Strict*        "        "       *e-strict*.

**V** is mispronounced *b* or *vw* :

*Verandah* is wrongly sounded as *berandah*.

*Verb*        "        "       *uverb* or *verve*.

*Very*        "        "       *uvery*.

**W** is mispronounced *oo* or *v* :

*Weep* is wrongly sounded as *oo-eepp*.

*Wool*               "               "   *oo-nool*.

*Where*           "               "   *vair*.

NOTE.—So *one*, pronounced *run*, is called *on* or *un*, and *woes* is confused with *oves*.

**Y** final is mispronounced *ee* :

*Lady* is wrongly sounded as *ladee*.

**X** is mispronounced *ksh* :

*Saxon* is wrongly sounded as *sakshon*.

*Axiom*           "               "   *axshiom*.

**Z** is mispronounced *j* or *dzh* :

*Zero* is wrongly sounded as *jero* or *dzhero*.

539. **Ch** is generally *soft*, being sounded nearly as *tsh* :—*chase*, *charter*, *chess*, *chin*, *church*, *churl*, *achieve*, *anchovy*, *archbishop*, *niche*, *ostrich*. But—

(1) It is *hard*, being sounded as *k*, when it represents the Greek *ch* :—*chaos*, *chemist*, *chimera*, *chorus*, *chord*, *chameleon*, *chyle*, *ache*, *archangel* (44), *distich*, *lichen*, *mechanics*, *tribrach*.

(2) It is sounded as *sh* in many words taken from the French :—*chaise*, *chagrin*, *chamois*, *champagne*, *chandelier*, *chaperon*, *charade*, *charivari*, *charlatan*, *Charlotte*, *chateau*, *chemise*, *chevalier*, *chicnory*, *chiffonier*, *chivalry*, *machine*, *fetich*, *brochure*.

(3) It is silent in the words *drachm*, *schism*, *yacht* ; it is sounded as *kw* in *choir* (*kwir*) and as *j* in *spinach* (*spināj*).

540. **G** is *hard* before all vowels in words of Teutonic origin ; in non-Teutonic words it is *hard* before *u*, *o*, *u*, and *soft* before *e*, *i*, *y*. Thus :—

(1) It is *hard* in the Teutonic words—*gear*, *gergaw*, *geyser*, *gibberish*, *gibbon*, *gig*, *giggle*, *gill* (of a fish), *begin*, *ghost*.

(2) It is *soft* (= *j*) in the non-Teutonic words—*gesture*, *gelatine*, *gesticulate*, *gibber*, *gibbet*, *giblet*, *gill* (a measure), *gimcrack*, *gin*, *gist*, *gymnasium*, *gypsum*, *gypsy*, *gyrate*, *apogee*, *endogenous*, *frugiferous*, *homogeneous*, *indigenous*, *plagiarise*, *pugilist*, *oxygen*, *orgy*.

Exceptions.—(a) It is *soft* before *a* in the non-Teutonic word *jaol* (now often spelt, as pronounced, *jail*) and before *i* and *y* in the Teutonic words *gibe*, *gyve*, *stingy*.

(b) It is *hard* before *e*, *i*, and *y* in the non-Teutonic words *Gehenna*, *gibbous*, *gingham*, *gizzard*, *misoqynist*.

**541. Sch-** at the beginning of a word has three sounds :—

*Sch* = *sk* in most words : *scheme*, *scholar*, *schooner*, etc.

„ = *sh* in the words *schedule*, *schist*.

„ = *s* in the word *schism*.

**542. Id-** at the beginning of a word is pronounced *long* in the words *idol*, *idyl*, where it represents the Greek *ei* ; also in *idea*, *identical*, *idle*. It is pronounced *short* in *idiot*, *idiom*.

**543. -Ine** at the end of a word has three pronunciations :—

*ine* : *divine*, *elephantine*, *saline*, *iodine*, *Alpine*,

*in* : *feminine*, *medicine*, *discipline*, *Philistine*.

*een* : *marine*, *machine*, *gelatine*.

**544. -Ean** at the end of a word has two pronunciations :—

*ean* : *cerúlean*, *hercúlean*, *Mediterráneau*, *Prométhean*,  
*Procrústean*, *Caesárean*, *Prótean*.

*ean* : *empyréan*, *Européan*, *Chaldéan*, *Pythagoréan*, *Jacobéan*,  
*Atlantéan*, *pygméan*, *Augéan*, *epicuréan*, *Nicéan*.

**545. Mispronunciation.**—The following words are often mispronounced :—

WORD.	PRONUNCIATION.	WORD.	PRONUNCIATION.
aërated	a'-crated	fiend	fēend
again	agen	ghost	gōst
against	agenst	ghoul	gool
antipodes	antip'odēs	hasten	hās'n
apostle	apos'l	heart	hart
bedizen	bedi'-zen	hearth	harth
clerk	clark	heinous	hā'nus
comely	kūmly	herb	herb
comfort	kūmfort	hough	hock
company	kūmpany	humble	hum'bl
compass	kūmpass	humour	ū'mor
conduit	kūndit	indict	indite
conquer	kongker	interesting	int'ereſting
constable	kūnstable	knowledge	knōl'edge
contumely	kon'-tūm-e-ly	legend	lej'end
covetous	kuv'etus	levée	lev'a
cuirass	kwē-ras'	lever	leever
drama	{ drāhma drāma	lien	{ lī'en lee'en
environ	envi'ron <sup>1</sup>	live (adj.)	liv
falcon	fawkon	live (verb)	liv
falty	fœ'-alty	lower (to let down)	lō'-er
feign	fayn	lower (to frown)	lou'er
feint	faynt	massacred	massak-erd

<sup>1</sup> The noun is either *environs* or *en'viroins*.

WORD	PRONUNCIATION.	WORD.	PRONUNCIATION.
medicine	med'sin	sergeant	sar'jent
myth	mīth	skein	skān
often	of'en	slaver (slave-dealer) <sup>1</sup>	slā'ver
ordeal	orde'al	slaver (saliva)	slāv'er
papyrus	pāp'y'us	slough (a morass)	slou
parallel	par'allel	slough (of a snake)	sluff
parliament	par'lyment	slough (of a wound)	
phaeton	phay'ēton	solder <sup>1</sup>	{ söl'der
plaid	plād		{ söd'er
plait	plät	sough (of wind)	sou
pleiades	ply'ad-es	southerly	sūtherly
poignant	poim'yant	southern	sūthern
puisse	pūny	sugar	shūg'ar
puissant	{ pl'is-ant	suite	sweet
	{ pl'iss'ant	sure	shūre
quay	kēe	surveillance	survāl'yance
quoit	koit	trait	trā <sup>2</sup>
reverie	rēv'ery	tricolour	trī'colour
route	root	trimeter	trim'eter
ruse	rooze	unanimous	ū-nanimous
salve	sāhve	venison	ven'zon
sceptic	skeptic	victuals	vittels

## ANSWERS TO EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

546. The main object of an Examination paper is to test the candidate's—(a) knowledge of his subject; (b) ability to put his ideas together and express them in good English (structure and style); (c) handwriting, spelling, punctuation, and general neatness.

547. In answering an Examination paper the following rules should be observed :—

1. First of all, glance through all the questions and mark those to which you know the answers best. *Begin by answering these questions*, without regarding the order in which they are numbered, and re-arrange your sheets afterwards. If answer-books are used, a sufficient number of leaves may be left blank for the omitted answers, which may be afterwards inserted in their proper places. Any leaves left blank at the conclusion of the Examination should be folded across.

2. Calculate roughly *the time available for each answer*, proportioning the time to the number of marks allotted to each question.

<sup>1</sup> *Sawder* in the phrase 'soft sawder' (flattery) is a corruption of the same word.

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes pronounced *trā*.

Too much time is often spent in giving lengthy answers to one or two questions ; so that other questions, the answers to which are well known by the candidate, have to be left untouched. Leave out of your calculation any question about which you know nothing. Guess-work answers are a waste of time and make a bad impression.

3. Before starting to write, read the question through and *carefully note its wording*, so as to grasp its obvious intent. Make your answer *to the point* by including in it all that is called for by the question and excluding all extraneous matter.

4. Shun vague and rambling answers ; express them as simply and *tersely* as possible. Avoid introductions ; start upon the answer proper. Do not make a rough copy to be transcribed afterwards ; time will not permit of this.

5. Avoid *carelessness*. Many marks are lost by heedless blunders in spelling and grammar. When, in revising, any word or phrase is altered, corresponding alterations must be made, if necessary, in the rest of the sentence ; thus, if in the sentence 'do not place,' *do not* be altered to *avoid*, then *place* must be altered to *placing*, so as to make the revised sentence 'avoid placing.' Where a *choice* of questions or parts of questions is given, do not overlook the fact and answer more than are required. Failure in Examinations is often the result of carelessness rather than of ignorance.

6. Reserve a quarter of an hour for a *final revision* of your answers, reviewing them for each of the following, *separately* : (a) wording ; (b) punctuation and use of capitals ; (c) spelling ; (d) grammar and syntax ; (e) idiom.

7. Make *full* use of the time allowed. Even if you have answered all the questions, do not leave the Examination room, but devote any spare minutes to a further review of your papers.

8. Send your papers up in good shape. The hand-writing should be *easy to read*, *neat*, and free from smudges and blots, and the lines should be kept *straight*, and not be allowed to sprawl slant-wise across the paper. Erase blots, if small ; if large, rewrite the answer on a fresh page. A word blotted by accident should be crossed out *by a line drawn through it*, and the word should be rewritten above the blot. Keep your words *distinct* and do not allow them to run into one another. The lines should be about half an inch apart. Begin a fresh paragraph wherever a new thought or subject requires it. In mathematical papers each new step in the process of reasoning requires a fresh

line. A space of at least an inch should be left between the last line of one answer and the first line of the next. Keep a margin of at least an inch on the left-hand side of your paper. (This margin can be readily defined by doubling the paper back so as to leave a straight crease.)

9. Be careful to number and letter your answers in *exact accordance* with the numbering and lettering of the questions. *Important* points in the answer may be underlined. To insert the words "Answer to Question" before each answer is unnecessary. Appeals to the Examiner to show leniency to the candidate are wholly out of place in an Examination paper.

10. Remember, finally, that your success in an Examination largely depends upon your *making your meaning easily clear* to the Examiner, by distinct handwriting, by good arrangement, by sentences fairly short and to the point, and by using plain and simple English.



## CHAPTER X.

### COMMON ERRORS.

#### NOUNS.

##### 548. Nouns omitted after Adjectives.

*Incorrect* : He went with his *elder*.

*Correct* : He went with his *elder brother*.

*Incorrect* : Please give me some *blotting*.

*Correct* : Please give me some *blotting paper*.

*Incorrect* : He lives in a *boarding*.

*Correct* : He lives in a *boarding-house*.

NOTE.—*Elder* is used with a possessive pronoun to mean *one who is older*, as 'He is *my elder*' (= he is *older than I am*). (cf. 150, (b); 404. It is also used as a noun with *the*, as 'He is *the elder* of the two'; 'By six years *the elder* of Caesar.'

*Freeship* for 'free-studentship,' *earlihood* for 'boyhood' or 'early life,' are mere coined words.

##### 549. Nouns omitted after Verbs.

*Incorrect* : He wished me.

*Correct* : He wished me *good morning*, etc.

*Incorrect* : I beg you.

*Correct* : I beg *your pardon*.

##### 550. Plural for Singular.

Common examples of this error are—

*Rices*, *corns* (grain), *foods*, *cattles*, *furnitures*, *mischiefs*, *filths*, *dirts*, *needleworks*, *woolworks*, *machineries*, *hairs*, *advices*, *preys*, *behaviours*, *poetries*, *abuses*, *sceneries*, *clergies*, *fuels*, *issues* (progeny), *offsprings*, *youngs*, *peoples* (persons), *alphabets*, *sweats*, *logics*, *alarms*, *tributes*, *gouts* (the disease) :—

*Incorrect* : The *cenetric* of Switzerland are very fine.

*Correct* : The *scenery* of Switzerland is very fine.

*Incorrect* : Natives of India have black *hairs*.

*Correct* : Natives of India have black *hair*.

*Incorrect* : He gave me *many* good *advices*.

*Correct* : He gave me *much* good *advice*.

NOTE.—*Rices*, *corns*, *foods*, etc., are used only when *different varieties* of *rice*, *corn*, *food*, etc., are intended (112). We say a house is built of *brick* or of *stone*; not *bricks* or *stones*.

*Cattle*, *prey*, *clergy*, *people* in the sense of 'persons' (with *vermin*, *poultry*, *gentry*), being plural already in sense, have no plural form.

*Needleworks* and *woolworks* could only mean places where needles and wool were manufactured; cf. 'brickworks.'

*Hairs* is found in poetry for *hair*. *Hairs* is used in prose when attention is called to the *number* of hairs:—'I found several grey *hairs* on my head this morning.'

*Advices* is used, especially in mercantile language, in the sense of 'notification'—'From *advices* just received from our London firm we learn that the price of rice has risen.'

*Abuses* means *evil or corrupt practices*; it should not be used to denote *terms of abuse*; see 133, (2).

*Logic*, with *arithmetic*, *music*, *magic*, and *physic* in the sense of *medicine*, *filth*, *prey*, *dirt*, *sweat*, *gout*, *poetry*, *scenery*, *young*, with *offspring* and *issue* in the sense of 'progeny,' are never used in the plural. Cf. 111.

### 551 Singular for Plural.

*Incorrect* : Please pass *order* for his release.

*Correct* : Please pass *orders* for his release.

*Incorrect* : This amounts to two and three *fourth*.

*Correct* : This amounts to two and three *fourths*.

*Incorrect* : I take *mcal* at home.

*Correct* : I take *my meals* at home.

*Incorrect* : He does not like *vegetable*.

*Correct* : He does not like *vegetables*.

*Incorrect* : My *circumstance* will not allow of my pursuing *my study*.

*Correct* : My *circumstances* will not allow of my pursuing *my studies*.

## 552. Possessive ending omitted.

*Incorrect* : The dero's death is different from the *martyr*.

*Correct* : The hero's death is different from the *martyr's*.

## 553. A Singular Collective noun referred to by a plural pronoun.

*Incorrect* : The *firm* has given a bonus to each of *their* clerks.

*Correct* : The *firm* has given a bonus to each of *its* clerks.

## 554. Possessive Case misused.

*Incorrect* : He went out by *the house's door*.

*Correct* : { He went out by *the door of the house*.  
                  "                  "                  *the house door*.

*Incorrect* : I shall go by the twelve o'clock's train.

*Correct* : I shall go by the twelve o'clock train.

Similarly, 'Easter's holidays,' 'Eden's gardens,' 'Monday's night,' 'holiday's dress,' 'Puja's clothes,' are incorrect for 'Easter holidays,' 'Eden gardens,' 'Monday night,' 'holiday dress,' 'Puja clothes' (144).

NOTE.—In the above instances we cannot substitute the form with *of*; we cannot say 'the holidays *of* Easter,' etc. But 'on the night *of* Monday, the 2nd of June' is correct. So 'the summer vacation,' not 'the vacation *of* summer'; 'the winter term,' not 'the term *of* winter'; 'a sea fog,' not 'a fog *of* the sea,' etc.

## 555. Water for Climate.

*Incorrect* : The *water* of Behar does not suit my health.

*Correct* : The *climate* of Behar does not suit my health.

NOTE.—The Bengali *কল* is used in the sense of 'climate.'

## 556. Nouns incorrectly used.

*Incorrect* : The hall is full, there is no *place* for any more.

*Correct* : The hall is full, there is no *room* for any more.

*Incorrect* : He had a severe *toss* while running down stairs.

*Correct* : He had a severe *fall* while running down stairs.

*Incorrect* : Good *night*, Sir; I am glad you have come.

*Correct* : Good *evening*, Sir; I am glad you have come.

*Incorrect* : I have a private *business* with you.

*Correct* : I have a private *piece of business* with you.

*Incorrect* : He is seeking for an *employment* under Government.

*Correct* : He is seeking for *some employment* under Government.

*Incorrect* : He is *one of my members*.

*Correct* : He is *a member of my family*.

*Incorrect* : Credit it *in my name*.

*Correct* : Credit it *to my account*.

NOTE.—*Good night* is a parting salutation ; *Good morning, Good day, Good afternoon, Good evening* are either meeting or parting salutations. In ‘ This is a bad *business*,’ *business* means ‘matter,’ ‘event.’ The word *বাজ* is used in Bengali for ‘to (one’s) account.’ ‘Employment,’ without the article, would be correct.

#### 557. ‘O’clock’ inserted.

*Incorrect* : I am going by the 12.30 *o’clock* train.

*Correct* : I am going by the 12.30 train.

NOTE.—When the number of minutes is specified, *o’clock* is not used. It is correct to say ‘by the *half-past twelve o’clock* train,’ but not ‘by the *twelve and a half o’clock* train,’ nor ‘by the *twelve and a half* train.’

#### 558. The same word as both Subject and Object.

*Incorrect* : This *result* I much regretted, and taught me a lesson for the future.

*Correct* : This *result* I much regretted, and *it* taught me a lesson for the future.

*Incorrect* : An *action* which it is easy to blame, but is quite natural.

*Correct* : An *action* which it is easy to blame, but *which* is quite natural.

*Incorrect* : *What* a boy learns and is taught him are not the same thing.

*Correct* : *What* a boy learns and *what* is taught him are not the same thing.

*Incorrect* : *What* I have said is true, and I will not withdraw.

*Correct* : *What* I have said is true, and I will not withdraw *it*.

#### 559. Protagonist for Advocate.

*Incorrect* : He is a strong *protagonist* of republicanism

*Correct* : He is a strong *advocate* of republicanism.

NOTE.—A *protagonist* is the leader in a business or the champion of a cause. The word is not antithetical to *antagonist* (cf. 46, 63), and there cannot be a *chief* protagonist or *several* protagonists in a business or a cause.

#### 560. Individual for Man, Person.

*Incorrect* : This is the same *individual* that came yesterday.

*Correct* : This is the same *man* that came yesterday.

NOTE.—*Individual* is correctly used of a single, separate person, as opposed to a number of persons, as : ‘While the community gains by Free Trade, the *individual* sometimes loses.’

**561. Mediocrity for Impartiality.**

*Incorrect* : As a judge, he is conspicuous for his *mediocrity*.

*Correct* : As a judge, he is conspicuous for his *impartiality*.

**562. Quantity for Number.**

*Incorrect* : I have lent him a *quantity* of books.

*Correct* : I have lent him a *number* of books.

**563. A Phrase treated as a Compound.**

*Incorrect* : He enquired about *your state of health*.

*Correct* : He enquired about *the state of your health*.

*Incorrect* : He is an *undoubted man of genius*.

*Correct* : He is a *man of undoubted genius*.

NOTE.—In the same way, ‘England’s height of power’ is wrong for ‘the height of England’s power’; ‘Shakspeare’s immortal creations of fancy’ for ‘the immortal creations of Shakspeare’s fancy’; ‘his English knowledge’ for ‘his knowledge of English.’

**564. A Singular Collective noun with a plural pronoun or verb.**

*Incorrect* : The *firm* has given a bonus to each of *their* clerks.

*Correct* : The *firm* has given a bonus to each of *its* clerks.

*Incorrect* : The whole *band*, who had murdered its officers, *were* arrested yesterday.

*Correct* : The whole *band*, who had murdered its officers, *was* arrested yesterday.

NOTE.—Other examples of this error are: ‘The Irish Party, through *their* leaders, *has* recognised the grievance’ (*Nation*); ‘He finds the *population* as munificent as *it* is pious, and doing greater work out of *their* poverty’ (*J. H. Newman*).

**565. Tribute (to) for Proof (of).**

*Incorrect* : This repayment is a *tribute* to the honesty of the firm.

*Correct* : This repayment is a *proof* of the honesty of the firm.

**566. Climax (852 (1), note) for Acme.**

*Incorrect* : This accusation is the *climax* of insult.

*Correct* : This accusation is the *acme* of insult.

**567. Converse for Reverse.**

*Incorrect* : His behaviour was the very *converse* of polite.

*Correct* : His behaviour was the very *reverse* of polite.

NOTE.—*Converse* implies a reciprocal relation between two opposites: ‘Intellect without wealth is the *converse* of wealth without intellect’; *reverse* connotes mere contrariety.

568. Audience for Spectators.

*Incorrect* : The dumb show drew a numerous *audience*.

*Correct* : The dumb show drew numerous *spectators*.

NOTE.—Similarly : ' The songs of the angels were beyond the reach of her vision (hearing) ' : ' The crowd was so large that it *visibly* (sensibly) increased the heat.' So in ' The sad faces and joyous music formed an incongruous sight ' substitute *combination* for *sight*, since music cannot be seen.

569. Etc. (or &c.) inserted.

*Do not write* : His career was marred by ill health, poverty, etc.

*Write* : His career was marred by ill health, poverty, and other misfortunes.

NOTE.—*Etc.* is out of place in literature, and should be confined to business communications and familiar letters.

ADJECTIVES.

570. Staple for Standard.

*Incorrect* : These are *staple* works on Russian history.

*Correct* : These are *standard* works on Russian *history*.

571. Unique for Sole or Peculiar.

*Incorrect* : This is the *unique* cause of my failure.

*Correct* : This is the *sole* cause of my failure.

*Incorrect* : There is something *unique* in his dealing with the case.

*Correct* : There is something *peculiar* in his dealing with the case.

572. Future for Subsequent.

*Incorrect* : The *future* proceedings did not interest me.

*Correct* : The *subsequent* proceedings did not interest me.

573. Prolific for Frequent.

*Incorrect* : This is a *prolific* cause of delay.

*Correct* : This is a *frequent* cause of delay.

574. Mutual for Common.

*Incorrect* : We two were talking about our *mutual* liking for olives.

*Correct* : We two were talking about our *common* liking for olives.

NOTE.—' Our *mutual* affection ' = the affection that we both feel for each other ; ' Our *common* affection ' = the affection that we both feel for someone else. ' Our *mutual* friend ' is thus incorrect. (cf. Milton's *Par. Lost*, vii 383-386 for a good illustration of the word.

575. *Mutual for Reciprocal.*

*Incorrect* : Since I helped you, I hope you will give me *mutual* help.

*Correct* : Since I helped you, I hope you will give me *reciprocal* help.

NOTE.—Two persons can have *mutual* or *reciprocal* feelings towards each other ; but one person cannot have *mutual*, but only *reciprocal*, feelings towards the other.

576. *Mutual for Simultaneous.*

*Incorrect* : They were seen on the day of their parents' *mutual* disappearance.

*Correct* : They were seen on the day of their parents' *simultaneous* disappearance.

577. *Feasible for Possible or Probable.*

*Incorrect* : He said it was quite *feasible* that the car was stolen.

*Correct* : He said it was quite *possible* that the car was stolen.

*Incorrect* : This is a *feasible* conjecture of what happened.

*Correct* : This is a *probable* conjecture of what happened

578. *Probable for Likely.*

*Incorrect* : No dispute is *probable* to arise between them.

*Correct* : No dispute is *likely* to arise between them.

NOTE.—Similarly 'is *possible* to arise' is wrong ; write 'can arise' or 'can possibly arise.' The future should not be used after *probable* : thus in 'The *probable* outcome will be a failure' *will be* should be *is* ; but 'The outcome *will probably be* a failure' is correct.

579. *Oblivious for Unaware, Unconscious.*

*Incorrect* : He went off, quite *oblivious* of the fact that he had dropped his purse.

*Correct* : He went off, quite *unaware* of the fact etc.

NOTE.—*Oblivious* means 'no longer aware,' not simply 'unaware.'

580. *Not any for No.*

*Incorrect* : There is *not any* snake in Iceland.

*Correct* : There are *no* snakes in Iceland.

*Incorrect* : *Any* one cannot do this.

*Correct* : *No* one can do this.

NOTE.—'Not every one can do this' is preferable to 'Every one cannot do this.' Observe that—*not every* = some ; *not any* = none. Both the following are correct :

(1) I could *not* find *anybody* there.

(2) I could find *nobody* there.

581. 'Other' (1) omitted after a Comparative, or (2) inserted after a Superlative, or (3) wrongly omitted :—

(1) *Incorrect* : Solomon was *wiser than all* the Jewish kings.

*Correct* : { Solomon was *wiser than all the other* Jewish kings.  
Solomon was the *wisest of all* the Jewish kings.

NOTE.—Since Solomon was a Jewish king, the first sentence makes him *wiser* than himself.

(2) *Incorrect* : Of all other kings Solomon was the *wisest*.

*Correct* : { Of all kings Solomon was the *wisest*.  
Solomon was *wiser than all other* kings.

NOTE.—'Of all others I like a boy that tells the truth' should be 'More than all others I like a boy' etc., or 'Most of all I like a boy' etc. Similarly, 'Homer is the finest poet of anybody in the world' should be 'Homer is a finer poet than anybody else in the world.'

(3) *Incorrect* : Winter is a hard time for birds and bipeds.

*Correct* : Winter is a hard time for birds and *other* bipeds.

NOTE.—Similarly, 'Mazzini did more for Italy than any living man' should be 'any other.'

### 582. Less for Fewer.

*Incorrect* : There are no *less* than ten books here.

*Correct* : There are no *fewer* than ten books here.

NOTE.—*Fewer* denotes number, *less* denotes quantity or degree :—'fewer mangoes,' 'less rice.' But we say 'I will not take *less* than ten rupees,' because the ten rupees are regarded as a sum of money and not as a number of coins.

### 583. Latter for Last.

*Incorrect* : He brought pen, ink, and paper, the *latter* being foolscap.

*Correct* : He brought pen, ink, and paper, the *last* being foolscap.

NOTE.—*Latter* should be confined to the second of two things previously mentioned :—'He brought pen and ink, the *latter* in a small bottle.'

### 584. The Superlative for the Comparative.

*Incorrect* : This is the *wisest* plan of the two.

*Correct* : This is the *wiser* plan of the two.

NOTE.—But the Superlative is often used colloquially of two things :—'like this *best* of the two,' 'Of two evils choose the *least*.'

### 585. Superlatives in '-est' for Positives with 'very,' 'most.'

*Incorrect* : This is a *best* book.

*Correct* : This is a *very good* book.



*Incorrect* : They made a *fiercest* attack on him.

*Correct* : They made a *most fierce* attack on him.

NOTE.—The superlative in *-est* must never be used after the indefinite article. It always implies comparison : thus ‘This is *the best book*’ implies that this book is *better than any of certain books with which it is compared*. Cf. 151.

**586. Comparatives in ‘-er’ with ‘more’; Superlatives in ‘-est’ with ‘most.’**

*Incorrect* : This road is *more shorter* than that.

*Correct* : This road is *shorter* than that.

*Incorrect* : This road is *the most shortest* of all.

*Correct* : This road is *the shortest* of all.

NOTE.—We may, however, say ‘This is a *far shorter* road than that’; This is the *very shortest* road.’.

**587. Positive Degree with ‘than’ for Comparative.**

*Incorrect* : This stick is *long than* that.

*Correct* : This stick is *longer than* that.

*Incorrect* : We learnt a *great deal than* the others.

*Correct* : We learnt a *great deal more than* the others.

**588. ‘Than’ for ‘to’ after ‘superior,’ ‘inferior,’ etc.**

*Incorrect* : This paper is *superior than* that.

*Correct* : This paper is *superior to* that.

NOTE.—A similar mistake is *more preferable than* for *preferable to* ; cf. 780.

**589. Positive Degree coupled by ‘and’ to Superlative.**

*Incorrect* : He enjoyed all the *sweetest and charming* scenery.

*Correct* : He enjoyed all the *sweetest and most charming* scenery.

**590. Adjectives incorrectly used.**

*Incorrect* : He gave the boy a *tight* slap.

*Correct* : He gave the boy a *smart* slap.

*Incorrect* : I cannot eat *hard* (or *stiff*) meat.

*Correct* : I cannot eat *tough* meat.

*Incorrect* : I am suffering from a *strong* headache.

*Correct* : I am suffering from a *bad* headache.

*Incorrect* : I thanked him for his *sweet* words.

*Correct* : I thanked him for his *kind* words.

*Incorrect* : Do not go out with your head *open*.

*Correct* : Do not go out with your head *bare*.

*Incorrect* : He has paid his *scholing* fees.

*Correct* : He has paid his *school* fees.

*Incorrect* : I feel somewhat *uneasy*.

*Correct* : I feel somewhat *unwell* (or *out of sorts*).

*Incorrect* : A very *little* number of the students remained.

*Correct* : A very *small* number of the students remained.

NOTE.—Similarly we say ‘a *small* quantity’ not ‘a *little* quantity,’ ‘a *small* amount’ not ‘a *little* amount.’ *Uneasy* generally denotes *mental* disquiet, anxiety.

**591. Passable, Clerical, Sick.**—‘*Passable* marks’ (or ‘the *passable* mark’) is sometimes incorrectly used for *marks sufficient to pass*, or *pass marks*. *Passable* means *tolerably good*.

‘A *clerical error*’ denotes a *mistake in writing*, and should not be used for ‘a *mistake* (of any other kind) made by a *clerk*.’

*Sick* ordinarily means *suffering from nausea*. It occurs with the sense of *ill*, *unwell* in phrases common in older English and still current, such as ‘the *sick* and afflicted,’ ‘visitation of the *sick*,’ ‘*sick* unto death’; and in technical terms like ‘*sick* leave,’ ‘*sick* list.’ But we do not say ‘He obtained leave to go home, as he was *sick*,’ but ‘as he was *ill*.’ It is also used *metaphorically*, as ‘I am *sick* of all this nonsense’ (= I am *disgusted* at it).

## ARTICLES.

### 592. Indefinite Article omitted.

(1) *Incorrect* : ‘Have you any guests this evening?’—‘Yes, I have *few* friends to dinner.’

*Correct* : ‘Have you, etc.?’—‘Yes, I have *a few* friends to dinner.’

*Incorrect* : ‘Did you not stay with him?’—‘Yes, I spent *little* time with him.’

*Correct* : ‘Did you not, etc.?’—‘Yes, I spent *a little* time with him.’

(2) *Incorrect* : I have *great deal* of work to do.

*Correct* : I have *a great deal* of work to do.

*Incorrect* : I saw *great many* people there.

*Correct* : I saw *a great many* people there.

(3) *Incorrect* : Give me three and *half* rupees.

*Correct* : { Give me three and *a half* rupees.  
{ Give me three rupees and *a half*.

(4) *Incorrect* : He took *short* sleep.

*Correct* : He took a *short* sleep.

(5) *Incorrect* : I have got *headache*.

*Correct* : I have got (or I have) a *headache*.

NOTE.—*Few* = a small number, as opposed to *many*.

*A few* = a certain number, some at least, as opposed to *none* (164, note).

*Little* = a small amount, as opposed to a great deal.

*A little* = a certain amount, some at least, as opposed to *none*.

### 593. Definite Article omitted.

*Incorrect* : The famine prevailed over *whole* district.

*Correct* : The famine prevailed over *the whole* district.

*Incorrect* : Bengali is not spoken in *whole* Bengal.

*Correct* : Bengali is not spoken in *the whole of* Bengal.

NOTE.—*Whole* is used only with plural nouns :—‘The famine prevailed over *whole districts*’; i.e. over several entire districts. *The whole* cannot be used with proper names, as *the whole Bengal*; say, *the whole of Bengal*.

### 594. Article omitted after ‘and,’ ‘or,’ when they join distinct objects.

*Incorrect* : The *Magistrate and Judge* were present.

*Correct* : The *Magistrate and the Judge* were present.

*Incorrect* : Is he an *Oxford or Cambridge* man ?

*Correct* : Is he an *Oxford or a Cambridge* man ?

*Incorrect* : He is famous as a *novelist and poet*.

*Correct* : { He is famous as a *novelist and a poet*.  
He is famous as *novelist and poet*.

NOTE.—‘He is a better prose writer than a *poet*’ should be ‘than *poet*.’

*Incorrect* : The *first and second class* have been examined.

*Correct* : { The *first and the second class* have been examined.  
The *first and second classes* have been examined.

NOTE.—But when *and*, or join two nouns that refer to the same object, the article should not be inserted :—‘The *Magistrate and the Collector* was present’ should be ‘The *Magistrate and Collector*.’ So, ‘He is a *common or private* soldier.’ ‘A *black and a white horse*’ = two horses, one black and the other white; ‘a *black and white horse*’ = a horse that is partly black and partly white.

### 595. ‘A’ misplaced.

*Incorrect* : There is *more important* a question than this.

*Correct* : There is a *more important* question than this.

NOTE.—‘There is *no more important* a question’ is right. We say—‘*So glorious a career*’ (not ‘*A so glorious career*’). ‘*How hard a task!*’ ‘*Many a man*’; but not ‘*This is not sufficient an excuse*.’

PRONOUNS.

596. Pronouns, etc., omitted.

*Incorrect* : ' Please bring me the book.'—' I am bringing.'

*Correct* : ' Please bring me the book.'—' I am bringing *it*

*Incorrect* : ' Will you give me your knife ?'—' Take.'

*Correct* : ' Will you give me your knife ?'—' Take *it*.'

*Incorrect* : Suffice to say, you are wrong.

*Correct* : Suffice *it* to say, you are wrong.

*Incorrect* : ' Do you think so ?'—' Yes, I think.'

*Correct* : ' Do you think so ?'—' Yes, I think so' (or ' Yes, I do').

NOTE.—In assenting to a request or answering a question, it is contrary to English usage, except for the sake of special emphasis, to repeat the verb used by the first speaker—as is customary in Indian vernaculars. Thus, the reply to the request ' Please give me the book,' should be ' Here it is,' not ' I am giving it.' Observe that *it* is too unemphatic a word to be separated from its governing verb: we say ' Give *me the book*,' but ' Give *it me*,' not ' Give *me it*.'

597. The same for It, So.

*Incorrect* : He stole a horse and sold *the same* for Rs. 500.

*Correct* : He stole a horse and sold *it* for Rs. 500.

NOTE.—This use of *the same* is confined mainly to legal or formal diction.

*Incorrect* : I cannot go, though I should like to do *the same*.

*Correct* : I cannot go, though I should like to do *so*.

598. ' I,' ' me ' (with nouns or other pronouns) placed first.

*Incorrect* : *I and Ram* went home together.

*Correct* : *Ram and I* went home together.

*Incorrect* : Divide it between *me and him*.

*Correct* : Divide it between *him and me*.

NOTE.—But a sentence *confessing a fault* would run—' It was *I and Ram* that broke the window.' The business formula is ' For self (= myself) and partner,' not ' partner and self.' Do not say ' *Ram and myself* went home,' but ' *Ram and I* ' (or *I myself*).

599. You and I for You and me.

*Incorrect* : Everything is settled between *you and I*.

*Correct* : Everything is settled between *you and me*.

NOTE.—Similarly, ' They invited *him and I* ' should be *him and me*: ' Let *Ram and I* go ' should be *Ram and me*. In ' Us children can manage for ourselves ' *us* should be *we*.

**600. Ambiguous reference of personal pronouns.**

(1) *Incorrect* : The King having refused to pardon Monmouth, *he* was executed the next day.

*Correct* : Monmouth, the King having refused to pardon *him*, was executed, etc.

(2) *Incorrect* : Ram hurt his hand so severely that, unless his thumb is amputated, he will lose the use of *it*.

*Correct* : Ram hurt his *hand* so severely that he will lose the use of *it*, unless his thumb is amputated.

NOTE.—In (1) only the context shows to whom *he* refers ; in (2) the sentence logically means that Ram will lose the use of his amputated thumb. Similarly, in 'The gentleman told his careless coachman that *he* would be the death of *him*,' it is uncertain whether the gentleman threatened death to the coachman, or predicted that the coachman would cause the gentleman's death. Insert 'the coachman' in brackets after 'he.'

**601. 'My,' 'his,' etc., used as antecedents.**

*Incorrect* : Follow in *his* steps who is your leader.

*Correct* : Follow in the steps of *him* who is your leader

**602. Yours for Your house.**

*Incorrect* : I will see you at *yours* this evening.

*Correct* : I will see you at *your house* this evening.

NOTE.—*Yours* is, of course, correctly used for *your house* when the word *house* has been previously expressed :—'Shall we send it to my house or to *yours* ?'

**603. My, your, etc., for Of me, Of you, or From me, From you.**

*Incorrect* : We hope soon to have *your good report*.

*Correct* : We hope soon to have *a good report of you*.

*Incorrect* : I cannot endure *your separation*.

*Correct* : I cannot endure *separation from you*.

*Incorrect* : I must now take *your leave*.

*Correct* : I must now take *leave of you*.

NOTE.—*Your good report* means *good report made by you* ; cf. 841. The converse mistake is sometimes made :—

*Incorrect* : He left without asking permission of *me*.

*Correct* : He left without asking *my* permission.

**604. Reflexive Pronouns inserted.**

*Incorrect* : He weighed *himself* two maunds.

*Correct* : He weighed two maunds.

*Incorrect* : He *keeps himself* away from school.

*Correct* : He *keeps* away from school.

NOTE.—In some cases either form is admissible :—

{ The king *prepared himself* for war.      { He *engaged himself* in business.

{ The king *prepared* for war.                      { He *engaged* in business.

But 'I feel *myself* ill to-day' is incorrect for 'I *feel* ill to-day.' and 'Off with *yourself*!' for 'Off with *you*!' (cf. 212). The pronoun is sometimes wrongly omitted :—

*Incorrect* : I will avail of your permission.

*Correct* : I will avail *myself* of your permission (213).

#### 605. That (*demonstrative*) **misused.**

*Incorrect* : I told you *on that* day.

*Correct* : I told you *the other* day (204).

#### 606. Yours and my, etc., **for** Your and my.

*Incorrect* : I think *yours and my* horse are both lame.

*Correct* : { I think *your and my* horses are both lame.  
                  { I think *your horse and mine* are both lame.

NOTE.—Similarly, 'Mine and John's name' is wrong for 'John's name and mine.' The absolute possessives cannot be used attributively. In the same way, for 'There were none or only a few ladies present,' write 'There were no ladies or only a few present.'

#### 607. 'It' **omitted.**

*Incorrect* : You suppose an event that is impossible to believe will happen.

*Correct* : You suppose an event that *it* is impossible to believe will happen.

#### 608. Pronoun **inserted.**

*Incorrect* : John, having stored everything safely, *he* went away on his business.

*Correct* : John, having stored everything safely, went away on his business.

*Incorrect* : Here is a statement, which, though it is brief, *it* explains everything.

*Correct* : Here is a statement, which, though it is brief, explains everything.

*Incorrect* : These details I omitted from the book and *I* inserted *them* in another volume.

*Correct* : These details I omitted from the book and inserted in another volume.

## 609. Confusion of Gender.

*Incorrect* : Here is the horse : *its* price is £50, and *he* is perfectly sound.

*Correct* : Here is the horse : *his* price is £50, and *he* is perfectly sound.

NOTE.—Or write *its* and *it* for *his* and *he*.

*Incorrect* : When England speaks, *its* watchword is duty.

*Correct* : When England speaks, *her* watchword is duty.

NOTE.—England, being personified, is feminine, not neuter [121, (2)].

## 610. Confusion of Number.

*Incorrect* : The cat was once a sacred animal ; *they* were worshipped in Egypt.

*Correct* : The cat was once a sacred animal ; *she* (or *it*) was worshipped in Egypt.

*Incorrect* : *They* are a fine *specimen* of the type.

*Correct* : *They* are fine *specimens* of the type.

*Incorrect* : No one but nurses and doctors *know* this.

*Correct* : No one but nurses and doctors *knows* this.

*Incorrect* : Those kind of people *are* to be avoided.

*Correct* : *That* kind of people *is* to be avoided.

*Incorrect* : He is one of those men who cannot conceal *his* opinions.

*Correct* : He is one of those men who cannot conceal *their* opinions.

NOTE.—Similarly, in 'I am not one of those who make friends with everyone I meet,' *I* should be *they*.

## 611. Confusion of Person.

*Incorrect* : It is *thy* heart, my friend, that will suffer ; the brunt of the calamity will fall on *you*.

*Correct* : It is *your* heart, my friend, that will suffer ; the brunt of the calamity will fall on *you*.

NOTE.—Or substitute *thee* for *you* in the first sentence.

*Incorrect* : In the eyes of the world I am a mere lawyer, spending *his* days in the Courts and confining *myself* to the study of precedents.

*Correct* : In the eyes of the world I am a mere lawyer, spending *my* days in the Courts and confining *myself* to the study of precedents.

NOTE.—Or substitute *himself* for *myself* in the first sentence. Observe that we say 'I who *am* your leader,' but 'I *am* the man who *is* your leader.'

612. Whose *for* Of Whom.

*Incorrect* : That is my house, *whose* door is painted green.

*Correct* : That is my house, the door *of which* is painted green.

NOTE.—Instances of *this* and of 601 occur in poetry and sometimes in prose, but both constructions should be avoided by the young writer. See 178, 193.

613. Who *for* Which (188).

*Incorrect* : *Who* is the taller, you or I ?

*Correct* : *Which* is the taller, you or I ?

NOTE.—Similarly, *whoever* should be *whichever* in 'The issue of the conflict will be disastrous to both, *whoever* wins.'

614. Which *for* As.

*Incorrect* : My cousin is a doctor, *which* I should like to be.

*Correct* : My cousin is a doctor, *as* I should like to be.

*Incorrect* : He lost his way in the wood, *which* I expected.

*Correct* : He lost his way in the wood, *as* I expected.

615. 'Which,' 'It,' used to relate to a clause.

*Incorrect* : He spoke for two hours without a pause, *which* shows how fluent he is.

*Correct* : He spoke for two hours without a pause, *a fact which* shows how fluent he is.

*Incorrect* : Man has the power of prehension with the thumb, *which* the ape does not possess.

*Correct* : Man has the power of prehension with the thumb, *a power which* the ape does not possess.

*Incorrect* : I am sorry the ball fell into your garden ; *it* shall not occur again.

*Correct* : I am sorry the ball fell into your garden ; *such a thing* (or *this*, 182) shall not occur again.

NOTE.—In (1) the first *which* grammatically relates to *pause* ; in (2) to *thumb* ; and in (3) *it* relates to *garden*. Other words—*circumstance, statement, notion, belief, task, incident, event*—may be inserted, to fit the sense :—'He said that the Government had made a mistake, *a statement that* was much applauded' ; 'He tried to carry the business through in one day, *a task that* was too much for his powers' ; 'The next day the Town-hall was opened : *the event* caused much excitement.'

616. 'Who,' 'which,' 'that' (as subjects of a verb) omitted.

*Incorrect* : There were several boys won prizes.

*Correct* : There were several boys *who* (or *that*) won prizes.

NOTE.—When the Relative clause is restrictive (190, *note*), *that* is preferable to *who* or *which* :—'The man *that* (not *whom*) I saw' ; 'This is the house *that* (not *which*) Ram built.'



617. 'Which,' 'that' (*as subject and object in the same sentence*)  
not expressed twice.

*Incorrect* : Here is the book *that* I admired and is full of pictures.

*Correct* : Here is the book *that* I admired and *that* is full of pictures.

618. 'And which (*or that*),' 'But which,' etc., used without being preceded by another 'Which.'

*Incorrect* : This is a tree easy to climb *and which* is full of fruit.

*Correct* : { This is a tree *that* is easy to climb *and that* is full of fruit.  
This is a tree *that* is easy to climb and full of fruit.

NOTE.—Similarly with *who* : 'Men of high birth, *but who* had sunk into poverty' should be 'Men *who were* of high birth, *but who*, etc.'

619. 'Which' used to refer to a clause.

*Incorrect* : He spoke for two hours without a pause, *which* shows how fluent he is.

*Correct* : { He spoke for two hours without a pause, *a fact which* shows how fluent he is.  
He spoke for two hours without a pause, *and this* shows how fluent he is.

NOTE.—Other words—a *statement*, a *notion*, a *belief*, a *task*—may be inserted, to fit the sense :—'He said that the Government had made a mistake, *a statement which* was much applauded' : 'He tried to carry the business through in one day, *a task which* was too much for his powers.'

620. Whom for Who.

*Incorrect* : *Whom* do men say, that I am ?

*Correct* : *Who* do men say that I am ?

*Incorrect* : Somebody told me, I forget *whom*.

*Correct* : Somebody told me, I forget *who*.

*Incorrect* : He is a man *whom* I know is trustworthy.

*Correct* : He is a man *who* I know is trustworthy.

NOTE.—The ungrammatical use of *who* for *whom* in 'Who did you see ?' 'Who shall I give it to ?' etc., is colloquial, not literary ; as also is the use of *me* and *him*, for *I* and *he*, in 'It is *me*,' 'That's *him*.'

621. They that, Them who for Those that, Those who

*Incorrect* : Only *they that* have tickets will be admitted.

*Correct* : Only *those that* have tickets will be admitted.

*Incorrect* : Be kind to *them who* ask for help.

*Correct* : Be kind to *those who* ask for help.

NOTE.—*They that, them that* are common in seventeenth century English :—  
 • *Them that* honour me I will honour, and *they that* despise me shall be  
 lightly esteemed' (*Bible*).

**622. Another Pronoun substituted for the Relative Pronoun.**

*Incorrect* : We read of a man who was a great general, but *he*  
 was a leper.

*Correct* : We read of a man who was a great general, but *who*  
 was a leper.

*Incorrect* : He had an old boat, which he made into a house,  
 and lived in *it* for some time.

*Correct* : He had an old boat which he made into a house, and  
 in *which* he lived for some time.

*Incorrect* : This is the boy whose hat was lost and *his* purse  
 stolen.

*Correct* : This is the boy whose hat was lost and *whose* purse  
 was stolen.

NOTE.—Or write : ' whose hat was lost and purse stolen.'

**623. Relative omitted.**

*Incorrect* . Here is the book mentioned in the catalogue, which  
 I admired and is full of pictures.

*Correct* : Here is the book, etc., which I admired and *which*  
 is full of pictures.

*Incorrect* : There are many people say the contrary.

*Correct* : There are many people *who* say the contrary.

*Incorrect* : Tickets will be given to those boys desirous of  
 competing.

*Correct* : Tickets will be given to those boys *that* are desirous  
 of competing.

NOTE.—The omission of the relative when it is *subject* of a verb [as in (2)]  
 is not unusual in poetry, but in prose it is a colloquialism, as is also the  
 omission in (3) : in ' Bring me those sections of the Act relating to bank-  
 rupts,' *relating* should be *that relate*. In a sentence like ' Mr. J. Brown,  
 Sir George Robinson, the Mayor of the town, and Mr. W. Jones were present,'  
 it is uncertain whether ' the Mayor of the town ' is in apposition with Sir  
 George Robinson or not. If so, insert *who is* after ' Robinson.'

**624. As for Such &c.**

*Incorrect* : Above are two dragons, *as* are often seen in  
 heraldry.

*Correct* : Above are two dragons, *such as* are often seen in  
 heraldry.

625. *Such for So.*

*Incorrect* : No offer was ever received with *such* little recognition.

*Correct* : No offer was ever received with *so* little recognition.

NOTE.—‘*Such* inadequate recognition’ should be ‘recognition *so* inadequate.’ We say ‘I have never seen *such* large apples’; but ‘I have never seen apples *so* large as these.’ ‘*Such* a small sum’ is colloquial for ‘*so* small a sum.’

626. *Such for that, it, them, etc.*

*Incorrect* : We much regretted his defeat at the Election, but more the result of *such* defeat.

*Correct* : We much regretted, etc., but more the result of *that* defeat.

*Incorrect* : I will not accept this offer unless I receive *such* unconditionally.

*Correct* : I will not accept this offer unless I receive *it* unconditionally.

627. *That, Which for As after Such.*

*Incorrect* : No *such* precautions were taken *that* might have prevented the disaster.

*Correct* : No *such* precautions were taken *as* might have prevented the disaster.

NOTE.—Similarly, in ‘At *such* time when the Court sees fit,’ *when* should be *as*. See 200, (1).

## 628. ‘One of’ for ‘That of.’

*Incorrect* : His situation is *one of* doorkeeper to the House.

*Correct* : His situation is *that of* doorkeeper to the House.

NOTE.—‘His situation is *one of* great emolument’ is correct.

629. *His for One’s* [*Indef.* 202 (b)].

*Incorrect* : One should take care of *his* books.

*Correct* : One should take care of *one’s* books.

NOTE.—*His* is correct with Definite *one* : ‘One of the men lost *his* hat.’ Several *one’s* should be avoided, as : ‘One should not depend for *one’s* happiness on *one’s* friends or *one’s* surroundings.’ Write *we* and *our*, or *people* and *their*. Never use *one* for *I* : as, ‘*One* got up late, and so *one* lost *one’s* train.’

630. *Whatever for What ever.*

*Incorrect* : When he said that, *whatever* did you reply ?

*Correct* : When he said that, *what ever* did you reply ?

NOTE.—*Whatever* is an indefinite, not an interrogative, pronoun: '*Whatever* you do, do it quickly.' *What ever* ? means '*What in the world ?*' and is a colloquialism. Similarly with *whoever* and *who ever*, *however* and *how ever*.

631. 'Each' misplaced.

*Incorrect* : The Duke, the Marquis, and the Earl *each takes* precedence of the Baron.

*Correct* : The Duke, the Marquis, and the Earl *take each* precedence of the Baron.

632. Somewhat for Some.

*Incorrect* : He found the place with *somewhat* difficulty.

*Correct* : He found the place with *some* difficulty.

NOTE.—*Somewhat* is either (a) a noun, and therefore requiring the noun with which it is connected to be preceded by of:—'*He is somewhat of a poet*'; or (b) an adverb:—'*He is somewhat poetical.*'

633. Some for Any.

*Incorrect* : If *some* of you make a noise, they shall be punished.

*Correct* : If *any* of you make a noise, they shall be punished.

*Incorrect* : I have not got *some* pens.

*Correct* : I have not got *any* pens.

634. Some for One, A certain.

*Incorrect* : The conspirators met *some day* and arranged their plans.

*Correct* : The conspirators met *one day* (or *on a certain day*) and arranged their plans.

NOTE.—*Some day* is generally used of an uncertain point of future time:—'*I cannot tell you now, but I will tell you some day.*' So '*Some day next week*' means '*on one of the days of next week.*'

635. And others for etc. or &c. (= *et cetera*, 'and the rest')

*Incorrect* : He was ruined by fraud, bad debts, *and others*.

*Correct* : He was ruined by fraud, bad debts, *etc.*

NOTE.—Better, 'and other losses'; see 569. *And others* can be used in the sense of *and other persons*, when some particular persons have been specified:—'*There were present Mr. Smith, Mr. Brown, and others.*' *And others* can be used of *things* only when the things already mentioned have been specially defined:—'*I have lost the books I bought yesterday and others* (i.e. other books) also.'

636. 'Another,' 'Other,' followed by 'From' (796), 'To.'

*Incorrect* : This is quite another kind of cloth *from* that.

*Correct* : This is quite another kind of cloth *than* that.

*Incorrect* : The house survives under another name *to that* familiar to us.

*Correct* : The house survives under another name *than that* familiar to us.

637. 'Either,' 'Neither,' 'Each,' 'Every one,' 'Any one,' treated as plurals.

*Incorrect* : *Neither* of us *were* present.

*Correct* : *Neither* of us *was* present.

*Incorrect* : *Every one* should respect *their* superiors.

*Correct* : *Every one* should respect *his* superiors.

*Incorrect* : I will help *any one* in whatever subject *they* choose.

*Correct* : I will help *any one* in whatever subject *he* chooses.

NOTE.—Conversely, 'More than one king *was* blind' should be '*were* blind,' since *more* = more kings.

638. Either, Neither for Any, None.

*Incorrect* : I have not read *either* of these three books.

*Correct* : I have not read *any* of these three books.

*Incorrect* : He may be any one of these or *neither*.

*Correct* : He may be any one of these or *none*.

VERBS.

639. Passive for Active.

*Incorrect* : This *is alluded* to a passage in 'Paradise Lost.'

*Correct* : This *alludes* to a passage in 'Paradise Lost.'

*Incorrect* : My remark *was referred* to his conduct.

*Correct* : My remark *referred* to his conduct.

*Incorrect* : Great advantages *are accrued* from this measure.

*Correct* : Great advantages *accrue* from this measure.

*Incorrect* : What *will be ensued* on this ?

*Correct* : What *will ensue* on this ?

*Incorrect* : He *was adhered* to his determination.

*Correct* : He *adhered* to his determination.

*Incorrect* : The ship has been attempted *to be salved*.

*Correct* : It has been attempted *to salve* the ship.

NOTE.—Be *ter* 'An attempt has been made to salve the ship.'

640. Active for Passive.

*Incorrect* : No benefit is likely *to produce*.

*Correct* : No benefit is likely *to be produced*.

**641. Passive for Active Infinitive, after Adjectives.**

*Incorrect* : This prize is hard *to be won*.

*Correct* : This prize is hard *to win*.

**642. Present Imperfect Continuous Tense (242) misused.**

*Incorrect* : This is the first time *I am hearing* of it.

*Correct* : This is the first time *I have heard* of it.

**643. Different tenses in the same sentence.**

*Incorrect* : While Rome *was* burning, Nero *is* playing on the flute.

*Correct* : While Rome *is* (or *was*) burning, Nero *is* (or *was*) playing, etc.

*Incorrect* : I *called* at his house yesterday and *have given* him a lesson.

*Correct* : I *called* at his house yesterday and *gave* him a lesson.

**644. Passive use of 'To avail oneself of.'**

*Incorrect* : The new remedy could not *be availed of* in this case.

*Correct* : The new remedy could not *be employed* (or *used*) in this case.

NOTE.—These reflexive verb forms (213) cannot be used in the passive voice. Also, 'He refused to *avail of* my help' is wrong for *avail himself of*.

**645. Present Tense after 'As if,' 'As though.'**

*Incorrect* : He looks as if he *suspects* something.

*Correct* : He looks as if he *suspected* something.

*Incorrect* : You act as though nothing *depends* upon you.

*Correct* : You act as though nothing *depended* upon you.

NOTE.—'He looks as if he *suspects*'—'He looks as he would look if he *suspects*,' where the present is clearly incorrect.

**646. Plural for Singular.**

*Incorrect* : All the business that is left *are* mere details.

*Correct* : All the business that is left *is* mere details.

*Incorrect* : The only difficulty in the way of his escape *were* his wife and children.

*Correct* : The only difficulty in the way of his escape *was* his wife and children.

NOTE.—Conversely, 'Those details of the business *form* (not *forms*) matter for consideration,' 'This is one of the best books that *have* (not *has*) appeared lately' are correct, since, in each case, the verb should agree with the subject. We say 'Two and two *make* four,' but 'Twice two *makes* four.'

## 647. -eth for -est.

*Incorrect* : Where thou *goeth* I will go.

*Correct* : Where thou *goest* I will go.

## 648. 'To' omitted after 'and,' 'or,' when they join distinct notions.

*Incorrect* : We are told to *rejoice and weep* with others.

*Correct* : We are told to *rejoice and to weep* with others.

*Incorrect* : It lies in your power to *succeed or fail*.

*Correct* : It lies in your power to *succeed or to fail*.

NOTE.—But when *and*, or join two kindred notions, *to* should not be inserted :—'The soldier was left to *bleed and die* on the field'; 'Take care not to *refuse or neglect* a good offer.' Cf. 594.

## 649. 'Make' with Participle of Causative Verbs.

*Incorrect* : Intemperance *makes* the constitution *weakened*.

*Correct* : { Intemperance *makes* the constitution *weak*.  
Intemperance *weakens* the constitution.

NOTE.—*Weakened* means *made weak*; so that 'makes weakened' = 'makes made weakened.'

## 650. Perfect Participles of Intransitive Verbs (cf. 239).

*Incorrect* : Lava is matter *issued* out of rocks.

*Correct* : Lava is matter *that has issued* out of rocks.

*Incorrect* : This belongs to a gentleman *proceeded* up-country.

*Correct* : This belongs to a gentleman *who has proceeded* etc.

NOTE.—*Failed candidate* has come into use in India from the mistaken notion that *fail* can be used as a transitive verb, as in 'The examiner *failed* him in the examination.' *Fail*, in the sense of 'to be wanting to,' can take an indirect object :—'Thought, look, and utterance *failed* him now.'—*Scott*. See 222, note 1.

## 651. An Adverb or an Adverbial phrase placed between 'to' and the infinitive.

*Incorrect* : I wish to *fully* answer your question.

*Correct* : { I wish *fully* to answer your question.  
I wish to answer your question *fully*.

*Incorrect* : I do not intend to *in any way* object to his proposal.

*Correct* : I do not intend to *object in any way* to his proposal.

NOTE 1.—The 'split infinitive' (unknown in old English) is avoided by careful writers. 'The Civil Service is too loyal to *ever grumble* at any change that is made by the powers that be' (*Newspaper Letter*) is both ugly and misleading; write, 'ever to grumble.' On the other hand, in 'My wish is to *further explain* motives as yet little understood' *further* placed before *to*

might mean *furthermore* and placed after *explain* might qualify *motives*. But such sentences are rare. 'This plan deserves to be carefully considered' is correct; there is no split infinitive.

NOTE 2.—An awkward 'split' occurs in 'They had provided themselves with, as far as they could, written authority,' for which write 'They had provided themselves, as far as they could, with' etc.; and for 'I pardon your for the first time being late for school,' write 'your being late, since it is the first time.'

652. Finite Verb after But [233, (4)].

*Incorrect* : I did nothing but *laughed*.

*Correct* : I did nothing but *laugh*.

653. Providing for Provided (285, note).

*Incorrect* : *Providing* there is room, I will invite him.

*Correct* : *Provided* there is room, I will invite him.

NOTE.—Conversely, 'Admitted that I am right, we must succeed' should be *admitting*. *Provided* must not be treated as synonymous with *if*: *Provided* the horse is lame, I will not ride him' is wrong. *Provided* implies a stipulation and a person interested in its fulfilment.

654. Am to for Have to, Wish to.

*Incorrect* : Please give me leave, as I *am to* post a letter.

*Correct* : Please give me leave, as I *have to* post a letter.

NOTE.—See 307. Observe that—

'I *have much work to do*' = I have much work in hand.

'I *have to do much work*' = I am obliged to do much work.

655. Tell for Say.

*Incorrect* : He *tells* that he is going away.

*Correct* : He *says* that he is going away.

*Incorrect* : I *told* him, 'Leave the room!'

*Correct* : I *said* to him, 'Leave the room!'

NOTE.—If *tells* is used in the sense of *informs*, the person to whom the information is given must be expressed:—'He *tells me* that he is going away.' *Tell* should not be used to introduce a direct speech.

656. Say for Tell.

*Incorrect* : He *said* me to go away.

*Correct* : He *told* me to go away.

NOTE.—Here *told* means *commanded*; in this sense *tell* is followed by the infinitive mood. Observe that *tell* in the sense of *inform* or *command* requires an objective of the person addressed; *say* requires an objective of the thing only, except in the rare phrase 'Who shall *say me* nay?' *Tell*, in the sense of *narrate*, does not require an objective of the person:—'The historian goes on to *tell* how the war ended.'



657. *Say for Call.*

*Incorrect* : He *says* me a fool.

*Correct* : He *calls* me a fool.

658. *See for Look at, Look over.*

*Incorrect* : Please *see* my certificates.

*Correct* : Please *look at* my certificates.

*Incorrect* : The examiner promised *to see* my papers.

*Correct* : The examiner promised *to look over* my papers.

NOTE.—*See* is a general term for using the power of vision without special effort or attention. Thus 'I could not *see* him,' because he was hidden or because I was blind; 'I could not *look at* him,' because his appearance was distasteful to me. The Bengali [দেখ] has the double meaning of *see* and *look at*. Similarly, '*See* (or *look*) this word in the dictionary' is incorrect for '*Look out* (or *look up*) this word.' Again, 'When I reached home I *saw* him ill' should be 'I *found* him ill.'

659. *Hear for Listen to.*

*Incorrect* : He spoke so rudely that I would not *hear* him.

*Correct* : He spoke so rudely that I would not *listen to* him.

NOTE.—This mistake is exactly parallel to the misuse of *see* for *look at*. *Hear* is a general term, while *listen* should be used to denote attention. Thus: 'I could not *hear* him,' because he spoke indistinctly or because I was deaf; 'I could not *listen to* him,' because his words were distasteful to me. The Bengali [শুন] has the double meaning of *hear* and *listen to*. —

660. *Forward for Offer.*

*Incorrect* : I beg to *forward* myself as a candidate.

*Correct* : I beg to *offer* myself as a candidate.

NOTE.—*Forward* means to send on, to transmit; 'to *forward* my name as a candidate' is correct.

661. *Got for Had.*

*Incorrect* : He *got* these words inscribed on his tomb.

*Correct* : He *had* these words inscribed on his tomb.

NOTE.—B is we say colloquially 'I cannot *get* this letter written in time.'

662. '*Got*' inserted unnecessarily.

*Do not write* : I have *got* a headache.

*Write* : I have a headache.

NOTE.—This use of *got* is colloquial, not literary; *got* means 'acquired':—  
'I have bought and sold and *got* gain.' Another colloquialism is the use of

*get* for *reach* :—‘ I *got* home at five o'clock,’ instead of ‘ I *reached* home.’ *Got* for *become* is common : ‘ to *get* well,’ ‘ to *get* wet,’ ‘ to *get* married’; but ‘ I *got* very ill ’ is hardly literary.

### 663. Make for Get.

*Incorrect* : He *makes* a few hours for study.

*Correct* : He *gets* a few hours for study.

### 664. Make for Do.

*Incorrect* : You have *made* injustice to his efforts.

*Correct* : You have *done* injustice to his efforts.

NOTE.—We *make*—a mistake, an error, a blunder; we *do*—wrong, harm, injury; we *commit*—a fault, a crime, an offence, sin.

### 665. Make for Bid.

*Incorrect* : I *made* him good-bye.

*Correct* : I *bade* him good-bye.

NOTE.—We *make* (or present) our compliments and *make* our bow (or salaam) to a person, and we *pay* him a compliment or our respects. We *bid* a friend good-bye or farewell or welcome.

### 666. Hope for Expect.

*Incorrect* : I *hope* it will be a month before he recovers.

*Correct* : I *expect* it will be a month before he recovers.

NOTE.—*Hope* means ‘ expect with pleasure.’

### 667. Know for Believe.

*Incorrect* : We once *knew* much that we now find to be false.

*Correct* : We once *believed* much that we now find to be false.

NOTE.—*Know* is generally used about what is true; we cannot *know* anything but actual fact. The Bengali জ্ঞান is not used solely of knowledge of the truth; it may be applied to any impression made on the mind.

### 668. Believe for Presume, Trust.

*Incorrect* : You will not want me again, I *believe*.

*Correct* : You will not want me again, I *presume*.

*Incorrect* : You are in good health, I *believe*.

*Correct* : You are in good health, I *trust*.

NOTE.—*Believe* generally denotes a settled conviction or certainty of the mind, and is too formal and serious a term to be used in sentences like the above, which are a sort of enquiry.

## 669. Intend for Want, Wish.

*Incorrect* : Please grant me leave, as I *intend* to go home early.

*Correct* : Please grant me leave, as I *want* to go home early.

**NOTE.**—*Intend* signifies a *fixed determination*, and should not therefore be used by a subordinate when making a request to a superior. The Bengali ইচ্ছা is used for both *wish* and *intention*.

## 670. Acknowledge for Promise.

*Incorrect* : His uncle *acknowledged* to take charge of him.

*Correct* : His uncle *promised* to take charge of him.

## 671. Confess for Grant.

*Incorrect* : He *confessed* Rs. 10 for my support.

*Correct* : He *granted* Rs. 10 for my support.

**NOTE.**—The Bengali স্বীকার may be used to translate *confess* as well as *grant*.

## 672. Deny for Refuse.

*Incorrect* : I gave him your invitation, but he *denied* to come.

*Correct* : I gave him your invitation, but he *refused* to come.

**NOTE.**—The Bengali অস্বীকার may be used to translate *deny* as well as *refuse*.

## 673. Stop, Stay, Remain for Reside, Live

*Incorrect* : Where shall you *stop*, when you settle in Bombay?

*Correct* : Where shall you *reside*, when you settle in Bombay?

*Incorrect* : He *stays* in Calcutta.

*Correct* : He *lives* in Calcutta.

**NOTE.**—*Stop* is now considered inelegant in such sentences as 'I shall *stop* with a friend for two days'; *stay* may be here used; but neither word is properly applied to *permanent, habitual abode*. The Bengali থাকি is used for both *stay* and *reside*.

## 674. Catch for Catch hold of, Take hold of.

*Incorrect* : Do not *catch* my hand.

*Correct* : Do not *take hold of* my hand.

**NOTE.**—The Bengali ধর is used in the sense of *catch*, as 'Catch the ball' (তলি ধর), and of *take hold of*, as 'Take hold of my hand' (আমার হাত ধর).

## 675. Die for Be killed.

*Incorrect* : Many people *died* by the explosion.

*Correct* : Many people *were killed* by the explosion.

NOTE.—*To die* is used of death from natural causes ; or if the cause of death is expressed, the preposition after *die* must be of :— The man *died* of his wounds.'

676. Be drowned for Sink.

*Incorrect* : The ship struck on the rock and *was drowned*.

*Correct* : The ship struck on the rock and *sank*.

NOTE.—The Bengali ভুবিয়া গেল may be used to translate both *was drowned*, which is applied only to living things, and *sank*, which is applied to either animate or inanimate things.

677. Mistake for Be mistaken.

*Incorrect* : You *mistake* in thinking that I was angry.

*Correct* : You *are mistaken* in thinking that I was angry.

NOTE.—We say ' You *mistake me*,' ' You *mistake my meaning* ' ; also ' If I *mistake not*,' though ' If I *am not mistaken* ' is more usual.

678. Fetch for Bring.

*Incorrect* : I have forgotten to *fetch* my book.

*Correct* : I have forgotten to *bring* my book.

NOTE.—*Fetch* is to go and come back with. *Bring* is to come with without the idea of previous going.

679. Bring for Take.

*Incorrect* : I shall *bring* this box to London with me.

*Correct* : I shall *take* this box to London with me.

680. Go for Come.

*Incorrect* : I hope to *go* and see you to-morrow.

*Correct* : I hope to *come* and see you to-morrow.

*Incorrect* : ' Come along.'— ' I *am going* ; wait for me.'

*Correct* : ' Come along.'— ' I *am coming* ; wait for me.'

NOTE.—In such sentences as the above the speaker adopts the standpoint of the person he addresses, and therefore says that he will *come* to or *with* him, not *go*. ' Are you *going* to the Durbar ? ' is a general enquiry ; ' Are you *coming* to the Durbar ? ' implies that the speaker himself means to attend it. *Come* denotes motion towards, *go* denotes motion away : the sun *comes* up and *goes* down ; a balloon *goes* up and *comes* down. Compare the following :—

I *asked* him to *come* and *bring* his books with him.

I *told* him to *go* and *take* his books with him.

681. Go from for Leave.

*Incorrect* : *Go from* the room.

*Correct* : *Leave* the room.

## 682. Go to for Enter.

*Incorrect* : He has *gone to* the musical profession.

*Correct* : He has *entered* the musical profession.

## 683. Break for Tear.

*Incorrect* : He has *broken* the cloth of his coat.

*Correct* : He has *torn* the cloth of his coat.

NOTE.—Conversely, *tear* is incorrectly used for *break* :—‘ The strain was so great that the rope *was torn* ’ (say *broke*).

## 684. Cut for Erase, Cancel.

*Incorrect* : *Cut* this word ; it is not needed.

*Correct* : *Erase* this word ; it is not needed.

NOTE.—We do not say ‘ *Pen* through this word,’ but ‘ *Draw your pen* through this word.’

*Incorrect* : These two numbers *cut* each other.

*Correct* : These two numbers *cancel* each other.

NOTE.—‘ I shall *fine* you Rs. 5 ’ is better than ‘ I shall *cut* you Rs. 5.’

## 685. Wear (clothes) for Put on (clothes).

*Incorrect* : We dried our clothes and *wore* them again.

*Correct* : We dried our clothes and *put* them *on* again.

## 686. Mend for Sharpen.

*Incorrect* : Please *mend* this pencil.

*Correct* : Please *sharpen* this pencil.

NOTE.— We *mend* a (quill) pen, but *sharpen* or *cut* a pencil.

## 687. Throw for Spill.

*Incorrect* : The cat has *thrown* the milk.

*Correct* : The cat has *spilt* (or *upset*) the milk.

## 688. Open out, Open for Unfasten, Untie.

*Incorrect* : *Open out* the boat.

*Correct* : *Unfasten* the boat.

*Incorrect* : *Open* this knot.

*Correct* : *Untie* this knot.

NOTE.—The Bengali খুলিয়া দেওয়া is used for both *open* and *untie*.

## 689. Reach across for Cross.

*Incorrect* : The boat has *reached across* the river.

*Correct* : The boat has *crossed* the river.

NOTE.—‘ The boat has *reached the other side of* the river ’ is correct.

690. Saturate for Imbue.

*Incorrect* : His mind is *saturated* with good principles.

*Correct* : His mind is *imbued* with good principles.

NOTE.—To *saturate* means to soak, and, when used figuratively, generally has a depreciative meaning:—‘*Saturated* with horror,’ ‘A mind *saturated* with prejudice.’

691. Keep for Put, Place.

*Incorrect* : ‘Where is the book?’—‘I just now *kept* it there.’

*Correct* : ‘Where is the book?’—‘I just now *put* it there.’

NOTE.—To *keep* indicates to *deposit for a length of time, to retain*, as ‘I *keep* my books in this drawer.’ The Bengali রাখা includes the meanings, *keep, preserve, put, place*, etc.

692. Keep for Obtain.

*Incorrect* : Every candidate must *keep* two-thirds of the maximum of marks.

*Correct* : Every candidate must *obtain* two-thirds of the maximum of marks.

693. Give for Put.

*Incorrect* : The pan is empty, *give* some water in it.

*Correct* : The pan is empty, *put* some water in it.

NOTE.—To *give Examination*, a literal translation of the Bengali পরীক্ষা [দওয়া], should be to *appear in an Examination*, or, more familiarly, to *go in for an Examination*.

694. Take admission for Be admitted.

*Incorrect* : He has *taken admission* in the Hare School.

*Correct* : He has *been admitted* into the Hare School.

NOTE.—‘He took his birth’ is incorrect for ‘He was born’; but we say ‘The river *takes* its rise,’ ‘He *took* his departure.’

695. Take leave for Ask leave.

*Incorrect* : I shall *take leave* of the master for two days.

*Correct* : { I shall *ask leave* of the master for two days.  
                  { I shall *ask* the master for two days’ leave.

NOTE.—To *take leave* of a person means to part from him, to bid him farewell.

696. Inform to for Inform of.

*Incorrect* : The matter *was informed to* him.

*Correct* : He *was informed of* the matter.

## 697. Insist to for Insist upon.

*Incorrect* : I insist *him to go*.

*Correct* : I insist *upon his going*.

## 698. Would for Used to.

*Incorrect* : When I lived in Calcutta, I *would* study at the Presidency College.

*Correct* : When I lived in Calcutta, I *used to* study at the Presidency College.

NOTE.—*Would* may be used to denote *action occasionally and irregularly repeated*, but not a *systematic course of conduct*: thus, 'When I lived in Calcutta, I *would* often visit the museum' is correct. Cf. 329, (1).

## 699. Use for Are accustomed.

*Incorrect* : Hindus *use* to burn their dead.

*Correct* : Hindus *are accustomed* to burn their dead.

NOTE.—The verb *use*, when denoting customary action, is not employed in the present tense in modern English. We may say 'Hindus *used to do so formerly*,' but not 'Hindus *use to do so now*.' Observe that *used* (were accustomed) has the *s* sound, whereas *used* (made use of) has the *z* sound (*used*). We say 'I am *used* (accustomed) to such treatment,' or 'I am *used to being treated so*'; but not 'I am *used to be treated so*.'

## 700. Contain for Be contained.

*Incorrect* : Put as much in as *will contain* in the box.

*Correct* : { Put as much in as *can be contained* in the box.  
Put *into* the box as much as *it will contain*.

NOTE.—*Contain* can be used only as a transitive verb.

## 701. Substitute for Replace.

*Incorrect* : He was *substituted* by a junior clerk.

*Correct* : He was *replaced* by a junior clerk.

NOTE.—We *substitute* one thing for another, but *replace* one thing by another.

## 702. Come to know for Find, Find out.

*Incorrect* : I *came to know* my watch was too fast.

*Correct* : I *found* my watch was too fast.

*Incorrect* : He *came to know* that he had lost his purse.

*Correct* : He *found out* that he had lost his purse.

NOTE.—'Come to know,' 'get to know' imply a *process of discovery*:—  
'How did you come to know it?' = 'How did you acquire the information?'  
'I could know' is wrongly used in the same way.

**702. Air oneself for Take the air.**

*Incorrect* : He has been *airing himself* on the maidan.

*Correct* : He has been *taking the air* on the maidan.

NOTE.—We also ‘take an airing.’ We ‘air clothes’ and ‘air (tell ~~out~~) our opinions,’ but not *ourselves*.

**704. Fair out for Make a fair copy of.**

*Incorrect* : Shall I *fair out* this report, sir ?

*Correct* : Shall I *make a fair copy of* this report, sir ?

NOTE.—To *fair out* is a type of a class of words or phrases coined in India and unknown in England. Others are—*fooding expense for board*, *teachery for teachership*, *to by heart for to learn by heart*.

**705. ‘To be’ omitted.**

*Incorrect* : I *knew him* a thief.

*Correct* :  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \text{I knew him to be a thief.} \\ \text{I knew that he was a thief.} \\ \text{I knew him for a thief.} \end{array} \right.$

NOTE.—We can say ‘I thought (or considered or reckoned) him a *wise man*,’ as well as ‘I thought (etc.) him *to be a wise man*’; but ‘I believed (or fancied) him *to be a wise man*,’ and ‘I regarded him *as a wise man*,’ only. Cf. 233, (2), *note*.

**706. Pretending for Pretended.**

*Incorrect* : The king arrived, followed by the *pretending* friar.

*Correct* : The king arrived, followed by the *pretended* friar.

**707. Mistake for Be Mistaken.**

*Incorrect* : You *mistake* in saying that I am wrong.

*Correct* : You *are mistaken* in saying that I am wrong.

NOTE.—We say ‘You *mistake* my meaning,’ but ‘You *are mistaken* in your conclusion.’

**708. Transfer for Convert.**

*Incorrect* : The old abbey has been *transferred* into farm buildings.

*Correct* : The old abbey has been *converted* into farm buildings.

**709. Prefix for Preface.**

*Incorrect* : This volume is *prefixed* by a short account of the author.

*Correct* : This volume is *prefaced* by a short account of the author.

NOTE.—You can prefix a short account to a volume, but you cannot *prefix* a volume with a short account.



710. *Quieten for Quiet.*

*Incorrect* : I *quietened* him about the possible risk.

*Correct* : I *quieted* him about the possible risk.

NOTE.—The suffix *-en* cannot be promiscuously appended to adjectives. We have *brighten*, *harden*, *moisten*, *worsen*, etc., but not *quieten*, *dampen*, *brisk*, *dwarfen*, *plump*, *smoothen*. There are a few double forms : *black* and *blacken*, *white* and *whiten*, *rough* and *roughen*, *loose* and *loosen*, *steep* and *steepen*, usually with a differentiation of use.

711. *Help without Not.*

*Incorrect* : Don't give more trouble than you *can* help.

*Correct* : Don't give more trouble than you *cannot* help.

NOTE.—'He gives no more trouble than he *can* (not) avoid' is a similar instance. This error is almost sanctioned by usage. The incorrect sentence might better be turned 'Give as little trouble as you can' (without *help* after *can*).

712. *Don't for Doesn't.*

*Incorrect* : He *don't* care what he says.

*Correct* : He *doesn't* care what he says.

NOTE.—Never use *I ain't* for *I'm not*, *you ain't* for *you're not*, or *he ain't* for *he's not*; and avoid *We*, *you*, *they aren't* for *we're not*, *you're not*, *they're not*. But *aren't* is used in interrogations : *arn't I?* *arn't you?* *isn't he?* *arn't we?* etc. All these are colloquial forms.

713. *Expect for Suppose, Conclude.*

*Incorrect* : I *expect* you have heard of his illness.

*Correct* : I *suppose* you have heard of his illness.

NOTE.—This use of *expect* is colloquial, not literary.

714. *Claim for Maintain, Assert, Declare.*

*Incorrect* : I *claim* that you are wrong.

*Correct* : I *maintain* that you are wrong.

*Incorrect* : He *claims* his razor to be the best on the market.

*Correct* : He *declares* his razor to be the best on the market.

715. *Hire for Let.*

*Incorrect* : Mr. Smith offered to *hire* his park to the Corporation.

*Correct* : Mr. Smith offered to *let* his park to the Corporation.

716. *Wish for Wish for.*

*Incorrect* : I do not *wish* any reward for my labours.

*Correct* : I do not *wish for* (or *want*) any reward for my labours.

717. *Take for Cost.*

*Incorrect* : It will *take* you much trouble to do this.

*Correct* : It will *cost* you much trouble to do this.

NOTE.—‘ You will have to take much trouble ’ is correct.

718. *Resemble for Compare.*

*Incorrect* : This rock has been *resembled* to a castle.

*Correct* : This rock has been *compared* to a castle.

NOTE.—‘ This rock *resembles* a castle ’ is correct.

719. *Grant, etc., for Permit, etc.*

*Incorrect* : The law *grants* civil officers to hold such posts.

*Correct* : The law *permits* civil officers to hold such posts.

NOTE.—‘ Grants permission to ’ would be right. *Grant, concede, accord*—unlike *permit, allow, empower, authorise*—are not constructed with the infinitive.

720. *Arise for Rise.*

*Incorrect* : The battle made this village *arise* to fame.

*Correct* : The battle made this village *rise* to fame.

721. *Realise for Notice, Understand, etc.*

*Incorrect* : I did not *realise* that he was gone.

*Correct* : I did not *notice* that he was gone.

*Incorrect* : You do not *realise* my views about this.

*Correct* : You do not *understand* my views about this.

*Incorrect* : The result did not *realise* my expectations.

*Correct* : The result did not *fulfil* my expectations.

NOTE.—*Realise* is a much overworked word. For ‘ He does not *realise* the importance of this event ’ write ‘ He does not *appreciate* ’; and for ‘ The horse he sold *realised* £20 ’ write *fetches*.

722. *Await for Wait.*

*Incorrect* : I am *awaiting* with anxiety to hear your report.

*Correct* : I am *waiting* with anxiety to hear your report.

NOTE.—*Await* is always transitive : ‘ I am *awaiting* your report with anxiety ’ is correct.

ADVERBS.

723. *Too for Very.*

*Incorrect* : I am *too* glad to see you looking so well.

*Correct* : I am *very* glad to see you looking so well.

NOTE.—*Too* denotes *excess over what is fitting, or reasonable, or agreeable, or natural*. Thus in the phrase ‘ You are really *too* kind,’ the speaker implies

that the kindness is *greater than could reasonably have been expected*. In 'I am only *too glad* to be of service to you,' the speaker asserts that his desire to be of service is so great as to outweigh any other consideration, as of obstacles, etc.

#### 724. Too much for Too.

*Incorrect* : This house is *too much* small for me.

*Correct* : This house is *too* small for me.

NOTE.—'This house is *much too* small' is correct.

#### 725. Too for Too much.

*Incorrect* : I am *too* offended to accept your excuse.

*Correct* : I am *too much* offended to accept your excuse.

NOTE.—'I am *much too* offended' is, again, correct. The same rule applies here as in 730: we say '*too* angry,' but '*too much* provoked.' R. Browning's 'I have *too* trusted to my own wild wants' is mere poetical licence. In 'We need not place *too much* confidence in his promises' either omit *too* or rewrite: 'We may easily place *too much*,' etc.

#### 726. Or ever for Or never, If ever.

*Incorrect* : He seldom *or ever* refuses a request.

*Correct* : { He seldom *or never* refuses a request.  
He seldom, *if ever*, refuses a request.

#### 727. Much for Very.

*Incorrect* : I am *much* happy to accept your offer.

*Correct* : I am *very* happy to accept your offer.

NOTE.—See 730, note.

#### 728. Quite for Very.

*Incorrect* : This climate is *quite* injurious to my health.

*Correct* : This climate is *very* injurious to my health.

NOTE.—*Quite* should, strictly, be used only in the sense of *perfectly, completely*:—'He is *quite* innocent.' 'I am *quite* well (not '*quite* better'). Colloquially we say 'You have been *quite* a long time (—a very long time) coming,' 'You are *quite* a stranger' (—a complete stranger), 'He made *quite* a sensation' (—a great sensation). *Quite* does not admit of qualification: we cannot say 'almost *quite* well.'

#### 729. Very for Too.

*Incorrect* : He feels *very* weak to walk.

*Correct* : He feels *too* weak to walk.

**NOTE.**—Where the meaning intended is 'so weak as not to be able to walk,' *too weak*, and not *very weak*, must be used. 'He is *very* weak to walk' may be used to imply an amount of weakness enough to render his walking a *matter of difficulty*, while '*too weak*' implies that his walking is *impossible*. 'He is *very* foolish to act thus' is good English; it means 'In acting thus he is very foolish.'

### 730. *Very* for *Much*.

*Incorrect* : I am *very* interested in your story.

*Correct* : I am *much* interested in your story.

**NOTE.**—The rule is that with adjectives and adverbs in the positive degree, and with present participles used as adjectives, *very* is used :—'This book is *very* amusing.' With adjectives and adverbs in the comparative degree, and with past participles, *much* is used :—'I thought him looking *much* altered.' A few past participles that are used so frequently as to be reckoned as adjectives, may take *very* before them : as, '*very* tired,' '*very* pleased,' '*very* delighted,' 'He is a *very* celebrated man.'

### 731. '*Somewhat*' misused.

*Incorrect* : 'How are you?'—'I am *somewhat* well.'

*Correct* : 'How are you?'—'I am *pretty* (or *fairly*) well.'

*Incorrect* : This is *somewhat* true.

*Correct* : { This is *partly* true.  
There is *some truth* in this.

*Incorrect* : He is *somewhat* tall for his age.

*Correct* : He is *rather* tall for his age.

### 732. '*Otherwise*' misused.

*Incorrect* : My success or *otherwise* depends upon your decision.

*Correct* : My success or *failure* depends upon your decision.

*Incorrect* : This is rather an advantage than *otherwise*.

*Correct* : This is rather an advantage than *not*.

**NOTE.**—*Otherwise* is an adverb, and should not be used to represent a noun. Observe that in (2) *not* = 'not an advantage' = 'a drawback.'

### 733. *Once* for *Just*, etc.

*Incorrect* : Will you lend me your knife *once* ?

*Correct* : Will you *just* lend me your knife ?

**NOTE.**—This mistake arises from using *once* to express the Bengali একবার in such a sentence as the above. The Bengali word is often used in making a request with a softening effect; it has no exact equivalent in English, but a request may be softened by the use of *just*, *please*, *kindly*, *would you mind*, etc. *Once* is the equivalent of একবার in 'I saw him only *once*,' 'Let me *once* begin, and I shall soon finish it.'

**734. At once for Once for all, Outright, Altogether.**

*Incorrect* : If you leave the class, you cannot return ; you must leave *at once*.

*Correct* : If you leave, etc. ; you must leave *once for all*.

NOTE.—In the above sentence, 'You must leave *at once*' can be used only in the sense of 'You must leave *without delay*.'

*Incorrect* : If not provided with food, they will *at once* starve.

*Correct* : If not provided with food, they will starve *outright* (*i.e.* will starve *altogether, without remedy*).

NOTE.—The Bengali একবারে, of which *at once* in the above incorrect sentences is a translation, is not the true equivalent of *at once*. *At once* has two general meanings :—

- (1) *Simultaneously* : 'Go one by one, not all of you *at once*.'
- (2) *Immediately* : 'Do not delay, but go *at once*.'

**735. By and by for One by one, Little by little, etc.**

*Incorrect* : The students left the class-room *by and by*.

*Correct* : The students left the class-room *one by one*.

*Incorrect* : If you cannot lift the whole, lift it *by and by*.

*Correct* : If you cannot lift the whole, lift it *little by little*.

NOTE.—The Bengali ক্রমেঃ must not be translated into English by the expression *by and by*, which means *shortly* or *after an interval*, not *gradually* or *after a series of intervals*, which is the force of ক্রমেঃ. Hence also 'He became a magistrate *by and by*' is wrong ; it should be 'He became a magistrate *in course of time*.'

**736. Thus for So.**

*Incorrect* : I cannot afford *thus* much.

*Correct* : I cannot afford *so* much.

NOTE.—We say '*thus far*' as well as '*so far*,' but '*thus much*' is antiquated.

**737. Of course for Certainly, Undoubtedly.**

*Incorrect* : 'Is he the best boy in his class ?'—'*Of course* he is.'

*Correct* : 'Is he the best boy in the class ?'—'*Certainly* he is.'

NOTE.—*Of course* should not be used except to denote a *natural* or *inevitable* consequence :—'Is the whole always greater than its part ?' '*Of course* it is.'

**738. Hardly, Freely, Directly, Nearly for Hard, Free, Direct, Near (148).**

*Incorrect* : He was *hardly* hit by his friend's bankruptcy.

*Correct* : He was *hard* hit by his friend's bankruptcy.

*Incorrect* : Tickets will be presented *freely*.

*Correct* : Tickets will be presented *free*.

*Incorrect* : I shall not make a round, but shall go home *directly*.

*Correct* : I shall not make a round, but shall go home *direct*.

*Incorrect* : I have never seen the sea *nearly*.

*Correct* : I have never seen the sea *near*.

NOTE.—‘*Hardly* hit’ means ‘*scarcely* hit’; ‘*hard* hit’ means ‘*severely* hit.’ ‘Presented *freely*’ means ‘presented *liberally*’; ‘presented *free*’ means ‘presented *gratuitously*.’ *Directly* means ‘*immediately*’ (এখনই); *direct* means ‘*straight*’ (বরাবর): ‘I shall go *straight* home.’ *Nearly* means ‘almost,’ not ‘close at hand.’ So with *high* and *highly*, *large* and *largely*, *late* and *lately*, *wide* and *widely*.

### 739. Firstly for First.

*Incorrect* : *Firstly*, I have been insulted : secondly, I have been wronged.

*Correct* : *First*, I have been insulted ; secondly, I have been wronged.

NOTE.—This error is very common, arising from a desire for symmetry of expression. One might as well say *nextly*. Cf. ‘*First* (for I detest your ridiculous and most pedantic neologism of *firstly*)—first, the shilling for which I have given a receipt ; secondly, two skeins of suitable thread’ (*De Quincey*).

### 740. Shortly for In Short.

*Incorrect* : *Shortly*, I was the hero of the occasion.

*Correct* : *In short*, I was the hero of the occasion.

NOTE.—*Shortly* means ‘presently, soon’ ; it is never placed at the head of a sentence :—

*Incorrect* : *Shortly*, we reached the site of the camp.

*Correct* : *Soon after*, we reached the site of the camp.

### 741. Perhaps for Probably, etc.

*Incorrect* : ‘Has the clock struck three ?’—‘*Perhaps* not.’

*Correct* : ‘Has the clock struck three ?’—‘*Probably* not’ (or ‘*I think* not’).

### 742. Likely for Probably.

*Incorrect* : I shall *likely* leave Calcutta to-morrow.

*Correct* : I shall *probably* leave Calcutta to-morrow.

NOTE.—‘I shall *very likely* leave Calcutta’ would be correct.

## 743. After all for Finally, In conclusion.

*Incorrect* : He served Government faithfully for many years, and *after all* retired with a large pension.

*Correct* : He served Government, etc., and *finally* retired with a large pension.

NOTE.—*After all*, used by itself, denotes *in spite of all that has gone before*, and should never be used of a *natural* consequence [425, (4)].

## 744. At all for Altogether.

*Incorrect* : You are *at all* wrong.

*Correct* : You are *altogether* wrong.

NOTE.—*At all* means *in any way, to any extent*, and is used only in negative or interrogative sentences. *Altogether* means *quite, completely*.

## 745. Indeed, In fact for Undoubtedly, Certainly.

*Incorrect* : *Indeed* Wellington was a most skilful leader.

*Correct* : Wellington was *undoubtedly* a most skilful leader.

NOTE.—*Indeed* is seldom placed at the beginning of a sentence, merely to add force to an assertion.<sup>1</sup> It is used—(a) *concessively* :—‘Wellington was *indeed* <sup>2</sup> (i.e. admittedly) a most skilful leader, but his troops were raw recruits’; (b) *emphatically* :—‘That was *indeed* a hard question’; (c) as an *interjection* expressing surprise :—‘*Indeed!* You don’t say so?’

## 746. Back for Behind.

*Incorrect* : Sir, you are leaving *back* your pen.

*Correct* : Sir, you are leaving your pen *behind*.

## 747. ‘Not’ inserted before ‘Only.’

*Incorrect* : I did *not* take *only* three.

*Correct* : I took *only* three.

NOTE.—*Only* implies *not more than*; the *not* before the verb is, therefore, superfluous. *Not only* is used correctly in sentences like—‘He *not only* promised me the post, but appointed me to it.’

## 748. As well for As soon.

*Incorrect* : I would *as well* go as stay.

*Correct* : I would *as soon* go as stay.

<sup>1</sup> *Indeed* is, however, used at the beginning of a sentence to give emphasis to the answer to a question :—‘Are you thirsty?’ ‘*Indeed* I am.’ It also commences a sentence to add to a previous statement :—‘For more than half a century the Tlascalans had no salt. *Indeed*, from long abstinence their taste had been so far affected, that it was long before they could be reconciled to its use’ (*Prescott*).

<sup>2</sup> Sometimes *surely* is inelegantly substituted for this *indeed*.

749. 'As' inserted.

*Incorrect* : Attila was named *as* the Scourge of God.

*Correct* : Attila was named the Scourge of God.

NOTE.—*As* is not inserted after verbs of 'naming'—*call, term, dub, style, entitle, denominate*. But *as* is used after verbs of 'describing'—*represent, portray, depict, mention, define, specify, characterise*. We also say 'to act *as*,' 'to pass *as*':—'He acted *as* Principal of the College'; 'Banknotes pass *as* money.'

750. 'Rather' inserted.

*Incorrect* : It is better to speak distinctly *rather* than to speak loudly.

*Correct* : It is better to speak distinctly than to speak loudly.

751. Practically for Almost, Virtually.

*Incorrect* : The building was *practically* destroyed by artillery fire.

*Correct* : { The building was *almost* destroyed by artillery fire.  
The building was *virtually* destroyed by artillery fire.

NOTE.—A much overworked word for 'nearly,' 'not quite,' etc.

752. Equally for As much.

*Incorrect* : Thanks are due *equally* to my colleague *as* to myself.

*Correct* : Thanks are due *as much* to my colleague *as* to myself.

NOTE.—'Thanks are due to my colleague *equally with* myself' would be correct. Similarly—

*Incorrect* : The innocent were treated with *equal* harshness *as* the guilty.

*Correct* : { The innocent were treated with *the same* harshness *as* the guilty.  
The innocent were treated *equally harshly with* the guilty.

753. Just as well for All the same.

*Incorrect* : He made her presents, but she hated him *just as well*.

*Correct* : He made her presents, but she hated him *all the same*.

754. Also for As well as.

*Incorrect* : His speech was too long, *also* difficult to hear.

*Correct* : His speech was too long *as well as* difficult to hear.

NOTE.—*Also* is an adverb, not a conjunction. We can say 'His book shows bad taste, *as also* many defects in style.'

755. Mostly for Most.

*Incorrect* : We all feel his losses, but you are *mostly* concerned.

*Correct* : We all feel his losses, but you are *most* concerned.

NOTE.—*Mostly* means 'for the most part,' as in 'I *mostly* pay for goods in cash.'



756. *Veritably for Really, Positively.*

*Incorrect* : He is so ill that there is *veritably* no hope of his recovery.

*Correct* : He is so ill that there is *really* no hope, etc.

757. *Literally for Actually.*

*Incorrect* : When he saw me, he *literally* took to his heels.

*Correct* : When he saw me, he *actually* took to his heels.

NOTE.—*Literally* means *to the letter, exactly*, as in '*literally* true.' We can say that passengers in a burning train '*were literally* roasted,' i.e. were roasted in the full sense of that term, without exaggeration ; but it is absurd to say of an unruly schoolboy that he '*literally* laughed aloud,' since there is no exaggeration in the statement ; or to use *literally* of a figurative expression, as in 'His clever acting *literally* brought down the house.'

758. *Agreeable for Agreeably.*

*Incorrect* : *Agreeable* to the order of the day, the house adjourned.

*Correct* : *Agreeably* to the order of the day, the house adjourned.

759. *So long for So far.*

*Incorrect* : We have *so long* treated of England ; we now turn to Ireland.

*Correct* : We have *so far* treated of England ; we now turn to Ireland.

760. *Up for Down.*

*Incorrect* : Poets from Pope and Byron *up* to the time of Swinburne.

*Correct* : Poets from Pope and Byron *down* to the time of Swinburne.

NOTE.—*Up* is used in reckoning *backwards* : 'Prime Ministers from Asquith *up* to Walpole.'

761. *Worse for More.*

*Incorrect* : I dislike deception *worse* than open opposition.

*Correct* : I dislike deception *more* than open opposition.

NOTE.—On the other hand, we do not like one thing *more*, but *better*, than another.

762. *Never for Not.*

*Incorrect* : I *never* took his knife ; he must have lost it.

*Correct* : I *did not* take his knife ; he must have lost it.

NOTE.—This use of *never* as an emphatic *not* is colloquial, not literary. 'I never remember to have seen him' is wrong for 'I do not remember *ever*

to have seen him,' because the *not* (never=not ever) belongs to *remember* and the *ever* to *have seen*.

763. No for Not.

*Incorrect* : In face of the *no* unreasonable objections I decline.

*Correct* : In face of the *not* unreasonable objections I decline.

764. 'Not' misplaced.

*Incorrect* : Everbody does *not* like dancing.

*Correct* : *Not* everybody likes dancing.

NOTE.—'Not always in time'='Sometimes late'; 'Always not in time'='Always late.'

765. All not for Not all.

*Incorrect* : *All* who support him are *not* seeking their own ends.

*Correct* : *Not all* who support him are seeking their own ends.

766. Not for Unless.

*Incorrect* : Children, *not* requested to attend, are not admitted.

*Correct* : Children, *unless* requested to attend, are not admitted.

767. Double Negative.

*Incorrect* : I cannot find my pen *nowhere*.

*Correct* : { I cannot find my pen *anywhere*.  
Nowhere can I find my pen.

*Incorrect* : The weather is so bad, that I shall *not* be surprised if it does *not* rain presently.

*Correct* : The weather is so bad, that I shall *not* be surprised if it rains presently.

*Incorrect* : I do *not* deny that a reason may *not* be found for this.

*Correct* : I do *not* deny that a reason may be found for this.

*Incorrect* : No one expects that the Premier will *not* decline to receive the deputation.

*Correct* : No one expects that the Premier will decline to receive the deputation.

NOTE.—Similarly, 'No one scarcely understands this' should be 'Scarcely anyone,' etc. Sometimes a necessary *not* is omitted, as in 'I gladly accept the appointment, and have no fear of satisfying your requirements'; where *not* should be inserted before 'satisfying.' A negation may be rightly used to express a modified affirmative, as in 'I am *not* sorry (=rather glad) he lost, as it will be a lesson to him'; 'It is *not* impossible that you may recover the money,' which implies that the event is highly improbable.

## PREPOSITIONS.

## 768. Prepositions inserted (414).

*Incorrect* : This much *resembles to* that.

*Correct* : This much *resembles* that.

*Incorrect* : The magistrate *directed for* his dismissal.

*Correct* : The magistrate *directed* his dismissal.

*Incorrect* : Please *recommend for* me to the judge.

*Correct* : Please *recommend* me to the judge.

*Incorrect* : He has *resigned from* the office of commander-in-chief.

*Correct* : He has *resigned* the office of commander in-chief.

NOTE.—A common error. It often appears under the form 'He has *resigned from* the Society, Association, Club, etc., for 'He has *resigned his* membership of the Society,' etc.

*Incorrect* : My attempt to see him *was in* vain.

*Correct* : My attempt to see him *was* vain.

*Incorrect* : Where have you been *to* ?

*Correct* : Where have you been ?

*Incorrect* : I am anxious to meet *with* your requirements.

*Correct* : I am anxious to meet your requirements.

## 769. Prepositions omitted (414).

*Incorrect* : Have you *applied* the inspector for the post ?

*Correct* : Have you *applied to* the inspector for the post ?

*Incorrect* : The master did not *listen* his complaint.

*Correct* : The master did not *listen to* his complaint.

*Incorrect* : The judge *disposed* the case summarily.

*Correct* : The judge *disposed of* the case summarily.

*Incorrect* : One cannot *depend* his promise.

*Correct* : One cannot *depend on* his promise.

*Incorrect* : In the end the invaders *were driven*.

*Correct* : In the end the invaders *were driven out* (adv.).

*Incorrect* : The historian next *goes* to describe Waterloo.

*Correct* : The historian next *goes on* (adv.) to describe Waterloo.

*Incorrect* : The prize is *competed* by all graduates.

*Correct* : The prize is *competed for* (adv.) by all graduates.

*Incorrect* : Open the fifth page.

*Correct* : Open *at* the fifth page.

**Incorrect :** He excelled in any occupation he chose to exert his abilities.

**Correct :** He excelled in any occupation he chose to exert his abilities *in*.

NOTE.—Better, ‘*in which* he chose to exert his abilities.’

**Incorrect :** He writes with vigour *that* no one else has written before him.

**Correct :** He writes with a vigour *with which* no one else has written before him.

**Incorrect :** I aspire to what most people are averse.

**Correct :** I aspire to what most people are averse *to*.

**Incorrect :** { It is incumbent to decide at once.  
It is incumbent *that* you should decide at once.

**Correct :** It is incumbent *upon* you to decide at once.

**Incorrect :** He was accused of taking money from the till and other tricks.

**Correct :** He was accused of taking money from the till and *of* other tricks.

**Incorrect :** He has been operated for appendicitis.

**Correct :** He has been operated *upon* for appendicitis.

#### 770. Preposition followed by Nominative.

**Incorrect :** He gave the money away *to* nobody knows *who*.

**Correct :** He gave the money away *to* nobody knows *whom*.

NOTE.—Similarly, *he* should be *him* in ‘There is a great difference *between* the writer of a book and *he* who criticises it’; ‘She pictured the ruin of her son, and *he* the pride of her heart.’

#### 771. Preposition repeated.

**Incorrect :** This is the book *with which*, when I saw it yesterday, I was much pleased *with*.

**Correct :** This is the book *with which*, when I saw it yesterday, I was much pleased.

NOTE.—Or, *which* or *that* can be substituted for *with which* in the first sentence.

#### 772. Infinitive for ‘From,’ ‘In,’ etc., with Verbal Noun (412).

**Incorrect :** He was prevented *to do* his work.

**Correct :** He was prevented *from doing* his work.

**Incorrect :** I prohibit you *to go* with him.

**Correct :** I prohibit you *from going* with him.

NOTE.—‘I prohibit *your going* with him’ is also correct. Most verbs denoting *prevention* or *hindrance* (*hinder, debar, preclude, discourage, etc.*) take *from* after them. But ‘I *forbid* you to go’ is correct, as well as ‘I *forbid* your *going*.’

*Incorrect* : They persisted to go in spite of the rain.

*Correct* : They persisted *in going* in spite of the rain.

**773. ‘For’ with Verbal Noun to express a purpose.**

*Incorrect* ; He went to Bombay *for doing* some business.

*Correct* : He went to Bombay *to do* some business.

*Incorrect* : The temptation was great *for taking* the money.

*Correct* : The temptation was great *to take* the money.

NOTE.—*For* with the verbal noun is correctly used to express a *cause* :—‘He was punished *for doing* wrong.’ The *purpose* may be more emphatically expressed by ‘in order to do,’ ‘for the purpose of doing,’ ‘with the object of doing.’

**774. At for In.**

*Incorrect* : He lives *at* Calcutta.

*Correct* : He lives *in* Calcutta.

NOTE.—For the correct use of *at* and *in* before names of towns, see 431, (1), note.

**775. Of for About (or After).**

*Incorrect* : Knowing he had been ill, I enquired *of* him.

*Correct* : Knowing he had been ill, I enquired *about* (or *after*) him.

**776. Near for With, In the care of.**

*Incorrect* : I shall leave my horses *near* him during my absence.

*Correct* : I shall leave my horses *with* him during my absence.

NOTE.—*Near* denotes *not far from*, and must not be used to translate the Bengali *নিরূপে* when it has the sense of *in the care of, in the hands of*.

**777. In for Into [413, (1)].**

*Incorrect* : He entered *in* an agreement with them.

*Correct* : He entered *into* an agreement with them.

*Incorrect* : Come *in* my house with me.

*Correct* : Come *into* my house with me.

**778. Upon for For, At.**

*Incorrect* : I am angry with you *upon* going without leave.

*Correct* : I am angry with you *for* going without leave.

*Incorrect* : I am angry *upon* your going without leave.

*Correct* : I am angry *at* your going without leave.

779. *To, Than for From, after Different.*

*Incorrect* : This is *different to* (or *than*) that.

*Correct* : This is *different from* that.

780. *Than for To, after Prefer.*

*Incorrect* : I *prefer* to read *than* to write.

*Correct* : I *prefer* reading to writing.

781. 'With' treated as equivalent to 'And.'

*Incorrect* : The general, *with* all his soldiers, *were* killed.

*Correct* : The general, *with* all his soldiers, *was* killed.

NOTE.—Similarly with *as well as* :—'Ram as well as Sham *have* gone' should be '*has* gone.' In such sentences the word or words introduced by *with* and *as well as* are parenthetical. Hence also 'He as well as I *am* here' is incorrect for 'He as well as I *is* here.' (Better, 'He is here as well as I.') Note also : 'Town after town *was* (not *were*) captured'; 'Much powder and shot *was* (not *were*) wasted,' where *much* = *much of*. Cf. 136, (2).

782. 'To' inserted.

*Incorrect* : Where have you been *to* ?

*Correct* : Where have you been ?

783. *Excepting for Except.*

*Incorrect* : No outsiders *excepting* the delegates were present.

*Correct* : No outsiders *except* the delegates were present.

NOTE.—'No outsiders, *not excepting* (or *without excepting*) the delegates, were present' is correct.

784. *Between for Among.*

*Incorrect* : Divide these mangoes *between* you three.

*Correct* : Divide these mangoes *among* you three.

NOTE.—Conversely, when only two persons are mentioned, *among* is incorrect : 'Divide these mangoes *among* you two' should be '*between* you two.'

785. *In front of for In the presence of.*

*Incorrect* : He refused to repeat his confession *in front of* the judge.

*Correct* : He refused to repeat his confession *in the presence of* the judge.

NOTE.—*In front of* is ordinarily used of mere locality :—'He sat *in front of* me'; 'A tree stood *in front of* the house'

## 786. 'As to' inserted.

*Incorrect* : I doubt *as to* the need of an operation.

*Correct* : I doubt the need of an operation.

*Incorrect* : *As to* whether Chaucer wrote this poem is a matter of dispute.

*Correct* : Whether Chaucer wrote this poem is a matter of dispute.

## 787. Word by word for Word for word.

*Incorrect* : Copy this *word by word*.

*Correct* : Copy this *word for word*.

NOTE.—'Word for word' means 'each word (in the copy) representing each word (in the original)'; so, 'A word-for-word translation.' 'Word by word' means 'taking each word separately.' Compare—

(1) I interpreted his speech *word for word* = I gave an exact version of it.

(2) I interpreted his speech *word by word* = I gave the meaning of each word as he uttered it.

## CONJUNCTIONS.

## 788. 'That' inserted.

*Incorrect* : He said *that* I am coming.

*Correct* : He said, 'I am coming.'

*Incorrect* : He asked *that* how much it cost.

*Correct* : He asked how much it cost.

*Incorrect* : He enquired *that* who had done it.

*Correct* : He enquired who had done it.

NOTE.—In Bengali the word (যে) would generally be used even when the actual words of the speaker are given: as, তিনি বলিলেন যে আমি যাইতেছি. See 310-312.

## 789. 'That' repeated.

*Incorrect* : He said that, if the correspondence, which had already caused so much delay, should be further protracted, *that* he should resign.

*Correct* : Omit the italicised *that* above.

## 790. 'That' omitted.

*Incorrect* : It is only when he eats his swollen tongue troubles him.

*Correct* : It is only when he eats *that* his swollen tongue troubles him.

*Incorrect* : I assume these conditions, as stated, are satisfactory.

*Correct* : I assume *that* these conditions, as stated, are satisfactory.

NOTE.—Here the omission of *that* is wrong, because it is misleading. Otherwise its omission is common, but should be avoided when a long phrase or clause intervenes, as : ‘ I notice in a long article of yours on the prevention and the cure of drunkenness you do not mention my name.’ Insert *that* before ‘ you do not.’

791. ‘ That ’ omitted after ‘ Now.’

*Incorrect* : Now you are ill, I will act for you.

*Correct* : Now *that* you are ill, I will act for you.

792. Immediately for As soon as.

*Incorrect* : Immediately I saw him, I knew him.

*Correct* : As soon as I saw him, I knew him.

NOTE.—Cf. 805.

793. When for Since, As, Seeing that.

*Incorrect* : When I listen to one, I must listen to all.

*Correct* : Since I listen to one, I must listen to all. }

NOTE.—When is seldom used in English (as *যখন* is used in Bengali) to express *cause* or *reason*.

794. Than, But for When, Before, after Scarcely (or Hardly), Not.

*Incorrect* : He had scarcely gone *than* (or *but*) his friend arrived.

*Correct* : He had scarcely gone *when* his friend arrived.

*Incorrect* : He had *not* been on the ship five minutes *but* he jumped overboard.

*Correct* : He had *not* been on the ship five minutes *when* he jumped overboard.

795. But for Than after No sooner [200, (9)].

*Incorrect* : Ram *no sooner* saw the tiger *but* he climbed a tree.

*Correct* : Ram *no sooner* saw the tiger *than* he climbed a tree.

796. But, From for Than after Other, Another (636).

*Incorrect* : Art has no *other* aim *but* beauty.

*Correct* : Art has no *other* aim *than* beauty.

*Incorrect* : He took *another* path *from* the one we showed him.

*Correct* : He took *another* path *than* the one we showed him.

NOTE.—The origin of this error is explained in 844, (7).



797. *Than for But after a negative.*

*Incorrect* : He had no choice *than* to yield.

*Correct* : He had no choice *but* to yield.

NOTE.—A mixture of the two correct constructions : (1) He had no choice *but* to yield ; (2) He had no *other* choice *than* to yield.

798. *Than for To after Prefer.*

*Incorrect* : I *prefer* to be poor and honest *than* to be rich and base.

*Correct* : I *prefer* to be poor and honest *to being* rich and base.

799. *Than for From after Different (636).*

*Incorrect* : This is a *different* kind of apple *than* that.

*Correct* : This is a *different* kind of apple *from* that.

800. *From, Of for To after Opposite.*

*Incorrect* : He lives on the *opposite* side of the street *from* my house.

*Correct* : He lives on the *opposite* side of the street *to* my house.

*Incorrect* : My experience is the *opposite* of Mr. Jones's.

*Correct* : My experience is the *opposite to* Mr. Jones's.

801. *But for As after So much.*

*Incorrect* : It was not *so much* the accident, which happened very suddenly, *but* the shock that made him ill.

*Correct* : It was not *so much* the accident, which happened very suddenly, *as* the shock that made him ill.

802. *That for Whether after Doubt.*

*Incorrect* : Your rashness makes me *doubt that* you are right.

*Correct* : Your rashness makes me *doubt whether* you are right.

NOTE.—*Whether* implies an alternative ('right or not'); *that* does not. 'I do not *doubt that* you are right,' 'Who *doubts that* you are right?' are correct. We sometimes find '*I doubt that* you are right,' but here *doubt* = *suspect*.

## 803. 'As' inserted.

*Incorrect* : Few persons knew enough about him *as* to be aware that he would not do it intentionally.

*Correct* : Few persons knew enough about him to be aware etc.

## 804. 'As' omitted.

*Incorrect* : He regarded himself a lost man.

*Correct* : He regarded himself *as* a lost man.

*Incorrect* : So important is this decision regarded, that etc.

*Correct* : { This decision is regarded *as* so important, that etc.  
 { So important is this decision *considered*, that etc.

*Incorrect* : This must not be assumed true.

*Correct* : This must not be assumed *as* true.

*Incorrect* : She is described by some a ministering angel.

*Correct* : She is described by some *as* a ministering angel.

NOTE.—Verbs of ‘describing’—*represent, portray, depict, mention, define, specify, characterise*—take *as*; but not verbs of ‘naming’—*call, term, dub, style, entitle, denominate*, also *think, consider, esteem, count*. ‘He passed as a rich man’ is wrong for ‘He passed *for*.’

#### 805. Directly for As soon as.

*Incorrect* : *Directly* he comes, you may go.

*Correct* : *As soon as* he comes, you may go.

NOTE.—This use (with that in 791) is colloquial, not literary. *Directly, like now*, is an adverb, not a conjunction. Cf. 792.

#### 806. Until for So long as, While.

*Incorrect* : *Until* you remain idle, you will make no progress.

*Correct* : *So long as* you remain idle, you will etc.

NOTE.—Observe that—

*Until you go* = *as long as you stay*.

*Until you amend* = *as long as you do not amend*.

#### 807. Without for Unless.

*Incorrect* : I cannot go *without* I get my lessons done.

*Correct* : { I cannot go *unless* I get my lessons done.  
I cannot go *without getting* my lessons done.

NOTE.—Similarly, *except* and *against* are not now used as conjunctions; ‘You will perish *except* you repent’ should be ‘*unless* you repent,’ and ‘Be ready *against* I arrive’ should be ‘*against my arrival*.’ On the other hand, *unless* should be *except* in ‘No payment will be allowed *unless* with the consent of the Committee.’

#### 808. As if for As it were.

*Incorrect* : A good king is *as if* the father of his people.

*Correct* : A good king is, *as it were*, the father of his people.

NOTE.—‘As it were’ means ‘if I may use the expression,’ ‘so to speak.’ ‘He acts *as if* he were the father of his people’ is correct, but has a different meaning.

#### 809. Like for As.

*Incorrect* : Nobody will miss him *like* I shall.

*Correct* : Nobody will miss him *as* I shall.

*Incorrect* : This year, *like* last year, I went to the seaside.

*Correct* : This year, *as* last year, I went to the seaside.

NOTE.—Similarly, ‘*Like* other people, a sudden noise affected his nerves’ should be ‘*As in the case of* other people,’ etc.

## 810. While for Though.

*Incorrect* : He expects me to win, *while* I have no chance of success.

*Correct* : He expects me to win, *though* I have no chance of success.

## 811. In case for Lest.

*Incorrect* : Do not throw pearls before swine, *in case* they trample them underfoot (*Bible, new version*).

*Correct* : Do not throw pearls before swine, *lest* (or *for fear*) they trample them underfoot.

NOTE.—*Case* is a word that is much overworked and often superfluous : for 'In the case of religious writers they are often prejudiced' write 'Religious writers are often prejudiced'; for 'In many cases the questions were difficult' write 'Many of the questions were too difficult.'

## 812. Because for That.

*Incorrect* : One thing that makes him ill is *because* he eats too much.

*Correct* : One thing that makes him ill is *that* he eats too much.

*Incorrect* : My reason for taking his part is *because* he has no friends.

*Correct* : My reason for taking his part is *that* he has no friends.

## 813. Till for Before or When.

*Incorrect* : It will not be long *till* the species becomes extinct.

*Correct* : It will not be long *before* the species becomes extinct.

*Incorrect* : I had not been there long *till* a little boy ran up to me.

*Correct* : I had not been there long *when* a little boy ran up to me.

814. And for To (*infinitive*).

*Incorrect* : Be sure *and* ask him for his vote.

*Correct* : Be sure *to* ask him for his vote.

NOTE.—This is a common colloquialism, to be avoided in written composition : as, 'Mr. Borden . . . for that reason will try *and* avoid dissolution' (*The Nation*). So 'Try *and* help me' should be 'Try to help'; 'Take care and bring it' should be 'Take care to bring'; but we say 'Mind *and* (not *to*) be in time' (better, 'Mind *you are* in time'). A similar colloquialism is 'Nice *and* warm,' 'Nice *and* dry' for 'Nicely warm,' 'Nicely dry.' Prof. Sweet calls this *nice and* a vague 'very.'

815. *As well as for Beside(s).*

*Incorrect* : He gives all his time to the work *as well as* giving his money.

*Correct* : He gives all his time to the work *beside(s)* giving his money.

NOTE.—*As well as* is a conjunction, not a preposition. ‘*As well as gives*’ would be grammatically correct.

816. ‘*Not*’ inserted after ‘*Unless*.’

*Incorrect* : *Unless you do not try*, you will never succeed.

*Correct* : *Unless you try* (or *If you do not try*), you will never succeed.

NOTE.—*Unless* is equivalent of *if not*; the *not* after it is therefore superfluous.

817. *All not for Not all.*

*Incorrect* : *All is not* right that is expedient.

*Correct* : { *Not all* that is expedient is right.  
              { *Not all* is right that is expedient.

NOTE.—Similarly, ‘*Every man is not born to greatness*’ should be ‘*Not every man is born to greatness.*’

818. *Because for In order that.*

*Incorrect* : I am going to Calcutta, *because* I may consult a physician.

*Correct* : I am going to Calcutta, *in order that* I may consult a physician.

NOTE.—*Because* denotes *cause* or *reason*, and must not be used to express *end* or *purpose*.

819. ‘*So*’ inserted after ‘*As*.’

*Incorrect* : *As* I am ill, *so* I hope you will grant me leave.

*Correct* : *As* I am ill, I hope you will grant me leave.

NOTE.—*As* (=since) does not take *so* after it; see 376, (a). In ‘*Are you ready? if so, let us then begin,*’ *then* is superfluous.

820. ‘*And*’ omitted.

*Incorrect* : The regiment contains *six hundred fifty* men.

*Correct* : The regiment contains *six hundred and fifty* men.

NOTE.—Similarly, a date, as 1889, should be read *eighteen, eighty-nine* or *eighteen hundred and eighty-nine*, not *eighteen hundred, eighty-nine*.

821. ‘*And*’ omitted in enumeration.

*Incorrect* : He likes chess, plays golf *and* cricket.

*Correct* : He likes chess, *and* plays golf and cricket.

## 822. 'Or,' 'Nor' misused in negative sentences.

*Incorrect* : { You are *not* right or wrong.  
                   { You are *not* right *nor* wrong.

*Correct* : { You are *neither* right *nor* wrong.  
               { You are *not* right *nor* are you wrong.

## 823. Preposition omitted after 'Nor,' 'Or,' when strongly alternative.

*Incorrect* : I could not move him by kindness *nor* severity.

*Correct* : I could not move him by kindness *nor by* severity.

NOTE.—On the other hand, when *nor*, *or* are not alternative, the preposition should not be inserted :—'He is the chief *or* (=in other words) captain of the band'; 'He was not wanting in strength *or* (=and) courage.' Similarly, 'Brown's two books *on roses and tulips*' means that each book treats of both roses and tulips; whereas '*on roses and on tulips*' means that one book treats of roses and the other of tulips. Cf. 292.

## ERRORS IN EXPRESSIONS OF TIME.

## 824. To-morrow for Yesterday.

*Incorrect* : I was ill *to-morrow*, but am better to-day.

*Correct* : I was ill *yesterday*, but am better to-day.

Conversely *yesterday* is wrongly used for *to-morrow*.

## 825. Long before for Long ago.

*Incorrect* : I knew him *long before*.

*Correct* : I knew him *long ago*.

NOTE.—I knew him *long before this* is correct. *Before*, as an adverb of time, is used only when priority to some fixed point of time already mentioned is to be expressed :—'You learnt this *yesterday*; I knew it *long before*' (i.e. before yesterday).

## 826. From for Since.

*Incorrect* : I have been ill *from* yesterday morning.

*Correct* : I have been ill *since* yesterday morning.

NOTE.—*From* is prefixed to the point of time at which an action begins, when the time at which the action ends is also specified :—'I have been ill *from yesterday morning till this evening*.' *From* may also be used when the action is continuous or is constantly repeated :—'I draw full pay *from the date of arrival*'; 'He has been lame *from childhood*.'

827. *Since for For.*

(1) *Incorrect* : I have been ill *since* two months.

*Correct* : I have been ill *for* two months.

NOTE.—*Since* refers not to *space* but to *point of time* :—‘I have been ill *since* last year.’ In ‘I saw (not ‘have seen’) him two months *since*,’ *since* = *ago*.

(2) *Incorrect* : I have not seen you *long since*.

*Correct* : { I have not seen you *for* a long time.  
It is *long since* I saw you.

NOTE.—This error seems to arise from a confusion of the two equivalent expressions, *not . . . for a long time* and *long since*. The sense of the above sentence is often expressed by the unidiomatic ‘*After a long time* I am seeing you,’ a word-for-word translation of the Bengali অনেক কাল পরে তোমাকে দেখিতেছি।

Similarly :—

*Incorrect* : It is more than two years that I am doing this.

*Correct* : I have been doing this *for* more than two years.

828. *Within for Before, By.*

*Incorrect* : You must finish this *within* 12 o'clock.

*Correct* : You must finish this *before* (or *by*) 12 o'clock.

NOTE.—*Within* is used of *space* not *point of time* :—‘You must finish *within* two hours.’ The Bengali মধ্যে may be used of either.

829. *After for In.*

*Incorrect* : I shall be able to go *after* a week.

*Correct* : I shall be able to go *in* a week (or *in* a week's time).

NOTE.—We say ‘I will come *in* two or three days,’ not ‘two three days,’ as in Bengali. And we do not say, as in Bengali, ‘two (or) one days,’ ‘two (or) four days,’ ‘five (or) seven days’; but ‘a day or two,’ ‘three or four days,’ ‘six or seven days.’

830. *Not . . . before for Not . . . for.*

*Incorrect* : I shall *not* be able to go *before* a week.

*Correct* : I shall *not* be able to go *for* a week.

NOTE.—Similarly, ‘I shall not be able to go *till* a week’ is wrong; but ‘till a week hence’ is correct.

831. *Just now for Presently.*

*Incorrect* : I will come *just now*.

*Correct* : I will come *presently*.

NOTE.—*Just now* indicates present time or time just past, and should not be used of future time.

## 832. No sooner for As soon as.

*Incorrect* : No sooner he died, the heir took possession.

*Correct* : As soon as he died, the heir took possession.

NOTE.—No sooner than means much the same as as soon as, and the sentence might be expressed—'No sooner did he die than the heir took possession' [135, (6)].

## ERRORS IN ORDER OF WORDS.

## 833. Interrogative sentences.

(1) *Incorrect* : When you are going to leave school ?

*Correct* : When are you going to leave school ?

*Incorrect* : What country he belongs to ?

*Correct* : What country does he belong to ?

*Incorrect* : Between whom the battle was fought ?

*Correct* : Between whom was the battle fought ?

NOTE.—The simple rule in asking direct questions in English is, that the nominative must come after the verb, or, more commonly, after the auxiliary [129, (1)].

(2) *Incorrect* : Tell me when are you going ?

*Correct* : Tell me when you are going.

*Incorrect* : He asked me did I know him ?

*Correct* : He asked me whether (or if) I knew him.

NOTE.—When the question is asked indirectly (311), and the interrogative sentence is dependent on some verb denoting request, the natural order, nominative before verb, is kept.

## 834. He ran for Did he run, etc. [135, (6)].

*Incorrect* : So quickly he ran that he came in first.

*Correct* : So quickly did he run that he came in first.

*Incorrect* : No sooner I had fallen than they ran away.

*Correct* : No sooner had I fallen than they ran away.

## 835. What for for What . . . for, Why, For what.

*Incorrect* : What for did you leave the school ?

*Correct* : { What did you leave the school for ?  
                   { Why did you leave the school ?

*Incorrect* : What for are these towns noted ?

*Correct* : { What are these towns noted for ?  
                   { For what are these towns noted ?

NOTE.—When what . . . for is used in a sentence in the sense of why, what should come at the beginning of the sentence and for at the end. What for may come together when the rest of the sentence is understood :—'I left the school'—'What for ?' (i.e. 'What did you leave for ?')

**836. A so (good) for So (good) a, Such a (good).**

*Incorrect* : It is not *a so good* book as I expected.

*Correct* : { It is not *so good a* book as I expected.  
It is not *such a good* book as I expected.

NOTE.—Similar forms to *such a* are : *many a* man, *what a* pity, *half a* pound, *all the* time.

**837. So much a (better) for A so much (better),  
So much (better) a.**

*Incorrect* : This is *so much a better* plan.

*Correct* : { This is *a so much better* plan.  
This is *so much better a* plan.

**838. Enough (good) for (Good) enough.**

*Incorrect* : He was *enough good* to ask me to dinner.

*Correct* : He was *good enough* to ask me to dinner.

NOTE.—Similarly, ' *this meat is not enough cooked* ' is unidiomatic for ' *is not cooked enough.* ' With nouns, *enough* may come before or after them :— ' *I have enough bread,* ' or ' *I have bread enough.* ' Cf. 362.

**839. The last but one (day) for The last (day) but one.**

*Incorrect* : He went on *the last but one day* of the month.

*Correct* : He went on *the last day but one* of the month.

NOTE.—*The second last* is sometimes wrongly used instead of *the last but one*. Some English writers inelegantly use *the second largest* (as, ' *Glasgow is the second largest city in the British Isles* ') for ' *the largest city but one.* ' But ' *the next largest navy to that of England* ' is correct. We also say *second best* : as, ' *This coat is my second best.* '

**840. Care it for Not care for it.**

*Incorrect* : I *care it* a straw.

*Correct* : I *do not care a straw for it.*

**841. Your favour of granting for The favour of your granting.**

*Incorrect* : I request *your favour of granting* me three days' leave.

*Correct* : I request *the favour of your granting* me three days' leave.

NOTE.—Similarly, ' *its height of power* ' is wrong for ' *the height of its power* ' ; ' *his immortal creations of fancy* ' for ' *the immortal creations of his fancy* ' ; ' *his English knowledge* ' for ' *his knowledge of English.* ' There are some few expressions in English like the above, which are considered as forming only one idea and treated as a single noun : as, ' *He enquired about your state of health,* ' instead of the more correct ' *the state of your health* ' ; but such phrases are rare and should not be imitated. Cf. 603.



## 842. Illogical order.

Errors often arise from not placing words in their *logical position* in a sentence. Thus, 'He *not only* fired at a crow but also at a kite' should be 'He *fired not only* at a crow but also at a kite'; whereas 'He *not only* fired at a crow but also killed it' is correct.

- (1) *Incorrect* : He *neither* offended him nor his brother.  
*Correct* : He *offended neither* him nor his brother.
- (2) *Incorrect* : He *both* offended him and his brother.  
*Correct* : He *offended both* him and his brother.
- (3) *Incorrect* : Exercise is good *both* for body and mind.  
*Correct* : { Exercise is good *for both* body and mind.  
Exercise is good *both* for body and for mind.
- (4) *Incorrect* : This house is *not* advertised for sale but for hire.  
*Correct* : This house is *advertised not* for sale but for hire.
- (5) *Incorrect* : I *only* received this yesterday.  
*Correct* : I received this *only* yesterday.

NOTE.—The rule is that *only* immediately precedes the word or the group of words that it modifies :—'I *only* take a walk when it is fine' should be 'I take a walk *only when it is fine*.' *Only* may come after its noun at the end of a sentence :—'I give you leave for this *occasion only*' (more emphatic than 'only for this occasion').

- (6) *Incorrect* : You can *almost* get any book at that shop.  
*Correct* : You can get *almost any* book at that shop.
- (7) *Incorrect* : He is *as much* noted for his firmness as for his gentleness.  
*Correct* : He is *noted as much* for his firmness as for his gentleness.
- (8) *Incorrect* : I was *rather* impressed by his manner than by his matter.  
*Correct* : I was *impressed rather* by his manner than by his matter.
- (9) *Incorrect* : He *quickly* runs *always* to school.  
*Correct* : He *always* runs *quickly* to school.

NOTE.—The adverb, unless it is one of time, comes immediately after an Intransitive verb :—'Peter went out and *wept bitterly*,' not *bitterly wept*; 'He *seldom answers correctly*,' not 'He *seldom correctly* answers.'

- (10) *Incorrect* : He *suddenly* was taken ill.  
*Correct* : { He was *suddenly* taken ill.  
He was taken ill *suddenly*.

**NOTE.**—The adverb should not be placed *before* a verb with an Auxiliary <sup>2</sup>; but it may come between the Auxiliary and the Participle :—‘ I have *quite* finished my work.’

(11) *Incorrect* : When I met *them*, I told *the boys* to go home.

*Correct* : When I met *the boys*, I told *them* to go home.

(12) *Incorrect* : He is an *undoubted man of* genius.

*Correct* : He is a *man of undoubted* genius.

**NOTE.**—*Man of genius* (with similar expressions) should not be treated as a compound and qualified by an epithet that belongs to *genius*.

(13) *Incorrect* : He found his headache *at all events* no worse for the journey.

*Correct* : { He found his headache no worse for the journey  
                  *at all events.*  
                  He found *at all events* his headache no worse for the journey.

**NOTE.**—The position of *at all events* in the first sentence makes it capable of the two interpretations correctly worded below. Avoid placing adverbs or adverbial phrases between two expressions either of which they may modify.

## ERRORS IN CONSTRUCTION.

### 843. Incongruous Constructions.

Errors often arise from the attempt to make one word do the work of two.

(1) *Incorrect* : This watch is *superior* and more expensive *than* that.

*Correct* : { This watch is *superior to* and more expensive *than* that.  
                  This watch is *superior to* that and more expensive.

(2) *Incorrect* : In one day he was *appointed* and dismissed *from* the post.

*Correct* : { In one day he was *appointed to* and dismissed *from* the post.  
                  In one day he was *appointed to* the post and dismissed *from* it.

(3) *Incorrect* : This pen is no *better*, and not even as good *as* yours.

*Correct* : { This pen is no *better than*, and not even as good *as* yours.  
                  This pen is no *better than* yours, and not even *as* good.

---

.. except for emphasis :—‘ *Bitterly* have I repented my choice.’

- (4) *Incorrect* : I *accepted* his excuse and his request.  
*Correct* : I *accepted* his excuse and *granted* his request.
- (5) *Incorrect* : I have not *seen* him act or sing.  
*Correct* : I have not *seen* him act or *heard* him sing.
- (6) *Incorrect* : I *always have*, and *always shall be* your friend.  
*Correct* : I *always have been*, and *always shall be* your friend.
- (7) *Incorrect* : Many *were* delighted and every one contented.  
*Correct* : Many *were* delighted and every one *was* contented.
- (8) *Incorrect* : All the patients *have been* admitted and received attention.  
*Correct* : All the patients *have been* admitted and *have* received attention.

#### 844. Confusion of Construction.

Errors often arise from the incorrect mixture of two correct phrases or constructions ; see 493, (1), *note*. We can say that a duty was *assigned* to a person, or that a person was *assigned* a duty, but not that a person was *assigned* to a duty. A good instance of this confusion is the modern expression ' *To do away with* a thing,' which is a mixture of the old ' *To do away* a thing,' and ' *Away with* it ! ' Such errors often arise from mere confused thinking, as in ' You should not fail to miss this wonderful Exhibition,' an amalgam of ' You should not fail to visit ' and ' You should not miss.' In the following examples (a) and (b) are the correct phrases or constructions, and (c) is the incorrect mixture.

- (1) (a) I hoped *to get on* and *to have* a good chance of success.  
 (b) I hoped *that I should get on* and *that I should have* etc.  
 (c) { I hoped *to get on* and *that I should have* etc.  
 { I hoped *that I should get on* and *to have* etc.
- (2) (a) The child died when he was *three years old*.  
 (b) The child died *at three years of age*.  
 (c) The child died *at three years old*.
- (3) (a) A child *of three years of age*.  
 (b) A child *three years old*.  
 (c) A child *of three years old*.
- (4) (a) I live *a mile distant* from the town.  
 (b) I live *at a mile's distance* from the town.  
 (c) I live *at a mile distant* from the town.
- (5) (a) Nothing prevents *us* from going.  
 (b) Nothing prevents *our* going.  
 (c) Nothing prevents *us* going.

- (6) (a) It was *not* the failure of the plan *but* the plan itself that vexed him.  
 (b) It was *not so much* the failure of the plan *as* the plan itself etc.  
 (c) It was *not so much* the failure of the plan *but* the plan itself etc.
- (7) (a) He had *no* desire *but* to make a fortune.  
 (b) He had *n* ther desire *than* to make a fortune.  
 (c) He had *no other* desire *but* to make a fortune.
- (8) (a) I like *these* pens.  
 (b) I like pens *of this* sort.  
 (c) I like *these sort* of pens.<sup>1</sup>
- (9) (a) The doctor told her when she was ill *to send* for him.  
 (b) The doctor told her *that* when she was ill *she should send* for him.  
 (c) The doctor told her *that* when she was ill *to send* for him.
- (10) (a) He could not *suffer* his dog *to be* illtreated.  
 (b) He could not *bear* *to see* his dog illtreated.  
 (c) He could not *suffer* *to see* his dog illtreated.
- (11) (a) It *did not take long* for new troubles *to arise*.  
 (b) It *was not long before* new troubles *arose*.  
 (c) It *did not take long before* new troubles *arose*.
- (12) (a) He is a tall man, *as I am*.  
 (b) He is a tall man, *like me*.  
 (c) He is a tall man, *like I am*.
- (13) (a) Ram is a delicate child, *as* my son used to be.  
 (b) Ram is a delicate child, *like what* my son used to be.  
 (c) Ram is a delicate child, *like my son* used to be.
- (14) (a) It *would be* strange that you *should be* unsuccessful.  
 (b) It *is* strange that you *are* unsuccessful.  
 (c) It *is* strange that you *should be* unsuccessful.
- (15) (a) I *wrote to him* yesterday.  
 (b) I *wrote him a letter* yesterday.  
 (c) I *wrote him* yesterday.
- (16) (a) *After having been* ill for years, he is now quite well.  
 (b) *Though he has been* ill for years, he is now quite well.  
 (c) *Though having been* ill for years, he is now quite well.
- (17) (a) He is a man *who* I know *is* trustworthy.  
 (b) He is a man *whom* I know *to be* trustworthy.  
 (c) He is a man *whom* I know *is* trustworthy.
- (18) (a) He is a man *who* I supposed *was* incapable of such meanness.  
 (b) He is a man *whom* I supposed *incapable* of such meanness.  
 (c) He is a man *whom* I supposed *was* incapable of such meanness.
- (19) (a) These are the people *who* they *say* are fools.  
 (b) These are the people *whom* they *call* fools.  
 (c) These are the people *whom* they *say* are fools.
- (20) (a) *After the war was over*, I started on my travels.  
 (b) *The war being over*, I started on my travels.  
 (c) *After the war being over*, I started on my travels.

---

<sup>1</sup> We say 'all sorts of men,' but 'all manner (not manners) of men.'

- (21) (a) Please let go my hand.  
 (b) Please leave hold of my hand.  
 (c) Please leave go my hand.
- (22) (a) Exercise strengthens *instead of weakening* the body.  
 (b) Exercise strengthens *rather than weakens* the body.  
 (c) Exercise strengthens *instead of weakens* the body.
- (23) (a) *Taking* a walk, I found a bird's nest.  
 (b) *While I was taking* a walk, I found a bird's nest.  
 (c) *While taking* a walk, I found a bird's nest.
- (24) (a) He called to me, 'Look out, there is a snake in the grass.'  
 (b) He called to me to look out, as there was a snake in the grass.  
 (c) He called to me to look out, there is a snake in the grass.
- (25) (a) I *patched up* my quarrel with him.  
 (b) I *scraped* an acquaintance with him.  
 (c) I *scraped up* an acquaintance with him.
- (26) (a) The crowd *was composed of* all classes of people.  
 (b) The crowd *comprised* all classes of people.  
 (c) The crowd *was comprised of* all classes of people.
- (27) (a) His words *inspired them with* confidence.  
 (b) His words *instilled confidence into them*.  
 (c) His words *instilled them with* confidence.
- (28) (a) The robbers *laid wait* for the traveller.  
 (b) The robbers *lay in wait* for the traveller.  
 (c) The robbers *laid in wait* for the traveller.
- (29) (a) *The whole of the facts* must be considered.  
 (b) *All the facts* must be considered.  
 (c) *The whole facts* must be considered.
- (30) (a) I *have no confidence in* his honesty.  
 (b) I *place no reliance upon* his honesty.  
 (c) I *have no reliance upon* his honesty.
- (31) (a) It is not to my interest that he should *succeed*.  
 (b) I have no interest in his *succeeding*.  
 (c) I have no interest that he should *succeed*.
- (32) (a) There are *extremely few* instances.  
 (b) There are *an extremely small number of* instances.  
 (c) There are *an extremely few* instances.
- (33) (a) Pain *belongs to* the mysteries of life.  
 (b) Pain *is among* the mysteries of life.  
 (c) Pain *belongs among* the mysteries of life.
- (34) (a) I cannot *help thinking* that you are wrong.  
 (b) I cannot *but think* that you are wrong.  
 (c) I cannot *help but think* that you are wrong.
- (35) (a) He was elected *not so much for* his eloquence *as for* his honesty.  
 (b) He was elected *more for* his honesty *than for* his eloquence.  
 (c) He was elected *not so much for* his eloquence *than for* his honesty.

- (36) (a) I took *only* three of the apples.  
 (b) I did *not* take *more than* three of the apples.  
 (c) I did *not* take *only* three of the apples.
- (37) (a) I argued with him on the subject *without avail*.  
 (b) I argued with him on the subject *to no purpose*.  
 (c) I argued with him on the subject *to no avail*.
- (38) (a) It is dangerous *to travel* in this country.  
 (b) *Travelling* in this country is dangerous.  
 (c) It is dangerous *travelling* in this country.
- (39) (a) He offered me a considerable sum, *which* I declined.  
 (b) He offered me a considerable sum, *but* I declined it.  
 (c) He offered me a considerable sum, *but which* I declined.
- (40) (a) The " News " has the largest circulation *of all* the evening papers.  
 (b) The " News " has a larger circulation *than any other* evening paper.  
 (c) The " News " has the largest circulation *of any* evening paper.
- (41) (a) Only boating and novels *make* him happy.  
 (b) Nothing but boating and novels *makes* him happy.  
 (c) Nothing but boating and novels *make* him happy.
- (42) (a) *Did* any one ever *trust* me and *find* me unreliable ?  
 (b) *Has* any one ever *trusted* me and *found* me unreliable ?  
 (c) *Did* any one ever *trust* me and *found* me unreliable ?
- (43) (a) *I have* much pleasure *in accepting* your offer.  
 (b) *It gives* me much pleasure *to accept* your offer.  
 (c) *I have* much pleasure *to accept* your offer.  
 (c) *It gives* me much pleasure *in accepting* your offer.
- (44) (a) He *laid* this misfortune *at my door*.  
 (b) He *put down* this misfortune *to me*.  
 (c) He *put down* this misfortune *at my door*.
- (45) (a) This paper will do *equally well*.  
 (b) This paper will do *as well*.  
 (c) This paper will do *equally as well*.
- (46) (a) My view differs from *that of most men*.  
 (b) My view differs from *most men's*.  
 (c) My view differs from *that of most men's*.
- (47) (a) The further we proceed, the more difficulties do we *meet*.  
 (b) As we proceed, we meet more and more difficulties.  
 (c) The further we proceed, we meet more and more difficulties.
- (48) (a) I am *more* pleased with my bicycle *than ever*.  
 (b) I am *more and more* pleased with my bicycle.  
 (c) I am *more and more* pleased with my bicycle *than ever*.
- (49) (a) Parliament can deal with no *more useful* question *than this*.  
 (b) Parliament can deal with no question *more usefully than with this*.  
 (c) Parliament can deal with no *more useful* question *than with this*.

- (50) (a) The Government yielded *so far as to allow* the question to be discussed.  
 (b) The Government yielded *in so far as they allowed* the question to be discussed.  
 (c) The Government yielded *in so far as to allow* the question to be discussed.
- (51) (a) He would not give his permission to this at all.  
 (b) He refused his permission to this altogether.  
 (c) He refused his permission to this at all.
- (52) (a) *So far was he from consenting that* he refused pointblank.  
 (b) *Far from consenting*, he refused pointblank.  
 (c) *So far from consenting*, he refused pointblank.
- (53) (a) His ruin is connected with *the fact that* the bank has failed.  
 (b) His ruin is connected with *the question whether* the bank has failed.  
 (c) His ruin is connected with *the fact whether* the bank has failed.
- (54) (a) *It is little to the purpose* to make this enquiry.  
 (b) *It serves no purpose* to make this enquiry.  
 (c) *It serves little to the purpose* to make this enquiry.
- (55) (a) *I have no regard to* such matters.  
 (b) *I take no account of* such matters.  
 (c) *I take no regard to* such matters.
- (56) (a) You *must rise to* the opportunity.  
 (b) You *must be equal to* the opportunity.  
 (c) You *must rise equal to* the opportunity.
- (57) (a) This book sells *by the hundred thousand*.  
 (b) This book sells *by hundreds of thousands*.  
 (c) This book sells *by the hundreds of thousands*.
- (58) (a) The judge was frequently *consulted* by the India Office.  
 (b) The judge was frequently *asked his opinion* by the India Office.  
 (c) The judge's *opinion* was frequently *consulted* by the India Office.

## CHAPTER XI.

### COMPOSITION.

#### STYLE.

845. A finished style of composition in any foreign language can be acquired only by long and careful practice and by close observation of the best models. But to write English in a simple, clear, and correct style is within the reach of any Indian student who will exercise ordinary care and endeavour to avoid certain errors to which he is specially prone.

846. Rules.—There are six main Rules conducive to a good style :—I. The Rule of Proximity ; II. The Rule of Perspicuity ; III. The Rule of Precision ; IV. The Rule of Simplicity ; V. The Rule of Coherence ; VI. The Rule of Unity.

847. I. **The Rule of Proximity** is that things that are associated in *thought* should be associated as closely as possible in *expression*. Thus—

(1) Nouns and pronouns connected in sense should be placed near together :—

*Incorrect* : I forgive you, as a father ; I condemn you, as a judge.

*Correct* : As a father, I forgive you ; as a judge, I condemn you.

*Incorrect* : Solomon was the son of David, the builder of the Temple.

*Correct* : Solomon, the builder of the Temple, was the son of David.

*Incorrect* : As a kind-hearted man, I hope that you will forgive my son.

*Correct* : { I hope that you, as a kind-hearted man, will forgive my son.  
{ As a kind-hearted man, you will, I hope, forgive my son.

(2) An adjective and its qualifying phrase should come together :—

*Incorrect* : This is too good news to be true.

*Correct* : { This news is too good to be true.  
{ This is news too good to be true.



*Incorrect* : Hostile laws to the people were passed.

*Correct* : Laws hostile to the people were passed.

*Incorrect* : I have never seen a cleverer man at engineering.

*Correct* : I have never seen a man cleverer at engineering.

*Incorrect* : Manchester is the next largest city to London in England.

*Correct* : Manchester is, next to London, the largest city in England.<sup>1</sup>

(3) A relative pronoun should be placed next to its antecedent  
[135, (6), (b)] :—

*Incorrect* : Duke William rode in the centre, who bore a battle-axe.

*Correct* : { Duke William, who bore a battle-axe, rode in the centre.  
In the centre rode Duke William, who bore a battle-axe.

*Incorrect* : I have read this author's works, who is a good writer.

*Correct* : I have read the works of this author, who is a good writer.

*Incorrect* : Dryden claimed a delicate raillery as a mark of his satire,  
which he thought need not be offensive.

*Correct* : Dryden claimed as a mark of his satire a delicate raillery,  
which he thought need not be offensive.

*Incorrect* : Skilled workers had better be kept on waiting pay, with no  
attempt to put them to work, possibly away from home,  
for which they are unfit.

*Correct* : Skilled workers had better be kept on waiting pay, with no  
attempt to put them to work that they are unfit for and  
that is possibly away from home.

(4) A prepositional phrase should be placed immediately after  
the word to which it is an Adjunct :—

*Incorrect* : I was out walking when I saw the new moon in the garden.

*Correct* : I was out walking in the garden when I saw the new moon.

*Incorrect* : A novel has just been published by a new author.

*Correct* ; A novel by a new author has just been published.

*Incorrect* : The photographer was so weak from fever that he had to  
be carried to the spot where the lion lay on his camp bed.

*Correct* : The photographer was so weak from fever that he had to  
be carried on his camp bed to the spot where the lion lay.

(5) Qualifying phrases or clauses should be placed as near as  
possible to what they qualify :—

*Incorrect* : The men pursued the herd, brandishing long whips.

*Correct* : The men, brandishing long whips, pursued the herd.

*Incorrect* : He did not lose his way, and so arrive late, as I supposed.

*Correct* : He did not lose his way, as I supposed, and so arrive late.

*Incorrect* : This chapter of social history is a warning against dogged  
opposition to innovations dictated by prejudice.

*Correct* : This chapter of social history is a warning against dogged  
opposition, dictated by prejudice, to innovations.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cf. 839 and note.

(6) When a subject has two qualifying phrases, one should be placed before and one after it :—

*Incorrect* : Othello, seizing a bolster, mad with jealousy, smothers her.

*Correct* : Mad with jealousy, Othello, seizing a bolster, smothers her.

NOTE.—Similarly with a principal statement that has two qualifying clauses :—

*Incorrect* : As it does not rain, if I have time, I shall take a walk.

*Correct* : As it does not rain, I shall take a walk, if I have time.

(7) An adverbial phrase should be placed close to the word that it modifies :—

*Incorrect* : You complain that I am mistaken a great deal too soon.

*Correct* : You complain a great deal too soon that I am mistaken.

*Incorrect* : I told him that he had made a blunder as plainly as possible.

*Correct* : I told him as plainly as possible that he had made a blunder.

NOTE.—A difference in position may connote a difference in meaning, as :—

(a) He was brought home, badly wounded.

(b) Badly wounded, he was brought home.

In (a) 'badly wounded' means 'in a badly wounded state' (condition) : in (b) 'badly wounded' means 'since he was badly wounded' (cause).

848. II. The Rule of Perspicuity is that the writer's diction should clearly and readily convey his meaning to the reader. To ensure clearness, the writer, before making any attempt to express his thoughts, should settle definitely in his own mind what his thoughts are. He should construct a sentence in his head before he writes it down. Clearness of thought goes far toward ensuring clearness of expression. A lazy habit of thinking frequently leads to a vague manner of writing. Thus a young writer, giving a description of a visit to Calcutta, will commence—

I left my home very early in the morning. We went to Calcutta in a gharry, and on my arrival I could not find my luggage. We spent the first day in seeing the sights. I was too tired to walk far, so we did not see everything. [The reader naturally asks—Why start very early in the morning? Who are 'we'? Why could he not find his luggage? What were the sights? Which did he see and which did he not see?]

Examine the following sentences :—

(1) He desired nothing less than the crown. [This might mean—(a) 'He desired nothing short of the crown,' or (b) 'There was nothing he desired less than the crown.']

(2) Please excuse my coming to see you. [Owing to the ambiguity of *excuse*, this sentence might mean—(a) Please dispense with my coming, or (b) Please pardon my action in coming. The sense is clear if we write—(a) Please excuse me from coming, (b) Please excuse me for coming.]

(3) The adversaries of our policy in France are very numerous. [Does this mean (a) that the adversaries are in France, or (b) that the policy relates to France? If (a), write—The adversaries in France of our policy : if (b), write—The adversaries of our policy in relation to France.]

(4) Tell me if you are tired. [This might mean—(a) Tell me *whether* you are tired, or (b) Tell me *in case* you are tired. Use *whether* rather than *if*, when there is risk of such ambiguity.]

(5) I was so distressed that I missed you on your arrival. [This might mean that my distress caused me to miss you. Write—I was *much* distressed that I missed you, or I was so distressed *to miss* you.]

(6) He had not a single certificate to show or recommend him. [Here *show* appears to have *him* for its object. Insert a second *to* after *or*.]

(7) He is not the inventor, who is really an Italian physicist, and only made some successful experiments. [Repeat the subject *he* after *and*, otherwise *who* is the natural subject of *made*.]

(8) He was angry with his neighbours for blaming his children, and especially Gopal. [Repeat *with* before *Gopal*, otherwise *Gopal* becomes object to *blaming*.]

(9) Napoleon criticised his officers more than Wellington. [This might mean 'more than he criticised Wellington.' Write 'more than Wellington did.']

(10) India is in bad plight, if pestilence and famine remain unchecked, and her prosperity is lost. [The last clause might mean 'and *if* her prosperity is lost.' Rearrange—If pestilence and famine remain unchecked, India is in bad plight and her prosperity is lost.]

(11) The poor man was attacked by robbers, whom he resisted as best he could, and left for dead on the roadside. [The sentence, as it stands, means that the robbers were left for dead. Repeat the auxiliary *was* before *left*.]

(12) He determined to send his son to Calcutta to learn English and to engage the services of a tutor. [Is *to engage* dependent on *determined* or on *send*? Rewrite—He determined to send his son to Calcutta that he might learn English and to engage etc.].

(13) You want a new umbrella. [Here *want* might mean *wish for*. Write—You *need* a new umbrella.]

(14) If the history of the fourth Gospel turn out to be no history, it must be because it was intended to teach something to the author more important than history. [Here the reader would naturally construe 'to the author' with 'teach'; whereas the writer means 'important to the author.']

(15) It is well that our literary journals should notice the more eminent foreign books as they appear, but beyond that they can do nothing rightly. [By the last clause the writer means that the journals cannot rightly be expected 'to do anything beyond that; but the clause might be interpreted 'If they do anything beyond that, they will do it badly.']

(16) I was glad to see the last of him. [This might mean—(a) 'I was glad to go and see him off,' or (b) 'I was glad to be rid of him.']

(17) The Professor's next experiment was not the least interesting. [This might mean either 'not interesting in the least,' or 'one of the most interesting.']

(18) A monument will be erected to him in St. Paul's, sanction for this being given by the Dean and Chapter. [Does this mean—(a) that sanction *has been* given, or (b) that the erection is conditioned by the sanction?

If (a), write 'a work for which sanction has been given'; if (b), write 'if sanction for this is given.']

(19) I meant nothing less than to cause you annoyance. [This might mean either 'I meant to go so far as to cause you annoyance,' or 'I had no intention whatever of causing you annoyance.']

(20) Nothing was brought to light beyond the doings of the accused persons, and indeed there was nothing else for the police to discover or for them to hide. [Grammatically *them* refers to the police. Substitute for it 'the others.']

(21) The author's account of his meetings with Stevenson, Meredith, and other men of letters of distinction. [Rewrite: 'Other distinguished men of letters.']

(22) Japan has more reason to hate China than America. [Rewrite, according to the meaning intended, either 'than to hate America' or 'than America has.']

**849. Causes of Ambiguity.**—From the above examples it will be seen that ambiguity is mainly due to—

1. The omission of necessary words : see (7), (8), (9), (11).
2. The bad arrangement of the sentence : (3), (6), (10), (16), (20).
3. Vague or faulty phrasing or construction : (1), (5), (12), (15), (16), (17), (18), (19).

**850. Ambiguous Words.**—Sometimes the ambiguity consists in the use of words that may have a double meaning (cf. *excuse* above), such as *overlook* (to neglect *and* to superintend), *quickly* (soon *or* rapidly), *simply* (merely *and* plainly). In 'The penalty of flogging,' *of* may mean either consisting of' or 'imposed on,' as in the case of a schoolmaster prosecuted for flogging a pupil. 'A critic of critics' may mean 'A critic who criticises critics' or 'A critic superior to the generality of critics.' 'The love of a dog is stronger than the love of a cat' might mean either that a dog's affection for his master is stronger than a cat's, or that people love dogs better than cats. The preposition *for* is liable to similar ambiguity: thus 'The king pardoned him for the frankness he showed under examination' might mean either that the king pardoned his frankness, or that the king pardoned him on account of his frankness.

**851. Force** is an element of perspicuity. It is a quality of style which impresses the reader with a sense of the importance of a statement. Force is to a large extent attained—

(1) By placing words, phrases, and clauses in emphatic positions. Thus the beginning and the end of a sentence are its

emphatic parts, and words may have emphasis given them by being placed out of the normal order and thus attracting attention :

You may buy service ; *love* you cannot buy (*Object before Verb*).

*Never* will I consent (*Adverb placed first*).

Go you must. *To beg* I am ashamed

*So furious* was the wind, that the sail split } (*Complement before Verb*).

We lived on rabbits—rabbits *hot* and rabbits *cold*, rabbits *tender* and rabbits *tough* (*Adjective after Noun*).

(2) By repetition :—

I will *never*, *never* consent.

My friends are all *dead* and *gone*.

I will follow him by land and by sea, *through* fire and *through* water.

(3) By the use of *it* followed by a relative clause [490, (b)] :—

*It* was Ram that broke the window (*for* Ram broke the window).

852. III. The Rule of Precision is that words should be used accurately, in their proper connexion and in their exact meaning. Thus we speak of 'a *bunch* of flowers' but 'a *bundle* of sticks';<sup>1</sup> we say that asses *bray*, but that horses *neigh*.<sup>2</sup> We do not *persuade* but *convince* a man that he is wrong. *Ascertain* means 'to make sure of,' 'to find out for certain,' and should not be used for merely 'to find out.' In 'Earthworms are *apt* at any moment to be cut in two by a spade,' *apt* is wrongly used for *liable*; while in 'He is *apt* to fail if he does not work hard,' *apt* should be *likely*. Similarly, *avocation*, an *occasional* employment, should not be used for *vocation*, a *regular* employment; and *allude*, implying *indirect* reference, should not take the place of *refer*. Epithets like *nice*, *fine*, *funny*, *good*, should be kept to their proper application and not be used indiscriminately as in—'a *nice* (=agreeable) man,' 'a *nice* (=fine) day,' 'a *nice* (=pleasant) walk,' 'a *nice* (=good) house,' etc. Thus—

(1) *Climax* should not be used for *crisis* :—

*Incorrect* : To-day is the *climax* of your fate.

*Correct* : To-day is the *crisis* of your fate.

<sup>1</sup> Similarly :—a *heap* of stones; a *stack* of hay; a *clump* of trees; a *packet* of envelopes; a *set* of instruments; a *batch* of letters; a *parcel* of goods; a *cluster* or *group* of islands—stars; a *range* of mountains; a *fleet* of ships; a *flock* of sheep—geese; a *covey* of partridges; a *shoal* of fish; a *school* of whales; a *pack* of wolves—hounds; a *swarm* of bees—flies—ants; a *herd* or *drove* of oxen—swine; a *bevy* of girls; a *band* of robbers; a *gang* of thieves; a *horde* of savages; a *corps* of engineers; a *crew* of sailors.

<sup>2</sup> Similarly :—dogs and foxes *bark*; bears *growl*; lions and tigers *roar*; wolves *howl*; jackals *yelp*; bulls *bellow*; oxen *low*; geese *cackle*; hens *cluck*; doves *coo*; cats *mew*; sheep and goats *bleat*; ravens and frogs *croak*; crows and rooks *caw*; monkeys *chatter*, *gibber*; pigs *grunt*; mice *squeak*; cocks *crow*; ducks *quack*; bees *hum*; flies *buzz*; owls *hoot*; small birds *chirp*, *twitter*; eagles and kites *scream*; snakes *hiss*; elephants *trump*.

NOTE.—*Climax* is the highest point in an ascending scale, *crisis* is the turning point. A general's fortunes arrive at their *crisis*, when an important battle is still undecided; they reach their *climax*, when he finishes his campaign victoriously.

(2) *Aggravate* should not be used for *annoy* :—

*Incorrect* : His conduct is very *aggravating*.

*Correct* : His conduct is very *annoying*.

NOTE.—*Aggravate* means 'intensify' :—'His impudence *aggravates* his guilt.'

(3) *Verbal* should not be used for *oral* :—

*Incorrect* : Not having a pencil, I gave the boy a *verbal* message.

*Correct* : Not having a pencil, I gave the boy an *oral* message.

NOTE.—*Verbal* means relating to words, as 'verbal differences,' differences in words (not in sense); an *oral* message means a *spoken* message. 'A *verbal* translation' is also incorrect; say 'a *literal* translation.'

853. Examples.—The following are examples from current literature; corrections are given in brackets :—

(a) They declared that banditry was their only *recourse* (resource) against Nationalist maladministration.

(b) Her rich relations 'turned her down' because her mother had married *below* (beneath) her.

(c) *No steps* (stones) should be left unturned to get back to negotiations (a confusion with 'All steps should be taken').

(d) On this occasion let him *forego* (forgo) his qualms.

(e) These oil paintings are by *reputed* (reputable) artists (or, artists of repute).

(f) Later on her father met with a *reversal* (reverse) of fortune.

(g) His wife returned with her husband's body for a *ceremonious* (ceremonial) funeral.

(h) The present scarcity of *necessities* (necessaries) and the hardships of the town workers.

(i) These papers are *literally* (really, in fact) chips from Croce's workshop

(j) Three rivers have *overflowed* (overflowed) their banks.

(k) This group is moved not by belief in the *efficacy* (efficiency) of Government ownership, but by etc.

(l) The provincial governors were to restrict themselves to securing their *observation* (observance) of the law.

(m) Perched on a rocky promontory, above a valley of gardens, *lies* (stands) Tetuan.

(n) This loss is being *more* than *replaced* (compensated) by the rising quantity of goods absorbed by the British Empire.

854. IV. The Rule of Simplicity is that plain words should be used instead of high-sounding words and roundabout phrases; short and simple sentences rather than long and complex sentences; and easy constructions rather than intricate constructions. To be simple, the writer should use the smallest number of words

that is necessary for the adequate expression of his ideas. Thus in the sentence 'It is an (undoubted) fact (which no one can question) that Moloch was actuated by (feelings of) hatred to the (supreme) Deity,' the words enclosed in brackets are superfluous. Again, it makes for simplicity to use Teutonic group-verbs rather than their more ornate Romanic equivalents (218). Purity of style, consisting, as it does, in the employment of such words and phrases as are sanctioned by the best modern usage, goes hand in hand with simplicity. It should be remembered that a simple, straightforward style is much easier to acquire than one loaded with ornament and dealing largely in figurative language. The student who is content to write simply and to the point is less likely to make mistakes in idiom and in the meaning of words than one who aims at an ornate and elaborate diction.

(1) *Fine writing* may be illustrated by the use of *individual* for 'man'; *apex* for 'top'; *purchase* for 'buy'; *assist* for 'help'; *proceed* for 'go'; *donate* for 'give'; *commence* for 'begin'; *enquire* for 'ask'; *conceal* for 'hide'; *desist* for 'stop'; *peruse* for 'read'; *endeavour* for 'try'; *complete* for 'finish'; *engender* for 'cause'; *evince* for 'show'; *expedite* for 'hasten'; *antagonise* for 'oppose'; *inform* for 'tell'; *injure* for 'hurt'; *expire* for 'die'; *retire* for 'go to bed'; *prohibit* for 'forbid'; *eventuate* for 'happen, result'; *precipitous* for 'steep'; *the tender passion* for 'love'; *the fair sex* for 'women'; *residence* for 'house'; *vituperation* for 'abuse'; *metamorphosis* for 'change'; *maternal relative* for 'mother'; *conflagration* for 'fire'; *ruination* for 'ruin'; *vicinity* for 'neighbourhood'; *altitude* for 'height'; *description* for 'kind'; *desideratum* for 'want'; *beverage* for 'drink'; *the lower extremities* for 'legs' or 'feet'; *observations* for 'words'; *location* for 'site'; *initial* for 'first'; *ultimate* for 'last'; *inebriated* for 'drunk'; *prior to* for 'before'; *considerably* for 'much'; *he sustained a broken leg* for 'his leg was broken.' The liking for fine words often leads to inaccuracy, as in the use of *partake of dinner* for 'have dinner'; *avocation* for 'calling' (852); *transpire* for 'happen'; *remark* for 'see'; *indicate* for 'show'; *anticipate* for 'expect'; *mutual* for 'common' (574); *experience* for 'feel'; *period* for (point of) 'time'; *rejoinder* for 'answer'; *conscious* for 'aware'; *similar* for 'the same'; *veracity* for 'truth'; *witness* for 'see'; *intimate* for 'say'; *require* for 'need'; *desiderate* for 'desire'; *partially* for 'partly.'

(2) *Quotations* should be sparingly introduced. They should be *apt* and they should be *accurate*. Avoid such hackneyed expressions as *the festive board* for 'the dinner table'; *the cup that cheers*

*but not inebriates* for 'tea'; *there's the rub* for 'that is the difficulty'; *the feast of reason and the flow of soul* for 'pleasant conversation'; *the swan of Avon* for 'Shakspeare'; *durance vile* for 'imprisonment'; *few and far between* for 'rare'; *the green-eyed monster* for 'jealousy'; *to teach the young idea how to shoot* for 'to educate'; *the end is not yet* for 'there is more to happen or to be done'; *to burn the midnight oil* for 'to study late at night.'

(3) *Colloquialisms and slang* should be eschewed altogether. They are beneath the dignity of written composition, and in addition to their incongruity, they are seldom fully understood by the Indian student, and so are liable to be misused. Such are—to *go the whole hog* for 'to do a thing completely'; he *made himself scarce* for 'he disappeared'; it was *awfully* hot for 'very hot'; the king was a *good chap* for 'a worthy man'; he took a *lot* of trouble for 'a great deal of trouble'; there were *heaps* of people present for 'a great number of people'; I *sat upon* him for 'blamed him'; *fluke* for 'lucky stroke.' See notes to 274, 584, 620, 662, 805. There are colloquial constructions as well as colloquial expressions, as 'I knew (that) he was going and (that) he had plenty of money to buy all (that) he wanted'; 'Since no one else is willing to take the lead, I offer to (do so)'; 'There was not one of them (that) came';—where the bracketed words, which might be omitted colloquially, should be inserted in written composition. Colloquial forms, such as *I've* for 'I have,' *won't* for 'will not' (511), should not be used. In the same way, curt expressions such as *photo* for 'photograph,' *phone* for 'telephone,' *mo* for 'moment,' *comfy* for 'comfortable,' *exam.* for 'examination,' *gym* for 'gymnastics,' *doc* for 'doctor,' *tick* (ticket) for 'credit,' in good *fig.* (figure?) for 'in good condition,' *bike* for 'bicycle,' *zoo* for 'zoological gardens,' *maths* for 'mathematics,' *Matric.* for 'Matriculation' are inadmissible. Do not turn nouns into verbs, as 'to *bulk* largely,' 'to *voice* a matter,' 'to *glimpse* a vision,' 'to *sense* a thing.'

(4) *Foreign words and phrases*, such as *rara avis* for 'rarity,' *sobriquet* for 'nickname,' 'a *quondam* friend' for a former friend, *éclat* for 'renown,' *sotto voce* for 'in a low voice,' are out of place in the vocabulary of Indian students, and should, therefore, be avoided. There are, it is true, a few Latin and other foreign phrases, mostly technical, which have become established in English, and for which it is not always easy to find satisfactory English equivalents: such are *a fortiori*, *a priori*, a statement *ex cathedra*, an adjournment *sine die*, a *sine quâ non*, a *tu quoque*. But the student can easily dispense with these in his English



compositions. *Re* in the sense of 'regarding' should be confined to business letters; do not write: 'The people ought to be consulted *re* a matter of such importance.' Of the two following passages observe how affected and pretentious (a) is compared with (b):—

(a) I may remark *en passant* that I am *au fait* at cricket; *on dit* that I shall soon be in the First Eleven. *Jupiter pluvius* stopped our game yesterday, but I was *hors de combat* at the time with a sprained ankle. We could not have lunch *al fresco*, for which fine weather is a *sine quâ non*.

(b) I may remark *by the way* that I am a good hand at cricket; people say that I shall soon be in the First Eleven. Rain stopped our game yesterday, but I was *disabled* at the time with a sprained ankle. We could not have lunch *out of doors*, for which fine weather is *indispensable*.

(5) **Verbosity** is the use of many words where a few words are sufficient for the purpose. Do not try to say everything; say nothing that the reader would be able to think for himself. "The use of many words in order to express little thoughts is everywhere the infallible sign of mediocrity; while to clothe much thought in a few words is the infallible sign of distinguished minds."<sup>1</sup> Verbosity shows itself in diffuseness of style, in circumlocutions instead of simple statements, and in the introduction of irrelevant and unnecessary details. Thus 'A motor car was given him as a birthday present' becomes 'He was made the recipient of an automobile in celebration of his natal day,' and 'food for laughter' is amplified into 'matter that is calculated to excite risibility on the part of the listeners'; or the verbose writer will say, 'On hearing of the accident, I put on my hat, provided myself with an umbrella on account of the rain, went out and hurried as fast as I could to fetch the doctor,' instead of the concise and sufficient 'On hearing of the accident, I ran off in the rain for the doctor.'

(6) **Coined and Far-fetched Words.** Do not coin words yourself or use words coined by others. Prefer the plain, familiar word to the far-fetched. Do not strain after novelties in diction, but let your style be natural and unaffected. Examples of such words are—*luridity* (luridness), *invadable* (assailable), *proportionable* (proportional), *vividity* (vividness), *femininity* (womanliness), *retiral* (retirement), *efficacy* (efficacy), *intimity* (inwardness), *parallelity* (parallelism), *serenitude* (serenity), *minify* (underrate), *preventative* (preventive), *experimentalise* (experiment), *visualise* (picture to oneself), *intensate* (intensify), *quadrate* (correspond), *prejudicate* (prejudge), *insuccess* (failure), *devaluation* (depreciation), *contumacity* (contumacy), *motivation* (motive), *invitingness* (attractiveness), *rendition* (rendering—of music, etc), *infatuate* (infatuated), *basal*, *basic* (fundamental). *Defeatism* (and *defeatist*), with the

<sup>1</sup> Schopenhauer, *Essay on Authorship and Style*.

sense of despondency, disillusion, is a new-coined word apparently of French origin. *Scientist* (man of science), *aviator* (airman), and *suffragette* (agitator for woman's suffrage) are ugly but convenient words, and have made way. The use of *forbear* for 'ancestor' and of *foreword* for 'preface' are mere mannerisms.

855. V. The Rule of Coherence is that clauses and sentences should follow one another in their logical order and in their proper connexion. Each sentence should be so framed as to carry on the thought from what precedes to what follows. Disjointed sentences are a sign of confusion and vagueness of thought. Use freely conjunctions and conjunctive phrases, such as *though, while, hence, accordingly, yet, notwithstanding, therefore, then again, on the one hand, on the other hand, on the contrary, for, indeed, moreover, however, now, then, to be sure, at the same time, as a matter of fact, consequently, in short, it is true . . . but*. Thus :—

(1) A common error with young writers is the monotonous use of *and, so, and so, as* to join their sentences, instead of employing appropriate connectives :—

A little dog once saved its master's life. So one day it was watching by his side, and he lay asleep in a summer-house, and it was old and crazy, and so the dog saw the walls shake. So it understood the danger, as it began barking, and so it awoke its master. And <sup>1</sup> he started up, and so he had just time to escape as the whole building fell down.

Rewrite as follows :—

A little dog once saved its master's life. For one day it was watching by his side, as he lay asleep in a summer-house, which was old and crazy. Presently the dog saw the walls shake, and understanding the danger, began barking. This awoke its master, who started up, and had just time to escape before the whole building fell down.

(2) Another similar error is that of running together clauses or sentences which ought logically to be kept apart by semicolons or full stops or joined by conjunctions, and separating them only by commas :—

I have been on a visit to my uncle, he lives in Assam, it does not suit his health, his house is large and well-built, it stands on a hill, it commands a fine view.

Rewrite as follows :—

I have been on a visit to my uncle. He lives in Assam, though it does not suit his health. His house is large and well-built ; it stands on a hill and commands a fine view.

(3) The young writer is apt to be careless in wording his sentences, so that, while his meaning may be plain enough, his

---

<sup>1</sup> A good rule is never to begin a new sentence with *and*.

way of expressing it is illogical or incongruous. Thus he will write 'A sea voyage is a good way of spending a holiday.' Now a *voyage* cannot be a *way*, and he ought to have written : 'To take a sea voyage is' etc. Examples :—

1. This view is the finest scenery in the world. [A *view* is not *scenery*; write 'contains the finest scenery.']

2. He gave us a kind reception, which was shown us by all present. [A *reception* cannot be *shown*; write 'He received us with kindness.']

3. Presently I heard a strange sound. It was a man trying to get in at the window. [A *sound* cannot be a *man*; write 'It was made by a man.']

4. Another method of killing rats is that of poison. [We cannot say 'a method of poison'; for 'that of poison' write either 'that of using poison' or simply 'the use of poison.']

5. His Arctic expedition is a catalogue of misfortunes. [An *expedition* is not a *catalogue*; write 'The history of his Arctic expedition.']

6. A sad spectacle of want occurred this morning. [A *spectacle* cannot *occur*; write either 'instance' for 'spectacle,' or 'was seen' for 'occurred.']

7. Yesterday we had the good fortune of a most magnificent sunset. [Insert 'seeing' after 'of.']

8. To be an author means one who possesses literary ability. [Insert 'to be' before 'one.']

9. The rule accords those who have passed this test to be excused from the Matriculation Examination. [Insert 'the right' after 'test,' or substitute 'permits' for 'accords.']

10. The slow proceedings caused the postponement of the question. [Write 'The slowness of the proceedings.']

(4) From mere want of thought a writer or a speaker will often fall into carelessness of expression. The passer-by who was heard to say 'This house was hardly entered before it was finished,' meant of course that the house was hardly finished before it was entered. Note the jumble of ideas in the following sentence :—

Whatever you earn, save something, without minding what people say about love of money or being miserly, as everyone ought to be above becoming dependent upon others, and money in the bank makes a man hold his head up and respect himself, and he deserves such respect, which he has won by self-denial.

Rewrite :—

Whatever you earn, save something. Never mind what people say about love of money and being miserly. Everyone ought to be above becoming dependent upon others. Money in the bank makes a man hold his head up and respect himself. He deserves such respect too; for he has won it by self-denial.

Examples :—

1. *Incorrect* : He was grateful to me for a heavy loss that I saved him from.  
*Correct* : He is grateful to me for saving him from a heavy loss.

2. *Incorrect* : One good runner I well remember how often he came in first.  
*Correct* : I well remember how often one good runner came in first.

3. *Incorrect* : I think it may benefit your health by taking a glass of water before meals.  
*Correct* : I think it may benefit your health to take a glass of water before meals.
4. *Incorrect* : Dorothy's absence was required to look after her sick brother.  
*Correct* : Dorothy was absent because she was required to look after her sick brother.
5. *Incorrect* : Monmouth's disloyalty was strongly suspected by the King.  
*Correct* : { Monmouth's loyalty was strongly suspected by the King.  
 Monmouth was strongly suspected of disloyalty by the King.
6. *Incorrect* : The Committee requests subscriptions to be paid to the treasurer.  
*Correct* : The Committee requests that subscriptions be paid to the treasurer.
7. *Incorrect* : Several of the teachers were promoted to head-masters.  
*Correct* : Several of the teachers were promoted to head-masterships.
8. *Incorrect* : You must do it the same as I did it.  
*Correct* : You must do it in the same way as I did it.
9. *Incorrect* : The Post Office's appeal to the public to facilitate the delay of correspondence in London.  
*Correct* : { The P.O.'s appeal to facilitate the delivery etc.  
 The P.O.'s appeal to prevent the delay etc.
10. *Incorrect* : This popular author has never failed to create a story without interest.  
*Correct* : This popular author has never created a story without interest.

(5) It is better to use short sentences than long ones. A short sentence is simple, incisive, and easily understood ; whereas a long sentence requires skill in its construction, is often a strain upon the attention, and lays itself open to errors of syntax which a short sentence escapes. Thus the lumbering length of the following sentence makes it difficult to follow the meaning :—

The mystery regarding the identity of the sender of the bomb which exploded in the study of Judge Rosalsky, the General Sessions Judge in New York, whose sentence of thirty years' imprisonment upon the Swede, Brandt, the former valet to the millionaire banker. Mr. Mortimer Schiff, gave rise to a movement which led to the reopening of the case, would appear to be explained by the arrest here to-day as a vagrant of a man named Newson, who declared that he was a friend of Brandt, and that it was he who sent the bomb from Jacksonville.

Rewrite :—

The mystery regarding the identity of the sender of the bomb that exploded in the study of Judge Rosalsky, the General Sessions Judge in New York, would appear to be explained by the arrest here to-day as a vagrant of a man named Newson. He declares that he is a friend of Brandt, and that it was he who sent the bomb from Jacksonville. It will be remembered that the Judge's sentence of thirty years' imprisonment upon the Swede, Brandt, the former valet to the millionaire banker, Mr. Mortimer Schiff, gave rise to a movement which led to the reopening of the case.

856. VI. **The Rule of Unity** is that a sentence should contain one, and only one, main fact. Nothing should be introduced that tends to obscure it. Avoid the common fault of crowding a sentence with incongruous or unnecessary details. A good sentence may contain several facts, but the bearing of each upon the main fact should be distinctly shown, so that the whole impresses the reader as an organised unit.

(1) In the following sentence two distinct facts are joined together so as to make it appear that Napoleon's death was due, or partly due, to the annoyance mentioned :—

During his exile he was subject to much annoyance, real or imaginary, and died on the 5th of May, 1821, of cancer of the stomach, a disease which, etc.

Break up the sentence into two by placing a full stop after *imaginary* and changing *and* into *He*, and thus give a separate sentence for each fact.

(2) The following sentence consists of a jumble of ill-assorted details :—

In the afternoon, which was very wet, I went by train, in which there were very few passengers, to Calcutta, to see my sick brother, who was better, which made me glad, returning the next day, which was fine, in an open carriage to my home.

As the sentence stands, the clause about the fewness of the passengers is an irrelevant detail. Rearrange as follows :—

Since the afternoon was very wet, I went to Calcutta by train, to see my sick brother, and was glad to find him better. It was a comfortable journey, because there were very few passengers in the train. The next day being fine, I returned home in an open carriage.

(3) On the other hand, unity may be violated by a series of short sentences that do not contain separate facts :—

Dr. Ghose died this morning. He was born March 10, 1820. He was seventy years old, and left Rs. 20,000 to his wife and children.

Here there are only two main facts, the death of Dr. Ghose and his bequest. The fact that he was seventy years old follows from the fact that he was born March 10, 1820, and that fact is subsidiary to the main fact of his death. Rearrange as follows :—

Dr. Ghose died this morning at the age of seventy, having been born March 10, 1820. He left Rs. 20,000 to his wife and children.

(4) Unity of *form* or structure in a sentence is also important. Examples :—

(1) *Incorrect* : I tried a plan which I had thought of, but I had never tried *it* before.

*Correct* : I tried a plan which I had thought of, but *which* I had never tried before.

- (2) *Incorrect* : The general determined to persevere, and a second attack *was ordered*.  
*Correct* : The general determined to persevere, and *ordered* a second attack.
- (3) *Incorrect* : He killed himself in his despair and *deranged mind*.  
*Correct* : He killed himself in his despair and *derangement of mind*
- (4) *Incorrect* : Payment in money is better than *to pay* in kind.  
*Correct* : Payment in money is better than *payment* in kind.
- (5) *Incorrect* : He called to me to look out, there is a snake going to bite you.  
*Correct* : { He called to me to look out, as there was a snake going to bite me.  
He called to me, ' Look out, there is a snake going to bite you.'
- (6) *Incorrect* : The eagle is the king of birds, as *lions* are of beasts.  
*Correct* : The eagle is the king of birds, as *the lion* is of beasts.
- (7) *Incorrect* : It is used as a warehouse, with goods on the first floor, and *has* an office below.  
*Correct* : It is used as a warehouse, with goods on the first floor and *with* an office below.
- (8) *Incorrect* : Callousness is to have no feeling for others.  
*Correct* : Callousness is *the* want of feeling for others.

## CHAPTER XII.

### PARAPHRASING.

#### FIGURATIVE LANGUAGE.

857. A **Figure of Speech** is the use of a word in other than its literal meaning, to produce a special effect. Thus in 'Richard was a *lion* in the fight,' *lion* does not mean 'lion' but 'brave man'; but the statement as it stands is much more vivid than the literal statement, 'Richard was a *brave man* in the fight.'

858. A **Simile** is a comparison between things of *different kinds* in respect to some particular point of resemblance: as, 'Richard fought *like a lion*.' If we say 'Richard fought *like a brave man*,' there is no Simile, because Richard and a brave man are both of the same kind.

859. A **Metaphor** (transference) is an *implied* Simile. It does not, like the Simile, state a resemblance between two things, but takes it for granted that the two things are identical. Thus the Simile, 'Richard fought like a lion,' states that Richard's fighting was *like* that of a lion; whereas the Metaphor, 'Richard was a lion in the fight,' states that Richard in fighting actually *was* a lion. The word *lion* is *transferred* from the animal to which it properly belongs to the man who resembles it in the quality of bravery.

860. To turn a **Metaphor** into a **Simile** it is necessary first to find out the exact points of resemblance between the two objects compared. Thus in turning into a Simile the Metaphor in 'The camel is the ship of the desert,' we must enquire what the point is in which a camel resembles a ship, and having found it to lie

in the fact that both are *used for crossing*, the former for crossing the desert, the latter for crossing the sea, we must assign to each of the two things compared its proper action ; and the resemblance between these actions must be expressed by some word or words like *as . . . so*. We thus get the Simile : ' As the ship is used for crossing the sea, so the camel is used for crossing the desert.'

## POETIC DICTION.

861. A useful exercise in composition, and one that is often made the subject of an Examination question, is to reproduce in simple prose the meaning of a piece of poetry.

In order to comprehend the principles that should guide him in this task, the student must first learn in what main features the style and diction of Poetry differ from those of Prose.

This difference is founded on the fact that the primary object of Poetry is to give *pleasure*, while the primary object of Prose is to convey *information*. Poetry, then, chooses such a diction as will please the reader, while Prose prefers language that will best convey the information to be imparted. Hence the diction of Poetry is distinguished from that of Prose by the following peculiarities :—

- (1) The use of archaic or uncommon words.
- (2) The use of archaic or uncommon constructions.
- (3) The omission of words retained in Prose.
- (4) The inversion of the regular order of words.
- (5) The freer use of picturesque, ornamental, and figurative language.
- (6) Greater conciseness of expression.
- (7) Longer sentences.

862. (1) **The use of archaic or uncommon words.**—These may generally be distinguished by their unfamiliar appearance or sound.

(a) **NOUNS** :—*Swain* for lover or peasant ; *nymph, damsel, maid* for girl ; *ire, wrath* for anger ; *bale* for evil or misery ; *woe, dole* for sorrow ; *bliss* for happiness ; *cheer* for joy ; *foe, foeman* for enemy ; *lay* for song ; *main* for sea ; *steed* for horse ; *bard* for poet ; *warrior* for soldier ; *combat, fray* for battle ; *tourney* for tournament ; *hest, behest* for command ; *meed, guerdon* for reward ; *ruth* for pity ; *billow* for wave ; *ken* for sight, perception ; *isle* for island ; *locks, tresses* for hair ; *accents* for words ; *hue* for colour ; *seer* for prophet ; *numbers* for verse ; *vale* for valley ; *mount* for mountain



*marge* for *margin*; *eve* for *evening*; *morn* for *morning*; *mead* for *meadow*; *nuptials* for *marriage*; *might* for *strength*; *spouse* for *husband* or *wife*; *quest* for *search*; *guile* for *deceit*; *chanticleer* for *cock*; *goblet* for *cup*; *realm* for *kingdom*; *scribe* for *writer*; *victor* for *conqueror*; *tube* for *tobacpipe*; *byre* for *cowshed*; *fume* for *smoke*; *boot* for *profit*; *pinion* for *wing*.

(b) ADJECTIVES:—*Rathe* for *early*; *darksome* for *dark*; *winsome* for *winning*; *lovesome* for *lovely*; *jocund*, *joyous* for *joyful*; *joyless* for *unhappy*; *doleful* for *sorrowful*; *roseate* for *rosy*; *wont* for *accustomed*; *stout* for *strong* or *bold*; *goodly* for *good-looking*; *plenteous* for *plentiful*; *fond* for *foolish*; *mute* for *silent*; *stilly* for *still*; *verdant* for *green*; *dauntless* for *brave*; *martial* for *military*; *ware* for *aware*; *swart* for *swarthy*; *hapless* for *unfortunate*; *lowly* for *humble*; *forlorn*, *lorn* for *desolate* or *wretched*; *silvan* for *woody*; *bootless* for *unprofitable*; *ingrate* for *ungrateful*; *recreant* for *unfaithful*; *quenchless* for *unquenchable*; *fadeless* for *unfading*; *wroth* for *angry*; *lone*, *lonesome* for *lonely*; *drear* for *dreary*; *dread*, *dire* for *dreadful* or *dreaded*.

(c) PRONOUNS:—*Thou* (or *ye*), *thy*, *thine*, *thee* for *you*, *your*, *yours*, *you*; *mine*, *thine* for *my*, *your*; *ought*, *naught* for *anything*, *nothing*; *something* for *somewhat*; *yon*, *yonder* for *that*.

(d) VERBS:—*Quoth* for *said*; *wax* for *grow*; *reck* for *care*; *trow* for *believe*; *wot*, *wis* for *know*; *ween* for *think*; *smite* for *strike*; *hie*, *speed* for *hasten*; *tarry*, *abide* for *stay*; *rend* for *tear*; *list* for *listen*; *hearken* for *hear*; *fresh* for *refresh*; *list* for *wish*, *be willing*; *warble* for *sing*; *obscure* for *darken*; *fare* for *be or go*; *vanguish* for *conquer*; *quaff* for *drink*; *cleave* to for *adhere*; *bade* for *bid*; *clove* for *cleft*; *drove* for *drove*; *clomb* for *climbed*; *clad* for *clothed*; *doth*, etc. for *does*, etc.; *ta'en* for *taken*; *'gin* for *begin*.

(e) ADVERBS:—*Hard by*, *fast by* for *near to*; *erewhile* for *lately*; *whilom*, *erst* for *formerly*; *of yore*, *of old* for *in ancient times*; *anon* for *presently*; *amain* for *violently*; *right* for *very* or *exactly*; *haply* for *by chance*, *perhaps*; *scarce* for *scarcely*; *sore* for *sorely*; *wondrous* for *wonderfully*; *e'er* for *ever*; *e'en* for *even*; *o'er* for *over*; *full oft* for *very often*.

(f) PREPOSITIONS:—*Adown* for *down*; *withal* for *with* (or *moreover*); *'neath* for *beneath*; *'twixt* for *betwixt*; *'gainst* for *against*.

(g) CONJUNCTIONS:—*Eke* for *also*; *ere*, *or ere* for *before*; *an if* for *if*; *albeit* for *although*; *natless* for *nevertheless*; *or—or* for *either—or*, and *nor—nor* for *neither—nor*.

(h) INTERJECTIONS:—*Avaunt* for *begone*; *hast* for *hush*; *alack*, *alackaday* for *alas*.

## 863. (2) The use of archaic or uncommon constructions.

### (a) An Adjective substituted for a Noun:—

'The central *blue*' (=sky); 'the azure *deep*' (=depth) of air'; the *void* (=chaos) profound'; 'the blanket of the *dark*' (=darkness).

His *sprightlily* (=sprightliness) mingled with a shade of *sad* (=sadness).—*Couper*.

Happily to steer  
From *grave* to *gay*, from *lively* to *severe*.—*Pope*.

## (b) An Adjective substituted for an Adverb :—

Trip it *deft* and merrily.—*Scott*.

Then they praised him *soft* and *low*.—*Tennyson*.

Less *winning* soft, less amiably mild.—*Milton*.

## (c) A Noun in the possessive case substituted for an Adjective :—

Her *angel's* (=angelic) face.—*Spenser*.

Pity and *woman's* (=womanly) compassion.—*Longfellow*.

The *mother's* (=motherly) nature of Althæa.—*Lowell*.

(d) Adverbs in *-ly* compared by the suffixes *-er* and *-est* :—

You have taken it *wiselier* than I meant you should.—*Shakspeare*.

Strange friend, past, present, and to be ;

Loved *deeplier*, *darklier* understood.—*Tennyson*.

Each act is *rightliest* done,

Not when it must, but when it may be best.—*Milton*.

(e) A Superlative adjective substituted for a Positive with *very* :—

Hail, *divinest* (=very divine) Melancholy.—*Milton*.

Through *busiest* street and *loneliest* glen.—*Wordsworth*.

## (f) The Subject (noun) of a verb repeated by a Pronoun :—

So, 'Fair and softly,' John, *he* cried.—*Cowper*.

The smith, a mighty man is *he*.—*Longfellow*.

My banks, *they* are furnished with bees.—*Shenstone*.

## (g) The Subjunctive form of the verb used in the first and the third person of the Imperative :—

Well, *sit we* down

And let us hear Bernardo speak of this.—*Shakspeare*.

Thither our path lies : *wind we* up the heights.—*Browning*.

Every soldier *kill* his prisoners.—*Shakspeare*.

Yet—*witness* every fainting limb.—*Scott*.

## (h) A Personal pronoun used in a Reflexive sense :—

I thought *me* (=myself) richer than the Persian king.—*Ben Jonson*.

Mark ye how close she veils *her* (=herself) round.—*Keble*.

## (i) The use of Impersonal verbs (260) that are obsolete in prose :—

*Methinks* (=I think) I see my father.—*Shakspeare*.

*Him thought* (=he thought) he by the brook of Cherith stood.—

*Milton*.

A bard here dwelt, more fat than bard *beseems* (i.e. than is seemly for a bard).—*Thomson*.

(They led his) palfrey, when at need

*Him listed* (=he wished to) ease his battle steed.—*Scott*.

NOTE.—The verb *worth* is similarly obsolete :—'Woe *worth* the chase, woe *worth* the day' (i.e. woe be to the chase) !—*Scott*.

(7) The simple forms of verbs preferred to the forms with auxiliaries:—

'Twere long to tell	for	it would be long to tell.
Mine be a cot	„	may a cot be mine.
Tell me not in mournful numbers	„	do not tell me, etc.
The cup that cheers but not inebriates	„	does not inebriate.
He goes to do what I had done,	„	he goes to do what I should have done, if etc.
if etc.		
What think'st thou of our stranger	„	what dost thou think, etc.
guest?		

NOTE.—On the other hand, the auxiliary *do* is often introduced in poetry merely for metrical reasons:—‘The dogs *did* bark (for *barked*), the children *screamed*.’—*Cowper*. Cf. ‘doth sing’ for ‘sings’ in 870, (1).

#### 864. (3) The omission of words retained in Prose.

Creeping like (a) snail unwillingly to school.  
 (He) Who never fasts, no banquet e'er enjoys.  
 For is there aught in sleep (that) can charm the wise?  
 To whom thus Adam (spoke).  
 Happy (is) the man whose wish or care, etc.  
 To be weak is (to be) miserable.  
 Soldier, rest! thy warfare (being) o'er.  
 (Neither) Trump nor pibroch summon here.  
 He knew himself (how) to sing.  
 (There) Was none that would be foremost.  
 Entreating all things to weep (over) Balder's death.  
 Peace is despaired (of).  
 Far up the lake 'twere safest (to) land.  
 Permit (that) I marshal thee the way.

#### 865. (4) The inversion of the normal order of words.

Again returned the scenes of youth (Verb before Subject).  
 More would he of *Clan Alpine* know (Object before Verb).  
 He rose and sought the moonshine pure (Noun before Adjective).  
 Thou sun, of this great world both eye and soul (Adjectival phrase before Noun).  
 Together up the pass they sped (Complement before Intransitive Verb).  
 Some feelings are to mortals given (Complement between Auxiliary and Participle).  
 They dashed that rapid torrent through (Noun before Preposition).  
 To expiate his treason (man) hath naught left (Infinitive before Verb).  
 For saddletree scarce reached had he (Participle before Auxiliary).

866. (5) The freer use of picturesque, ornamental, and figurative language.—Since the aim of Poetry is to please rather than to instruct, it naturally employs picturesque, ornamental, and figurative language much more freely than Prose does. Hence Poetry often forms new compound words, as *love-whispering*, *violet-embroidered*, *sphere-descended*, *crimson-circled*; and is fond of merely ornamental or descriptive epithets, as ‘the golden corn,’

'the *flowery meadows*,' 'the *rolling main*,' 'the *revolving year*,' 'smiling plenty,' 'the *bold Sir Bedivere*'; while in the following two stanzas from Gray's *Elegy* we find at least eleven instances (italicised) of figures of speech :—

Perhaps in this neglected spot are laid  
Some hearts once *pregnant* with celestial *fire* ;  
Hands that the *rod* of empire might have *swayed*,  
Or *waked* to ecstasy the *living lyre*.

But *Knowledge* to their eyes its ample *page*,  
Rich with the *spoils* of time, did ne'er unfold,  
*Chill Penury* repressed their noble rage,  
And *froze* the genial *current* of their soul.

867. (6) **Greater conciseness of expression.**—Besides omitting unemphatic words, Poetry prefers short words to long ones, as may be seen from the list of words in (1). Hence too its tendency to use words or phrases in a pregnant sense, as :—

(a) (Heaven) With sparing hands will diet us to good,  
Preventing surfeits of *our pampered blood* (*Dryden*)

[where *of our pampered blood* means 'arising from the pampering of our blood'].

(b) Sea-faring men *o'er-watched* (*Milton*)

[where *o'er-watched* means 'who have over-watched' (239), or have kept awake too long].

(c) Great Xerxes comes to seize the *certain* prey (*Johnson*)

[where *certain* means 'which he regarded as certain'].

(d) And all at once their arch'd necks, *midnight-maned*,  
Jet upward (*Tennyson*)

[where *midnight-maned* means 'with manes as black as midnight'].

(e) '*Oblivious* pool' for 'pool causing oblivion'; '*mortal taste*' for 'taste producing death'; '*insane root*' for 'root causing insanity'; '*grateful altars*' for 'altars to show gratitude.'

868. (7) **Longer sentences.**—Poetry, owing to its possession of metre, is able to use longer sentences than would be possible in Prose. Thus the opening passage of *Paradise Lost* consists of a single sentence sixteen lines long; and the entire Prologue to Tennyson's *Tiresias* is one long-drawn-out sentence of fifty-six lines.

### TURNING POETRY INTO PROSE.

869. **Rules.**—The following rules will be found useful in turning a passage of Poetry into equivalent Prose :—

(1) Before considering what particular changes are necessary, read over carefully the whole passage, so as to make sure that you thoroughly understand its meaning. Get a firm hold of its central idea, and then bring out that idea in your prose version.

(2) For all words or phrases that are archaic or uncommon substitute words or phrases such as are met with in ordinary prose (862). As will be seen in the examples given below, the number of expressions requiring thus to be altered is seldom large. It is a common mistake for the student to endeavour to find a prose equivalent for almost every word used in the piece of verse, with the result that his version altogether misrepresents the sense of the original or conveys no sense at all.

(3) Change into the ordinary prose form all uncommon grammatical constructions (863). In interrogative, imperative, and conditional sentences, use the forms of verbs with auxiliaries in preference to the simple forms.

(4) Supply any omitted words (864).

(5) Rearrange the parts of each sentence in the regular prose order (865).

(6) Change ornamental and figurative language into plain and literal statement (866). When a metaphor is expressed in detail, it should be expanded into its corresponding simile (860); as with 'footprints on the sands of time' in example (3) below. When a metaphor is confined to a single expression (as 'shipwreck' in the same example), it is sufficient to turn it into a statement. For other instances, see 'to crown' and 'pants' in example (4).

(7) Bring out the full meaning of words or phrases used in a pregnant sense (867). See 'an evening group' in example (4).

(8) Break up a long sentence (868) into several shorter ones, as has been done in examples (3) and (4) below.

(9) Make your prose version as short as possible, provided that everything obscure is explained and that the full meaning of the original is represented. Only such new material is to be introduced as is necessary for the clear explanation of the text. Be careful that the version when read apart from the original is an intelligible piece of English, expressed in simple and natural language.

### 870. Examples of Poetry turned into Prose.

- (1) The bird that soars on highest wing  
Builds on the ground her lowly nest,  
And she that doth most sweetly sing  
Sings in the shade when all things rest.  
In lark and nightingale we see  
What honour hath humility.<sup>1</sup> (*J. Montgomery.*)

---

<sup>1</sup> This passage and the following one are taken from Questions set in Matriculation Examinations.

*Prose Version.* The bird that flies highest in the air builds her nest low on the ground, and the bird that sings sweetest, sings in the darkness, when everything is at rest. By the example of the lark and the nightingale we see how great is the honour paid to humility.

- (2) No cloud obscures the summer sky ;  
 The moon in brightness walks on high,  
 And set in azure every star  
 Shines, a pure gem of heaven afar !  
 Child of the earth, oh, lift thy glance  
 To yon bright firmament's expanse ;  
 The glories of its realm explore,  
 And gaze and wonder and adore !  
 Doth not it speak to every sense  
 The marvels of Omnipotence ?  
 See'st thou not there th' Almighty name  
 Inscribed in characters of flame ?

*Prose Version.* The sky of the summer night is not darkened by a single cloud ; the moon is riding overhead in all its brightness, and every star shines in the distant sky like a brilliant gem in a deep blue setting. Lift up your eyes, inhabitant of earth, to that bright expanse of sky ; survey all its beauties and gaze on them with wonder and adoration. Do they not bring home to your feelings the wonderful power of Almighty God ? Do you not see there signs of His greatness, as though the stars were letters of fire by which God's name is inscribed on the heavens ?

- (3) Lives of great men all remind us  
 We may make our lives sublime,  
 And, departing, leave behind us  
 Footprints on the sands of time ;  
 Footprints which perhaps another,  
 Sailing o'er life's troubled main,  
 Some forlorn and shipwrecked brother,  
 Seeing may take heart again. (*Longfellow.*)

*Prose Version.* The lives of all great men remind us that we too may live noble lives, and, when we die, may leave behind us in the world records of our actions, like footprints left on the sand of the sea-shore by passers-by.

These records may chance to be noticed by some unfortunate fellow-man, whose life is full of trouble, and may give him encouragement and hope in the midst of his loneliness and misfortunes.

NOTE.—The emphasis which is laid on the word *our* in 'our lives' is expressed by the insertion of *too* in the Prose Version.

- (4) In all my wanderings round this world of care,  
 In all my griefs—and God has given my share,  
 I still had hopes, my latest hours to crown,  
 Amidst these humble bowers to lay me down ;  
 To husband out life's taper at the close,  
 And keep the flame from wasting by repose.  
 I still had hopes, for pride attends us still,  
 Amidst the swains to show my book-learned skill,  
 Around my fire an evening group to draw,  
 And tell of all I felt and all I saw ;  
 And as a hare whom hounds and horns pursue  
 Pants to the place from whence at first she flew,  
 I still had hopes, my long vexations past,  
 Here to return—and die at home at last. (*Goldsmith.*)

*Prose Version.* In the midst of all my weary travels over the world, and in all my sorrows, of which Providence has given me my full share, I never ceased hoping that I should be able to retire to this humble village in order to spend the close of my life here in peace. I thought that I might lengthen out the few remaining days of my life by resting myself from toil, just as a candle, when nearly burnt out, may be kept from wasting by being sheltered from the wind. I never ceased hoping (for even in old age we take a pride in our own powers) to display my superior learning before the rustics, and to gather a company of them around my fire at evening and tell them of my experiences and the sights that I had seen. I never ceased hoping, I say, to return here, after my many troubles were over, and so at last die at home ; like a hare which, pursued by huntsmen and hounds, makes the best of its way back to the place from which it first started.

- (5) The lamb thy riot dooms to bleed to-day,  
 Had he thy reason, would he skip and play ?  
 Pleased to the last, he crops the flow'ry food,  
 And licks the hand just raised to shed his blood. (*Pope.*)

*Prose Version.* If the lamb which is to be killed to-day in order to provide you with a feast, were possessed of your human reason, do you think he would frisk and gambol as he does now ? See how, unconcerned to the last, he crops the meadow grass, and licks the hand that is about to cut his throat.

## CHAPTER XIII.

### PRÉCIS-WRITING.

#### INTRODUCTION.

**871. Its Use.**—What is a précis, and of what use is précis-writing? Suppose that you were a very busy man, say a Member of Parliament or the head of a business house, and that you had so many important decisions to make that you could not spare time for each. Suppose that a great many speeches had been made, or a great many letters written, on a particular subject, such as the Daylight-saving Bill, or the question of road or rail transport of goods, and that you had not time to read all those speeches or letters. What would you do? You would tell your secretary to make a précis or summary of all the speeches or letters, and when you had read that précis, which would be only perhaps a quarter of the length of the original documents, you would know all of any importance that had been said or written about the subject. Hence the usefulness of a précis. If the secretary did not make a good précis; if he left out important points and emphasised unimportant ones; or if he misunderstood the speeches and letters, and so did not clearly reproduce their substance, the busy man would receive a wrong impression and perhaps make an unwise decision.

**872. Method of Treatment.**—The first thing to be done, when you set out to make a précis of a given passage, is to read the passage through slowly and carefully, two or three times if necessary, until you have a mental grip of the subject. You then decide, and jot down briefly, what are the important ideas in the passage, and what are of secondary importance. Keeping in mind that a précis is something useful and practical, you should never leave out names of persons and places, dates and times, unless these are only inserted as illustrations and do not belong to the main subject-matter. You can discard illustrations, quotations, examples, and figures of speech, unless you consider them



necessary to the clearness of the argument. Omit exclamations and rhetorical questions. Always write in the third person and turn direct speech into indirect speech (297).

### 873. Example.

Take the following passage from Addison's *Spectator* :—

Will Wimble's is the case of many a younger brother of a great family, who had rather see their children starve like gentlemen, than thrive in a trade or profession that is beneath their quality. This humour fills several parts of Europe with pride and beggary. It is the happiness of a trading nation, like ours, that the younger sons, though incapable of any liberal art or profession, may be placed in such a way of life, as may perhaps enable them to vie with the best of their family : accordingly we find several citizens that were launched into the world with narrow fortunes, rising by an honest industry to greater estates than those of their elder brothers. It is not improbable but Will was formerly tried at divinity, law, or physic ; and that finding his genius did not lie that way, his parents gave him up at length to his own inventions. But certainly, however improper he might have been for studies of a higher nature, he was perfectly well turned for the occupations of trade and commerce.

In this passage, Addison is pointing out how foolish it is to consider any honest work as beneath the dignity of a gentleman. The case of Will Wimble is a particular example of the general truth that Addison is trying to impress upon his readers. Will therefore comes under the heading of illustration ; but he is so much a part of the essay that he must not be omitted altogether in the précis.

874. Analysis.—We will divide up this passage as follows :—

#### I. Important points :

1. Noble families consider trade degrading.
2. Consequent poverty of younger sons.
3. Arguments against this prejudice :—
  - (a) England a trading nation.
  - (b) Younger sons, unsuited for professions, might do well in trade ; instance of Will Wimble.

#### II. Illustrations :—

1. Results of prevalence of this idea in Europe.
2. Some younger sons in England make fortunes in trade.
3. Will was probably tried unsuccessfully at divinity, law and medicine.
4. He would have been fitted for trade.

875. **Title.**—If you should be asked to supply a title for the above passage, you would consider the ideas in it and try to frame your title so that it should indicate the main theme of the passage and should not be divergent from it in style. For instance, for a piece of literary and dignified prose such as the above, do not choose a journalistic title like "What to do with our Boys." The title should be short and to the point: *e.g.*, "The Problem of the Younger Son," "Trade and the Nobility," "Commercial Careers for Young Noblemen."

### EXERCISES.

Divide up the following passages in the same way as the above, and supply a suitable title for each:—

#### 876. Exercise 1.

The church fronts the west and contains the remains of a noble window, beneath which is a gate, which we found locked. Passing on we came to that part where the monks had lived, but which now served as a farmhouse an open doorway exhibited to us an ancient and gloomy hall, where was some curious and old-fashioned furniture, particularly an ancient rack, in which stood a goodly range of pewter trenchers. A respectable dame kindly welcomed us and invited us to sit down. We entered into conversation with her, and asked her name, which she said was Evans. I spoke some Welsh to her, which pleased her. She said that Welsh people at the present day were so full of fine airs that they were above speaking the old language—but that such was not the case formerly, and that she had known a Mrs. Price, who was housekeeper to the Countess of Mornington, who lived in London upwards of forty years, and at the end of that time prided herself upon speaking as good Welsh as she did when a girl. I spoke to her about the abbey, and asked if she had ever heard of Iolo Goch. She inquired who he was. I told her he was a great bard, and was buried in the abbey. She said she had never heard of him, but that she could show me the portrait of a great poet, and going away, presently returned with a print in a frame.

"There," said she, "is the portrait of Twm o'r Nant, generally called the Welsh Shakespeare."—*George Borrow.*

#### 877. Exercise 2.

The poverty and feebleness of his predecessors in the art of weaving a romance on a framework of historical events have caused their number, and even their existence, to be forgotten. Yet Scott was not the modern creator of the historical romance, although he was the first to bring to its composition an adequate knowledge and an artistic instinct. An interest in past history, a desire to revive in fiction the picturesque elements of long-gone institutions and customs, were of the essence of the Romantic revival. The practitioners of historical novel-writing, before Scott, were not few in number, although few indeed were qualified for the task. The novels produced by them constitute the silliest, feeblest body of work to be found in the annals of prose fiction. Horace Walpole and Mrs. Radcliffe had aimed at the illusion of antiquity, with fair success; but they avoided explicit historical allusions,

and did not attempt to introduce into their stories well-known historical personages. Some of the authors who followed them cast aside their diffidence, and, unmindful of the canon that the principal characters of an historical novel should not themselves be historical, paid the inevitable penalty of their ignorance and rashness.—*W. Raleigh.*

### 878. Exercise 3.

Had Hastings been governor of Madras, Hyder would have been either made a friend, or vigorously encountered as an enemy. Unhappily the English authorities in the south provoked their powerful neighbour's hostility, without being prepared to repel it. On a sudden, an army of ninety thousand men, far superior in discipline and efficiency to any other native force that could be found in India, came pouring through those wild passes which, worn by mountain torrents, and dark with jungle, lead down from the table-land of Mysore to the plains of the Carnatic. This great army was accompanied by a hundred pieces of cannon; and its movements were guided by many French officers, trained in the best military schools of Europe.

Hyder was everywhere triumphant. The sepoys in many British garrisons flung down their arms. Some forts were surrendered by treachery, and some by despair. In a few days the whole open country north of the Coleroon had submitted. The English inhabitants of Madras could already see by night, from the top of Mount St. Thomas, the eastern sky reddened by a vast semicircle of blazing villages. The white villas, to which our countrymen retire after their daily labours of government and of trade, when the cool evening breeze springs up from the bay, were now left without inhabitants; for bands of the fierce horsemen of Mysore had already been seen prowling among the tulip-trees, and near the gay verandas. Even the town was not thought secure, and the British merchants and public functionaries made haste to crowd themselves behind the cannon of Fort St. George.—*Macaulay*

### 879. Exercise 4.

What then is the use of History? and what are its lessons? If it can tell us little of the past and nothing of the future, why waste our time over so barren a study? First, it is a voice for ever sounding across the centuries the laws of right and wrong. Opinions alter, manners change, creeds rise and fall, but the moral law is written on the tablets of eternity. For every false word or unrighteous deed, for cruelty and oppression, for lust or vanity, no price has to be paid at last: not always by the chief offenders, but paid by some one. Justice and truth alone endure and live. Injustice and falsehood may be long-lived, but doomsday comes at last to them, in French revolutions and other terrible ways. That is one lesson of History. Another is, that we should draw no horoscopes; that we should expect little, for what we expect will not come to pass. Revolutions, reformatations—those vast movements into which heroes and saints have flung themselves, in the belief that they were the dawn of the millennium—have not borne the fruit which they looked for. Millenniums are still far away. These great convulsions leave the world changed—perhaps improved—but not improved as the actors in them hoped it would be. . . . The most reasonable anticipations fail us—antecedents the most apposite mislead us; because the conditions of human problems never repeat themselves. Some new feature alters everything—some element which we detect only in its after-operation. . . . Let us approach the subject from another side. If you were asked to point out

the special features in which Shakspeare's plays are so transcendently excellent, you would mention . . . that his stories are not put together, and his characters are not conceived, to illustrate any particular law or principle. They teach many lessons, but not any one prominent above another ; and when we have drawn from them all the direct instruction which they contain, there remains still something unresolved—something which the artist gives, and which the philosopher cannot give. It is in this characteristic that . . . Shakspeare's supreme *truth* lies. He represents real life. His dramas teach as life teaches—neither less nor more. He builds his fabric as nature does, on right and wrong : but he does not struggle to make nature more systematic than she is. In the subtle interflow of good and evil—in the unmerited sufferings of innocence—in the disproportion of penalties to desert—in the seeming blindness with which justice, in attempting to assert itself, overwhelms innocent and guilty in a common ruin—Shakspeare is true to real experience. The mystery of life he leaves as he finds it, and, in his most tremendous positions, he is addressing rather the intellectual emotions than the understanding—knowing well that the understanding in such things is at fault, and the sage as ignorant as the child.

### 880. Exercise 5.

I come now to the second aspect of the case, when we are endeavouring to forecast the lineaments of an enduring peace. A peace, however well initiated by the necessary ethical and geographical changes, will not be worth many years' purchase, if it permits the re-opening of an era of veiled warfare. It is immaterial by what methods, whether of preparation or precaution, or in what forms, naval, military, diplomatic, or economic, the disturbing forces are allowed to operate. We must banish, once for all, from our catalogue of maxims the time-worn fallacy that if you wish for peace you must make ready for war. I am not a sentimentalist, and I need not say that I do not look forward to a sudden regeneration of mankind. Posterity may witness the reopening of the Golden Age, but I fear that we were born out of due season, and that we shall not live to get more than a distant and imaginative glimpse of that beatific vision. For the first time in history, however, we may make an advance to the realisation of an ideal, to which great men of action in the past have been groping their way. What is the ideal ? It is the creation, no longer of a merely European, but of a world-wide polity, uniting the peoples in a confederacy, of which justice will be the base and liberty the corner-stone. The limitation of armaments, the acceptance of arbitration as the natural solvent of international disputes, the relegation of wars of ambition and aggression to the category of obsolete follies—these will be milestones which mark the stages of the road. You will not at first be able to dispense with coercion, military or economic, against the disloyal and the recalcitrant. But we may hope, as has been the case in the civilised societies, so in the international sphere, that positive law with its forcible restraints may gradually recede into the background, and the sovereign authority be recognised to rest in the common sense of mankind. These are changes which, as I have said, will not come in a day. But with them will come profound modifications, not only in the external relations of States, but in the internal structure and the working of the societies of which they are composed. For what is it that distinguishes this war, so far as we and our Allies are concerned, from most of the wars of history ? It has not been a dynastic war. It has not been a capitalistic war. It has been a war in which the free peoples of the world have given their moral support, have

submitted without a murmur to unwonted privations and restraints, and have offered and spent their own and their children's lives. When the storm has passed over and the sky is once more clear, must we not, after such common discipline, see the things that concern our daily lives and our relations to one another in a new and a truer perspective than was ever possible before ?—*Mr. Asquith, Sept. 26, 1917.*

### THE PRÉCIS.

**881. Method.**—Having mastered the preliminary exercises, you will now proceed to précis-writing itself. When you have had some practice in sorting out your material, you should be able to carry out the whole process mentally without writing down the separate ideas. Having collected your material, either in your head or on paper, you should then arrange it in the best way possible. To make the course of the argument or the sequence of events clearer, you may find it advisable to change the order of the original. Sometimes for the sake of effect an author will reserve till the end a thought which would more logically come at the beginning, or sometimes he will introduce a digression in the middle of a paragraph. The précis-writer must notice anything of this kind and arrange his material clearly and logically.

**882. Rewriting.**—Now rewrite the passage. You will generally find it easier or better for your purpose to change the wording of the original, though you are at liberty to retain any words or expressions that you may find useful. A précis that consists of a collection of sentences picked out here and there from the given text will inevitably lack coherence and clearness. Since you are aiming at condensing your material as much as possible, *i.e.*, at packing much meaning into few words, you should try to put into one sentence ideas which your author has taken several sentences to express. For this purpose you will find complex sentences useful (41).

**883. Example.**—Take the following passage :—

One Sunday we determined upon a holiday. It was a bold adventure for us, but we had made up our minds. There was an excursion train to Hastings, and accordingly Ellen, Marie, and myself were at London Bridge Station early in the morning. It was a lovely summer's day in mid-July.—*Mark Rutherford.*

The subject-matter of these four short sentences might be given briefly in a single sentence thus :—

Early one fine July morning Ellen, Marie and I, having boldly determined on a holiday, went to London Bridge Station to catch the excursion train to Hastings.

**884. Clearness.**—A word of warning to beginners : if the piece set is difficult to understand, make up your mind what you think it means, before you begin to write, and then express that meaning as clearly as possible. It is better to give a clear expression of a misinterpretation of the passage than to write vague sentences with no particular meaning, hoping to gloss over your lack of understanding by words picked out from the original more or less at random. You should be able to justify the existence of every word and every sentence in your précis. Be careful not to repeat yourself. Do not introduce any comments of your own ; your business is to reproduce, not to criticise.

**885. Revision.**—Having made a pencil draft of your précis, calculate roughly the number of words and compare it with the number of words in the passage set. If you have been told the required length of your précis, do not exceed that length by more than a few words. If you find that your précis is too long (a fault easier to correct than if it were too short), examine it carefully to see whether you have repeated the same thought, or whether by rewriting some of the sentences you can express the same meaning more shortly. This will generally be found to be possible. But if it is not, omit one or two of the ideas that you consider less important. You have now merely to copy out your précis neatly with due regard to handwriting, spelling, and punctuation (663, 8).

#### 886. Summary.

1. Read through and thoroughly master the contents of the passage.
2. Pick out and arrange in order all the important points.
3. Make up your mind on what would be an appropriate title, if required.
4. Make a rough draft, and condense or enlarge it, so as to ensure that the précis is of the prescribed length.
5. Omit all subsidiary matter (figures of speech, quotations, illustrations), at the same time retaining anything in them that bears directly upon the subject.
6. Take care to make your précis clear and logical : it should read like an ordinary piece of composition, not like a tissue of disjointed statements.
7. Preserve proportion : do not make one part or paragraph longer than another, unless it is so in the original.
8. Make no additions : comments or strictures of your own are out of place.

**EXAMPLE 1.**

**887. Passage.**—Give the substance of the following passage in about 70 words and assign to it an appropriate title :—

In the United States at the present moment there is a boom in the agricultural utilisation of the electric servant, experience having proved that there are over one hundred and thirty distinct operations now performed on a farm by human and animal effort which may be more efficiently carried out, and at a lower expenditure and within shorter time, by electricity. The use of mechanical appliances upon American farms is being encouraged with unabating activity by agricultural colleges, farming experts, and the railways. In that country, as in this, people are being lured from the land by the glamour of the cities, and this migration can only be counterbalanced by the more extensive use of machinery. In America, however, the farmer receives greater assistance than his brother in these islands. He pays for his plant with his crops, and if the outlay be heavy and impossible of fulfilment within a single year, then he is assisted by extended payments. The banks advance money upon his growing crops, and as soon as the grain is garnered all further risk disappears. In return for his delivery of grain the farmer receives a certificate which he can either realise immediately or hold against the fluctuations of the market, meantime expending low premiums for insurance against destruction by fire and other causes. British agriculture demands the infusion of some new blood by the introduction of new methods upon a sufficiently extensive scale and to a degree compatible with local requirements.

**888. Analysis.**

**I. Important points :—**

1. Up-to-date methods of agriculture in U.S.A.
2. Electricity, etc., takes place of labour.
3. Assistance given to farmers.
4. England should follow suit.

**II. Illustrations :—**

1. Extraordinary advance in electricity
2. Lure of the town.
3. Details of financial assistance to farmers.

**889.—Title.**—The Value of American Methods in Agriculture.

**890. Précis.**—British agriculture should draw a lesson from the methods employed in U.S.A., where numerous farming operations are carried out by electricity, the use of machinery (encouraged by farming experts and the railways) taking the place of the dwindling supply of labour, and where, by various financial contrivances the farmer is enabled to raise money on growing crops or, in the case of a bad harvest, to extend repayment over two or three years.

## EXAMPLE 2.

**891. Passage.**—Supply a suitable title for the following passage and give its substance in about 70 words :—

But the labourers of to-day are a very different class from their ancestors of fifty or seventy years ago. They have learnt, at least the most advanced among them, the power of combination. The steady growth of Trades Unions and of Co-operative Societies has taught them habits of self-reliance and of thrift, and has made them look more closely into the economic conditions of industry. The power of capital is now opposed by the strength of united labour, and some of the great strikes of recent years have shown how great this united strength may be. But the power of labour may often in such cases degenerate into what readily becomes its weakness : in any event, the attitude of mutual distrust and hostility between employer and employed is one which those who have the best interests of labour at heart cannot fail to deplore. It is true that the labourer can look back in his history to times when the power of his employer was not used so unselfishly and he himself was miserably oppressed. But it must be remembered also that in many cases the workpeople themselves were by no means always anxious for the improvement of these conditions ; and both masters and men have been slow to recognise the essential identity of interest, and equal rights, of Capital and Labour. If the great principle of mutual interest and co-operation between employer and employed were more fully acted upon, then the industrial history of our country would enter upon a new era of well-founded prosperity.

## 892. Analysis.

## I. Important points :—

1. Labour now realises the power of combination.
2. Has learnt through Trades Unions, etc., self-reliance and thrift.
3. Distrust between Capital and Labour bad for both.
4. Future prosperity depends on co-operation.

## II. Illustrations :—

1. Proof of recent strikes.
2. Masters and men in old days.

**893. Title.**—The Importance of Co-operation between Capital and Labour.

**894. Précis.**—In the last fifty years Labour has learnt through Trades Unions and Co-operative Societies both habits of self-reliance and thrift, and—as is shown by recent strikes—the immense power of combination. Distrust between Capital and Labour, due not entirely to the oppression of the poor by the rich is dangerous to the interests of both, whereas co-operation between the two would lead to a new revival of well-founded prosperity.



**EXAMPLE 3.**

**895. Passage.**—Give the substance of the following passage in about 70 words and assign to it an appropriate title :—

It is true that in this respect Mr. Green does not stand alone. It is also true that from the days of Lord Macaulay historians have justified themselves by his example in the use of rhetorical exaggeration, on the supposition that in no other way is it possible to represent to the dull and jaded perceptions of modern times the stirring incidents and emotions of the past. Mr. Green may think he has sufficient warrant for following a precedent sanctioned by such eminent authority. We think otherwise. Not even in histories written for readers whose judgment and knowledge may be mature enough to prevent their being misled, ought the baseless suggestions of the imagination to intrude upon the strict province of fact. But in histories for the inexperienced and uninitiated, who are sure to take on trust all that their teacher tells them, and are likely to be more impressed by the fictitious than the true, this licence is even less justifiable. Many readers of Mr. Green's book will place implicit confidence in a writer whose style and whose genius they cannot fail to admire. Their conceptions of social progress, their judgment of past events, of the great personages who have moulded and modified our national destiny, will be determined exclusively by a perusal of Mr. Green's pages. In this case, therefore, strict accuracy is more important than in works which make no pretensions to speak with authority.

**896. Analysis.****I. Important points :—**

1. Green's History not strictly accurate.
2. Distortion of facts for the sake of effect.
3. Unjustifiable, especially in a work of authority.
4. The inexperienced will be misled.

**II. Illustrations :—**

1. Precedent created by Macaulay.
2. Stirring past contrasted with jaded present.
3. Different aspects of history : social progress, events, personages.

**897. Title.**—The Importance of Historical Accuracy.

**898.—Précis.**—In his history Green, like Macaulay before him, sacrifices truth to rhetorical exaggeration for the sake of effect. Such subversion of facts is, however, unjustifiable in any history, whether written for students or for beginners. Green speaks with authority, and, considering his admirable style and genius, many readers will accept his conclusions without question, so that in his case strict accuracy is all the more important.

## EXAMPLE 4

**899. Passage.**—Give the substance of the following letters in about a third of their present length, turning them from direct to indirect speech.

## (1) TO DR. SAMUEL JOHNSON.

MY DEAR SIR,

I beg leave to address you in behalf of our friend Dr. Percy, who was much hurt by what you said to him that day we dined at his house ; when, in the course of the dispute as to Pennant's merits as a traveller, you told Percy that he had the resentment of a narrow mind against Pennant, because he did not find everything in Northumberland. Percy is sensible that you did not mean to injure him ; but he is vexed to think that your behaviour to him on that occasion may be interpreted as a proof that he is despised by you, which I know is not the case. I have told him that the charge of being narrow-minded was only as to the particular point in question.

Earl Percy is to dine with General Paoli next Friday, and I should be sincerely glad to have it in my power to satisfy his Lordship how well you think of Dr. Percy, who, I find, apprehends that your good opinion of him may be of very essential consequence ; and who assures me that he has the highest respect and the warmest affection for you.

I have only to add, that my suggesting this occasion for the exercise of your candour and generosity is altogether unknown to Dr. Percy, and proceeds from my goodwill towards him, and my persuasion that you will be happy to do him an essential kindness. I am, more and more, my Dear Sir,

Your most faithful

and affectionate humble servant,

JAMES BOSWELL.

April 21, 1778.

## (2) TO JAMES BOSWELL, Esq.

SIR,

The debate between Dr. Percy and me is one of those foolish controversies, which begin upon a question of which neither party cares how it is decided, and which is, nevertheless, continued to acrimony, by the vanity with which every man resists confutation. Dr. Percy's warmth proceeded from a cause which, perhaps, does him more honour than he could have derived from juster criticism. His abhorrence of Pennant proceeded from his opinion that Pennant had wantonly and indecently censured his patron. His anger made him resolve that Pennant, for having been once wrong, never should be right. Pennant has much in his notions that I do not like ; but still I think him a very intelligent traveller. If Percy is really offended, I am sorry ; for he is a man whom I never knew to offend anyone. He is a man very willing to learn, and very able to teach ; a man out of whose company I never go without having learned something. It is true that he vexes me sometimes, but I am afraid it is by making me feel my own ignorance. So much extension of mind, and so much minute accuracy of enquiry, if you survey your whole circle of acquaintance, you will find so scarce, if you find it at all, that you will value Percy by comparison. Lord Hailes is somewhat like him : but Lord Hailes does not, perhaps, go beyond him in research : and I do not know that he equals him in elegance. Percy's attention to

poetry has given grace and splendour to his studies of antiquity. A mere antiquarian is a rugged being.

Upon the whole, you see that what I might say in sport or petulance to him, is very consistent with full convictions of his merit.

I am, Dear Sir,

Your most, etc.

SAM. JOHNSON.

April 23, 1778.

(3) TO THE REVEREND DR. PERCY, NORTHUMBERLAND HOUSE.

DEAR SIR,

I wrote to Dr. Johnson on the subject of the *Pennantian* controversy, and have received from him an answer which will delight you. I read it yesterday to Dr. Robertson, at the Exhibition; and at dinner to Lord Percy, General Oglethorpe, and others, who dined with us at General Paoli's; who was also a witness to the high testimony to your honour. . . .

I am, with sincere regard,

Your obedient servant.

JAMES BOSWELL.

900. Analysis.

I. Important points :—

1. Dispute between Johnson and Percy *re* Pennant.
2. Johnson called Percy narrow-minded.
3. Boswell wrote asking Johnson's good opinion of Percy.
4. Wished to repeat it to Earl Percy at General Paoli's dinner.
5. Percy ignorant of Boswell's letter.
6. Johnson's reply : Argument unimportant.
7. Percy's prejudice a natural and honourable one.
8. Johnson's high opinion of Percy as a man and a scholar.
9. Boswell sent Johnson's letter to Percy, having first read it to Earl Percy at Paoli's dinner.

II. Illustrations :—

1. Reference to Northumberland.
2. Boswell's opinion of the matter.
3. Dr. Percy's respect for Johnson.
4. Reason Johnson is sometimes vexed by Percy.
5. Percy's unique qualities.
6. Comparison with Hailes.
7. Poetic grace contrasted with rugged antiquarianism.
8. Names of guests at Paoli's dinner.

**901. Précis.**—When Johnson and Boswell were dining with Dr. Percy, a dispute arose in regard to Pennant's merits as a traveller, during which Johnson accused Percy of narrow-mindedness. On April 21, 1778, Boswell wrote to Dr. Johnson telling him that Percy had been much hurt by what he (Johnson) had said, and begging him to express his good opinion of Percy, so that Earl Percy might be informed of it at General Paoli's dinner the following Friday. Boswell added that Percy was unaware of his having written.

On April 23 Johnson replied that the controversy was really of trifling importance. Percy's opinion of Pennant, whom he (Johnson) considered an intelligent traveller, was prejudiced by his belief that Pennant had insulted his patron—a prejudice that did him honour. Johnson said that he was sorry if Percy was offended, as he thought him an extremely able as well as a kind-hearted man, a scholar and an antiquarian of the first rank, equal to Lord Hailes in research, and superior to him in elegance. Whatever Johnson might say in sport or petulance he was fully convinced of Percy's merit.

Boswell then wrote to Percy, enclosing Johnson's letter, and stating that he had read it to Dr. Robertson, Lord Percy, and others at General Paoli's dinner.

### EXAMPLE 5.

**902. Passage.**—Write a précis, not more than two hundred words in length, of the following :—

As Dante, the Italian man, was sent into our world to embody musically the Religion of the Middle Ages, the Religion of our Modern Europe, its Inner Life ; so Shakspeare, we may say, embodies for us the Outer Life of our Europe as developed then, its chivalries, courtesies, humours, ambitions, what practical way of thinking, acting, looking at the world, men then had. As in Homer we may still construe Old Greece ; so in Shakspeare and Dante, after thousands of years, what our modern Europe was, in Faith and in Practice, will still be legible. Dante has given us the Faith or soul ; Shakspeare, in a not less noble way, has given us the Practice or body. This latter also we were to have ; a man was sent for it, the man Shakspeare. Just when that chivalry way of life had reached its last finish, and was on the point of breaking down into slow or swift dissolution, as we now see it everywhere, this other sovereign Poet, with his seeing eye, with his perennial singing voice, was sent to take note of it, to give long-enduring record of it. Two fit men ; Dante, deep, fierce as the central fire of the world. Shakspeare, wide, placid : far-seeing, as the Sun, the upper light of the world. Italy produced the one world-voice ; we English had the honour of producing the other.

Curious enough, how as it were by mere accident, this man came to us. I think always, so great, quiet, complete and self-sufficing is this Shakspeare, had the Warwickshire Squire not prosecuted him for deer-stealing, we had perhaps never heard of him as a Poet ! The woods and skies, the rustic Life of Man in Stratford there, had been enough for this man ! But indeed

that strange outbudding of our whole English Existence, which we call the Elizabethan Era, did not it too come as of its own accord? The "Tree Igdrasil" buds and withers by its own laws,—too deep for our scanning. Yet it does bud and wither, and every bough and leaf of it is there, by fixed eternal laws; not a Sir Thomas Lucy but comes at the hour fit for him. Curious, I say, and not sufficiently considered: how everything does co-operate with all: not a leaf rotting on the highway but is indissoluble portion of solar and stellar systems; no thought, word, or act of man but has sprung withal out of all men, and works sooner or later, recognisably or irrecongnisably, on all men! It is all a Tree: circulation of sap and influences, mutual communication of every minutest leaf with the lowest talon of a root, with every other greatest and minutest portion of the whole. The Tree Igdrasil, that has its roots down in the Kingdom of Hela and Death, and whose boughs overspread the highest Heaven!

In some sense it may be said that this glorious Elizabethan Era with its Shakspeare, as the outcome and flowerage of all which had preceded it, is itself attributable to the Catholicism of the Middle Ages. The Christian Faith, which was the theme of Dante's song, had produced this Practical Life which Shakspeare was to sing. For Religion then, as it now and always is, was the soul of Practice; the primary vital fact in men's life. And remark here, as rather curious, that Middle-Age Catholicism was abolished, so far as Acts of Parliament could abolish it, before Shakspeare, the noblest product of it, made his appearance.

### 903. Analysis.

#### I. Important points:—

1. Shakspeare and Dante both interpret modern Europe.
2. Dante the religious inner life, Shakspeare the practical, outer.
3. Each records a different phase of life: Dante the religion and chivalry of the Middle Ages, Shakspeare the new life of the Elizabethan period.
4. Italy was destined to produce Dante, England Shakspeare. The coming of each was apparently accidental, but really the working out of destiny. No single detail of life but is inwoven with the mighty machinery of the whole.
5. The Elizabethan Era itself an outcome of Medieval Catholicism.
6. Faith precedes Practice.
7. The Reformation preceded the advent of Shakspeare.

#### II. Illustrations:—

1. Details of life of modern Europe.
2. Comparison with Homer's Greece.

3. Reference to Lucy's prosecution of Shakspeare.
4. Metaphor of the Tree Igdrasil.

**904. Précis.**—Shakspeare and Dante both interpret in different ways our modern Europe. Dante embodies the religious, inner life of mediæval, Shakspeare the practical, outer life of Elizabethan, times. The religion and chivalry of Dante's age gradually broke up, to be noted and recorded by Shakspeare. Each age had its own message and its own prophet. Italy produced the enthusiast Dante, England the calm, far-seeing Shakspeare.

The opportune advent of Shakspeare, and the events (such as his prosecution by Sir Thomas Lucy) that led to the unfolding of his genius—even the dawn of the Elizabethan Era itself—might appear to be merely accidental. But indeed nothing is accidental. Every slightest detail of life is inwoven with the mighty machinery of the whole, and is a part of the working out of Destiny. All life is inter-co-operative, like a tree, whose sap flows from the lowest root to the highest branch. The whole universe acts in accordance with unalterable laws—a fact that we often fail to recognise.

Although Catholicism had been by law abolished before Shakspeare's birth, the Elizabethan Era was itself the product of Mediæval Catholicism: Shakspeare produced in practice the faith and religion of Dante.

### EXERCISES.

**905. Exercise 1.**—Give the substance of the following passage in about 70 words and assign to it an appropriate title :—

If you want to strengthen the connexion between the colonies and this country—if you want to see British law held in respect and British institutions adopted and beloved in the colonies, never associate with them the hated name of force and coercion exercised by us, at a distance, over their rising fortunes. Govern them upon a principle of freedom. Defend them against aggression from without. Regulate their foreign relations. These things belong to the colonial connexion. But of the duration of that connexion let them be the judges, and I predict that if you leave them the freedom of judgment, it is hard to say when the day will come when they will wish to separate from the great name of England. Depend upon it, they covet a share in that great name. You will find in that feeling of theirs the greatest security for the connexion. Make the name of England yet more and more an object of desire to the colonies. Their natural disposition is to love and revere the name of England, and this reverence is by far the best security you can have for their continuing, not only to be subjects of the crown, not only to render it allegiance, but to render it that allegiance which is the most precious of all—the allegiance which proceeds from the depths of the heart of man.

906. Exercise 2.—Give the substance of the following passage in about 60 words and assign to it an appropriate title :—

Frederic, surnamed the Great, son of Frederic William, was born in January, 1712. It may safely be pronounced that he had received from nature a strong and sharp understanding, and a rare firmness of temper and intensity of will. As to the other parts of his character, it is difficult to say whether they are to be ascribed to nature or to the strange training which he underwent at his father's hands.

The nature of Frederic William was hard and bad, and the habit of exercising arbitrary power had made him frightfully savage. His rage constantly vented itself to right and left in curses and blows. When his majesty took a walk, every human being fled before him, as if a tiger had broken loose from a menagerie. If he met a lady in the street, he gave her a kick and told her to go home and mind her brats.

But it was in his own house that he was most unreasonable and ferocious. His palace was hell and he the most execrable of fiends. His son Frederic and his daughter Wilhelmina were in an especial manner objects of his aversion. His own mind was uncultivated. He despised literature. He hated infidels, papists, and metaphysicians, and did not very well understand in what they differed from each other. The business of life, according to him, was to drill and to be drilled.

907. Exercise 3.—Express the substance of the following passage in your own words in about a third of its present length :—

It must not be imagined that a walking tour, as some would have us fancy, is merely a better or worse way of seeing the country. There are many ways of seeing landscape quite as good ; and none more vivid, in spite of canting dilettantes, than from a railway train. But landscape on a walking tour is quite accessory. He who is indeed of the brotherhood does not voyage in quest of the picturesque, but of certain jolly humours—of the hope and spirit with which the march begins at morning, and the peace and spiritual repletion of the evening's rest. He cannot tell whether he puts his knapsack on or takes it off with more delight. The excitement of the departure puts him in key for that of the arrival. Whatever he does is not only a reward in itself, but will be further rewarded in the sequel ; and so pleasure leads on to pleasure in an endless chain. It is this that so few can understand ; they will either be always lounging or always at five miles an hour ; they do not play off the one against the other, prepare all day for the evening, and all the evening for the next day. And, above all, it is here that your over-walker fails of comprehension. His heart rises against those who drink their curaçoa in liqueur glasses, when he himself can swill it in a brown john. He will not believe that the flavour is more delicate in the smaller dose. He will not believe that to walk this unconscionable distance is merely to stupefy and brutalise himself, and to come to his inn at night with a sort of frost on his five wits, and a starless night of darkness in his spirit. Not for him the mild, luminous evening of the temperate walker. He has nothing left of man but the physical need for bedtime and a double nightcap ; and even his pipe, if he be a smoker, will be savourless and disenchanting. It is the fate of such an one to take twice as much trouble as is needed to obtain happiness, and miss the happiness in the end ; he is the man of the proverb, in short, who goes further and fares worse.—*R. L. Stevenson.*

906. Exercise 4.—Supply a concise title for the following passage, and express its substance in your own words in about one-third of its present length :—

People confound literature and article-dealing because the plant in both cases is similar, but no two things can be more distinct. Neither the question of money nor that of friend or foe can enter into literature proper. Here, right feeling—or good taste, if this expression be preferred—is alone considered. If a bona fide writer thinks a thing wants saying, he will say it as tersely, clearly, and elegantly as he can. The question whether it will do him personally good or harm, or how it will affect this or that friend, never enters his head, or if it does, it is instantly ordered out again. The only personal gratifications allowed him (apart, of course, from such as are conceded to everyone, writer or no) are those of keeping his good name spotless among those whose opinion is alone worth having and of maintaining the highest traditions of a noble calling. If a man lives in fear and trembling lest he should fail in these respects, if he finds these considerations alone weigh with him, if he never writes without thinking how he shall best serve good causes and damage bad ones, then he is a genuine man of letters. If in addition to this he succeeds in making his manner attractive, he will become a classic. He knows this. He knows, although the Greeks in their mythology forgot to say so, that Conceit was saved to mankind as well as Hope when Pandora clapped the lid on to her box. With the article-dealer on the other hand, money is, and ought to be, the first consideration. Literature is an art ; article-writing, when a man is paid for it, is a trade and none the worse for that ; but pot-boilers are one thing and genuine pictures another.

909. Exercise 5.—Give the substance of the following passage within the limit of about 120 words, and supply an appropriate title for it :—

The first and most obvious reflexions that arise in a man who changes the city for the country, are upon the different manners of the people whom he meets with in those two different scenes of life. By manners I do not mean morals, but behaviour and good-breeding, as they show themselves in the town and in the country.

And here, in the first place, I must observe a very great revolution that has happened in this article of good-breeding. Several obliging deferences, condescensions, and submissions, with many outward forms and ceremonies that accompany them, were first of all brought up among the politer part of mankind, who lived in courts and cities, and distinguished themselves from the rustic species (who on all occasions acted bluntly and naturally) by such a mutual complaisance and intercourse of civilities. These forms of conversation by degrees multiplied, and grew troublesome : the modish world found too great a constraint in them and have therefore thrown most of them aside. Conversation, like the Romish religion, was so encumbered with show and ceremony, that it stood in need of a reformation to retrench its superfluities, and restore its natural good sense and beauty. At present, therefore, an unconstrained carriage, and a certain openness of behaviour, are the height of good-breeding. The fashionable world is grown free and easy : our manners sit more loose upon us ; nothing is so modish as an agreeable negligence. In a word, good-breeding shows itself most, where to an ordinary eye it appears least.

If after this we look on the people of mode in the country, we find in them



the manners of the last age. They have no sooner fetched themselves up to the fashion of a polite world, but the town has dropped them, and are nearer to the first stage of nature, than to those refinements which formerly reigned in the court, and still prevail in the country. One may now know a man that never conversed in the world by his excess of good-breeding. A polite country squire shall make you as many bows in half an hour, as would serve a courtier for a week. There is infinitely more to-do about place and precedence in a meeting of justices' wives, than in an assembly of duchesses.—*Addison*.

910. Exercise 6.—Supply a concise title for the following passage, and express clearly its substance in about a third of its present length :—

In mechanical efforts, you improve by perpetual practice, and you do so infallibly, because the object to be attained is not a matter of taste or fancy or opinion, but of actual experiment, in which you must either do the thing or not do it. If a man is put to aim at a mark with a bow and arrow, he must hit or miss it, that's certain. He cannot deceive himself, or go on shooting wide or falling short, and still fancy that he is making progress. The distinction between right and wrong, between true and false, is here palpable ; and he must either correct his aim or persevere in his error with his eyes open, for which there is neither excuse nor temptation.

If a man is learning to dance on a rope, if he does not mind what he is about, he will break his neck. After that it will be in vain for him to argue that he did not make a false step. His situation is not like that of Goldsmith's pedagogue :—

“ In argument they owned his wondrous skill,  
And e'en though vanquished, he could argue still.”

Danger is a good teacher, and makes apt scholars. So are disgrace, defeat, exposure to immediate scorn and laughter. There is no opportunity in such cases for self-delusion, no idling time away, no being off your guard (or you must take the consequences)—neither is there any room for humour or caprice or prejudice.

If the Indian Juggler were to play tricks in throwing up the three case-knives, which keep their positions like the leaves of a crocus in the air, he would cut his fingers. I can make a very bad antithesis without cutting my fingers. The tact of style is more ambiguous than that of double-edged instruments.—*Hazlitt*.

911. Exercise 7.—Express the substance of the following passage in about a third of its present length, and supply an appropriate title for it :—

The feudal and ecclesiastical order of the old mediæval world were both alike threatened by the power that has so strangely sprung up in the midst of them. Feudalism rested on local isolation, on the severance of kingdom from kingdom and barony from barony, on the distinction of blood and race, on the supremacy of material or brute force, on an allegiance determined by accidents of place and social position. The University, on the other hand, was a protest against this isolation of man from man. The smallest school was European and not local. Not merely every province of France, but every people of Christendom, had its place among the ‘ nations ’ of Paris or Padua. A common language, the Latin tongue, superseded within academical bounds the warring tongues of Europe. A common intellectual kinship and rivalry

took the place of the petty strifes which parted province from province or realm from realm. What the Church and Empire had both aimed at and both failed in, the knitting of Christian nations together into a vast commonwealth, the Universities for a time actually did. Dante felt himself as little a stranger in the 'Latin' quarter around Mont Ste Geneviève as under the arches of Bologna. Wandering Oxford scholars carried the writings of Wyclif to the libraries of P'agne. In England the work of provincial fusion was less difficult or important than elsewhere, but even in England work had to be done. The feuds of Northerner and Southerner which so long disturbed the discipline of Oxford witnessed at any rate to the fact that Northerner and Southerner had at last been brought face to face in its streets. And here as elsewhere the spirit of national isolation was held in check by the larger comprehensiveness of the University.—*J. R. Green.*

**912. Exercise 8.**—Summarise in your own words as reported speech the following passage, reducing it to about a third of its present length :—

"The fact is—and I do not say so with any expression of scorn or with any feeling of triumph—the aristocracy of England which so lately governed the country has abdicated, and its most boastful leader, Lord Derby, its chief, in its name, and for it, has capitulated to the people. One hundred and eighty years ago there was a revolution in England. The revolution of 1688 had this effect. It stripped the monarch of absolute power, and, pretending to confer it upon the nation, conferred it mainly upon the nobility. The Bill of 1832, combined with the Bill of last year, gave us another revolution. Power has not been taken from the Crown and given to the nobility, but it has been taken from the nobility and has been given henceforth and for ever to the people. The form of aristocratic power yet remains. In every country the possessors of great wealth are likely to have power. I am not complaining of this ; but I am stating a fact, which must be plain to all. But although the influence of wealth is great, the spirit of the country has changed, and the centre of power has been moved. We are, in fact,—do not let us attempt to conceal it from ourselves,—standing on the threshold of a new career. Being there, we need no longer have recourse to the arguments which we have often heard from platforms in times past, such indeed as I sometimes have been ready to use. There is no longer a contest between us and the House of Lords ; we need no longer bring charges against a selfish oligarchy ; we no longer dread the power of the territorial magnates ; we no longer feel ourselves domineered over by a class ; we feel that denunciation and invective now would be out of place ; the power which hitherto has ruled over us is shifted. We now have to appeal to you, to address our arguments to you, to couple facts—if we are capable of doing so—with wisdom, and, if we may, to counsel you, so that you who are now part of the government of the country may show in the acts which you do the wisdom which you have learned. The fate of this great nation is in the nation's hands ; come weal, come woe, the responsibility of the future must rest with the mass of the people, for they are now admitted, at least within the boroughs, to a large share of representation, and thereby of political power."—*from a speech by John Bright to an audience of working men after the Reform Act of 1867.*

**913. Exercise 9.**—State concisely the purpose with which the following letter was written, and give its substance in about a third of its present length (500 words) :—

SOUTHAMPTON,  
October, 1769

MR. MAYOR AND GENTLEMEN,

As an honorary member of this Corporation, I have taken an oath to maintain and support the rights, privileges, and property of this respectable body, and I have taken some pains to understand what it is that I am to maintain and support in consequence of that oath. In course of this inquiry some things may have occurred to me which perhaps have escaped the observation of those gentlemen who have not examined into this subject so thoroughly as I have done.

I therefore think it my duty as a Burgess to put the gentlemen who are the acting part of the Corporation in mind that the Scheme which is resolved on, by some persons in the town for endeavouring to procure a new Act of Parliament for paving the streets of this town under the direction of a Set of Commissioners, who are to be entirely independent of the Corporation, is a most violent encroachment upon the right and privilege of the Magistracy of this town; for besides that the government of the town in general is placed in your hands by your Charter, this very article of authority is particularly vested in you as Magistrates by a former Act of Parliament which is still in force. And if we may judge from what we have seen, many other articles of encroachment upon your rights, privileges, and even your property, will probably be inserted in the new Act. This scheme, if it be carried into execution, will also bring a burthensome tax upon the inhabitants who have a right to be secured by you from every kind of oppression.

For these reasons, Gentlemen, if you have any regard to your oath, if you have any regard to your duty, if you have any regard to your credit, I beg leave to refer it to your very serious consideration, whether you are not bound by all those ties to oppose this measure by a counter petition under your common seal, and to contribute to the expense of such opposition out of your common chest, in which you will have the assistance of a great majority of the inhabitants, who are ready and desirous, even to a degree of impatience, to join with you in such a counter petition and in the expense of supporting it.

If, Gentlemen, you neglect to exert yourselves on so signal an occasion, you will have only yourselves to blame for the consequences of such neglect, and you will have no reason to be surprised if you should soon dwindle into mere ciphers. When that happens you may e'en burn your Charter and make a present of your maces to the new commissioners.

I have now, Gentlemen, according to the best of my ability, discharged the duty of a faithful Burgess, which I shall always endeavour to be, and that you may all do the same, on this and every other occasion, is the daily prayer of one who is with the greatest respect and esteem, Gentlemen,

Your very zealous well-wisher and most humble servant.

J. SPEED.

**§14. Exercise 10.**— Supply a title for the following passage, and express clearly its substance in about a third of its present length (480 words).

Pitt's speech was just as empty and wordy as a maiden speech on such an occasion might be expected to be. But the fluency and the personal advantages of the young orator instantly caught the ear and eye of his audience. In our time, the audience of a member of Parliament is the nation. The three or four hundred persons who may be present while a speech is delivered may be pleased or disgusted by the voice and action of the orator; but, in

the reports which are read the next day by hundreds of thousands, the difference between the noblest and the meanest figure, between the richest and the shrillest tones, between the most graceful and the most uncouth gesture, altogether vanishes. A hundred years ago, scarcely any report of what passed within the walls of the House of Commons was suffered to get abroad. In those times, therefore, the impression which a speaker might make on the persons who actually heard him was everything. His fame out of doors depended entirely on the report of those who were within the doors. In the Parliaments of that time, therefore, as in the ancient commonwealths, those qualifications which enhance the immediate effect of a speech, were far more important ingredients in the composition of an orator than at present. All those qualifications Pitt possessed in the highest degree. On the stage, he would have been the finest Brutus or Coriolanus ever seen. Those who saw him in his decay, when his health was broken, when his mind was untuned, when he had been removed from that stormy assembly of which he thoroughly knew the temper, and over which he possessed unbounded influence, to a small, a torpid, and an unfriendly audience, say that his speaking was then, for the most part, a low, monotonous muttering, audible only to those who sat close to him, that when violently excited, he sometimes raised his voice for a few minutes, but that it soon sank again into an unintelligible murmur. Such was the Earl of Chatham; but such was not William Pitt. His figure, when he first appeared in Parliament, was strikingly graceful and commanding, his features high and noble, his eye full of fire. His voice, even when it sank to a whisper, was heard to the remotest benches; and when he strained it to its fullest extent, the sound rose like a swell of the organ of a great cathedral, shook the house with its peal, and was heard through lobbies and down staircases, to the Court of Requests and the precincts of Westminster Hall. He cultivated all these eminent advantages with the most assiduous care. His action is described by a very malignant observer as equal to that of Garrick. His play of countenance was wonderful; he frequently disconcerted a hostile orator by a single glance of indignation or scorn.—*Macaulay*.

915. Passages suitable for additional practice in Précis-writing.

1. SCOTT, *Ivanhoe*, Chapter 1. "A circumstance . . . southern nations of Europe"
2. MACAULAY, *Essay on Clive*. "Clive was now 25 years old . . . without a blow."
3. HAZLITT, *Table Talk*, On Going a Journey. "One of the pleasantest things . . . coat of emerald."
4. SOUTHEY, *Life of Nelson*, Chapter 9. Last paragraph but one.
5. ADDISON, *Essay on the Royal Exchange*. "This grand business . . . Indostan."
6. LORD CHESTERFIELD, *Letter to his Son*, October 16, 1746. "The art of pleasing . . . talk of something else."
7. BURKE, *Present Discontents*, Defence of Party. "It is not enough . . . those by which we are held to our country."
8. CARLYLE, *Past and Present*, Book II, Chapter 2. "Another world truly . . . spirits invisible."
9. RUSKIN, *Stones of Venice*, i. 11. "Science and art are commonly distinguished . . . 'Vidi'."
10. MILTON, *Areopagitica*. "Good and evil we know in the field of this world . . . books promiscuously read."

## CHAPTER XIV.

### ESSAY-WRITING AND LETTER-WRITING.

#### OUTLINES OF ESSAYS.

**916. Expansion of Outlines.**—Before attempting to write a formal Essay, the young student should exercise himself in expanding an outline of some short narrative into a piece of composition. Five examples of simple fables or stories outlined and expanded are given below as models; and these are followed by a number of outlines for the student himself to expand into continuous narrative. Figures, when inserted in the outlines, indicate paragraphs.

#### 1. FABLE OF THE LION AND THE MOUSE.

##### OUTLINE.

A mouse runs over a sleeping lion—the lion catches it—spares its life—the same lion is caught in a net—roars with distress—the mouse hears—nibbles the net—releases the lion. *Moral*

##### EXPANSION.

A lion, wearied with the chase, was lying asleep in his den, when he was waked from his slumbers by a mouse that ran over him. The lion started up in a rage and set his paw upon the mouse before it could escape. At the point of being killed, the mouse in trembling accents begged for mercy, and the noble beast let it go free.

Not long after, the lion, roaming through the jungle, fell into the toils of the hunter. Struggling in vain to release himself from the strong net, he roared aloud in his distress. The mouse, hearing the cry of his benefactor, speedily ran to his aid, gnawed through the meshes of the net, and set the lion at liberty.

*Moral*: The least may help the greatest.

#### 2. FABLE OF THE LION, THE BEAR, AND THE FOX.

##### OUTLINE.

A lion and a bear find a dead fawn—dispute possession—fight till both are exhausted—a fox, seeing their weakness, carries off the fawn—their

sorrow that they did not divide the carcass instead of fighting over it for the benefit of a rogue. *Moral.*

EXPANSION.

A lion and a bear, hunting together in the forest, came upon the carcass of a fawn. Each claimed to have spied it first, and neither would consent to a division of the booty. The dispute waxed so hot that they came to blows, and the fight was so equal and so fierce that at last they could fight no longer. Faint with loss of blood and gasping for breath, they lay on the ground, unable to move.

Just then a fox came by, who, seeing that they were too weak to prevent him, seized and carried off the prize.

"Alas!" cried the combatants, "what fools we have been! Instead of amicably dividing the prey between us, we have fought and nearly killed each other only to fatten a rogue."

*Moral:* Quarrelsome people often lose what they quarrel over.

### 3. STORY OF SIR PHILIP SIDNEY.

OUTLINE.

Sidney, wounded in the battle of Zutphen, is parched with thirst—water is brought him—sees wounded soldier wistfully eyeing the bottle—hands bottle to soldier: "Thy necessity is greater than mine"—dies sixteen days later.

EXPANSION.

In the battle of Zutphen, fought in the cause of liberty against the tyrant Philip of Spain, Sir Philip Sidney displayed the most undaunted and enterprising courage. He had two horses killed under him, and, whilst mounting a third, was wounded by a musket-shot out of the trenches, which broke the bone of his thigh. He had to walk about a mile and a half to the camp: and, being faint with loss of blood and parched with thirst, he called for drink, which was instantly brought him; but, as he was putting the vessel to his mouth, a poor wounded soldier, who happened to be carried by him at that instant, looked at it with wistful eyes. The gallant and generous Sidney took the bottle from his mouth without drinking, and, handing it to the soldier, said, "Thy necessity is yet greater than mine." Sixteen days after, the virtuous Sidney breathed his last, in the thirty-second year of his age.

### 4. STORY OF SELF-SACRIFICE.

OUTLINE.

1. A Russian nobleman and his wife with their servant were driving in a four-horsed carriage through a wood, when they were pursued by wolves. To gain time for escape, first one horse and then another were let loose and devoured by the pack.

2. But, the pursuit still continuing, at last the nobleman's servant cast himself to the wolves to save his master and mistress.

EXPANSION.

Once upon a time a Russian nobleman, with his wife, was going to a distant city, in a carriage drawn by four horses. The passage lay through a wood. When he had come within a few miles of the city, some fierce

wolves issued out of the wood, and pursued the carriage. The servant of the nobleman, seeing the wolves come near, begged his master to let him abandon one of the horses to the wolves. The nobleman consented, and one of the horses was let loose. They seized the horse, and soon tore it in pieces and devoured it. Thus the carriage passed some distance unmolested. But the wolves, become more savage by tasting blood, pursued the carriage and came close to it once more. Again another of the horses was let loose, and again they proceeded a great distance without hindrance.

But no sooner had they devoured it than they came rushing over the fields, fiercer than ever. The servant now cried to his master: "There is no other way of safety than for me to give myself up to these ferocious beasts. While they are thus occupied, you will get time enough to escape. All I ask is that you should act as a father to my wife and children when I am gone." The nobleman hesitated, but as there was no prospect of escape for any of the party, he was forced to consent. Thereupon the servant leaped from the carriage into the midst of the wolves. Thus while they were feasting upon him, the nobleman and his wife escaped safely from their jaws.

## 5. STORY OF THE JUDGE AND THE PRINCE.

### OUTLINE.

1. Prince Henry, exasperated at the punishment of one of his dissolute companions, strikes Judge Gascoigne in open court, who commits him to prison.

2. Upon hearing of the matter, the king declares himself happy in having so courageous a judge and so submissive a son.

3. The prince, when king, instead of disgracing the judge as the latter had expected, praises his strict administration of justice.

### EXPANSION.

Henry, Prince of Wales, son of Henry IV., was notorious for all kinds of debauchery, and even chose to be surrounded by a set of wretches, who took pride in committing the most illegal acts with the Prince at their head. The king was not a little mortified at this degeneracy in his eldest son, although he had displayed repeated proofs of his valour and generosity. Such were the excesses to which he ran, that one of his dissolute companions having been brought to trial before Sir William Gascoigne, Chief Justice of the King's Bench, for some misdemeanour, the Prince was so exasperated at the issue of the trial that he struck the judge in open court. The judge, who knew the reverence that was due to his station, behaved with the dignity that became his office, and immediately ordered the Prince to be committed to prison.

When the transaction was reported to the king, he could not help exclaiming in transport, "Happy is the king that has a magistrate endowed with courage to execute the laws upon such an offender, and still more happy in having a son willing to submit to such a chastisement!"

When the young prince succeeded to the throne, the Chief Justice expected nothing but disgrace. But he met with praises instead of reproaches, and was exhorted to persevere in the same rigorous and impartial execution of the laws.

### 917. Outlines for Expansion.

#### 1. FABLE OF THE FOX AND THE CROW.

A fox sees a crow perched on a tree with a piece of cheese in her mouth—praises crow's beautiful plumage—longs to hear her sweet voice—the crow opens her beak to sing—drops the cheese, which is snapt up by the fox. *Moral.*

#### 2. FABLE OF THE BOY AND THE WOLF.

A shepherd-boy tends his flock near a forest—cries out "Wolf!" for fun—the neighbours come—the boy laughs at them—one day a wolf really comes—the boy cries for help—no one believes him—the sheep are devoured. *Moral.*

#### 3. FABLE OF THE SICK LION.

A lion is too old to hunt—retires to his den—gives out that he is very ill—beasts come to visit him—are devoured—the fox declines to enter, because all the footprints are towards the den—and none back again. *Moral.*

#### 4. FABLE OF THE HARE AND THE TORTOISE.

A hare jeers at a tortoise's slow pace—the tortoise challenges him to a race—the hare takes a nap by the way—oversleeps himself—the tortoise jogs steadily along—wins the race. *Moral.*

#### 5. FABLE OF THE FROGS DESIRING A KING.

The frogs ask Jupiter for a king—he throws them a log—the frogs at first are alarmed by the splash—soon find the log is sluggish and stupid—beg Jupiter for a better king—he sends them a stork—the stork gobbles them up. *Moral.*

#### 6. FABLE OF THE GRASSHOPPER AND THE ANTS.

Ants are busy storing grain on fine winter's morning—a grasshopper, perished with cold and hunger, begs for food—the ants ask what she did all the summer—she says that she sang—"You sang, did you?" reply the ants, "Go and dance now." *Moral.*

#### 7. FABLE OF THE DOG IN THE MANGER.

A dog lies on the hay in a manger—an ox comes to feed—the dog snarls and refuses to stir—the ox complains, "You cannot eat the hay yourself, and will not let those eat it who can." *Moral.*

#### 8. FABLE OF THE HORSE AND THE STAG.

A horse and a stag fight about right of pasture—the horse is defeated—takes a man on his back to help him—the stag is



driven away—the man keeps the horse in harness as his servant.  
*Moral.*

#### 9. FABLE OF THE COUNTRYMAN AND THE ADDER.

A countryman finds a half-frozen adder—pities it—takes it home to the fire—the warmth revives the adder—it attacks the children—the countryman kills it. *Moral.*

#### 10. FABLE OF THE CROW AND THE PITCHER.

A thirsty crow finds a pitcher—the water in it is beyond his reach—he drops pebbles into the water—raises it to the brim—drinks at his ease. *Moral.*

#### 11. STORY OF THE DOG OF MONTARGIS.

1. Three days after the strange disappearance of Aubrey de Montdidier, his friend Sieur de Narsac was awakened by a half-starved dog, his friend's constant companion. The dog led him into the Forest of Bondy, where, buried in a hole, was discovered Aubrey's murdered body.

2. Soon after, the dog, accompanying de Narsac, met the Chevallier Macaire in the street and flew at him. The same thing occurred a few days later; and yet once again, when the dog singled out Macaire from among the king's courtiers.

3. The king ordered a trial combat between the man and the dog. Macaire lost his nerve, the dog pinned him by the throat, and he confessed his crime and was executed. The combat was carved on a stone mantelpiece in the Castle of Montargis.

#### 12. STORY OF ANDROCLES AND THE LION.

1. Androcles, a Roman slave in North Africa, ran away from his master. Lost in the desert, he entered a cave and fell asleep.

2. He was waked by a lion standing at the entrance. The beast did not attack him, and he found it had a thorn in its foot. This Androcles extracted.

3. For three years he lived in the cave with the lion, which caught food for him.

4. At last Androcles was captured, taken to Rome, and condemned to be torn in pieces by wild beasts.

5. In the great Circus a lion was let loose to devour him, but, instead of attacking him, it fawned upon him and licked his hands.

6. Then the whole story was told, Androcles was released, and the lion was given him as a companion.

### 13. BUCEPHALUS.

1. In the days of Philip, King of Macedon, a Thessalian offered him a beautiful horse, named Bucephalus, for a large sum. The horse was tried, but would suffer no one to come near him.

2. Then the young Alexander took the horse in hand, stroked him, led him about, and finally rode him round the course, to the admiration of his father.

3. Henceforth for ten years Bucephalus carried Alexander the Great through all his battles into the heart of Asia, till at last the old horse died on the banks of the Jhelum, and received a splendid funeral.

### 14. BOADICEA.

1. Boadicea, wife of one of the British kings, was on his death cruelly treated by the Romans.

2. She rose in rebellion, took and laid waste a number of Roman colonies, among them London, and killed thousands of Romans.

3. But the Roman general collected his forces, and taking up a strong position, awaited the enemy's attack.

4. Led by Boadicea, the Britons fought with fury, but were utterly defeated, whereupon the queen poisoned herself.

### 15. THE BATTLE OF CRECY.

1. On August 26, 1346, Edward III. with a small but well-equipped army awaited the attack of the French under Philip.

2. As the French archers advanced, a thunderstorm relaxed their bowstrings, and they fled before the arrows of the English, who had kept their bows in cases.

3. The division under the Black Prince bore the brunt of the fight, but Edward refused to send him aid, saying, "Let the boy win his spurs."

4. Many of the bravest French knights were slain, and this battle showed that yeomen could fight nobles and rout them.

### 16. STORY OF JOAN OF ARC.

1. When the English, after conquering a great part of France, were besieging Orleans, Joan of Arc, an ignorant peasant girl, but gentle and good, felt great pity for the realm of France. She thought she heard voices in the air bidding her aid King Charles.

2. At first she was laughed at, but at length she persuaded the king to put her at the head of an army, for the relief of Orleans. The English were struck with terror, and Orleans was saved.

3. Joan remained with the army, but was taken prisoner and handed over to the English, who burnt her as a witch in the market-place of Rouen on May 30, 1431.

#### 17. THE DEFENCE OF RORKE'S DRIFT.

1. On Jan. 22, 1879, news of the disaster at Isandula reached Rorke's Drift, and Lieutenants Chard and Bromhead with 139 men hurriedly threw up two lines of defence, an outer one of mealie bags and an inner one of biscuit boxes; powder and shot were placed within easy reach.

2. Presently 500 Zulus advanced to the attack, but were met with a volley which discomfited them, and they retired to wait for the main body of their comrades.

3. These soon arrived, and the 3000 savages poured a terrific fire upon the English from a hill, and again and again assaulted the defences, only to be beaten back.

4. At length the fire from the hill became so hot that the English were obliged to retire behind their second line of defence, and the hospital had to be abandoned. But the brave soldiers saved the sick and wounded.

5. At fall of night the Zulus retired, but kept up a steady fire for some time. The next day a British force came to the rescue.

#### 18. STORY OF GRACE DARLING.

1. Grace Darling, 22 years old, lived with her old father on Longstone, one of the Farne Islands off the coast of Northumberland.

2. At 4 a.m. on Sept. 5, 1838, the steamer *Forfarshire* with 63 persons on board, caught in a storm and fog, struck on a reef off this island.

3. A panic ensued. Part of the crew left the ship in a boat, part were swept away by the waves, and 9 were left on the wreck.

4. They were deserted from the lighthouse. At the risk of their lives, Grace and her father rowed through a raging sea to the wreck and rescued the sufferers.

5. Praised and admired by all, Grace remained simple and modest, as if nothing had happened. She died of consumption, Oct. 20, 1842. Her monument stands in Bamborough churchyard.

6. This is true heroism—to risk one's life to save the lives of others.

#### THE ESSAY.

**918. Three Classes of Essays.**—Essays may be divided into three classes—(1) *Descriptive*, (2) *Narrative*, and (3) *Reflective or Expository*—according as they consist of a description of some

place or thing, a narrative of some event, or reflections upon or the exposition of some subject, which is generally of an abstract nature. Very often description and narration are combined in the same Essay, and both may be used to illustrate or support opinions that are put forward in a reflective Essay.

**919. The Composition of Essays.**—In setting himself to compose an essay the inexperienced writer often finds it extremely difficult to think of enough to say even when he has a fair knowledge of a subject. A good plan for him to follow is to cross-question himself about the subject set, and so draw out his ideas till he realises that he has sufficient subject-matter at his disposal. Thus, if the subject is ‘Kindness to Animals,’ the writer would ask himself—What animals are unkindly treated and by whom? (Bullocks, horses, and other beasts of burden, by their drivers; cats, dogs, insects, etc., by thoughtless boys, say how.) Why ought we to be kind to animals? (They cannot resent ill-treatment; they are our benefactors; point out in what ways.) How can we show kindness to animals? (Sufficient food and shelter, and no overwork. Some people make pets of animals.) Are there instances of animals appreciating kindness? (Story of Androcles and the lion, or any other example.)

By this method of cross-questioning the writer will gain confidence in his powers and be encouraged to *make a start*, which, hard as it is in most things, is hardest of all in written composition.

**920. Rules.**—In composing an Essay the following rules should be observed :—

(1) If more subjects than one are given, read them over and *make your choice quickly*. The subject once chosen and the Essay begun, it is generally a mistake and always a serious loss of time to make a change of subject.

(2) Note carefully the *wording* of the subject, so as to grasp its exact meaning and scope, and then keep to the point. Do not drift into extraneous topics. Thus, if the subject is ‘The Advantages of Travel,’ do not enlarge upon its drawbacks; if the subject is ‘The Rainy Season,’ do not introduce topics that belong to the Hot or the Cold Seasons. Digressions are inadmissible in a short Essay.

(3) Before commencing, think over the subject, so as to see what are the questions and considerations to which it most naturally gives rise. *Note down in brief any thoughts* (whether facts or illustrations) that occur to you. These can be placed

in their right order later. A thought is easily lost unless it is promptly recorded. Such thoughts will help you in drawing up or filling in the outline, and any that are irrelevant can be omitted.

(4) If an outline (or headings) is given for you to expand, *follow it closely*, and do not either introduce matter not included in it or deviate from the order in which its topics are arranged.

(5) If no outline is given, *make one*. It is invaluable in furnishing you with a concise notion of what you have to write.

The following rules for outline-making will be found useful:—

(a) First put down the principal ideas or main topics, and denote them by numbers (1), (2), (3), etc.; then collect the subordinate ideas or sub-topics, and denote them by letters (*a*), (*b*), (*c*), etc., as in the examples given below.

(b) Word your topics as *compactly* as possible.

(c) Arrange your topics in their *natural* order. See (9) below.

(d) See that sub-topics correspond with the ideas contained in their respective main topics.

(e) Keep in mind the amount of time at your disposal, and if the time is too short for much detail, select only such topics as are essential for a clear exposition of the subject.

(6) Do not waste your time over a long introduction or insert prefatory remarks (such as 'I take up my pen,' etc.), but *start at once upon your subject*. End with a definite statement, not with a postscript of something previously omitted. Anything forgotten must be inserted in its proper place. It often adds to the clearness of an Essay to begin by stating what the general subject is and what are the different heads under which you propose to consider it.

(7) Divide your Essay into *paragraphs*, which should be indented.<sup>1</sup> Each paragraph should deal with one and only one main theme, and should be made up of sentences that hang together because of their common relation to the main theme. Begin a new paragraph when a new topic is entered upon, and see that this new paragraph contains that which comes next in order of thought to the paragraph which it follows. A short, pithy sentence at the beginning of a paragraph is often very effective.

<sup>1</sup> That is, the first line of the paragraph should be begun about an inch further to the right than the rest.

(8) Endeavour to *indicate the logical sequence* of the parts by transitional sentences, that is, sentences that carry the reader along from one topic to another. Such are:—‘The next thing we did was’ etc.; ‘After leaving the building we’ etc.; ‘But this was not the only thing we saw’; ‘So much for the situation of the town’; ‘Less noticeable perhaps, but more interesting, is’ etc.; ‘At the same time there are other things to be considered’; ‘But this is not all’; ‘Whether, then, you succeed or fail, you must not forget’ etc.; ‘I say this, because’ etc.

(9) If the Essay is of the Descriptive class, divisions according to *place* may often be adopted. Thus the subject ‘The City of Calcutta’ might be described in five paragraphs treating of (a) the Native quarter, (b) the European quarter, (c) the Maidan and Eden Gardens, (d) the Fort, (e) the River and Port. If the Essay is of the Narrative class, *divisions according to time* are natural. Thus the subject ‘What I do in a day’ might be divided into three paragraphs relating the events of (a) the morning, (b) the afternoon, and (c) the evening. In the case of Reflective and Expository Essays, the divisions should be *logical* and free from confusion. Thus for the subject of ‘Superstition’ the paragraphs might be four: (a) what it is and what gives rise to it, (b) examples of it, (c) why it is harmful, (d) remedies against it. But do not mix up the remedies with the examples, or the causes with the results.

(10) *Observe proportion*, that is, let each part of the Essay have the prominence due to its relative importance. If the subject is ‘Town and Country Life,’ do not give three quarters of your space to treating of Town Life, and leave one quarter for Country Life. Points that have a direct bearing upon your subject should have the most space, to the exclusion, if time and space require it, of less relevant points.

(11) *Write simply* and in your own words, and do not feel bound to introduce profound or original ideas. Essay-writing for Matriculation students is more a test of the candidate’s power of expressing himself clearly and grammatically in English than of the extent of his reading or the depth of his reflections.

(12) *Avoid the repetition* of words (except for the sake of clearness) or ideas. If your topics are well arranged, it should not be necessary to refer back to or to repeat previous statements. Do not insert ‘etc’ or ‘and so on,’ ‘and the like’ in your composition. Know what you have to say, and say it.

(13) When the Essay is finished, *read it carefully through*. Amend any sentence that appears to be obscure, and correct any errors in spelling, punctuation, grammar, or syntax. See that the handwriting is legible and free from blots, and that there is a margin of at least an inch on the left-hand side of the paper.

921. (1) **Descriptive Essay**.—The subject of a Descriptive Essay may be some natural object, animate or inanimate; some place or country; or some object of interest, such as a palace, a fort, a ship, etc. The following is an example of an outline:—

*Subject*:—‘Describe the town or village in which your school is situated.’

#### OUTLINE.

- (1) Name of town or village: its meaning and the reason of its being given.
- (2) Situation:—
  - (a) In what Province and District.
  - (b) Distance from Capital.
  - (c) On the bank of what river or on what line of railway.
- (3) Natural features:—
  - (a) Soil and climate.
  - (b) Scenery.
  - (c) Cause of the selection of the site.
- (4) Dimensions:—
  - (a) Area.
  - (b) Length and direction of main streets.
  - (c) Population.
- (5) Special characteristics:—
  - (a) Buildings: temples, schools, courts, bridges, etc. Water supply, drainage, etc.
  - (b) Inhabitants: race, religion, caste.
  - (c) Chief trade.
- (6) History: important events that have happened in the neighbourhood.

922 The following is an example of a more extended outline, the facts and illustrations being arranged under their several heads. Having sketched such a picture in all its details, the student should not find much difficulty in writing a clear and connected account of the subject.

*Subject*:—‘The Elephant.’

#### OUTLINE.

- (1) Class:—  
Mammal: elephant largest quadruped.
- (2) Order:—  
Ungulata: two existing species—African and Indian. African the taller, with larger tusks and ears.

(3) **Physical qualities :—**

Massive size ; greatest height, 11 feet ; trunk and tusks ; rounded feet with five toes ; tread almost noiseless : can fill trunk with water from stomach. Strongest land animal known to man ; uses its weight to push down obstacles ; can easily carry 7 or 8 men.

(4) **Where found :—**

In all parts of Central Africa ; abundant in Ceylon, and in forests skirting Himalayas, Garo Hills, Barmah.

(5) **Habits :—**

(a) When wild : herds of from 30 to 100 led by tusker ; feeds on bark and leaves of trees and edible roots ; destroys crops.

(b) When tame : fed on leaves and grain ; ridden by mahout, astride on neck ; guided by iron goad ; taken to river to bathe. Very docile, is tamed in a few weeks ; fond of those who treat it well ; sometimes revengeful ; tale of tailor who pricked elephant's trunk.

(6) **How captured :—**

(a) By noosing.

(b) By pitfalls.

(c) By driving into *kherdāhs*.

(7) **Usefulness to man :—**

(a) In ancient times : used in war by Carthaginians and Moguls ; carried turrets filled with soldiers.

(b) In modern times : for war purposes—drags guns, carries tents, stores, etc. ; in peace—useful for crossing swampy ground or forests, for shooting tigers from howdah, for stacking timber and for state processions.

**923. Description and Narration combined.**—This is the kind of Essay which the student is most often required to write in an Examination. Below is given an example of (A) an outline, and (B) the outline expanded into an Essay.

*Subject :—*‘Give a brief account of any journey you have made.’

(A) OUTLINE.

(1) **Date and object :—**

Two years ago ; to see brother ill in Calcutta.

(2) **Method of travelling :—**

Kishnaghur to Hanskhally and thence to Buggoolah by tea-carriage ; Buggoolah to Calcutta by rail.

(3) **Events by the way :—**

Country seen from the high road ; train not crowded ; branch line to Jessore ; Hoogly College seen from Nychatty ; Barrackpore Station.

(4) **Arrival :—**

Father at Station ; crowded streets contrasted with quiet of country ; home ; brother better.



## (B) ESSAY.

Two years ago, while staying with my father-in-law at Kishnaghur, I received one morning a letter from home, telling me to leave at once for Calcutta, as my elder brother had suddenly been taken ill. Though grieved at the sad news, I wasted no time in useless regret, but, hastily putting my things together, bade goodbye to my kind entertainers. A gharry was quickly called to the door, and within half an hour of getting the letter, I was driving rapidly through the narrow bazaar of the little town of Kishnaghur on my way to the high road leading to the railway.

The distance from Kishnaghur to the Buggoolah railway-station is about twelve miles, and the drive, when once the narrow and winding bazaar is past, is ordinarily pleasant enough. The road is kept in good order, and is so raised that a good view may be gained of the neighbouring country with its villages surrounded by trees and the wide expanse of rice-fields, stretching as far as eye can reach. At Hanskally, about three miles from the railway, travellers have to cross a stream in a ferry boat, and a change of carriages is necessary, which is often a cause of delay. However, I luckily found a gharry disengaged, and reached the station in plenty of time to get my ticket without being hurried. In a few minutes the train steamed up to the platform, and I was glad to see that it was not crowded; I was thus able to secure a comfortable seat next the window.

There is not, at the best of times, much of interest to be seen from a railway carriage between Buggoolah and Calcutta. I remember noticing at Ranaghat that a train with its engine was drawn up on a siding ready to start for Jessore by the branch line. At Nychatty I just caught a glimpse of the top of the Hooghly College standing on the opposite bank of the river at Chinsurah. At Barrackpore tickets were collected, as the train does not stop between that place and Calcutta.

The remaining fourteen miles were soon finished, and on reaching Scaldah I saw my father standing on the platform. He quickly relieved my anxiety by the news that my brother was much better. The crowded streets of Calcutta were a great contrast to the quiet roads of the country: trauncars, carts, carriages crossing and recrossing one another, made our progress very slow at first, but our coachman cleverly threaded his way in and out of the crush. In ten minutes we were at home, where to my joy I found my brother on a fair way towards recovery.

The journey has purposely been represented as having been uneventful, in order to show that an ordinary occurrence, devoid of striking incidents, may supply matter enough for a short Essay.

## 924. Outlines for Descriptive Essays.

## 1. THE HUMAN BODY.

## (1) The trunk :—

(a) Backbone, ribs, etc.

(b) Vital organs : heart, lungs, etc.

## (2) The head :—

(a) Eyes, nose, ears, etc.

(b) Tongue, brain, etc.

## (3) The limbs :—

(a) Legs, feet, etc.

(b) Arms, hands, etc.

**2. THE GAME OF CRICKET.**

- (1) The kind of ground required.
- (2) Its implements : bat, ball, etc.
- (3) How it is played ; the rules of the game.
- (4) Its advantages : —
  - (a) A fine, open-air exercise.
  - (b) A good mental discipline : and relaxation.
  - (c) Promotes good-fellowship.
- (5) The Indian climate for the most part unsuited to cricket.

**3 AN EVENING WALK BY MOONLIGHT.**

- (1) A pleasant exercise in the cool of the day.
- (2) The quiet of evening refreshing to the mind after hard work.
- (3) The beauty of the fading sunset and the rising moon.
- (4) The effects of moonlight upon the landscape.
- (5) Moonlight nights in the tropics more enjoyable out of doors than they are in cold countries.

**925. (2) Narrative Essay.**—The subject of a Narrative Essay may be some interesting experience of the writer, some legendary or historical incident, or any current event. To narrative writing belong also accounts of the rise and progress of some art, manufacture, or institution. The following general plan of such a subject may be given :—

**OUTLINE.**

- (1) What caused or led up to the event.
- (2) The incidents ; with special mention of all that is distinctive or characteristic of the special event treated of.
- (3) The result.
- (4) Reflections ; moral lessons to be learnt.

**926.** Under this head comes the Biographical Essay, in which an account is given of the life and character of some eminent person :—

**OUTLINE.**

- (1) Date and place of birth ; father's name and position ; mention of any distinguished ancestors.
- (2) Education ; any signs of future greatness shown in early life.
- (3) Career.
- (4) Death.
- (5) Estimate of character ; influence on mankind : reflections.

**927.** Example of (A) an outline, and (B) the outline expanded into an Essay.

*Subject* :—‘The Defence of Arcot.’<sup>1</sup>

(A) OUTLINE.

- (1) Capture of Arcot suggested and carried out by Clive.
- (2) Force under Rajah Sahib sent to recover the fort.
- (3) Fort invested. Its weakness ; small number of besieged.
- (4) Its defence for fifty days in spite of widening breach and hunger of besieged.
- (5) Fearing approach of a Mahratta force, Rajah Sahib tries to bribe Clive to surrender, and threatens to storm the fort.
- (6) Assault, made with elephants and with a raft on the moat, repelled by Clive.
- (7) Results. 400 of the assailants killed ; Clive's loss only five or six men. Retreat of the enemy.

(B) ESSAY.

Clive was now twenty-five years old. The present emergency called forth all his powers. He represented to his superiors that it was absolutely necessary to strike some daring blow. If an attack were made on Arcot, it was not impossible that the siege of Trichinopoly would be raised. The heads of the English settlements approved of Clive's plan, and intrusted the execution of it to himself. The young captain was put at the head of two hundred English soldiers and three hundred sepoys. The weather was stormy ; but Clive pushed on, through thunder, lightning, and rain, to the gates of Arcot. The garrison, in a panic, evacuated the fort, and the English entered it without a blow.

The intelligence of these events was soon carried to Chand Sahib, who immediately detached four thousand men from his camp, and sent them to Arcot. They were speedily joined by the remains of the force which Clive had lately scattered. They were further strengthened by two thousand men from Vellore and by a hundred and fifty French soldiers. The whole of this army was under the command of Rajah Sahib, son of Chand Sahib.

Rajah Sahib proceeded to invest the fort of Arcot, which seemed quite incapable of sustaining a siege. The walls were ruinous, the ditches dry, the ramparts too narrow to admit the guns, the battlements too low to protect the soldiers. The little garrison had been greatly reduced by casualties. It now consisted of a hundred and twenty Europeans and a hundred sepoys.

During fifty days the siege went on. During fifty days the young captain maintained the defence, with a firmness, vigilance, and ability which would have done honour to the oldest marshal in Europe. The breach, however, increased day by day. The garrison began to feel the pressure of hunger.

An attempt made by the government of Madras to relieve the place had failed. But there was hope from another quarter. Rajah Sahib learned that the Mahrattas were in motion. It was necessary for him to be expeditious. He first tried negotiation. He offered large bribes to Clive, which were rejected with scorn. He vowed that, if his proposals were not accepted, he would instantly storm the fort, and put every man in it to the sword.

---

<sup>1</sup> Adapted from Macaulay.

Clive had received secret intelligence of the design, and made his arrangements, and, exhausted by fatigue, had thrown himself on his bed. He was awakened by the alarm, and was instantly at his post. The enemy advanced, driving before them elephants whose foreheads were armed with iron plates. It was expected that the gates would yield to the shock of these living battering-rams. But the huge beasts no sooner felt the English musket-balls than they turned round and rushed furiously away, trampling on the multitude which had urged them forward. A raft was launched on the water which filled one part of the ditch. Clive, perceiving that his gunners at that post did not understand their business, took the management of a piece of artillery himself, and cleared the raft in a few minutes. After three desperate onsets, the besiegers retired behind the ditch.

The struggle lasted about an hour. Four hundred of the assailants fell. The garrison lost only five or six men. The besieged passed an anxious night, looking for a renewal of the attack. But when day broke, the enemy were no more to be seen. They had retired, leaving to the English several guns and a large quantity of ammunition.

## 928. Outlines for Narrative Essays.

### 1. A TIGER-HUNT.

- (1) Equipment ; elephants and beaters.
- (2) The start ; advance through the jungle ; crossing nullah.
- (3) Tiger seen ; shots fired ; tiger wounded.
- (4) Tiger charges ; claws elephant, which shakes off tiger and mahout together.
- (5) Mahout climbs tree. Tiger killed ; its dimensions.
- (6) Return home.

### 2. A JOURNEY BY MAIL-CART.

- (1) Preparations for starting ; ponies refuse to stir ; measures adopted.
- (2) Ponies off with a rush ; relays every 6 miles.
- (3) Crossing river on a flat at dead of night.
- (4) Incidents on the road :—
  - (a) Wheel comes off ; fall of driver and passenger down embankment.
  - (b) Collision with unlighted bullock-cart.
- (5) Arrival ; passenger much fatigued ; food and rest.

### 3. A MIDNIGHT ADVENTURE.

- (1) Sleeping family wakened by strange noise.
- (2) Father and eldest son rise and arm themselves with swords.
- (3) Thief digging through the wall. They silently wait his appearance.
- (4) Thief's hand seen through the opening. They strike, and lop off a finger.
- (5) Escape of thief. Police informed.
- (6) Police find a man being treated for loss of finger in a neighbouring hospital.
- (7) Thief convicted and sentenced.

**929. (3) Reflective or Expository Essay.**—The subjects of this class of Essay are, as a rule, of an abstract or general character, such as 'Friendship,' 'Kindness to Animals,' 'Caste,' 'Female Education'; or proverbial truths or precepts, such as 'Knowledge is power,' 'Always make the best of things'; or literary criticisms, such as, 'The Elements of a good Style,' 'Classical and Romantic Poetry.'

In such Essays the opinions expressed by the writer must be supported by arguments and illustrations, and any objections that might be made to the view taken by the essayist should be stated and answered. The Essay should end with a summing up of the arguments on both sides, and with the conclusions and reflections that may result from the views expressed. The following is an example of an outline:—

*Subject:—*'The Introduction of Gymnastics into Indian Schools.'

#### OUTLINE.

(1) **Gymnastics described:—**

- (a) As practised by the ancient Greeks.
- (b) As practised by modern nations.

(2) **Uses of Gymnastics:—**

- (a) General:—Promote circulation, aid digestion, give physical strength and endurance; hence health, hardihood, self-reliance.
- (b) Particular:—Indian students are weakly in body, and often absent from school through illness; they have few manly games.

(3) **Objections to Gymnastics:—**

- (a) General:—Accidents occur. Waste of time and energy. Unbecoming to any but little boys.
- (b) Particular:—Indian climate unsuited to violent exercise, and character of Indian people averse to it. Few schools have the requisite apparatus.

(4) **Objections answered.**

(5) **Summing-up of arguments and conclusion arrived at. Reflections.**

When this scheme has been thought out and written down, which should take about ten minutes, all that remains is to put down the thoughts in connected sentences, with a few illustrations thrown in by the way, and the whole is complete.

**930. Example of—**(A) an outline, and (B) the outline expanded into an Essay.

*Subject* :—‘*Temperance.*’<sup>1</sup>

(A) OUTLINE.

- (1) Temperance easy to practise :—
  - (a) By all persons.
  - (b) At all times and places.
  - (c) Without loss of time or money.
- (2) Temperate people can dispense with medicine.
- (3) Temperance natural. Simple diet of the lower animals.
- (4) Rules of temperance :—
  - (a) Simple food.
  - (b) Days of abstinence. Socrates in the Plague of Athens.
- (5) Illustration :—Cornaro, the Venetian.

(B) ESSAY.

Temperance has three particular advantages above all other means of health, that it may be practised by all ranks and conditions, at any season, or in any place. It is a kind of regimen into which every man may put himself, without interruption to business, expense of money, or loss of time.

Physic for the most part is nothing else but a substitute for temperance. Medicines are indeed absolutely necessary in acute distempers that cannot wait the slow operations of these two great instruments of health; but did men live in an habitual course of exercise and temperance, there would be but little occasion for them.

Nature delights in the most plain and simple diet. Every animal but man keeps to one dish. Herbs are the food of this species, fish of that, and flesh of a third. Man falls upon everything that comes in his way: not the smallest fruit or excrescence of the earth, scarce a berry or a mushroom, can escape him.

It is impossible to lay down any determinate rule for temperance, because what is luxury in one may be temperance in another; but there are few that have lived any time in the world who are not judges of their own constitutions, so far as to know what kinds and what proportions of food best agree with them. Were I to consider my readers as my patients and to prescribe such a kind of temperance as is accommodated to all persons, I would copy the following rules of a very eminent physician. ‘Make your whole repast out of one dish. If you indulge in a second, avoid drinking anything strong until you have finished your meal; at the same time abstain from all sauces, or at least such as are not the most plain and simple.’ But because it is impossible for one who lives in the world to diet himself always in so philosophical a manner, I think every man should have his days of abstinence according as his constitution will permit. Abstinence well-timed often kills a sickness in embryo and destroys the first seeds of an indisposition. It is observed by two or three ancient authors that Socrates, notwithstanding that he lived in Athens during the great plague, never caught the least infection, which those writers unanimously ascribe to that uninterrupted temperance which he always observed.

The most remarkable instance of the efficacy of temperance towards the procuring of long life, is what we meet with in a little book published

<sup>1</sup> Adapted from Addison.

by Lewis Cornaro, the Venetian. Cornaro was of an infirm constitution, until about forty, when by steadily persisting in an exact course of temperance, he recovered a perfect state of health; inasmuch that at fourscore he published his book, which has been translated into English under the title of 'Sure and Certain Methods of Attaining a Long and Healthy Life.' He lived to give a third or fourth edition of it; and after having passed his hundredth year, died without pain and like one who falls asleep.

### 931. Outlines for Reflective or Expository Essays.

#### 1. GOOD HUMOUR.

- (1) Define. Old idea that the four bodily humours determined a person's mental disposition; cf. *melancholy, ill-tempered*. Mirth is transitory; good humour is lasting.
- (2) Its advantages:—
  - (a) In regard to ourselves: 'makes the least of misfortunes'; prevents worry and promotes health.
  - (b) In regard to others: 'A soft answer turneth away wrath.'
- (3) Can we acquire it, or is it innate? How we can improve in it by watchfulness. Ill-temper grows quickly into a settled habit.
- (4) Liable to degenerate into over-eagerness to please; hence, weakness of character.
- (5) Conclusion; general summing-up.

#### 2. THE RAILWAY IN INDIA.

- (1) First discovery of steam-power; Stephenson; improvements on early inventions.
- (2) Present state: contrast between travelling nowadays by rail and forty years ago by bullock-cart or budgerow.
- (3) Its advantages:—
  - (a) To trade; prevention of famines.
  - (b) To the social progress of the country; effects on caste.
  - (c) To travellers; movement of troops in war.
- (4) Its disadvantages:—
  - (a) Accidents.
  - (b) Interferes with the rights of property and with the drainage of the country.
  - (c) Discomfort: hurry, dust, heat.
- (5) Summing-up and conclusion in favour of the Railway.

#### 3. PUNCTUALITY.

- (1) Define. Formerly meant 'exactness in little points, punctiliousness'; now applied only to time.
- (2) Its advantages:—
  - (a) Marks a careful, conscientious mind.
  - (b) Hence, inspires trust.
  - (c) Saves time.
  - (d) Is a mark of courtesy: 'Punctuality is the politeness of kings.'

- (3) No reason why it should degenerate into *preciseness* or *over-exactness* about trifles.
- (4) General remarks on the importance of being in good time; illustrations, reflections.

#### 4. A FAMINE IN BENGAL.

- (1) Principal food-crop is rice. Hence the failure of the rice-crop means famine.
- (2) Causes of the failure of the rice-crop. Signs of approaching famine.
- (3) Description of the aspect of the country during a famine. Orissa in 1866.
- (4) How a famine is to be encountered :—
  - (a) Storing grain.
  - (b) Relief works for the able-bodied.
  - (c) Charitable relief.
  - (d) Government subsidies.
- (5) Can famine be provided against once for all? Government irrigation works and railways.
- (6) General reflections. Famines call forth kindly feeling.

#### 5. THE ART OF PRINTING.

- (1) When and where invented.
- (2) Its mechanism.
- (3) Its advantages :—
  - (a) Cheapness.
  - (b) Quickness.
  - (c) Clearness.
  - (d) Compactness.
  - (e) Accuracy.
  - (f) Permanence.
- (4) Different uses of printing :—books, newspapers, magazines, circulars, tickets, etc.
- (5) Effects of printing on the spread of knowledge.

#### 932. Miscellaneous Subjects for Essays.

The following subjects for essays of various kinds may be sketched in outline according to one of the models given above, and then expanded into connected compositions :—

- |   |   |
|---|---|
| 1. A journey by boat on an Indian river.    | 12. The effect of climate on character.                     |
| 2. The Postal system.                       | 13. The reign of Akbar.                                     |
| 3. Self-conceit.                            | 14. The games of Indian school-boys.                        |
| 4. The Durga Puja festival.                 | 15. Kindness to animals.                                    |
| 5. Obedience to parents.                    | 16. A Hindu marriage.                                       |
| 6. An Indian jungle.                        | 17. A summer night.   |
| 7. The seasons in India.                    | 18. An Indian Temple or Church.                             |
| 8. A taste for reading.                     | 19. Music and singing, Indian and English.                  |
| 9. 'Where there is a will, there is a way.' | 20. Rice : its planting, growth, and preparation as a food. |
| 10. The manufacture of silk.                | 21. Caste.  |
| 11. The influence of good example.          |   |



- |   |   |
|---|---|
| <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>22. The cocoanut.</li> <li>23. Theatres.</li> <li>24. Charity.</li> <li>25. A cyclone.</li> <li>26. Travelling: its effect in enlarging the mind.</li> <li>27. The different races inhabiting India.</li> <li>28. Dress, European and Asiatic, contrasted.</li> <li>29. Funeral rites of Christians, or of Hindus, or of Mahomedans.</li> <li>30. Newspapers.</li> <li>31. The tiger.</li> <li>32. Indian fruits and flowers.</li> <li>33. Keshub Chunder Sen; his life and work.</li> <li>34. Dwelling-houses in India, Native and European.</li> <li>35. The bazar of an Indian village.</li> <li>36. Holidays and how to spend them.</li> <li>37. Politeness.</li> <li>38. An eclipse.</li> <li>39. The use of Drawing and Surveying.</li> <li>40. The telephone.</li> <li>41. Female education in India.</li> <li>42. University Examinations.</li> <li>43. An earthquake.</li> <li>44. International Exhibitions.</li> <li>45. The Indian crow.</li> <li>46. The force of example.</li> <li>47. The cow.</li> </ul> | <ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>48. Self-denial.</li> <li>49. Snakes and snake-charmers.</li> <li>50. Rivers and their uses.</li> <li>51. The advantages of books.</li> <li>52. How I spent my long vacation.</li> <li>53. The importance of good handwriting.</li> <li>54. Friendship.</li> <li>55. The uses of rain.</li> <li>56. Lord Clive.</li> <li>57. True bravery.</li> <li>58. Cleanliness.</li> <li>59. A day in the country.</li> <li>60. The city of Calcutta.</li> <li>61. The story of Sakuntalá.</li> <li>62. The climate of Bengal.</li> <li>63. The bamboo.</li> <li>64. Indian seaports.</li> <li>65. Ingratitude.</li> <li>66. The Mahábhárata.</li> <li>67. Savings banks.</li> <li>68. The East India Company.</li> <li>69. The rainbow.</li> <li>70. Hobbies.</li> <li>71. Ram Mohan Roy.</li> <li>72. The Mint.</li> <li>73. The Táj-Mahál.</li> <li>74. The banyan-tree.</li> <li>75. The human hand.</li> <li>76. The Battle of Plassey.</li> <li>77. Tea plantation and manufacture.</li> <li>78. Contentment.</li> <li>79. Sevajee.</li> <li>80. Indian Trees.</li> </ul> |
|---|---|

### LETTER-WRITING.

**933. Forms of Date and of Address (or Salutation).—**In ordinary correspondence in English, the name of the place where the letter is written should be put near the top of the first page on the right-hand side. Under it should be written the date, in the form *26th May, 1889*, or *May 26th, 1889*; or the ordinal sign (*th*) may be omitted and the date written *May 26, 1889*.<sup>1</sup>

The words *Dated* and *the* before this form, as *Dated the 26th May*, should not be used except in strictly official correspondence; they

<sup>1</sup> A short form, often used in business letters, is *26/5/89*, the */5/* standing for *May*, which is the 5th month of the year.

need seldom or never therefore be inserted before the date in letters written by students.

The formula of address should be written somewhat lower down the page and on the left-hand side.

The form of the address depends upon the amount of intimacy or the degree of relationship existing between the writer and the person written to. The usual forms in the case of persons not relatives of the writer are *Sir*, *Dear Sir*, *My dear Sir*; *Dear Mr. Jones*, *My dear Mr. Jones*. The first of these, *Sir*, is the most distant and formal mode of address; it is a comprehensive form, and may with propriety be used to the higher officials (unless titled) as well as to a shopkeeper. Thus in a letter to the Governor of a Province, to a Judge of the High Court, or to a Director of Public Instruction, *Sir* is the proper form. The forms *Honoured Sir*, *Respected Sir*, though often used by Natives of India in writing to official superiors, are contrary to modern English usage. There are no special terms of honour in English corresponding to the Bengali মহাশয় or আপনি. Any marked honour or respect which it is desirable to show should be expressed by the general tone and style of the body of the letter, and not by high-sounding titles or epithets in the address.

The forms *Dear Mr. Jones* or *My dear Mr. Jones* imply a certain amount of intimacy. When the person addressed is a familiar acquaintance or friend of the writer, the *Mr.* is generally dropped, and *Dear Jones*, or *My dear Jones*, are the forms used. Hence, between friends, this latter is the usual form in 'demi-official' correspondence. *Sirs*, or *Gentlemen*, or *Dear Sirs* is the form used in addressing mercantile firms, but not *Dear Gentlemen*, or *Dear Messrs. Brown and Co.*

Letters to ladies (whether married or unmarried) should commence with *Madam* or *Dear Madam* or *My dear Madam*, according to the amount of intimacy. More intimate still are *Dear Mrs.* (or *Miss*) *Jones* and *My dear Mrs.* (or *Miss*) *Jones*.

In formal letters to *clergymen*, instead of *Sir*, *Dear Sir*, it is proper to write *Reverend Sir*, *Reverend and dear Sir*. But in informal letters *My dear Mr. Jones* is correct, even if Mr. Jones is a clergyman.

In letters to *officers* (above the rank of Lieutenant) in the army, to *Doctors* of medicine, law, etc., and to *Professors* in a University, the appropriate title should be substituted for *Mr.*: as, *Dear Colonel Smith*, *Dear Dr. Brown*, *Dear Professor Tyndall*. In more familiar letters the surname may be omitted, as *My dear Major*, *My dear Doctor*, *My dear Professor*. But in all these cases.

unless considerable familiarity exists, *Sir* or *Dear Sir* or *My dear Sir* is used.

The correct punctuation after the address is a comma, as *Sir*, *My dear Mr. Smith*, and not, as is sometimes written, a note of exclamation, as *Sir!*

The initial form of address may be repeated before the subscription; but care should be taken not to use a different form in the subscription from that used in the address; do not begin a letter with *Dear Sir*, and end it with *I remain, Sir*.

In ordinary letters when the person addressed is not on familiar terms with the writer, it is customary to write the addressee's name just below the writer's signature, but on the left-hand side of the page. In official letters the addressee's name is generally written at the top of the first page.<sup>1</sup>

In short and informal notes, especially such as are written to some one residing in the neighbourhood of the writer, the name of the writer's own place of residence and the date are often put at the end of the letter underneath and to the left of the signature. This is almost always done in letters which give or answer invitations; and in such letters the day of the week is often named (as *Friday*) in place of the date of the month, while the year is omitted.

**934. Forms of Subscription.**—The strictly official form of subscription is

I have the honour to be,

SIR,

Your most obedient servant,

RAM MOHAN ROY.

This form should be used in all business letters written to officers in their official capacity; as in letters to a Magistrate applying for an appointment, or to the Head of a College asking

<sup>1</sup>In official letters from the head of an office the name and designation of the sender is written at the head of the first page followed by the official designation, if any, of the addressee, or by his name if he is a non-official, as:—

(1) From

R. W. WILLIAMS, Esq.,

Magistrate and Collector,

To

The Joint Magistrate.

(2) From

A. B. SMITH, Esq.,

Secretary to the Board of Revenue,

To

Messrs. Brown, Polson & Co.

for admission. Another official subscription less formal than the above is

I am,  
SIR,  
Yours most obediently,  
RAM MOHAN ROY.

This form may be fitly used in such letters as those from a student to his teacher, asking for leave of absence.

The forms of subscription used in ordinary correspondence are *Yours faithfully*, *Yours truly*, *Yours sincerely*, which may be varied by the insertion of the adverbs *very*, *most*, *ever*, as *Yours very faithfully*, *Yours most truly*, *Yours ever sincerely*, or by changing the order of the words, as *Very faithfully yours*, *Ever most sincerely yours*.

*Yours faithfully* is the form expressing the least amount of familiarity, and may be used to a perfect stranger; it is employed in ordinary business letters, where it is sometimes contracted into *Yrs ffly*.

*Yours sincerely* is the form generally used between acquaintances and friends. It is also the form usual in 'demi-official' correspondence. *Yours very sincerely* implies a considerable degree of friendship. *Yours respectfully* is seldom used except by servants writing to their masters or by tradesmen writing to their customers.

It is optional whether the verb before the form of subscription (except the strictly official one) should be expressed or understood. Thus we may have *Yours truly*, *Yours most obediently*, or *I remain* (or *I am*) *Yours truly*, or *Believe me to be* (or *Believe me*) *Yours truly*; but the latter forms are the more ceremonious ones.

In letters between friends some expression of good will is often used to introduce gracefully the form of subscription, as *With kind regards*, *I am*, etc., *Hoping soon to hear from you*, *I remain*, etc.

In letters to very dear friends, the usual subscription is *Yours affectionately*, or sometimes, *Yours ever*, *Yours always*.

In letters to relatives, the relationship is generally expressed, as *Your loving brother*, *Your affectionate son*.

**935. Forms of Direction.**—The usual form employed in directing an envelope to Englishmen is the initial letter (or letters) of the addressee's Christian name (or names), followed by the surname with the title *Esq.* (short for *Esquire*) added, as *A. W. Smith, Esq.* The term *Esq.* is now very generally applied, being used to all except menial servants or retail traders; for the latter the proper form of direction is *Mr.*, followed by the surname, as *Mr. Smith*. For married women (unless titled) of

all classes *Mrs.* is the proper form. *Messrs.* (for French *Messieurs*) is the usual form of direction to firms, as *Messrs. Thacker, Spink & Co., Messrs. Smith and Sons.* Care should be taken to avoid the common error of writing *Messrs. Thacker Spink Company*, as if all three were proper names belonging to one person.

In letters directed to clergymen the title *Rev.* or, better, *The Rev.* (short for *Reverend*), is used before the initials of the Christian name followed by the surname: as, *The Rev. T. S. Jones.* If the initials are not known, we may write *The Rev. Mr. Jones* (or *The Rev. — Jones*), but not *The Rev. Jones.*

There are certain other professional titles, which should always be expressed in the direction:—*The Hon., The Hon'ble, or The Honourable*, applied to members of Council or to Judges of the High Court; *General, Colonel, Major, Captain*, to military officers; *Dr.*, to Doctors of medicine, law, etc.

The capital letters *B.A., M.A., M.D., C.S.I.*, etc., representing University Degrees<sup>1</sup> or titles of honour, should be placed after the name, or, if *Esq.* is used, after *Esq.*: as, *The Hon. W. Jones, C.S.I.; The Rev. F. Wilson, M.A.; C. R. White, Esq. B.A.; L. W. Robinson, Esq., M.D.* When the addressee is living at the house of a third person, the letters *c/o*, short for *care of*, may be written before the name of the host,<sup>2</sup> as:—

BABU HARILAL SAHA,  
c/o Babu Anantosh Sarkar,  
25, Circular Road.

The name of the post town should be written large and in a line by itself, near the lower right hand edge of the envelope. The word *at* should never be introduced before the name of the town in directions.

### 936. Common Errors in Letter-writing.

(1) The expression *and oblige* is often ungrammatically used as an ending to letters containing requests. It is not incorrect to attach it to the words expressing the request: as, 'Please grant me leave *and oblige* Your obedient pupil,' etc.; but it is a blunder in grammar to attach *oblige* in the imperative or the infinitive mood by the conjunction *and* to a verb which is not in either of these moods: as, 'I shall be thankful for any assistance *and oblige* Yours obediently,' etc.

<sup>1</sup> It is not the custom among Englishmen to add the letters *M.A., B.A.,* etc., representing University Degrees, unless the letter is of a formal character. The letters *M.D.* should not be used along with the title *Dr.*

<sup>2</sup> Or the word *at* may be prefixed to the third person's place of residence, without mentioning his name: as, 'Babu Harilal Saha, *At* 25, Circular Road.'

(2) *Yours* is sometimes ungrammatically used for *Your* in the subscription: as, '*Yours obedient pupil*.' The mistake probably arises from a confusion of the two forms, *Yours obediently* and *Your obedient pupil*; when, therefore, the noun is expressed, *your* must be used. Observe also that the correct spelling is *yours*, without the apostrophe (176, note).

(3) Two different titles, such as *Mr.* (or *The Hon.*) along with *Esq.*, should not be used together.<sup>1</sup>

(4) When *Dear*, *My dear* are used, *Esq.*, *Hon.* should not be added, nor the capital letters denoting degrees, etc. Thus we write *Dear Mr. Jones*, but not *Dear Jones, Esq.*, nor *Dear Hon. Jones, C.S.I.*

(5) Care should be taken to avoid inappropriate forms of subscription, such as *Yours affectionately* in a business letter, or *Your humble servant* in a letter to a friend.

**937. Polite Forms of Command and Request.**—Polite forms of speech which involve a *request* should be distinguished from others that differ but slightly from them, but which really imply a *command*. Thus the phrase *I will thank you to send* (often wrongly written '*I shall thank you to send*') is improperly used in making a request, since it really implies a command, and is sometimes employed to express anger or indignation, as in '*I will thank you to mind your own business.*'

### 938. Polite Forms of Command.

- (1) Have the goodness to send or Be good enough to send or Oblige me by sending.
- (2) Please send or Kindly send.

The forms in (2) are less peremptory than those in (1). An authoritative command is implied in the expressions *You will be good enough to send*, *I will thank you to send*; while *I shall be obliged if you will send*, *I should be glad if you would send* give the command in a more indirect and courteous form; and when they are modified by the introduction of the adverbs *much*, *extremely*, etc. (as, *I should be much obliged* etc.) cannot be said to involve a command at all.

### 939. Polite Forms of Request.

- (1) Will you kindly send? or Will you be kind enough to send or Will you have the kindness to send?
- (2) Would you kindly send? or Would you be kind enough to send? or Would you have the kindness to send?

---

<sup>1</sup> But we write—'*The Right Honourable Sir R. Cross.*' '*The Hon. and Rev. B. Jones.*'

The forms in (2) are less direct (since they imply a conditional clause, such as 'if I were to ask you') and therefore are more polite than those in (1).

A request may also be conveyed by the use of the phrases—*I should esteem it a great favour if you would send, You would greatly oblige me by sending*, and the like.

**940. Use of the Third Person.**—A tone of formality and ceremony is imparted to letters by avoiding the use of the first and second persons of pronouns and verbs. Thus in orders to tradesmen and in ceremonious invitations, the third person only is often used throughout: as, '*Mr. Smith will be obliged if Messrs. Thacker, Spink & Co. will send him the books in the accompanying list. He would like to have them without delay*'; or, '*Mr. Brown requests the pleasure of Mr. Jones's company at an Evening Party*,' etc. But if the writer begins by using the third person in referring to himself (instead of *I*) and in referring to the addressee (instead of *you*), the first and second persons must not subsequently be used in the letter.

NOTE.—'*I have much pleasure in accepting your kind invitation*' is correct, and not '*I shall have much pleasure*,' the act of accepting being present, not future. Never write *invite* for *invitation*.

**941. General Remarks.**—The style of a letter should be similar to that which would be used if the writer were talking to the person addressed. Simplicity and directness of statement, easy and colloquial forms of expression, should characterise ordinary correspondence as they do ordinary conversation. Exaggerated expressions of regard and profuse compliments, which may be customary and suitable in letters written in an Oriental vernacular, are opposed to English taste and should not be used in letters written in English. In applications for appointments (which form, perhaps, the largest class of letters written in English by Natives of India) only those circumstances should be mentioned which strengthen the applicant's claim; such as the education he has received, the examinations he has passed, the appointments he has held, together with any special qualifications he may have for the post. Other personal details regarding the applicant's poverty, or the large family dependent on him, and appeals to the benevolence of the person addressed, are out of place except in begging letters, and have no weight in determining the bestowal of an appointment, especially if the post is one in the public service. The candidate's testimonials should accompany his application, and, if not sent in the original,

should be marked in each case 'True Copy.' Such a copy should not imitate the handwriting of the original.

The habit of underlining every word meant to be emphatic should be avoided; it is generally possible to construct a sentence in such a form as to indicate by the position of a word any stress that is to be laid upon it.

The frequent use of parentheses generally causes obscurity. Abbreviations or contractions, such as *Yrs* for *Yours*, imply haste or negligence, and are, therefore, inadmissible except in business letters from and to tradesmen; but in familiar letters, conversational contractions, such as *I'm*, *I'll*, *don't*, *can't*, *won't* (492) are permissible.

Postscripts seem to indicate thoughtlessness in the writer, and should be avoided in formal correspondence.

The great point in ordinary letter-writing is for the writer to understand exactly the meaning he wishes to convey, and to endeavour to express that meaning in the simplest and most natural language at his command.

**942. Sample Letters.**—A few sample letters follow, showing the forms of address, etc., and the kind of phraseology suitable in each instance.

#### 1. TO A BUSINESS FIRM.

*Chandra, Midnapore ;  
21st May, 1885.*

TO MESSRS. THACKER, SPINK & CO.

GENTLEMEN (or SIRs),

I shall be obliged if you will send me the books named in the accompanying list. I enclose a postal order which will cover the price of the books and the postage.

Yours faithfully,

RAM SUNKER SEN.

Direction on the Envelope :

MESSRS. THACKER, SPINK & CO.,

*Publishers, etc.,*

*Calcutta.*



## 2. TO THE PRINCIPAL OF A COLLEGE.

(1)

136, Wellesley Street, Calcutta ;

30th May, 1885.

SIR, I have the honour to request that you will admit me to the First Year Class from the commencement of next session.

I am,

SIR,

Your obedient servant,

UMES CHANDRA GHOSE.

Direction on the Envelope :

THE PRINCIPAL,

*Presidency College,**Calcutta.*

(2)

SIR,

I am suffering from a severe attack of fever which renders me quite unable to attend College. I beg, therefore, that you will kindly grant me leave of absence for a week.

Yours obediently,

A. CHAUDHURY,

April 4, 1885.

*2nd Year Class.*

Direction on the Envelope :

A. W. SMITH, ESQ., M.A.,

*Principal,**The College,**Patna.*

## 3. TO THE MAGISTRATE OF A DISTRICT.

13, Machooa Bazar, Hooghly ;

1st June, 1885.

SIR,

Hearing that the post of Fourth Clerk in your office is vacant, I beg respectfully to offer myself as a candidate for the situation.

I was educated at the Hooghly Collegiate School and College. I passed the Matriculation Examination of the Calcutta University in the Second Division in 1882, and the First Arts Examination in the Third Division in 1884. I am 21 years of age.

. I have been employed for some months as an apprentice in the office of the Road Cess Engineer at Hooghly, and have thus gained some experience in office work.

I beg to enclose copies of testimonials as to my character and attainments.

I have the honour to be,

SIR,

Your most obedient servant,

RAKHAL DAS MOOKERJEE.

Direction on the Envelope :

TO THE MAGISTRATE AND COLLECTOR,

*Burdwan.*

#### 4. TO A FELLOW-STUDENT.

MY DEAR ASHUTOSH,

College closes, I hear, on Tuesday, the 4th instant. Please let me know if you intend to leave Calcutta on the first day of the vacation. If so, we might travel together, at any rate as far as Goalundo.

Yours sincerely,

10, Beadon Square ;  
*Monday.*

BINOD BEHARI MITRA.

Direction on the Envelope :

BABU ASHUTOSH MOOKERJEE,

113, Ripon Street,

*Calcutta.*

#### 5. REPLY TO THE ABOVE.

MY DEAR BINOD,

Yes, I shall start for home by the 12.30 train on Wednesday, the 15th, and shall be very glad to have you as a fellow-passenger. Can you manage to call here this evening to settle matters?

Sincerely yours

113, Ripon Street ;  
*Monday evening.*

ASHUTOSH MOOKERJEE.



## APPENDIX.

### TEST EXAMINATION QUESTIONS.

[The arrangement is purposely made promiscuous.]

1. Classify the following nouns: *Chatterjee, river, senate, jury, copper*. What sort of noun is *witch* as distinguished from *witchcraft*?

2. Explain clearly the uses of the preposition *to* in the following—

(a) Our Punic faith is infamous, and branded *to* a proverb.—*Addison*.

(b) All this is nothing *to* the purpose.

(c) All that they did was piety *to* this.—*Ben Jonson*.

(d) Face *to* face.

(e) This is good *to* eat.

3. Give any five Teutonic Suffixes, with examples. Indicate the suffixes, and give their meaning, in—*shamefaced, buxom, worship, suckling*.

4. 'Their own pedlar-principle of *turning* a penny.'—*Adams*. Explain this use of the verb *turn*. Mention any other idiomatic uses of the same verb, and endeavour to trace them up to its original signification.

5. 'A house *to* let,' 'Razors made *to* sell.' Are these expressions correct English? If so, how would you defend them? In the phrase '*drinking* water,' parse *drinking*.

6. Show, by examples, the difference in meaning between the synonyms—

(1) *Desert, leave, relinquish, forsake, abandon*.

(2) *Rage, vexation, anger*.

(3) *Innocent, innocuous*.

7. Define an *Adverb*, a *Preposition*, and a *Conjunction*. Form a sentence containing each of the above, and underline them.

8. Write down—(a) The diminutive of *duck, stream, hill, animal, dear*; (b) the plural of *leaf, goose, son-in-law, radius, church, madam*; (c) the feminine of *beau, stag, hero, poet, emperor, actor*; (d) the preterite and passive participle of *sing, forget, drive, shake, swim, steal, tread, win, weave, swell*.

9. Write down the comparative and superlative of—*good, truthful, ill, bitter, gay, modest, useful, patient, frugal, red, rough, late, bad, far, high*.

10. Define *Accent*. How does it differ from *Emphasis*? Distinguish the different meanings of the following words according to their accent:—*record, convert, rebel, invalid, conjure, incense, supine*.

11. What are *Co-ordinative*, and what are *Subordinative* Conjunctions? Write down a sentence illustrative of each. Give all the uses of *or* and *if*, with examples.

12. Write three letters—

- (1) To a friend, describing the premises, studies, and games of your school or college.
- (2) To the head of a department asking for a situation.
- (3) To the head-master of your school, asking for leave of absence in consequence of illness.

13. What two ways are there in English of expressing the Possessive Case? What is the distinction observed in their usage? Write down the Nom. and Poss. Cases, Sing. and Plur., of *John* and *Charles*.

14. Mention any five nouns that have two plural forms with different meanings. Give the plurals of—*Ottoman*, *Dutchman*, *Mussulman*, *German*, *Frenchman*, *Norman*, *Brahman*, *Mr.*, *Mrs.*, *man-servant*, *man-stealer*.

15. Explain clearly the difference between—

- (a) A most entertaining book.
- (b) The most entertaining book.
- (c) Too entertaining a book.
- (d) A very entertaining book.

May we say 'a best book'? If not, why not?

16. State the various ways of forming adverbs in English. Comment on—

- (a) To live soberly, righteously, and *godly*.—*Bible*.
- (b) Who have died *holy* in their beds.—*Shaks*.
- (c) This is the *very* place for me.

17. Comment on the italicised words in—

- (a) They all cried, 'That's *him* !'
- (b) You are much stronger than *me*.
- (c) Than *whom* no better judge is on the bench.
- (d) Every one must judge of *their* own feelings.—*Byron*.

18. What is the difference between a *Transitive* and an *Intransitive* verb? Give the meaning, and the Preterite and Past Participle of each of the following, and say whether it is transitive or intransitive :—*lie* (to speak falsely), *lie* (to recline), *lay*, *raise*, *rise*, *sit*, *set*, *fell*, *fall*, *lose*, *lose*, *saw*, *say*, *see*, *sow*, *sow*. Explain the difference between *born* and *borne*.

19. Give three instances of an adverb as Object to a preposition. Parse the words in italics in—

- (a) He had been there *before*.
- (b) He went *before* sunrise.
- (c) He went *before* the sun rose.

20. Add appropriate prepositions to the following words, in short sentences :—*trespass*, *differ*, *acquainted*, *inadequate*, *tyrannize*, *angry*, *desirous*, *encroach*, *addicted*, *amenable*, *besmeared*, *resort*, *devoted*.

21. Explain the difference between the following synonyms, forming sentences to illustrate your meaning :

- |   |  |
|---|--|
| (a) <i>Habit</i> , <i>custom</i> .              | (d) <i>Tell</i> , <i>say</i> .                   |
| (b) <i>Stop</i> , <i>stay</i> , <i>divell</i> . | (e) <i>Discover</i> , <i>invent</i> .            |
| (c) <i>Cheerfulness</i> , <i>mirth</i> .        | (f) <i>See</i> , <i>look</i> , <i>perceive</i> . |

Give synonyms for *feretell*, *sympathy*, *supposition*.

22. State (with examples) the difference in usage between *my* and *mine*. What is the force of the italicised words in—

- (a) Something is wrong with this head of *min*.
- (b) Look through *mine* eyes with *thine*.—*Tennyson*.
- (c) 'Is this your watch?'—'No, it is *none* of *mine*.'
- (d) This is *none* of *my* doing.

23. Give three instances, under each head, of nouns that have—(a) no singular number; (b) no plural number; (c) two meanings in the singular, and only one in the plural.

24. Comment on the correctness of the spelling, syntax, or usage of the italicised words in—

- (1) Birds in our wood sang, ringing thro' the *rallies*.—*Tennyson*.  
Some whom he might condemn to work in the *galleys*.—*Buckle*.
- (2) Natives of India generally have black *hairs*.  
The *hairs* of your head are all numbered.—*Bible*.
- (3) He died without leaving any *issues*.  
These events have many *issues*.
- (4) His knowledge of *optics* is greater than his knowledge of logic.  
He teaches *gymnastic* while his sister does *wool-works*.  
He is reading the *works* of Shakspeare.

25. Explain the construction of the italicised expressions in—

- (a) *A thousand* men went.
- (b) *Many a* man went.
- (c) *A great many* men went.
- (d) They have not shed *a many* tears.  
Dear eyes, since first I knew them well.—*Tennyson*.

26. Give the different meanings, with examples, of *charge*, *main*, *grateful*, *hard*.

27. Correct the following, giving the true idiom:—

- (a) He ought to turn over a new page.
- (b) We ought always to provide amends for wrong doing.
- (c) I am afraid I shall not reach the train: it starts at 8.30 o'clock.
- (d) Wrong or right, I am determined to go.
- (e) His friends, washed in tears, stood round his bed.
- (f) I cannot sit on the bench, there is no place.
- (g) The History is a hardest subject to learn well.

28. Classify and explain the compound words—*break-fast*, *lunds-man*, *blood-shed*, *glow-worm*, *name sake*, *god-send*, *bake-house*, *heart-sick*.

29. Show the meaning of the prefixes in giving the meaning of—*exodus*, *heterodox*, *hypercritical*, *hemisphere*, *metamorphosis*, *sympathy*, *euphony*.

30. Supply more suitable words than those in italics in the following:—

- (a) This remedy is very *efficient*.
- (b) England expects every man to *perform* his duty.
- (c) The prisoner was set at *freedom*.
- (d) A coat will *defend* you from the weather.
- (e) He is a *noted* gambler and ruffian.
- (f) He *refrained* from food for a whole day.
- (g) Who *erected* this machine?

31. Turn the following sentences into an *interrogative* form, retaining the force of the original :—

- (a) Pleasure ought not to be pursued at the expense of health.
- (b) Surely the reward is great.
- (c) Beauty is vain, and earthly hopes are transitory.
- (d) Nowhere is there perfection, nowhere happiness in this world.
- (e) Everywhere man lifts up his hand against his fellow-man.
- (f) Satan, I know thy strength, and thou know'st mine.

32. Substitute *group-verbs* for the italicised verbs in the following :—

- (a) You must *dismiss* these men.
- (b) Can you *discover* the sense of these words?
- (c) The gain will not *compensate* the trouble.
- (d) Man cannot thus *avert* the wrath of his Creator.
- (e) The publication is *postponed* till next year.
- (f) People will be sure to *deride* you.
- (g) The police *ejected* the man who made the noise.
- (h) Some mention of this should be *inserted* here.
- (i) He is said to have *destroyed* himself.

33. What is the *Cognate Object*? Give an example of it. How would you explain the italicised expressions in—

- (a) I did not *sleep a wink* last night.
- (b) He *elbowed his way* through the crowd.
- (c) He *stole a sidelong glance* at me.
- (d) The monk *was bidding his beads*.
- (e) He *is playing a double game*.

Give the meaning of each sentence.

34. Write down the possessive singular and plural of—*monkey, wife, people, Ram, Jones, musician, brother, school, river, woman, empress*.

35. Discuss the form or usage of—*worse, lesser, rather, first, later and latter*. Why do we not write *it's*?

36. What is the difference in modern English between the usage of—*no, not, nay*? When should the negative precede the verb?

37. Give three sentences illustrating the different uses of the word *too*. Point out, in short sentences, the different grammatical values of *some* and *few*. How does *few* differ from *a few*? Parse *any* and *one* in—

- (a) Have you *any* pens?—No, I have not got *any*. Is he *any* better to-day?
- (b) *One* man's meat is another man's poison. *One* ought to act for oneself. I met *one* Mr. Jones yesterday. Give me a mango; a big *one*.

38. Enumerate and give examples of the various ways in which the words *it, should, may, there* are used.

39. Give the rule for the use of *he shall* and *he will*; and justify or correct—

- (a) When *will* we have the pleasure of seeing you?
- (b) *Shall* I die if I drink this?
- (c) I *will* be much obliged, if you will drink this.
- (d) We *will* see you to-morrow, I hope.
- (e) The lecture *shall* end with a quotation from Bacon.
- (f) There *shall* be a holiday to-morrow.

40. Give the main rules for the Sequence of Tenses in English, and justify or correct—

- (a) He said he will write to you to-morrow.
- (b) Wherever I went, I have seen nothing but misery.
- (c) Go where I will, I saw nothing but misery.
- (d) When do you intend to have finished your book?
- (e) When did you intend to finish your book?

41. Give words containing the following Prefixes and Suffixes, and state which of them are Teutonic, and which are Romanic:—*for-, re-, per-, be-, dis-, -age, -ness, -ling, -ment, -ist, -ose, -ed*

42. Distinguish between the force of—

- |       |  |       |  |
|-------|--|-------|--|
| (a) { | <i>I speak clearly.</i><br><i>I am speaking clearly.</i><br><i>I do speak clearly.</i> | (b) { | <i>I spoke clearly.</i><br><i>I was speaking clearly.</i><br><i>I have spoken clearly.</i> |
|-------|--|-------|--|

43. What are the main rules as to the Order of Words in an English sentence? In what instances is the nominative put after the verb?

44. Give the meaning of the following sentences, and parse the word *but* and the word next after it in each instance:—(a) I can *but* go. (b) I cannot *but* go. (c) There were none *but* went. (d) All went *but* him. (e) All *but* he went. (f) *But* me no buts.

45. Give sentences to exemplify the use of *still*—as a Verb, a Noun, an Adjective, and an Adverb; and of *since*—as an Adverb, a Preposition, and a Conjunction.

46. Give the primary meanings of the following verbs, and shew by examples their use with the prepositions mentioned:—(1) Take—*to, after, off, in, up*; (2) Get—*off, over, up*; (3) Give—*up, in, out*; (4) Draw—*in, out, off, up*.

47. Turn into Indirect Report:—The people began to rejoice, saying, "The gods are come to avenge the arrogance of the nobles; let us not give in our names, for it is better to die altogether than one by one. Why should we always be fighting? Let the nobles turn soldiers, that the perils of warfare may be felt by those that get the rewards."

48. Distinguish between a *Simile* and a *Metaphor*. Give an example of each, and change the one into the other.

49. Parse fully the italicised words in—

- (a) *The more*, the merrier.
- (b) He did not go, *no more* did I. (Why not 'I did'?)
- (c) This wall is six *feet* high.
- (d) What *weight* do you ride?
- (e) This gained *him* renown.
- (f) To reign is worth *ambition*.
- (g) She had the Asiatic eye, *All* love, *half* langour, and *half* fire.
- (h) *Half* a loaf is better than no bread.

50. In the following sentences, change the verbs of the active voice to the passive, and of the passive to the active, without materially altering the sense:—

- (a) The master *found fault with* the boy.
- (b) They *refused* him admission.
- (c) *Touch* me at your peril.



- (d) You *are thought* to have done this.
- (e) I *shall be obliged* to go.
- (f) *Having been taken* prisoner frequently, he fears to leave the city.
- (g) This race *was run* very quickly.
- (h) I *would do* this for you willingly.

51. Give the various modes of denoting Gender in English, with examples. What is meant by the *Common Gender*? Give instances. Give the feminine of—*wizard, murderer, executor, he-goat*; and the masculine of—*widow, votaress, heroine, maid-servant*.

52. Correct the following :—

- (a) He entered head and heart into the business.
- (b) I had the presence of mind as to say nothing.
- (c) There is no use of acting thus.
- (d) His design was in order to be made king.
- (e) He gave me opportunity for reading the letter.
- (f) Give over of doing this.
- (g) Each of us have separate rooms to sleep in.
- (h) I had several students died in my school.
- (i) He has eaten no bread nor drunk no water for two and a half days.
- (j) Either you or I are in the wrong.
- (k) Such expressions sound harshly.
- (l) Let you and I go together.
- (m) He confused up two different things.

53. Parse the words in italics in the following :—

- (a) He, *knowing* my intention, refused.
- (b) I recommend your *drinking* this.
- (c) The *dawning* light.
- (d) Thou art lovelier than the *coming* of the spring.
- (e) These clothes want *washing*.
- (f) A new work is *preparing* for the press.

54. Write down the Preterite and the Past Participle of the following verbs, giving both modern forms where two exist :—*bereave, clothe, dig, gird, strike, melt, help, light, kneel, gild, speed, pay, knit, quit, hew, bid, get, shear, spit, strow, stride, tear, grave*.

55. What is the difference in the usage of the past participles—*drunk, drunken*; *molten, melted*; *cloven, cleft*; *hung, hanged*; *worked, wrought*; *laden, loaded*; *gilt, gilded*; *bended, bent*? Illustrate by examples.

56. State the modes of forming the Plural in English. Give four instances of nouns that have a different meaning in the plural from that which they have in the singular. Give the plural of—*brother, journey, strife, seraph, virtuoso, memorandum, fish, cow, penny*.

57. Define a *Relative Pronoun*. Give the rule for the agreement of the relative with its antecedent. In what instance is it incorrect to use the relative *that* instead of *who* or *which*?

58. Discuss the correctness of—

- (a) Neither Charles nor William were there.
- (b) You are very aggravating.
- (c) He is, of all others the ablest writer they have.
- (d) Are either of those horses yours?
- (e) There let him lay (i.e. recline).—*Byron*.

59. Distinguish between—*emigrant, immigrant; eminent, imminent; eruption, irruption; loath, loathe; efface, deface; principle, principal; president, precedent (noun); practice, practise; corpse, corps.* Exemplify by short sentences.

60. Append, in short sentences, the appropriate prepositions to—*frown, adapted, independent, acquiesce, reconcile, inculcate, inform, endowed, confide, pursuant.*

61. Define the term *Subject*. Point out the Subject in—

- (a) It was with the deepest regret that I left him.
- (b) To reign is worth ambition.
- (c) There is nothing wanting now but rest and quiet.
- (d) Whatever is, is right.

62. Define the term *Predicate*. Point out the Predicate in—

- (a) Three times nine is twenty-seven.
- (b) He struck the man dead.
- (c) The wedding is to be tomorrow.

63. Define the term *Gender*. Point out and account for the Gender of the italicised words in—

- (a) That mare is a very good horse for work.
- (b) What a pretty little girl *it* is.
- (c) Dr. Mary Walker is the *author* of several works.
- (d) The moon hath raised *her* lamp above.
- (e) *Winter* came: the wind was *his* whip.
- (f) *Love* should have some rest and pleasure in *himself*.
- (g) *Love virtue: she* alone is free.—*Milton*.

64. Compose sentences to show the correct use of—*older, elder; later, latter; little, a little; one another, one with another; once, at once, once for all, once in a way, once and again.*

65. Explain the force of the prefixes and suffixes in—*anarchy, goodness, circumjacent, sluggard, darling, glimmer, blackish, magnify, boyhood, withstand, infer, insolent, ashore, apathy, asterisk.*

66. Explain briefly the difference between *shall* and *will* in interrogative sentences; and justify or correct the following:—

- (a) *Will* we see you here to-morrow?
- (b) *Shall* you go to the auction?
- (c) *Will* you go to the auction?
- (d) I *will* be glad to see you.
- (e) I *shall* give you timely notice of my success.

67. Give instances of Prepositions used as—(a) Adverbs, (b) Conjunctions.

(1) Parse *away* in—

- (a) He went *away* in a rage.
- (b) This is far and *away* the best.
- (c) *Away*! I will not hear you.
- (d) The Thugs made *away* with him.

(2) Parse the italicised words in—

- (a) The river ran *purple* to the sea.
- (b) This the *only* way to do it.
- (c) I will do it *only* this *once*.
- (d) He is a *seldom* contributor.

68. Explain and give an example of—(a) a Noun Clause, (b) an Adjective Clause, (c) an Adverb Clause.

69. Give the plural of—*ox, tooth, fly, roof, thief, chief, cargo, court-martial, lieutenant-governor, book-case, formula*. Mention two nouns that have (a) two meanings in the singular, and one in the plural; (b) two meanings in the plural and one in the singular.

70. 'By this the storm grew loud apace.'—*Campbell*. Explain clearly the meaning of *by* here, and trace this meaning up to its primary one. Parse *loud* and *apace*.

71. Show clearly, giving examples, the difference between (a) a *Simple*, a *Complex*, and a *Compound* sentence; (b) the *Direct* and the *Indirect* form of Reported Speech.

72. 'The gifts the father gave be ever thine!'—*Pope's Homer*. Parse *be*. Turn the line into the prose form. Say exactly what part of speech *thine* is. What are its uses? State the object of *gave*.

73. Enumerate and give examples of six suffixes forming Diminutives, distinguishing those that are Teutonic from those that are Romanic.

74. Parse and explain the italicised words in—

- (a) You *need* not go at once. I *needs* must go at once.
- (b) Saddle *me* the ass. I sat *me* down.
- (c) You must *do* as you are told. He works harder than I *do*.

75. Explain the meaning of the following sentence according as the adverb *only* is placed—(1) before *travelled*, (2) after *travelled*, (3) at the beginning of the sentence, (4) at the close of the sentence:—

'He only travelled to dispel his gloomy thoughts.'

76. Correct the following, and explain the nature of the errors:—

- (a) In his bankrupt circumstance, he prefers a pension to be substituted by a sum of ready money.
- (b) The lecturer said that a luxurious vegetation always required an abundant supply of heat and moisture.
- (c) This is the man whom everybody said was off his wits.

77. Explain the meaning of the Prefixes in the following:—*non-grammatical, ex-emperor, arch-deceiver, de-odorise*. Show by examples the depreciative force of the suffixes *-ard, -ster, -ling, -ist, -ish, -ism*.

78. What is the difference in modern English between the uses of *thou* and *you*? 'They love one another'; parse *one*.

79. How are Reflexive Pronouns formed? Give an instance. Account for the difference in form between '*myself*' and '*himself*.'

80. Classify and give the meaning of the following compounds:—*time-server, drift-wood, stumbling-block, strong-hold, purse-proud, hush-money, light-fingered, over-hear*. State what Parts of Speech the components of the compounds are.

81. 'Language may be *affected*, but not *affecting*.'—*Goldsmith*.

Explain the difference of meaning between the two words in italics. Also between—(1) *corporal* and *corporeal*; (2) *stationary* and *stationery*; (3) *verity* and *veracity*. Form sentences in illustration.

82. Explain the words in italics in the following :—

A *standard* writer ; a *dry* jest ; an *indifferent* physician ; a *handsome* subscription ; the *generous* bowl ; the *late* Keshub Chunder Sen ; in *round* numbers ; this is of the *last* importance ; gone *for good* ; the *main* thing ; a *sound* flogging ; they came to *high* words ; a *broad* hint ; a *flat* refusal ; a *hard* bargain ; a *rough* guess.

83. Turn the Metaphors in the following sentences into Similes :—

- (a) Confidence is a plant of slow growth in an aged bosom.
- (b) He curbs his passion.
- (c) We must struggle against the tide of misfortune.
- (d) He is a mine of knowledge.
- (e) He had just stepped upon the threshold of learning.

84. Write explanatory or grammatical notes on the words in italics :—

- (a) She saw and *purred* applause.—Gray.
- (b) The rest *were* long to tell —Milton.
- (c) Then her countenance *all* over  
Pale again as death did *prove*.—Tennyson.
- (d) The clouds are *lifting* ; it will soon be fine.
- (e) This carriage *pulls* very easily.

85. Correct the following sentences, where any mistakes occur, giving the reason for your correction :—

- (1) He is over his ears and his head in love.
- (2) From last to first he never lost hope and heart.
- (3) He said to accept your kind invite.
- (4) This book is different to the one of my brother's.
- (5) Boys act wrong when they try and deceive their parents.
- (6) He encouraged me for applying after the post.

86. What is meant by the *Case Absolute* ? What case is it in modern English ? Give an instance. Explain the construction of the words in italics :—

- (a) Nestor, his age *notwithstanding*, appeared on the field.
- (b) *Supposing* this to be true, what follows ?
- (c) Matters must remain as they are, *pending* inquiry.

87. What is an *Auxiliary Verb* ? Give an example. State all the uses of the verb *do* as an auxiliary, giving examples. Explain the meaning and the construction of the following :—(a) I am going ; (b) I am to go ; (c) I am to blame.

88. What two ways are there of expressing *Multiplicatives* in English ? Give the first three *Cardinal*, and the first three *Ordinal* adverbs. Give two instances of Cardinal numerals used as nouns.

89. Decline the Personal Pronouns *I* and *thou*. Explain the uses, with examples, of the Pronoun *that*. Form sentences illustrating the correct use of *each other* and *one another*.

90. What is the difference between the uses of the Infinitive in the following sentences :—

- (1) Boys like to *play*.
- (2) The boy went to *fetch* the book.

Explain clearly the two constructions.

91. Explain the difference in meaning between—(1) *decry*, *descri* ; (2) *verbal*, *verbose* ; (3) *depreciate*, *deprecate* ; (4) *gentle*, *genteel* ; (5) *humane*.

human ; (6) *populous, popular* ; (7) *observance, observation* ; (8) *variance, variation, variety* ; (9) *funeral, funereal* ; (10) *compliment, complement* ; (11) *proscription, prescription* ; (12) *physic, physique* ; (13) *junction, junction*.

92. *Swine, kine, brethren, chicken, remains, summons* : some of these are singular, others plural ; classify them.

93. Form nouns denoting *office* or *jurisdiction* from the following :—*protector, pope, bishop, professor, pontiff, apostle, earl, lady, Christian, sheriff*. What is the force of the suffixes in—*golden, whitish, joyless, gladsome* ?

94. Alter the arrangement of the italicised parts of the following sentences, so as to place the nominative *after* the verb or the auxiliary :—

- (a) *If he were in town*, he would be present.
- (b) *The man replied* : ‘ Alas ! I must submit to these conditions.’
- (c) Then, all in a moment *the signal flew up* and *the guns went bang*.
- (d) *He no sooner heard* this than he fled.
- (e) *The vanity of our life is such*, that we are seldom quite contented.
- (f) *Your book lies here* on the ground.

95. What are *Strong*, and what are *Weak* verbs ? Give examples. Give the present and the preterite tenses answering to the passive participles—*clad, shod, shorn, woven, slain, clung, bidden, stuck, sought, crept*.

96. Substitute *group-verbs* for the italicised verbs in the following :—

- (a) He is *progressing* in his studies.
- (b) This must be *deferred* till to-morrow.
- (c) He *proceeded* to remark that, etc.
- (d) I have *published* a new work.
- (e) He was much *displeased* at my conduct.
- (f) I intend to *expose* him for acting thus.

97. Write an imaginary conversation between two Englishmen, A and B, upon the climate of India.

98. What is *Punctuation* ? Mention the chief stops. Punctuate the following passage, putting capitals, quotation-marks, etc., where necessary :—

do they know nothing of her mr fenwick said she she has gone away he replied probably to london we must think no more about her mrs. smith at any rate for the present i can only say that I am very very sorry that I brought you here.

99. Correct any errors of arrangement in the following sentences :—

- (a) The king ordered the rebels to be slain, who had never been cruel before.
- (b) He determined unhesitatingly to go at once.
- (c) He did not intend to hurt the man, but only to frighten him.
- (d) This language is not only hard to write, but also to read.
- (e) A mountain was in sight, with at its foot a small but picturesque village.

State the rule violated in each case.

100. Distinguish (giving examples) between—(1) *menulicity, mendacity* ; (2) *imperious, imperial* ; (3) *reverend, reverent* ; (4) *continuous, continual* ; (5) *signification, significance*. What two different meanings have the verbs *excuse, reflect upon* ?

\* 101. Write down briefly, in English, the substance of any English or Indian fable or story that you may remember.

102. Write down opposite to the following words their correct pronunciation in English:—*route, suite, trait, chasm, lever, medicine, antipodes, contrary, miscellany, massacred, covetous, lady, knowledge, again, against, often, hasten, apostle, humble, herb, victuals, venison, hough, ruse, gauge.*

103. Form *Diminutives* from the words—*verse, man, eagle, gosse, seed, lamb, flower, dear, tart, part, hill, sack, hump.*

104. Show clearly (giving examples) the difference in meaning between—  
(a) *sensuous, sensual, sentient, sensitive, sensible, sensational, sentimental* ;  
(b) *adverse, obverse, inverse, diverse, converse, perverse, reverse.*

105. Correct any grammatical errors that occur in the following :—

- (a) I have not seen him since the last three weeks.
- (b) Either the parents or the son has acted imprudently.
- (c) Both he and I has refused to go.
- (d) Neither he nor I are in the wrong.

Give the rule in each case.

106. Form nouns denoting State, Condition, or Quality from—*pirate, pilgrim, abound, vacant, elegant, punish, weary, timid, depart, brave, pursue, young, similar, atheist, false, flatter.*

107. Parse the italicised words in the following sentences :—

- (a) He has done little more than *make* a beginning.
- (b) He did nothing but *laugh*.
- (c) He *more* than *hesitated*, he refused point-blank.
- (d) No sooner *said* than *done*.
- (e) A soldier obeys his orders, and *no more*.
- (f) I had rather die than *alarm* the child.

Explain the construction of 'I had rather die.'

108. Turn the sentences (a) 'You did it,' (b) 'Nobody thinks so,' so as to make *you* and *nobody* emphatic. May 'it is' be followed by a plural noun?

109. 'Little or no tail she (the mole) has, because she courses *it* not on the ground, like the cat or mouse.'

Explain this use of *it*. What other uses has *it* in English? Illustrate your meaning by examples.

110. Explain the words in italics in the following :—

*Implicit* confidence; *tacit* approval; *precarious* happiness; *condign* punishment; *personal* consideration; *mutual* admiration; *decisive* measures; an *apparent* contradiction; a *saving* clause; *real* property; *passive* endurance; *positive* destitution; *comparative* luxury; of *relative* importance.

111. 'My soul turn from them, turn we to survey.'—*Goldsmith.*

Parse the two words in italics. Also parse *turn* and *let* in 'let us turn.'

112. Into what two classes may Compound Words be divided? Examine and compare—(1) *work-day, day-work*; (2) *mill-hand, hand-mill*; (3) *horse-race, race-horse.*

113. Parse the words in italics in the following sentences :—

- (a) He finished the work *as* I directed.

He is *as good as* he is great.

Timoleon, *as* you know, acted wisely.

(b) *There* was at Venice a certain merchant.

*It* now happened that Ram returned home.

(c) Was there ever *such* self-possession?

114. What is a *Principal Clause* and a *Subordinate Clause*? Analyse the following:—

(a) The earth must be a globe, because its shadow in every position is round.

(b) The shadow of the earth in every position is round, therefore the earth must be a globe.

115. Correct any errors in the use of the Prepositions in—(a) They accused him for neglecting his duty. (b) A man on whom you can confide. (c) He is too miserly to part from his money. (d) He resigned from his situation. (e) I cannot agree with your proposal. (f) He killed seven birds in one shot. (g) I caught hold upon him at the left arm. (h) I am living at Calcutta. (i) I cannot comply to your request. (j) There is no reason of going there. (k) All this is foreign from the subject. (l) My wishes are opposed in every turn.

116. Illustrate by short sentences the possessive singular of the following nouns:—*conscience, lady, son-in-law, goodness, duchess, negro, James, people, ostrich, Jewess.*

117. Reproduce the following passage in simple prose, and parse the italicised words:—

'This world is *all a fleeting* show,

For man's illusion given;

The smiles of joy, the tears of woe,

*Deceitful* shine, *deceitful* flow,—

There's nothing true *but* Heaven!'—*Moore.*

118. Give the rule for the translation of idioms from one language into another, with an example. Explain the *Particularisation* of words and phrases, giving four examples.

119. Write a brief descriptive essay on 'School Life,' introducing the synonyms—*power, force, authority, vigour, strength.*

120. Mention all the Parts of Speech. Compose simple sentences to illustrate each, underlining the words given in illustration in each sentence.

121. Give examples of nouns containing the Suffixes—*-mony, -tude, -monger, -ness, -ster, -ism, -ment, -age, -dom, -ancy.* Give the meaning of the Prefixes in *ex-editor, sub-editor, pro-editor, vice-editor.* What is the meaning of *de-* in *deviate, decipher, default*?

122. Distinguish between—(1) *discomfort, discomfit*; (2) *council, counsel*; (3) *unison, union*; (4) *venial, renal*; (5) *collison, collusion*; (6) *tenor, tenure*; (7) *allusion, illusion*; (8) *pallet, palate*; (9) *apposite, opposite.* Illustrate your answer by short sentences.

123. Explain clearly the difference between an *Abstract* and a *Concrete* noun, giving an example of each. Parse and explain the use of the italicised nouns in the following sentences:—

(a) The *youth* of Bengal are fond of study.

(b) If you are called as a *witness*, you must not bear false *witness.*

- \* (c) There was a *time* when *Time* seemed to me an *Eternity*.  
 (d) I have had the good *fortune* not to suffer from the *ficklenesses* of *Fortune*.

Distinguish between the meaning of *English* and *the English*. We can say 'an Italian'; can we also say 'an English'?

124. 'I *shall* probably come home straight, but if I go round, it *shall* delay me very little.'—Explain the force of *shall* in both instances above. Might *will* be substituted for *shall* in either? Parse it. Why not—'come home *straightly*'?

125. Give instances of the *Direct*, the *Indirect*, and the three *Intermediate* forms of Reported Speech. Turn the following passage into the Indirect form:—

"In the evening I have my game of whist, which I never miss; I am surprised that you do not play, with your skill, as I know, at games of that kind. You should play; learn. As it is, you have little to amuse you; and now is the time to acquaint yourself with a means of enjoyment which will be a solace to you when you are grown too old for less gentle diversions."

126. Form verbs—(a) from the nouns—*haste, top, critic, dew, bath, food, glass, half, advice, power*; (b) from the adjectives—*sweet, clean, bc!d, fertile*; (c) from the verbs—*prate, rise, start, drink*.

127. Correct the following sentences:—

- (a) I have not seen him since a long time.  
 (b) No sooner he was gone, I found his book.  
 (c) He told me that he has been ill from two months.  
 (d) These books will not contain in the box.  
 (e) He was prevented to go, so that I was much unhappy.

128. Explain the italicised expressions in the following sentences:—

(a) As a student at college, he *carried all before him*. (b) I saw that he wanted to *pick a quarrel* with me. (c) I felt rather nervous, but he *set me at my ease* at once. (d) I *had it on the tip of my tongue* to tell him he was wrong. (e) He *was hard put to it* for food and drink. (f) Not wishing to have a quarrel, he *pocketed the insult*. (g) When his father died, I *broke the news to him*. (h) He declared he *was innocent*, but I *brought the charge home to him*.

129. Express in simple prose the meaning of the following:—

'While, round the bowl, of vanished years  
 We talk with joyous seeming,  
 With smiles that might as well be tears,  
 So faint, so sad their gleaming;  
 While memory brings us back again  
 Each early tie that twined us,  
 Oh sweet's the cup that circles then  
 To some we've left behind us!'

130. Parse the word *that* in each of the following sentences:

- (a) Where is *that* man going?  
 (b) I could not do *that* if I tried.  
 (c) This is the book *that* I spoke of.  
 (d) *That* you have wronged me is certain.



131. Supply appropriate prepositions in the blank spaces in each of the following sentences :—

- (a) The decorations were not—his taste.
- (b) The government are—abolishing the appointment, but the judges object—this course.
- (c) —aught I know, he may be a clever man.
- (d) Greatly—my surprise, he failed—his attempt.
- (e) It was made—the pattern supplied by me.
- (f) He exposed himself—the risk—being made answerable—the loss.

132. Rewrite the following sentence correctly :—

‘King of England sent a word that he will come at head of thirty thousands of men, for punishing and driving the rebels who denied to surrender in spite of the good advices they have received and the benefits that had been conferred them.’

133. Give the different meanings of—*moor, sack, tender, bay, flag, fast, yard, spell, swallow, till*.

Illustrate each meaning in a sentence.

134. Parse the italicised words in the following sentence :—

He *hit him a blow* on the head.

135. What governs syllabic division? Divide the following words into separate syllables :—*usury, dainty, laity, hasten, uncle, knowledge, unanimous, confusion, orthography, ordinarily*.

136. When does a Collective Noun take a verb in the singular, and when in the plural? Illustrate by examples.

137. State the different ‘parts of speech’ which each of the following words may be, and illustrate each use in a sentence :—*sleep, long, fleet, close, below, last*.

138. Rewrite the following passage, correcting any errors of idiom :—

‘I cannot call into my mind that at any other occasion such large defalcations have been brought into the light. Although warnings after warnings were made to the accused, but they could not be prevailed to keep honest. The case of the first prisoner resembles to that of the second; both seems to have thought their conduct as a good joke. I have no fondness to pronounce heavy sentences, but I must give the prisoners enough of time to reflect over their crime before they are allowed to go at liberty.’

139. What is the difference in meaning between (a) He ought to be here, (b) He ought to have been here, (c) I wished to go, (d) I wished to have gone.

140. Form sentences introducing the following expressions, and explain the meaning, in each sentence, of the expression used :—

(a) *Of course*; (b) *long since*; (c) *after all*; (d) *no sooner—than*; (e) *on the whole*; (f) *at all*; (g) *at least*.

141. (a) Show that the Articles are not separate parts of speech.

(b) Define *Inflection*. What parts of speech are never inflected?

(c) Give examples of the use of *what, that, as*, as Relative Pronouns.

(d) Parse *fauli* in ‘He was forgiven his fault by me.’

• 142. Form words in common use by adding as many as possible of the suffixes *-er, -ing, -ness, -ly* to the words *stately, occupy, day, feeble, whole, true, pencil, worship, run, full, ill, die*.

143. Give one word containing the Latin prefix *in-* (=not) to express—

- (a) Incapable of being read.
- (b) Incapable of being heard.
- (c) Incapable of being repaired.
- (d) Incapable of being accomplished.
- (e) Destitute of knowledge.
- (f) Unfit to be chosen.

144. Expand the following compounds into equivalent phrases, using appropriate prepositions to connect the words of which the phrases are formed :—*fire-engine, fire-escape, fire-proof; heart-sick, home-sick; blood-thirsty, blood-stained; horse-dealer, star-gazer; tea-cup; weather-wise, weather-bound, home-bound; hard-hearted; guess-work; self-confidence*.

145. Express in one *simple* sentence—"If it had not been for the help that I gave him, it would have been impossible that he should succeed."

Express in one *complex* sentence—"I asked him his business."

146. Combine the following sentences so as to form a single *complex* sentence :—

'At last we heard the news. A week before it arrived, we were walking on the sea-shore. We were sad. We were thinking over the chances of the war. We saw a ship in the offing. At first it looked to us like the vessel which we had long expected. We recollected it could not be the *Orion*. That ship could not have arrived so soon.'

147. Justify or correct the following sentences, giving your reasons :—

- (a) Were you not *aware* that a circle has only one centre?
- (b) It is absurd that you should be unable to do this.

Explain the difference in meaning between the sentences—

- (1) He is to be helped.
- (2) He has to be helped.

148. Fill up the blanks in the following sentences with appropriate prepositions :—

He set my authority—*defiance*. The ship's crew ran short—*provisions*. He longs—his father's arrival. Hard work is indispensable—*success* in examinations. Your conduct is subversive—*all discipline*. The master remonstrated—the boy—his conduct. Fortune smiled—his efforts. I stared—him, but he dared not look me—the face. It will devolve—you to see that he is qualified—the appointment. He deals—*cloth*, but I refused to have any dealings—him. He said he would comply—my request.

149. Correct the following sentences :—

I have been ill since two months. I had not time enough for finishing my answers. He left Calcutta before three weeks. I hope it will take my father a month at least for recovering from his fall. Hundred of students have taken admission in our school. He said that I am ill, but I would not listen his excuse. He tried to *stare me out of my countenance*, but I looked at him fully in his face. I saw his intentions, though he tried to *throw dusts at my eyes*. You have *done a good turn to me* in this business. This plan will *suit my turn* for the present. He went off and left me *at the lurch*.

Give the meaning of the italicised idiomatic expressions above, after correction.

150. Point out the difference between *Independent* adverbs and *Conjunctive* adverbs, giving examples of each in sentences.

Explain the following, with special reference to the words in italics :—  
(a) You had better take a *through* ticket to Calcutta ; (b) He will not catch me though he run *ever so* fast ; (c) I answered him *never* a word ; (d) I *never* answered him a word ; (e) I will give you as much *again* as he offers ; (f) If he speaks to you, do not answer him *again* ; (g) The earthquake shook the church steeple till the bells rang *again*.

# 1.—INDEX OF SUBJECTS.

[The references are to the sections.]

- Absolute case**, 137, 138 (e) note, 341 (3).  
 infinitive, 233 (5), 340 (3).  
**Accent**, defined, 497.  
 variation of, 498.  
 difference of, 500.  
 unchanged, 499.  
**Active for passive**, 640.  
**Adjectives**, defined, 147.  
 of same form as adverbs, 148.  
 comparison of, 149.  
 irregular comparisons of, 150.  
 generalising *the* with, 160.  
 used as complement of a verb,  
   10 (1), 339 (2).  
 collocation of some, 397-399.  
 used as nouns, 403-407.  
 phrasal uses of, 482-485.  
 errors in, 590-591.  
**Adjuncts**, 11-14.  
**Adverbial objective**, 139, 335 (8).  
 uses of prepositions, 422, 430,  
   440, 444, 447, 449, 451, 453,  
   456, 459, 461.  
**Adverbs**, defined, 261, 343.  
 independent, 263.  
 dependent, 264.  
 relative, 264.  
 conjunctive, 264.  
 genitival, 266.  
 prepositional, 267.  
 compound, 268.  
 pronominal, 269.  
 used as adjectives, 275.  
 used as nouns, 276.  
 comparison of, 278.  
 of same form as adjectives, 148.  
 adjectives for, 863 (b).  
**Adverbs**, used as conjunctions, **360**.  
 errors in, 723-767, 842.  
**Alphabet**, 495, 496, 537, 538.  
**Ambiguity**. p. 25, *foot-note* 3; **140**;  
   p. 93, *foot-note* 2; 207, *note*; **849**,  
   850.  
**Analogy**, false, 106, 418.  
**Analysis of sentences**, 29-33.  
**Antonyms**, 90.  
**Apostrophe**, 511, 140.  
**Articles**, 150-165.  
 omission of the, 156-171.  
 wrong omission of the, 592-594.  
**Article**, definite, 156-162, 593.  
 defining, 157.  
 familiar, 158.  
 for possessive pronoun, 159.  
 generalising, with adjectives, **160**.  
 generalising, with nouns, 161.  
 with proper nouns, 162.  
**Article**, indefinite, 163, 164, 592.  
 individualising, 163.  
 generalising, 164.  
 coalescing with noun, 108.  
**Bengal Idiom**, 389 (4) (6), 551, 658,  
   659, 667, 669, 671-674, 676, **688**,  
   691, 693, 733-735, 738, 776, **788**,  
   793, 824, 827, 838.  
**Case**, defined, 134.  
 nominative, 134 (1), 135, 136, 137,  
   334.  
 objective, 134 (2), 139, 222, 223,  
   335.  
 indirect objective, 134 (4), 222,  
   336.  
 dative, 134 (4), 222, *notes*.

- Case, possessive, 134 (3), 140-146, 337.  
     vocative, 134 (5), 338.  
     instrumental, 271, 386 (1).  
     absolute, 137, 285.
- Clause, defined, 7.  
     principal, 16.  
     subordinate, 16.  
     co-ordinate, 17.  
     noun, 21.  
     adjective, 22.  
     adverb, 25.
- Cognate object, 220, 492 (b), 335 (5).  
     Coherence, rule of, 855.
- Colloquialisms, 854 (3); 274, *note*;  
     329 (5); 584, 620, 661, 662, 805,  
     814, *notes*.
- Comparatives, Latin, 151.  
     errors in, 581, 584, 586-588.
- Comparison of Adjectives, 149-151.
- Complement, 9, 10, 219, 231 (2),  
     334 (3), 335 (4), 339 (2), 340 (2),  
     341 (2), 341 (7).
- Compounds, 39, 61.  
     syntactical, 62-67.  
     juxtapositional, 68-80.  
     phrase, 81.  
     form of, 82.  
     hyphen in, 83.  
     hybrid, 84.  
     plural of, 132.  
     possessive of, 143.
- Confused words, 92-95.
- Conjunctions, defined, 287, 345.  
     co-ordinative, 288 (1), 289-294.  
     subordinative, 288 (2), 295-299.  
     errors in, 788-823.
- Construction, errors in, 843, 844.  
     archaic, 863.
- Correlatives, 200.
- Dative of interest, 222 *note* 1, 336 (3).  
     reflexive, 222 *note* 2, 336 (4).
- Degradation of words, 98-101.
- Derivatives, 39 (2).  
     verbal, 58.  
     Latin, 59.  
     Greek, 60.
- Disguised words, 104-108.
- Double negative, 767.
- Doublets, 91.
- Elevation of words, 102, 103, 100.
- Elliptical sentences, 403.  
     use of *it*, 492.
- Emphasis, 241 *note*, 397, 490 (b),  
     497, 509 (3), 513 (1), 851 (1).
- Essays, outlines of, 916, 917.  
     three classes of, 918.  
     composition of, 919, 920.  
     descriptive, 921-924.  
     narrative, 925-928.  
     reflective or expository 929-931.  
     subjects for, 932.
- Examination answers, 546, 547.  
     questions, p. 427.
- Figurative language, 389 (5), 857-  
     860.  
     in poetry, 866.
- Fine writing, 854 (1).
- Force, 851.
- Foreign words, 854 (4).
- Gender, explained, 119.  
     common, 120.  
     of inanimate objects, 121.  
     three ways of denoting, 122.  
     confused, 610.
- Greek derivatives, 60.  
     plurals, 127 (2).
- Group-verbs, 218.
- Homonyms, 88.  
     apparent, 89.
- Hybrids, 84, p. 16, *foot-note*.
- Hyphen in compounds, 82, 83.
- Idioms, metaphor in, 388.  
     translation of, 389.  
     fixed character of, 390.  
     particularisation of, 391.  
     obsolete words preserved in, 392.  
     word-collocation in, 393-399.  
     double phrases in, 394-396.
- Imperative, 1st and 3rd persons, 225.  
     suppositional use of, 226.
- Infinitive, simple, 230 (1), 231, 340  
     (a).  
     gerundial, 230 (2), 232, 340 (b).  
     without *to*, 233.  
     absolute, 231 (4), 233 (5), 340 (a)  
     (3), 340 (b) (3).  
     parenthetical, 232 (4), 340 (b) (4).  
     split, 651.
- Interjections, 300, 301, 335 (9), 336  
     (6).
- Interrogations, reported, 311, 833 (3),  
     *shall* and *will* in, 324.  
     subject after verb in, 135 (1),  
     833 (1).

**Latin derivatives, 59.**

plurals, 127 (1).

comparatives, 151.

**Letters, capital, 512.**

superfluous, p. 267, *foot-note*.

appended or dropt, 108.

plural of, 301.

mispronounced, 537, 538.

**Letter-writing, 933-942.**

errors in, 936.

**Metaphor, 859, 860.**

participial forms in, 401.

**Mood, defined, 224.**

indicative, 224 (1), 342.

imperative, 224 (2), 225, 226, 342

subjunctive, 224 (3), 227-229, 342.

infinitive, 224 (4), 230-233, 341.

**Narration, p. 152, *foot-note*.**

**Nominative, 135-137, 334,**

**Nouns, defined, 109.**

table of, 118.

class, 110 ; without art., 167.

collective, 111, 564 ; without art., 166.

material, 172 ; without art., 166.

common, 113.

proper, 114 ; *the* with, 162.

concrete, 115, 116 *note*.

abstract, 116 ; formation of, 117 ; without art., 166.

generalising *the* with, 161.

descriptive, without art., 168, 169.

phrasal uses of, 486-489.

errors in, 548-569.

**Number, 123-133, 610.**

**Numerals, cardinal, 152.**

ordinal, 153.

multiplicative, 154.

distributive, 155.

**Object, 8, 11, 134 (2), 335.**

adverbial, 139.

cognate, 220, 335 (5), 492 (b).

direct, 134 (2), 222, 223, 335.

indirect, 222, 223, 336.

retained, 223, 335 (6), 336 (2).

simple infinitive, 231 (1).

in exclamations, 339 (9).

adjuncts of, 11, 12.

**Obsolete words preserved, 392.**

**Order of words, errors in, 833-842.**

inversion of, 865, 389 (6).

**Paraphrasing, 869, 870.**

**Parsing, defined, 333.**

scheme of, 347-354.

form and relation in, 355.

examples of, 386.

**Participle, imperfect, 234, 235, 341.**

perfect, 239, 341, 400-402, 650.

prepositional use of, 283-285.

**Passive use of transitive verbs, 214**

verb with object, 223.

**Passive *for* active, 630, 641.**

**Perspicuity, rule of, 848, 849.**

**Person, 174, 611.**

**Phrase, 5, 6, 563, 847 (2), (4)-(7).**

**Plural, mode of forming the, 124.**

of nouns in -o, 125.

of nouns in -f, 126.

of foreign nouns, 127.

forms, true, 128.

forms, apparent, 129.

of words used as nouns, 130.

of abbreviations, 130, *notes*.

with numerals, 131.

of compounds, 132.

and singular meanings, 133.

wrongly for singular, 550, 646.

**Poetic diction, 861-868.**

**Possessive ending, 140.**

inflection omitted, 141, 237.

limited to persons, etc., 144.

of proper nouns in -s, 142.

of compounds, 143.

adjectival, 863 (c), p. 91, *foot-note*.

cases of personal pronouns, 176, 177.

case, misused, 554.

**Précis-writing, 871-915.**

**Precision, rule of, 852.**

**Predicate, 1, 3.**

**Prefixes, sources of, 41.**

Latin, 42.

Greek, 43.

Teutonic, 52.

**Prepositions, defined, 280, 344.**

compound, 281.

participles used as, 283-285.

detached, 286.

confused, 413.

phrasal uses of, 420-464.

used as adverbs, 357, 359.

used as conjunctions, 358, 359.

wrongly inserted or omitted, 414, 768, 769.

errors in, 768-787.

**Pronouns, defined, 172.**

**Pronouns, classification of, 173.**  
 personal, 174-178, 600.  
 reflexive, 179, 180, 604.  
 demonstrative, 181-183.  
 interrogative, 184-188.  
 relative, 189-199; omitted, 286, 623.  
 conjunctive, 201.  
 indefinite, 202-205.  
 distributive, 206-208.  
 errors in, 596-610.  
**Pronunciation, 551-645.**  
**Proximity, rule of, 847.**  
**Punctuation, 502-511.**

**Qualifying phrases, 847 (5).**  
**Quotations, 854 (2).**

**Re-, 854 (4).**  
**Repetition of words, 506 (2) note,**  
 789, 851 (2), 920 (12).  
**Reported speech, direct, 308, 309.**  
 indirect, 308, 310.  
 interrogations, 311.  
 commands or requests, 312.  
 exclamations and wishes, 313.  
 intermediate forms of, 315-317.

**Roots, 40.**  
**Rules for translating idioms, 389.**  
 of spelling, 514-520.  
 for answering examination questions, 547.  
 of style, 846-856.  
 for paraphrasing, 869.  
 for essay-writing, 920.

**Sentences, structure of, 1-28.**  
 analysis of, 29-33.  
 simple, 15, 31.  
 complex, 16, 32.  
 compound, 17, 33.  
 conversion of, 34-38.  
 elliptical, 409.  
 short, 855 (5).  
 longer in poetry, 861 (7), 868.

**Sequence of tenses, 302-307.**  
**Shall and Will, 318-325, 331.**  
 special uses of, 322.  
 in indirect report, 323.  
 in interrogations, 324, 325.

**Should and Would, 326-331.**  
 special uses of, 329.  
 confusion of, 330.

**Simile. 857-860.**

**Simplicity, rule of, 854.**  
**Singular forms, true, 129.**  
 wrongly for plural, 551.  
**Slang, 854 (3).**  
**Spelling, notes on, 521-536.**  
**Stems, 40.**  
**Style, purity of, 854.**  
**Subject, 1, 2, 8, 134 (1), 334.**  
 simple infinitive, 231 (1).  
 after verb, 135.  
 adjuncts of, 11, 12.

**Subjunctive, conditional use of, 227**  
 after *that, lest*, etc., 228.  
 optative use of, 229.

**Suffixes, their sources, 41.**  
 Latin and Greek, 45-51.  
 denoting persons: *-ate, -ee, -ey, -y; -ar, -er, -eer, -ier, -or, -ary; -ain, -an, -en, -on; -ist, -ast; -or, -our, -eur, -er, 45.*  
 forming abstract nouns: *-age; -ance, -ence; -ate; -cy, -sy; -ion, -on, -om; -ice, -ise, -ess; -ism, -asm; -ment; -mony; -tude; -ty; -ure; -y, 46.*  
 denoting place or instrument: *-ary, -ery, -ory, -ry; -ter, -tre, -cre, 47.*  
 other noun: *-al, -el, -le; -ade; -el, -le; -on; -oon, -one, -on; -or, -our, -eur; -phil, -phile; -ule, -le, -el, -il; -y, 49.*  
 diminutive: *-cule, -ule, -cle, -cel, -sel, -el, -le, -il, -l; -et, -ot, -let, 48.*  
 adjective: *-al; -an, -ane, -ain, -en; -ar; -ary, -arious; -ant, -ent; -ate, -ete, -ite, -ute, -t, -se; -ble, -ble, -ible, -a-ble; -esque; -ic, -ique; -id; -ile, -il, -eel, -le, -el; -ine, -in; -ive; -lent; -ory; -ose, -ous, 50.*  
 verb: *-ate, -ite, -t, -se; -esce; -fy; -ise, -ize; -ish, 51.*

**Suffixes, Teutonic, 53-57.**  
 denoting agent or instrument: *-ard; -er, -ar, -or, -ier, -yer; -el, -le; -ster (aster); -ter, -ther, -der; -nd; -monger; -wright, 53.*  
 denoting state or condition: *-dom; -head, -hood; -ing; -lock, -ledge; -ness; -red; -ship, -scape; -th, -t, 54.*  
 diminutive: *-el, -le; -er-el, -r-et -en; -kin; -ling, -ing; -ock, 55.*

**Suffixes, Teutonic :**

adjective : *-ed* ; *-en*, *-n* ; *-fast* ;  
*-ful* ; *ish*, *-sh* ; *-less* ; *-ly* ; *-some* ;  
*-ward* ; *-y*, 56.

verb : *-en* ; *-er* ; *-el*, *-le*, *-l*, 57.

Suffixes, depreciative, 45, *note*.

Superlative *for* comparative and  
positive, 584, 585.

Syllabication, 501.

Synonyms, 85-87.

Tense, defined, 240.

present imperfect momentary,  
240, 241, 304, 645.

present imperfect continuous, 240,  
242, 642.

present perfect momentary, 240,  
243, 305.

past imperfect momentary, 240,  
243.

present perfect continuous, 240,  
244.

Underlining, 513.

Unity, rule of, 856.

Verbal noun, 234-237, 412, 772.

Verbosity, 854 (5).

Verbs, defined, 209.

causative, 57, 58.

frequentative, 57.

finite, 4, 652.

two classes of, 210.

transitive, *without* object, 211.

transitive, reflexive use of, 212.

transitive, quasi-passive use of,  
214.

Verbs, transitive, with cognate  
object, 220, *note* 1.

intransitive, transitive use of,  
216.

intransitive, with preposition,  
217.

intransitive, with complement,  
219, 335 (3).

intransitive. with cognate object,  
229.

or incomplete predication, 3.

with two objects, 222, 223.

before subject, 135.

strong and weak, 246.

conjugation of special, 247.

defective and anomalous, 248-  
259.

impersonal, 260, 336 (5).

phrasal uses of, 465-481.

errors in, 639-722.

Vocative, 134 (5), 338.

Words, simple, 39 (1).

derivative, 39 (2).

compound, 61-83.

confused, 92.

derived from proper names, 96.

degradation of, 98-101.

elevation of, 100, 102, 103.

disguised, 104-108.

corruption of, 105.

contraction of, 107.

obsolete, 105, 392.

archaic, 862.

coined and far-fetched, 854 (6).

order of, 135, 311, 313, 861 (4),  
869 (5).

errors in, 833-842.



## II.—INDEX OF WORDS AND FORMS.

[The references are to the sections.]

- A**, 156, 163–168, 171, 595.  
**A-**, 52, 398.  
**A certain**, 204, *note*.  
**A few, a little**, 164, *note*.  
**A year, a day, etc.**, 282.  
**Abbess**, 122 (2).  
**Abide**, 52, 247.  
**Able**, 108.  
**About**, 52, 204, 231 (3), 281, 357, 421, 422, 775.  
**Above**, 52, 275, 281, 357, 423.  
**Abridge, abbreviate**, 91.  
**Abroad**, 52, 357, 398.  
**Accept, except**, 92.  
**Accessory, accessory**, 91.  
**Accursed**, 52, 106.  
**Acknowledge for promise**, 670.  
**Across**, 52, 281, 357, 424.  
**Adamant, diamond**, 91.  
**Adder**, 108.  
**Addicted**, 391.  
**Admitting**, 653, *note*.  
**Affect, effect**, 94.  
**Afford**, 106.  
**Affright**, 52, 106.  
**After**, 228, 275, 297, 359, 425, 829.  
**After all**, 425 (4), 743.  
**Again**, 52, 272.  
**Against**, 52, 281, 426.  
**Aggravate for annoy**, 852 (2).  
**Aghast**, 52, 398.  
**Agreeable for agreeably**, 758.  
**Air oneself for take the air**, 703.  
**Alackaday**, 301.  
**Alike**, 52, 398.  
**Alive**, 52, 398.  
**Ill**, 494, 765, 817.  
**All not for not all**, 907.  
**Allude for refer**, 852.  
**Allusion, illusion**, 94 (1).  
**Alms**, 107, 129.  
**Alone**, 399.  
**Along**, 281, 357, 427.  
**Also for as well as**, 754.  
**Altogether**, 734, 744.  
**Always**, 266.  
**Am to, have to**, 307, 654.  
**Amend, emend**, 91.  
**Amends**, 128.  
**Amid, amidst**, 52, 281.  
**Among**, 52, 281, 428, 784.  
**An-**, 42, *note* 1.  
**Ancient**, 108.  
**And**, 136, 155 (b), 288 (1), 290, 814, 820, 821.  
**And which**, 618.  
**Another**, 204, 636.  
**Ant, emmet**, 91.  
**Any**, 164, 173, 361, 633, 637, 638.  
**Apron**, 108.  
**Apt, liable, likely**, 419, 852.  
**Arbour**, 108.  
**Archangel**, 44, 539 (1).  
**Arise for rise**, 720.  
**Around**, 52, 281, 357, 429, 430.  
**Artful, artifice**, 99.  
**As (conj.)**, 200 (5) (6), 233 (4), 299, 376 (a), 803, 804.  
     (rel.), 173, 199, 200 (1) (4), 376 (c), 614, 624.  
     (adv.), 135 (7), 264 and *note*, 376 (b) (d), 749.  
**As it were**, 808.  
**As soon as**, 805, 832.  
**As to inserted**, 786.  
**As well as for beside(s)**, 815.  
     *for as soon*, 748.  
**Ascendancy, ascendant**, 92.

Ascertain, 852.  
 Ashamed, 52, 388.  
 Asparagus, 105.  
 At, 420, 431, 774, 778, 935 and *foot-*  
     *note* 2.  
 At all, 494 (2), 744.  
 At all events, 842 (13).  
 At best, 408 (a), 431 (3) *note*.  
 At once, 276 *note*, 431 (2), 734.  
 Audience for spectators, 568.  
 Auger, 108.  
 Aught, 173.  
 Auspices, 128.  
 Avocation, vocation, 852, 854 (1).  
 Await for wait, 722.  
 Awake, 52, 247, 398.  
 Awful, 56, 82 (3), 515.  
 Ay, 270.  
 Back for behind, 746.  
 Backbite, 80, *note*.  
 Bad, 150 (3), 590.  
 Bald-head, 82 (1), *note*.  
 Barbarism, barbarity, 94 (1).  
 Barefaced, 77, *note*.  
 Bark, 88.  
 Barn, 107.  
 Battlement, 105.  
 Be, 245, *note*; 248.  
 Be-, 52.  
 Beaker, pitcher, 91.  
 Bear, 247.  
 Because, 52, 292, 812, 818.  
 Before, 52, 228, 297, 359, 432, 828,  
     830.  
 Behest, 108.  
 Behind, 52, 281, 357, 433, 746.  
 Believe for presume, 668.  
 Bellows, 128.  
 Below, 52, 281, 357, 434.  
 Beneath, 52, 150 (14), 281, 357,  
     435.  
 Beneficial, beneficent, benevolent,  
     94.  
 Beside(s), 52, 267, 281, 436.  
 Betimes, 52, 267.  
 Better, 150 (2), 233 (3), 279.  
 Between, 52, 267, 281, 357, 437, 784.  
 Beyond, 52, 267, 281, 357, 438.  
 Bi-, 42, *note* 2.  
 Bid, 233 (1), 247.  
 Bide, 247.  
 Biennial, bi-weekly, 44.  
 Bird's-eye (view), 64, *note*.  
 Blindfold, 105.

Bloodshed, 70, *note*.  
 Blue-jacket, blue-stocking, 82 (1),  
     *note*.  
 Boor, 99.  
 Born, borne, 247.  
 Both, 289, 375.  
 Bound (ready to go), 108, 419.  
 Braggart, 108.  
 Breach, breech, 95.  
 Bread-and-butter, 81, *note*.  
 Break for tear, 683.  
 Brethren, 124 (2), 133 (1).  
 Bring for take, 679.  
 Brooch, broach, 95.  
 Browbeat, 80, *note*.  
 Brown-study, 63 (a), *note*.  
 Bulrush, 82 (3).  
 Bumptious, 100.  
 Bus, 107.  
 Busy, 102.  
 But, 200 (13), 233 (4), 294, 297, 493,  
     652, 794-797.  
 By, 155 (a), 413 (3), 420, 439, 440,  
     828.  
 By and by, 440, 735.  
 By the by, 440, 534.  
 Cab, 107.  
 Caitiff, captive, 91, 99.  
 Can, 233 (1), 251.  
 Canter, 107.  
 Care for it, 840.  
 Catch, 466, 674.  
 Cat-and-dog, 81, *note*.  
 Cat's-paw, 64, *note*.  
 Chap, 107, 854 (3).  
 Child's-play, 64, *note*.  
 Chime, 108.  
 Christian, 102.  
 Churl, 99.  
 Claim for maintain, etc., 714.  
 Clerical error, A, 591.  
 Clever, 100.  
 Climax for acme, 566.  
     *for crisis*, 852 (1).  
 Close-fisted, 77, *note*.  
 Clothes, 128.  
 Cock-and-bull, 81, *note*.  
 Cold-blooded, 77, *note*.  
 Colleague, 106.  
 Collision, collusion, 94.  
 Come to know for find, 702.  
 Complacent, complaisant, 91.  
 Compliment, complement, 94.  
 Compound, 108.

Con-, 42, *note* 2.  
 Concerning, etc., 283, 386 (13) (14).  
 Conduce, conduct, 51, *note*.  
 Confess *for* grant, 671.  
 Construct, construe, 51, *note*.  
 Contain *for* be contained, 700.  
 Content (adj.), 399.  
 Converse *for* reverse 567.  
 Cord, chord, 95.  
 Cormorant, 108.  
 Corporal, corporeal, 94.  
 Could, 105, 251.  
 Council, counsel, 95.  
 Court-martial, 397.  
 Crafty, 99.  
 Cunning, 99.  
 Current, currant, 95.  
 Custom, costume, 91.  
 Cut *for* erase, 684.  
     to, in pieces, 419.

Daisy, 107.  
 Dare, 233 (1), 252.  
 Darling, 55.  
 Dastard, 53.  
 Date, 88.  
 De-, 44.  
 Dead, 482.  
 Deaf-mute, 63 (*a*), *note*.  
 Death's-head, 64, *note*.  
 Deduce, deduct, 51, *note*.  
 Deny *for* refuse, 672.  
 Dependence, dependency, 97 (1).  
 Depositary, depository, 96.  
 Destiny, destination, 97 (1).  
 Die *for* be killed, 675.  
 Directly, 738, 805.  
 Dis-, 42, *note* 2; 44.  
 Do, 233 (1), 257, 258, 863 (*j*) *note*.  
 Don't *for* doesn't, 712.  
 Dote, 102.  
 Double-faced, 77, *note*.  
 Doubt that, 802.  
 Doughty, 100.  
 Down, 52, 107, 275, 357.  
 Draughtsman, 64, *note*.  
 Draw, 469.  
 Drawing-room, 107.  
 Drown *for* sink, 676.  
 Dub, 99.  
 During, 285.

Each, 136 (*c*), 173, 206, 631, 637.  
 Each other, 208.  
 Earnest, 108.

Eat, ate, 247, 314.  
 Eaves, 129.  
 -ed, (adj. suffix), 56 *note*, 65 *foot-note*.  
 Either (pron.), 173, 207, 637, 638.  
     (conj.), 289 *note*, 290 *note*, 291.  
 Elder, 150 (6), 151, 548 and *note*.  
 Elicit, illicit, 94.  
 Else, 383.  
 Elusive, illusive, 94.  
 Embattle, 105.  
 Emigrate, immigrate, 94.  
 Eminent, imminent, 94.  
 Endue, endow, 91, 534.  
 Enough, 173, 203, 362, 838.  
 Entrails, 49 *note*, 128.  
 Environs, 128, p. 284, *foot-note*.  
 Equally *for* as much, 752.  
 Ere, 297, 862 (*g*).  
 Esq., 935, 936 (3) (4).  
 Essay, assay, 91.  
 Etc., 569, 635.  
 -eth *for* -est, 647.  
 Ever so, 274.  
 Every, 136 (*c*), 173, 637; other 206.  
 Ex-, 42, *note* 2; 44.  
 Except, 231 (3), 233 (4), 285, 783,  
     807, *note*.  
 Expect *for* suppose, 713.  
 Expired, 239.  
 Expound, 108.

Face, 487.  
 Fac-simile, 107.  
 Fail, 222, *note* 1; 650 *note*.  
 Fair, 484, 219.  
 Fair out, To, 704.  
 Fairy, 105.  
 Far, 150 (1).  
 Farther, further, 150 (1) (9).  
 Fast, 148, 278, 391.  
 Fealty, 46, 545.  
 Feasible *for* possible, etc., 557.  
 Fellow, 99.  
 Fence, 107.  
 Fetch *for* bring, 678.  
 Feud, 106.  
 Few, 173, 205, 164 *note*, 364, 582.  
 First, 150 (9), 153, 739.  
 -fold, 154 (*a*).  
 Flee, fly, 247.  
 Flow, 247.  
 Folk, folks, 129.  
 Fond, 102.  
 Fool-hardy, 69, *note*.  
 Fool's errand, 64, *note*.

For, 292, 297, 358, 420, 441, 773,  
778, 827, 830.

For-, 52.

Fore, 150 (9).

Foregone, 52 *foot-note* 1, 391.

Foremost, 150 (9).

Forgo, forfend, etc., 52.

Forward for offer, 660.

Foster-child, 63 (c), *note*.

Foul-mouthed, 77, *note*.

Four-foot, four-footed, 77, *note*.

Fray, 107.

Freehold, 63 (a), *note*.

Fret, 52.

From, 420, 442, 636, 772, 779, 826.

Fun, 100.

Future for subsequent, 572.

Gain-, 52.

Gainsay, 52.

Gallows, 128.

Gamble, gambol, 92.

Generous, 102.

Gentle, 96, 102, 399.

Get, got, 470, 661, 662, 633.

Give, 471, 693.

Gizzard, 108.

Go, 472, 680-682.

Goal, gaol, 94.

Godsend, 68, *note*.

Good, 150 (2), 483.

Good-all-round, 81, *note*.

Goodbye, 301.

Good morning, good night, good  
evening, 558, *note*.

Gosling, 55.

Governess, 122 (2).

Grant for permit, 719.

Greenhouse, 68, *note*.

Grey-beard, 82 (1), *note*.

Grisly, grizzly, 95.

Gypsy, 97, 534.

Hack, 107.

Had rather, etc., 233 (3), 279.

Hail (interj.), 301.

Hair-brained, 77, *note*.

Half, 371.

Half-blood, 77, *note*.

Hamlet, 48.

Hand, 486.

Handful, 66 (b), 82 (3).

Handsel, 82 (3).

Hang, 247.

Hang-dog, 63 (c), *note*.

Hard, 148, 278, 794.

Hardly, 148, 200 (10), 738, 794.

Has gone, is gone, 245.

Hatchment, achievement. 91, 108.

Have, 250.

Hazard, 102, 108.

He, 173-175, 269.

Head, 488.

Headsmen, 64, *note*.

Hear for listen to, 659.

Hearsay, 63 (c), *note*.

Help without not, 711.

Here, 269, 276.

Hermit, 108.

Himself, etc., 173, 179, 180.

Hind, 150 (10), 433.

Hire for let, 715.

His, 173-175, 178, 601.

Hoist, 108.

Hold, 108.

Holiday, 82 (3).

Hoodwink, 80, *note*.

Hope for expect, 666.

Hostage, 108.

How, 264, 269, 379.

However, 360, 630, *note*.

Hush-money, 73, *note*.

I, 173-175, 598.

If, 135 (5), 200 (13) *note*, 226-228,  
290, 311, 848 (4).

Imaginative, 94, 102.

Immediately for as soon as, 792.

Imperious, imperial, 94.

Imposture, imposition, 94.

In, 150 (11), 357, 413 (1), 420, 443,  
444, 774, 777, 829.

In case for lest, 811.

In-, un-, 42, *notes* 2, 3.

In front for in the presence of, 785.

Indeed, 267, 745.

Indifferent, 99.

Individual for man, person, 560.

Industrious, industrial, 94.

Infantile, etc., 56, *foot-note* 1.

Inform, 696.

Informant, informant, 94.

Ingenuous, 94, 102.

Innings, 128.

Insist, 697.

Intend for want, 669.

Interior, etc., 151.

Into, 413 (1), 443, 777.

Island, 105.

- It, 108, 173, 174, 490, 492, 538, 596, 597.  
 Its, 176, *note*.
- Jeopardy, 102.  
 Judicial, judicious, 94.  
 Junction, juncture, 94.  
 Just, 733, 831.  
 Just as well *for* all the same, 753.  
 Just now *for* presently, 831.
- Keep, 473, 691, 692.  
 Keepsake, 66 *note*, 68 *note*.  
 Kickshaws, 105, 129.  
 Kidnap, 100.  
 Knave, 99.  
 Knock-kneed, 77, *note*.  
 Know *for* believe, 667.
- Lack-lustre, 62, *note*.  
 Lade, load, 247.  
 Landed, 56, *note*.  
 Lass, 122 (2).  
 Last, 150 (8), 583.  
 Last but one, The, 839.  
 Late, 150 (8).  
 Latter *for* last, 583.  
 Lay, lie, 247.  
 Learned, 239.  
 Lend, 108.  
 Lengthways, lengthwise, 266 and *foot-note*.  
 Less, lesser, 150 (7), 582.  
 Lest, 228, 296.  
 Let, 225, 253 (1).  
 Light (verb), 247, 355 (a).  
 Light-fingered, 77, *note*.  
 Like (adj.), 56, 279 *note*, 336 (7), 404.  
     *for* as, 809.  
 Likely *for* probably, 742.  
 Literally *for* actually, 757.  
 Little, 150 (7), 363, 590.  
     by little, 155 (a), 439 (4) *foot-note*, 735.  
 Live, 398, 545.  
 Livelong, 77, *note*; 399.  
 Livestock, 63 (a), *note*.  
 Lone, 399.  
 Long ago, 825.  
 Long-boat, 82 (1), *note*.  
 Long-lived, 77, *note*.  
 Loose, lose, 92.  
 Lover, 120, *note*.
- Luxurious, luxuriant, 94.  
 -ly, 56, 278.
- Made, 247.  
 Make, 233 (1), 247, 474, 649, 663-665.  
 Man-of-war, 82 (1), *note*.  
 Many, 150 (4), 173, 205, 365, 128 *note*.  
 Marksman, 64, *note*.  
 Mathematics, 128.  
 May, 233 (1), 255.  
 Me, 173, 598, 599.  
 Means, 128.  
 Measles, 128.  
 Mediocrity *for* impartiality, 561.  
 Menial, 99.  
 Mend *for* sharpen, 688.  
 Meseems, melists, 260, 863 (i).  
 Methinks, 260, 336 (5), 863 (i).  
 Methodist, 102.  
 Might (verb), 255.  
 Mine, 173, 174, 176.  
 Mis-, 52.  
 Mistake *for* be mistaken, 677.  
 Mob, 100, 107.  
 Mole, 107.  
 Momentary, momentous, 94.  
 More, 149, 150 (4), 367, 761.  
 Mostly *for* most, 755.  
 Mother-country, father-land, p. 79, *foot-note* 2.  
 Mould, 107, 534.  
 Mr., 122 (2), 127 (3), 933, 935, 936 (3).  
 Much, 150 (4), 173, 366, 727.  
 Must, 233 (1), 259.  
 Mutual *for* common, 574.  
     *for* reciprocal, 575.  
     *for* simultaneous, 576.  
 My, 173, 174, 176, 177, 601, 603, 606.  
 Myself, etc., 173, 179, 180.
- Namesake, 68, *note*.  
 Naught, 173.  
 Nay, 270.  
 Near, 150 (5), 336 (7), 738, 776.  
 Need (verb), 233 (1).  
 Needs, 266.  
 Ne'er-do-well, 81, *note*.  
 Neither, 173, 289 *note*, 637, 638.  
 Never *for* not, 762.  
 Never so, ever so, 274.  
 Never man, never a man, 167, *note*.  
 Nevertheless, 200 (13), *note*; 369.

Newfangled, 77, *note*.  
 News, 128.  
 Newt, 108.  
 Next, 150 (5), 336 (7), 385, 399.  
 Nice, 102, 852.  
 Nickname, 108.  
 Nigh, 150 (5), 336 (7).  
 No, 373, 573.  
 No sooner, 200 (9), 795, 832.  
 Nonce, 108.  
 None, 173, 372.  
 Nor, 136 (4), 289 *note*, 291 *note*, 822, 823.  
 Not, 258 (2) (b), 763, 762-767, 840.  
 Not any for no, 580.  
 Not inserted, 747, 816.  
 Not only, 200 (13), 747.  
 Notwithstanding, 200 (13) *note*; 285 and *note*.  
 Now, 276, 297 *note*.  
 Nugget, 108.  
 Nuptials, 49 *note*, 128.  
 Obeisance, 46, 91.  
 Oblivious for unaware, etc., 579.  
 Obsequies, 128.  
 Observance, observation, 94.  
 O'clock, 511, 554, 557.  
 Odds, 128.  
 Of, off, 52, 266, 354, 420, 446, 447, 775.  
 Of course, 266, 737.  
 Of late, etc., 266.  
 Of mine, etc., 146.  
 Of old, 266, 408 (c).  
 Official, officious, 94.  
 Old, 150 (6).  
 On, 52, 282, 357, 413 (2), 420, 448, 449.  
 On all fours, 152.  
 Once, 108, 152, 370, 733.  
 Once for all, 734.  
 One, 152, 173, 202, 369, 628, 629, 735.  
 One another, 208.  
 Only, 374, 842 (5).  
 Open for unfasten, 688.  
 Opposite to, 800.  
 Or, 136 (4), 200 (13), *note*, 289 *note*, 291, 822, 823.  
 Or ever for or never, etc., 726.  
 Orange, 108.  
 Ordinance, ordnance, 94.  
 Ortolan, 108.  
 Ostler, 108.

Other, 173, 200 (11), 204, 206, 208, 581, 635, 636.  
 Otherwise *misused*, 731.  
 Ouch, 108.  
 Ought, 256, 318.  
 Ourself, 173.  
 Out, 150 (12), 451.  
 Out of, 450.  
 Outrage, 46, 104.  
 Outside, 275, 386 (20).  
 Over, 357, 452, 453.  
 Own, 177, 179, 180, *p.* 136, *foot-note*.  
 Paddle, 55, 108.  
 Pageant, 108.  
 Palate, pallet, palette, 95.  
 Palsy, 107.  
 Parboil, 105.  
 Parchment, 108.  
 Partake, 83 (3).  
 Passable marks, 591.  
 Pastime, 82 (3).  
 Peal, 107.  
 Peasant, 108.  
 Pease, 129.  
 Pending, 285.  
 Per-, 42, *note* 2; 44.  
 Perhaps for probably, 742.  
 Perished, 239.  
 Persuade, convince, 852.  
 Pheasant, 108.  
 Physic, 94, 550 *note*.  
 Pick, 475.  
 Pier, peer, 95.  
 Pitfall, 68, *note*.  
 Place for room, 389 (4), 556.  
 Plain-spoken, out-spoken, 239.  
 Play, 476, 219.  
 Please, 233 (1), 260.  
 Plot, 107.  
 Poetaster, 53, *note*.  
 Polite, political, 94.  
 Poor-house, 68, *note*.  
 Popular, populous, 94.  
 Prefix for preface, 709.  
 Premises, 123.  
 Pretended, 239.  
 Primrose, 82 (3).  
 Principal, principle, 94.  
 Probable for likely, 578.  
 Probably, 741, 742.  
 Proceed, precede, 94.  
 Progeny, 49.  
 Prolific for frequent, 573.  
 Protagonist for advocate, 559.

Provided, 285, *note* ; 297, 653.

Proxy, 107.

Pur-, 42, *note* 1

Purblind, 82 (3).

Put, 477.

Pygmy, 49, 534.

Quad, 108.

Quaker, 102.

Quantity *for* number, 562.

Quieten *for* quiet, 710.

Quite *for* very, 728.

Radical, 102.

Rampart, 108.

Rapt, wrapt, 94.

Rather, 279, 750.

Re-, 42, *note* 2 ; 83, *note*.

Reach across *for* cross, 689.

Realise *for* notice, etc., 721.

Recollect, re-collect, 83, *note*.

Recreation, re-creation, 83, *note*.

Red-coat, red-tape, 82 (1), *note*.

Redoubtable, 99.

Remains, 128.

Resemble *for* compare, 718.

Resign from, 768

Respectable, respectful, 92.

Retired, 239.

Reverend, 92, 94, 935.

Reverse, revert, 51, *note*.

Rhinoceros, 127, *note* 1.

Rhyme, 106.

Ribband, 108.

Riches, 129.

Rid, 247.

Right, rite, etc., 92.

Rough-rider, 69, *note*.

Run, 221, 478.

Sad, 399, *note*.

Sailor, sailer, 53, and *footnote* 4.

Same, 152, 173, 183, 200 (4), 597.

Saturate *for* imbue, 690.

Save (prep.), 285.

Say, 655-657.

Scapegrace, 62, *note*.

Scissors, 128.

Score, 89.

Scrip, 108.

Secretion, secreting, 92.

See *for* look at, over, 658.

Self, 173, 179, 180.

Sergeant, serjeant, 91, 535.

Set, 479, 212.

Sexton, 45.

Shall, 233 (1), 253.

Shall and will, 318-325, 331.

Sham, 100, 108.

Shambles, 128.

Shamefaced, shamefast, 56, 104.

She, 173, 174.

Shears, 128.

Shoeblack, 69, *note*.

Shoplifter, 69, *note*.

Shorthorn, 82 (1), *note*.

Shortly *for* in short, 740.

Should, 253.

Should and would, 326-331.

Shrewd, 102, 392.

Sick, 591.

Sick-nurse, 68, *note*.

Sideways, 266.

Signal out *for* single out, 92.

Signification, significance, 94.

Silly, 99.

Simple, 99.

Since, 297, 384, 359, 793, 826, 827.

Skinflint, 62, *note*.

Skull, scull, 94.

Slave, 99.

Slow-coach, 82 (1), *note*.

Small-pox, 128.

Snub, 100.

So, 135 (7), 173, 183, 200 (5) (6) (7),  
274, 381, 597, 736, 818, 819,  
836, 837.

So long *for* so far, 759.

So much, 837.

So much as, 801.

So that, 200 (7), *note*.

So to speak, 232 (4), 808 *note*.

Soldier, 102.

Some, 163, 164 *note*, 173, 204, 368,  
633, 634.

Some day, 634, *note*.

Somehow, 379 (c) and *note*

Sometimes, 266.

Somewhat, 268, 632, 731.

Sorry, 56, 399.

Sound, 108.

Spend, 107.

Spectacles, 128.

Spider, 53.

Spinster, 53, 122 (1).

Spiritual, spirituous, 94.

Spite, 107.

Sport, 107.

Squire, 108.

Squall, squeal, 91.

- swaid, stayed, 91.  
 Stand-by, 66, *note*.  
 Staple for standard, 576.  
 Starvation, 46, 100.  
 Stationary, stationery, 47, *note*.  
 Statue, statute, 92.  
 Steersman, 64, *note*.  
 Stiff-necked, 77, *note*.  
 Stop, etc., for reside, 673.  
 Story, 107.  
 Stout, 399, *note*.  
 Straight, 148, 738 *note*.  
 Strait-laced, 65, 392 *note*.  
 Strand, 108.  
 Stress, 107.  
 Strike, 465.  
 Sub-, 42, *note* 2 ; 44.  
 Substitute for replace, 701.  
 Such, 173, 183, 200 (1) (2), 382, 624-627.  
 Such a, 836.  
 Suit, 89.  
 Summons, 129.  
 Supposing, 284, *note*.  
 Sur-, 42, *note* 1.  
  
 Take, 467, 694, 695, 717.  
 Teetotaler, 102.  
 Tell, 468, 655, 656.  
 Tenor, tenure, 95.  
 Than, 200 (9) (11), 231 (3), 233 (4), 299, 386 (21) (22), 588, 779, 780, 795-799.  
 Than whom, 299.  
 Thanks, 128.  
 That (demonst.), 173, 181, 182, 200 (3), 377 (a) (b), 605, (rel.), 173, 197, 286, 377 (c), (conj.), 200 (2) (3) (7), 228, 295-297, 310, 377 (d), 788-791.  
 The, 157-162, 165-171, 269, p. 123, *foot-note*.  
     instrumental, 269, 271, 386 (1).  
 Their, 92, 173, 174, 176.  
 Theirs, 173, 174, 176.  
 Then, 269, 275, 276.  
 There, 92, 269, 386 (15), 491 *note*, 864.  
 These, those, 181.  
 They, 173, 174, 202 (b) *note*.  
 Thine, 173, 174, 176.  
 This, 173, 181, 182.  
 Thou, 173-175.  
  
 Though, 200 (13) *note*, 226, 227, 293  
 Thrash, thresh, 91, 535.  
 Through, 275, 420, 454.  
 Throw for spill, 687.  
 Thus for so, 736.  
 Thy, 173, 174 176, 179.  
 Tidings, 128.  
 Tinsel, 99.  
 To, 233, 357, 420, 455, 456, 588, 779, 782, 798.  
     of infinitive omitted, 223, 648.  
 To be omitted, 705.  
 To be sure, 232, *note*.  
 To wit, 232, *note*.  
 To-day, 83 (2), 267.  
 To-morrow, 267.  
     for yesterday, 824.  
 Too, 200 (12), 723-725, 729.  
 Tory, 102.  
 Toward(s), 457.  
 Transfer for convert, 708.  
 Travelled, 239.  
 Treadmill, 73, *note*.  
 Tribute (to) for proof (of), 567  
 Tulip, turban, 91.  
 Turn, 480.  
 Turncoat, 62, *note*.  
 Turning-point, 73, *note*.  
 Tyrant, 108.  
  
 Ultra-, 42, *note* 3 ; 104.  
 Umpire, 108.  
 Un-, 52.  
 Unbound, unsaid, 52, *foot-note* 2.  
 Under, 357, 458, 459.  
 Undersigned, 239.  
 Unique for sole or peculiar, 571.  
 Unless, 227, 807, 816.  
 Until, till, 297, 806, 813.  
 Up, 150 (13), 357, 420, 460, 461, 760.  
 Uphill, 67, *note*.  
 Upon, 413 (2), 448, 778.  
 Use to, 699.  
  
 Valet, 91.  
 Van, 107.  
 Varlet, 91, 99.  
 Venal, venial, 94.  
 Verbal for oral, 852 (3).  
 Verbose, 94.  
 Veritably for really, etc., 756.  
 Very, 294, 538, 723, 727-730.  
 Victuals, 49 *note*, 128.  
 Villain, 99.



- Vixen, 122 (2).  
 Vizard, 108.  
 Vouchsafe, 62, *note*.
- Wages, 128.  
 Waive, wave, 95.  
 Warden, 45.  
 Water *for* climate, 555.  
 Waylay, 80, *note*.  
 We, 173.  
 Wear *for* put on, 685.  
 Welladay, 301.  
 Well-armed, long-armed, 65, *foot-note*.  
 Well-behaved, well-read, 239.  
 What (interrog.), 173, 184, 186, 378  
     (a) (b).  
     (rel.), 173, 195, 378 (c) (d).  
     (indef.), 378 (e).  
     (conj.), 173, 201, 378 (g).  
     (interj.), 378 (h).  
     *for* that, p. 264, *foot-note*.  
 What *for*, 835.  
 What *not*, 187.  
 What *with*, 196, 378 (f).  
 Whatever *for* what *ever*, 630.  
 When, 200 (10), 264, 269, 793, 794.  
 Whence, 264, 269.  
 Where, 264, 269.  
 Whether, 135 (5), 200 (13) *note*, 228,  
     p. 126 *foot-note* 1, 289 *note*  
     (b), 311, 848 (4).  
 Which (interrog.), 173, 188.  
     (rel.), 173, 189, 190, 194, 613-  
     619.  
 Whig, 102.  
 While, 264, 298, 806, 810.  
 Whither, 264, 269.
- Who (interrog.), 173, 184, 185, 613.  
     (rel.), 173, 189, 190, 616.  
     (conj.), 173, 201.  
 Whoever, 630, *note*.  
 Whole, 593 and *note*.  
 Whom, 189, 620.  
 Whose, 189, 193, 612.  
 Why, 264, 269 and *note* 380, 835.  
 Wig, 10 .  
 Wild-geese, 63 (a), *note*.  
 Will, 233 (i), 254, 318-325, 331.  
 Wily-nilly, p. 185, *foot-note* 1.  
 Wind (verb), 247.  
 Windfall, 68, *note*.  
 Wish *for* wish *for*, 716.  
 With, 52, 413 (3), 420, 462, 781.  
 With-, . 2.  
 Within, 281, 357, 463, 828.  
 Without, 281, 359, 464, 807.  
 Witness, 54, 116 *note*.  
 Woodcut, 68, *note*.  
 Word *for* word, 787.  
 World, 388.  
 Worse, 150 (3), 761.  
 Worship, 54.  
 Worth (adj.), 139 (c), 386 (5).  
     (verb), 863 (i), *note*.  
 Would, 326, 331, 698.  
 Wreck, reck, 94.  
 Wring, ring, 94.
- Ye, 174, 175.  
 Yon, yonder, 183, 862 (c).  
 You, 173, 174, 202 *note*.  
     (indef.), 202. *note*.  
 You and I *for* you and me, 599.  
 Your, 173, 174, 176, 178, 603.  
 Your favour of granting, 841.  
 Yours, 173, 174, 176, 602, 606.





